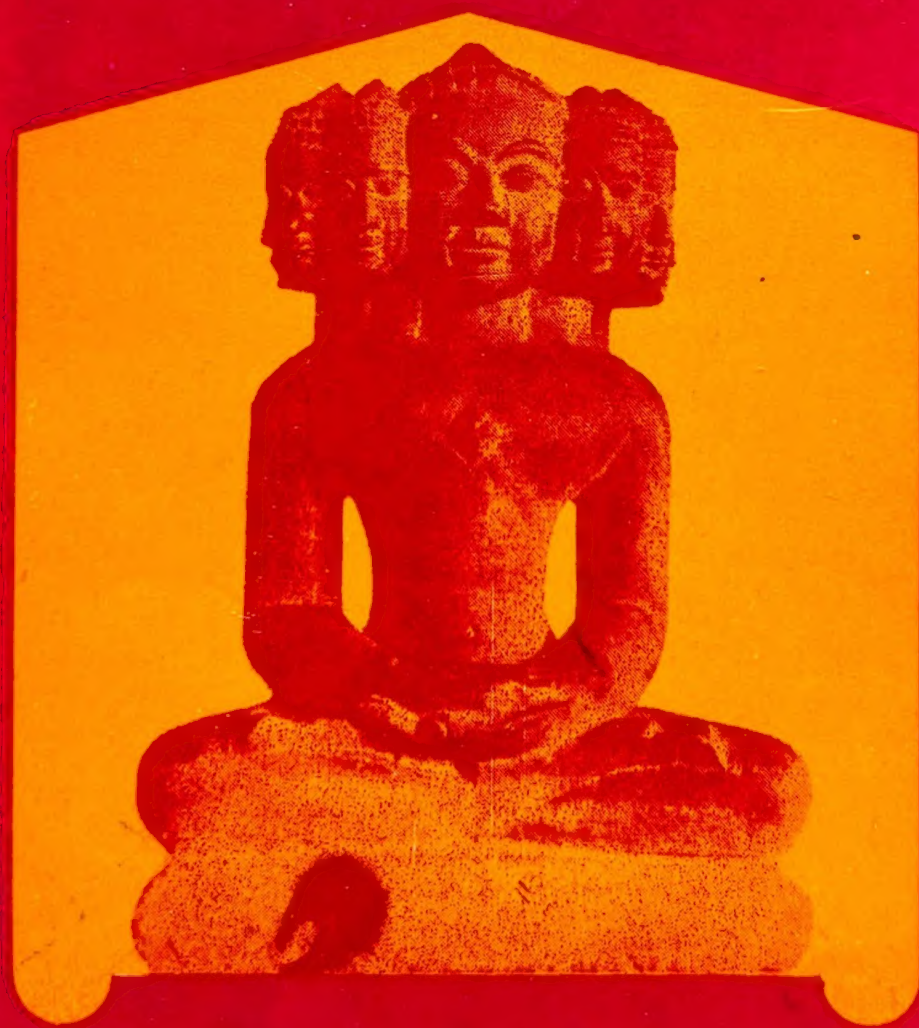


*The
Jaina Path
of
Purification*



PADMANABH S. JAINI

The religious tradition of the Jainas, unique in many respects, presents a fascinating array of doctrinal and social structures that stem from the anti-vedic movements of ancient times. Drawing extensively on primary sources, Professor Jaini provides a comprehensive introduction to the Jaina experience.

Beginning with the Life of Mahāvīra, the author elucidates the essentials of Jaina cosmology and philosophy as well as of the "path of purification" through which the soul may escape from its Kārmic defilements and attain eternal salvation. This path constitutes the integral element within the broader framework of Jaina literature, lay ritual and the socio-historical factors, which enabled Jainism to survive and prosper to the present day. In particular, the author has examined the cardinal doctrine of *ahimsā* (non-harming), both in its impact upon Jaina religious consciousness and as a standard in applying its sacred principles to the conduct of every day life.



Pa

TH
T

M
D

Padmanabh S. Jaini

The Jaina Path of Purification

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS
Delhi :: Varanasi :: Patna

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS

Indological Publishers and Booksellers

Head Office : Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi-7

Branches : 1. Chowk, Varanasi-1 (U.P.)

2. Ashok Rajpath, Patna-4 (BIHAR)

Copyright © 1979 by

The Regent of the University of California

First Indian Edition : Delhi, 1979

Printed in India

By Shantilal Jain, at Shri Jainendra Press,

A-45, Phase-1, Industrial Area, Naraina, New Delhi-28

**Published by Narendra Prakash Jain, For Motilal Banarsidass,
Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi-7**

to the Memory of My Parents

Contents

List of Illustrations, viii

Preface, xi

Abbreviations, xv

- I. Mahāvīra and the Foundations of Jainism, 1
 - II. The First Disciples and the Jaina Scriptures, 42
 - III. The Nature of Reality, 89
 - IV. The Mechanism of Bondage, 107
 - V. Samyak-Darśana: The First Awakening, 134
 - ✓ VI. Vrata and Pratimā: The Path of the Layman, 157
 - ✓ VII. Jaina Rituals and Ceremonies, 188
 - VIII. The Mendicant Path and the Attainment of the Goal, 241
 - IX. Jaina Society through the Ages: Growth and Survival, 274
- Bibliography, 317
- Texts and Translations, 317
- Modern Works, 323
- Glossary of Sanskrit and Prakrit Words, 335
- General Index, 359

Illustrations

The colossal image of Bāhubali, Shravanabelgola, 10th century.
Frontispiece

1. Rṣabha and Mahāvīra, first and last Tīrthaṅkaras of our age. 68
2. Pārśva, seated beneath the raised hood of a cobra. 69
3. Śvetāmbara image of Rṣabha, the first Tīrthaṅkara. 69
4. The fourteen dreams of Trisālā, mother of Mahāvīra. 69
5. Relief fragment depicting Mahāvīra's change of embryo. 70
6. Mahāvīra being led in procession to the site of his renunciation.
70
7. Mahāvīra preaching. 71
8. Śāntinātha, the sixteenth Tīrthaṅkara, attended by yakṣas. 71
9. Stone image of a female ascetic, probably depicting the Śvetāmbara
Tīrthaṅkara Malli. 72
10. Pictorial representation of the samavasaraṇa as envisioned by
Digambaras. 72
11. The Gaṇadharavalaya-yantra, a diagrammatic representation of
the Pūrvas and Aṅgas. 72
12. Page from an illustrated manuscript of the *Kalpa-sūtra*. 73
13. Candraprabha, the eighth Tīrthaṅkara. 73
14. Loka-ākāśa, the Jaina universe: a diagrammatic representation. 128
15. The twenty-four symbols associated, respectively, with each of
the twenty-four Tīrthaṅkaras. 210
16. Āyāga-paṭa with fish-tailed svastika motif, Mathura. 211
17. Use of the svastika diagram in pūjā. 211
18. Inner shrine of the Lūṇa-vasahī temple, Abu (13th century). 212
19. The Tribhuvana-tilaka-cūḍāmaṇi temple, Mudbidre (15th century)
213
20. Mastakābhiṣeka (head-anointing ceremony) of Bāhubali. 213
21. Digambara ceremony of setting up a new image of the Jina. 214

22. Five-pillared "yakṣa-residence" adjoining a Digambara Jain temple at Guruvayanakere, South Kanara. 214
23. Mānastambha, the characteristic Jain pillar, Mulki, South Kanara. 215
24. Ācārya Śāntisāgara, surrounded by mendicant and āilaka disciples. 261
25. A Digambara muni in meditation. 261
26. A group of Śvetāmbara monks (1934). 262
27. Initiation of a Śvetāmbara nun. 262
28. Śvetāmbara nuns attending to a sermon. 263
29. Sthānakavāsi monks. 263
30. Terāpanthi nuns. 264
31. A siddha: representation of a liberated soul. Courtesy of the Horniman Museum, London. 265
32. Raychandbhai Mehta with Mahātmā Gandhi. 265
33. Jain pratīka: symbol of the Jain faith, officially adopted during the 2,500th anniversary of Mahāvīra's nirvāṇa (1975). 316

Preface

The great French scholar Louis Renou, in his 1953 lectures on the religions of India, observed that "the Jaina movement presents evidence that is of great interest, both for the historical and comparative study of religion in ancient India and for the history of religion in general. Based on profoundly Indian elements, it is at the same time a highly original creation, containing very ancient material, more ancient than that of Buddhism, and yet highly refined and elaborated."¹ These remarks are certainly well-founded; the Jaina tradition is not only very old, but continues to manifest a great number of those religious and philosophical elements which had already made it unique some 2,500 years ago. For various reasons, however, Western scholarship dealing with this tradition has never attained to a degree of development commensurate with the importance of its subject in the sphere of Indological studies.²

Among those works which have appeared on Jainism, the best-known are now unfortunately out of date. Jacobi's pioneering translations, for example, were first published in his two-volume *Jaina Sūtras* (1884 and 1895); these have recently been reprinted without any revision (1968). Another widely read book, Stevenson's *Heart of Jainism*, made its initial appearance in 1915; in spite of the clearly biased conclusions arrived at by its Christian missionary author, the work has been reprinted unchanged (1970).

1. Renou 1953: 133.

2. See my article "The Jainas and the Western Scholar" (1976a).

Two excellent German studies—Glasenapp's *Der Jainismus* (1925) and Schubring's *Die Lehre der Jainas* (1934, now available in a 1962 English translation entitled *The Doctrine of the Jainas*)—provide much useful information on various aspects of the Jaina religion; but these too have been largely superseded by recent research.

Only a few important studies focusing on Jaina materials have been published in the postwar era. Most notable among these are Tatia's *Studies in Jaina Philosophy* (1951) and Williams' *Jaina Yoga* (1963), both of which make original contributions to the knowledge of Jainism but deal with topics mainly suited to the advanced student. There remains, in other words, a definite need for a work that can introduce Jainism, not only as a religious tradition, but as a literary and sociohistorical one as well, to those with only a general knowledge of India and its major faiths. The present work is an attempt to fill this need.

Although doctrinal explanations have been kept as simple as possible, it has nevertheless been necessary to introduce a number of Sanskrit and Prakrit technical terms. Each of these is italicized and defined at the point of its initial appearance in the text; thereafter, the reader is referred to the Glossary of Sanskrit and Prakrit Words, wherein short definitions and page references for such terms are to be found. I have included a large amount of canonical and commentarial material, in the original languages, among the footnotes. This has been done to partially overcome the difficulty of finding such material in libraries outside of India. It is hoped that the passages thus made available will be of benefit to those specialists who wish to consult them.

It would perhaps have been impossible to write a book such as this without having had recourse to the great number of works on Jainism in Indian languages. In addition to such works, I have depended heavily upon information supplied by a number of esteemed Indian friends, most of whom are both scholars and followers of Jainism. Thanks

are e
ware
most
book
scure
Mess
dra J
Peele
ing s
I v
elsev
duri
Fred
have
Clac
both
Wit
have
Fi
Jaini
the
wor

Uni
197

are especially due to Brahmācāri Shri Manikchandra Chaware of the Mahāvīra Jaina Gurukula, Karanja, who was most gracious in helping me obtain large numbers of Jaina books and in providing learned elucidations of several obscure points of Jaina doctrine. I am also very grateful to Messrs. Kantilal D. Kora, Valchand D. Shah, Manikchandra J. Bhisikar, Prem Jain, Shashidhar M. Karnad, Thomas Peele, and Dr. Saryu Doshi for their assistance in obtaining suitable illustrations.

I wish to thank several of my colleagues, at Berkeley and elsewhere, for their encouragement and helpful criticism during the early stages of this work: notably, Professors Frederick Streng, Lewis Lancaster, and Stephen Beyer. I have also received valuable assistance from Mr. Joseph Clack, a graduate student in the Buddhist Studies program, both in organizing the material and in preparing the text. Without his enthusiastic cooperation the book would not have reached its present state.

Finally, I would like to thank Shashi, Aravind and Asha Jaini for their unflagging patience and support throughout the long period which was devoted to completion of this work.

P. S. J.

University of California, Berkeley
1977

regions associated with the memory of the Candellas. In Appendix II I have given a genealogical table of the family with approximate dates

I may be permitted to express my gratitude to Dr. Hem Chandra Ray, M.A., PH.D., D. LITT. (Lond.), Professor & Head of the Department of History, University of Colombo, Ceylon, for having suggested to me the subject of the present work. The work itself was undertaken and completed under the supervision of my revered teacher, Dr. Benoy Chandra Sen, M.A., P.R.S., PH.D. (Lond), Reader in the Department of Ancient Indian History & Culture, Calcutta University, and submitted as a thesis for the D. Phil. (Arts) degree of our University. My indebtedness to Dr. Sen can hardly be expressed in words. While revising my treatise for publication I received valuable information and suggestions from late Dr. N. P. Chakravarti, M.A., PH.D. (Cantab), and Dr. D. C. Sircar, M.A., PH.D., then Epigraphist to the Government of India, regarding unpublished materials bearing on my subject, which with their kind permission I have utilised and incorporated in my work. I am extremely grateful to Dr. Sircar for the kind interest he always took in my researches, and place on record my sincere homage to the memory of late Dr. Chakravarti. I am also grateful to Dr. J. N. Banerjéa, M.A., PH.D., Carmichael Professor of Ancient Indian History & Culture, and Prof. S. K. Saraswati, M.A., Reader in the same department, for their valuable help and advice, particularly with regard to the section which deals with art and architecture. In this connection I would also admit that the book would not have been published except for the constant inspiration and encouragement that I received from the venerable Pandit Anantakumar Nyaya-Tarkatirtha and my Principal Dr. Gaurinath Sastri, M.A., P.R.S., D.LITT., of the Sanskrit College. My sincere thanks are also due to my esteemed colleague, Dr. C. C. Dasgupta, M.A., P.R.S., PH.D. (Cal et Cantab), who takes a special interest in my research activities. I shall be failing in my duty if I do not acknowledge my sincere thankfulness to my young pupil, Sri Bratindranath Mukherji, M.A., who

Abbreviations

AdS	<i>Anuyogadvāra-sūtra</i> (Suttāgame edition)
AP	<i>Ādipurāṇa</i>
AS	<i>Ācārāṅga-sūtra</i> (Suttāgame edition)
BhS	<i>Bhagavatī-sūtra</i> (Suttāgame edition)
BJP	Bhāratiya Jñānapīṭha Publications (Varanasi)
JJG	Jivaraj Jaina Granthamālā (Sholapur)
JOI	<i>Journal of the Oriental Institute</i> (Baroda)
JP	<i>Jñānapīṭha-pūjāñjali</i>
JSK	Jinendra, <i>Jainendra Siddhānta Kośa</i>
JY	Williams, <i>Jaina Yoga</i>
k	kārikā (Sanskrit verse)
KS	<i>Kalpa-sūtra</i> (Suttāgame edition)
NNP	<i>Nityanaimittika-pāṭhāvalī</i>
NS-ADS	<i>Nandisuttaṃ Aṇuogaddārāṃ ca</i>
RŚr	<i>Ratnakaraṇḍaśrāvaka-cāra</i>
SamS	<i>Samavāya-sūtra</i> (Suttāgame edition)
SD	<i>Sāgaradharmāmṛta</i>
SJP	Tatia, <i>Studies in Jaina Philosophy</i>
SM	<i>Syādvādamāñjarī</i>
SMJVGJV	<i>Shrī Mahāvīra Jaina Vidyālaya Golden Jubilee Volume</i> (Bombay)
SS	<i>Sarvārthasiddhi</i>
SthS	<i>Sthānāṅga-sūtra</i> (Suttāgame edition)
TS	<i>Tattvārtha-sūtra</i>
TSPC	<i>Trīṣaṣṭīśālākāpuruṣacaritra</i>
UP	<i>Uttarapurāṇa</i>
UtS	<i>Uttarādhyayana-sūtra</i> (Suttāgame edition)

I

Mahāvīra and the Foundations of Jainism

It is August, 1955. On the holy mount of Kunthalagiri, in the state of Maharashtra in India, an old man called Śāntisāgara (Ocean of peace) is ritually fasting to death. He is the *ācārya* (spiritual leader) of the Digambara Jaina community; now, after thirty-five years as a mendicant, he is attaining his mortal end in the holy manner prescribed by the great saint Mahāvīra almost 2,500 years earlier. Śāntisāgara has owned nothing, not even a loincloth, since 1920. He has wandered on foot over the length and breadth of India, receiving food offerings but once a day, and then with only his bare hands for a bowl; he has spoken little during daylight hours and not at all after sunset. From August 14 until September 7 he takes only water; then, unable to drink without help, he ceases even that. At last, fully conscious and chanting the Jaina litany, he dies in the early morning of September 18.¹ The holiness and propriety of his life and of the manner of his death are widely known and admired by Jainas throughout India.

Who Are the Jainas?

The designation Jaina, applied to the approximately four million members of one of India's most ancient *śramaṇa* or non-Vedic religious traditions,² literally means "follower

1. For a detailed description of *ācārya* Śāntisāgara's last days, see *Sanmati* (Marathi monthly), Oct. 1972, Bahubali, Kolhapur.

2. Jainas have always claimed for themselves a degree of antiquity greater than that of Buddhism, the other important religion of this type. Their claim

2 / The Jaina Path of Purification

of a *Jina*."³ The Jinas are "spiritual victors," human teachers said to have attained *kevalajñāna* (infinite knowledge) and to have preached the doctrine of *mokṣa* (salvation). Such figures are also called *Tīrthaṅkaras* (Builders of the ford [which leads across the ocean of suffering]).⁴ It is believed that twenty-four of them appear in each half of a time cycle,⁵ have done so from beginningless time, and will continue to do so forever.

Hence a Jina or Tīrthaṅkara is not the founder of a religion; he is rather the propagator of a truth and a path which have been taught in the same manner by all teachers of his everpresent, imperishable tradition. Each Jina reanimates this tradition for the benefit of succeeding genera-

rests mainly upon an appeal to legendary materials; those few sources which do lend themselves to historical verification might allow us to push the date of Jainism to the ninth century B.C., but certainly no further. (For a more detailed discussion of the evidence available here, see nn. 16-19.) In any case, at this point the fundamental attitudes characterizing any group to which the rubric "non-Vedic" has been applied should be clarified. They are three in number: rejection of the scriptural authority of the Vedas, Brāhmaṇas, Upaniṣads, *Mahābhārata*, *Rāmāyaṇa*, and Dharmaśāstras; denial of the efficacy of sacrifice; and refusal to accord any "divine" status to Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Śiva, or the great avatars depicted in the eighteen traditional Purāṇas. While ancient India abounded with various heterodox mendicant sects, only those which displayed this sort of pronounced antagonism towards brahmanical tradition received the appellation *śramaṇa*. For a discussion of the conflict between the śramaṇas and brahmanical society, see P. S. Jaini 1970.

3. In ancient times the epithet Jina was applied by various groups of śramaṇas to their respective teachers. Mendicant followers of what eventually became known as the Jaina tradition were originally known as Nigaṇṭha (Sanskrit Nirgrantha), meaning "the unattached ones." It was only after other śramaṇa sects using the term Jina (e.g., the Ājīvikas) either died out or simply abandoned this term in favor of another (as in the case of the Buddhists) that the derived form *Jaina* (Jina-disciple) came to refer exclusively to the Nigaṇṭhas. This seems to have occurred by around the ninth century, from which time inscriptions have been found containing the word "vardhatām Jainasāsanam" (may the Jaina teaching prosper). See Upadhye 1939. For Buddhist references to Nigaṇṭhas, see Malalasekera 1938: II, 61-65; C. J. Shah 1932: 5-7; P. S. Jaini 1976b; and n. 17 below.

4. Early Buddhist texts employ this term (*titthiya* in Pali) as the general (and derogatory) label for teachers of non-Buddhist schools; Jinas have themselves used it exclusively for the teacher-propagators of their own faith. Here the traditional Jaina definition is followed—in terms of which "Jina" and "Tīrthaṅkara" are equivalent. (Modern usage sometimes applies the former designation to any *kevalin*—any person who has attained *kevalajñāna*—whether he goes on to fulfill the role of exalted teacher or not.)

5. For a description of these cycles, see SS: §418.

tions. The revelation power (as the individual teachings, then, works). The Jina has and the path that those present agree find that the Mahāvīra often regarded a certain

munity centered on *nirvāṇa* (the

Although the Jina is a householder, in a way, the Jina is a householder as a superior being. The Jinas are popularly known as being born with the vajra quality. It is to with stand enough to receive the corollary of the Jaina doctrine and perceive the Jaina philosophy. Jaina philosophy is a science of the virtues of the Jinas. The Jinas, he attains the Jaina miracles. The Jinas awaken the Jinas in the household for initiation into the Jaina-t

tions. The teachings are neither received through divine revelation nor manifested through some inherent magical power (as, for instance, the Vedas are alleged to be). It is the individual human soul itself which, aided by the earlier teachings, comes to know the truth. Strictly speaking, then, worshipping or following the teachings of a *particular* Jina has no special significance; nothing new is taught, and the path remains always the same. Even so, it is natural that those teachers who most immediately precede the present age would be remembered more readily. Thus we find that the last few Jinas—Nemi, Pārśva, and especially Mahāvīra, final teacher of the current time cycle—are often regarded as *the* teachers and taken as the objects of a certain veneration. Recent activities in the Jaina community celebrating the 2,500th anniversary of Mahāvīra's *nirvāṇa* (final death) attest to this phenomenon.

Although the scriptures assert time and again that the Jina is a human being, born of human parents in the usual way, the Jaina laity is usually raised to regard him more as a superhuman personage. Certain fantastic attributes are popularly held to characterize the Jina-to-be. He is born with a special body, its frame having an adamant (vajra) quality; such a body is considered necessary if he is to withstand the terrible rigors of meditation intense enough to bring salvation in the present life. As a psychic corollary to this physical aspect, he possesses supermundane cognition—*avadhijñāna*—by means of which he may perceive objects and events at enormous distances. Similarly, a fixed and rather stylized set of supernatural occurrences is said to mark his career. Although he has practiced the virtues requisite to Jinahood during several previous lives, he is not spontaneously aware of his impending attainment in the present one. Hence the gods, appearing miraculously at the appropriate moment, urge him to awaken to his real vocation and thus to renounce the household life. And whereas ordinary men require a *guru* for initiation into the spiritual life of a mendicant (*muni*), the Jina-to-be needs no teacher or preceptor. He renounces

the world on his own, becoming the first monk of a new order. Upon attainment of Jinahood, he enters the state of kevalajñāna, from which there can be no falling away. At this point all normal bodily activities—eating, sleeping, talking, and so on—come to an end; the Jina sits, absolutely unmoving, in his omniscient state. And yet, as he sits there, a miraculous sound (*divyadhvani*) will be heard emanating from his body. Several *gaṇadharas* (supporters of the order) will then appear. Each will possess the ability to interpret the *divyadhvani* and thus to convey the Jina's teachings to others, answering accurately all questions pertaining to his path and doctrine. Finally, at the end of his life, the Jina sheds his mortal body and ascends to his permanent resting place at the very apex of the universe.

This, then, is the Jina ordinarily envisioned by the Jaina layperson. But in the sacred literature of the tradition we find a picture that conforms much more closely to the usual image of a saintly human teacher. With reference to the career of Mahāvīra, for example, there are numerous details of his daily life prior to the enlightenment: his family, his personality, the travails of the quest. Rainy seasons spent in different cities, encounters with heretical contemporaries, and various discourses to disciples, all following his attainment of omniscience, are likewise described. On the basis of such descriptions it is possible to construct a brief biography of Mahāvīra, most recent of the historical Jinas and of greatest importance to the shape of the present order. This account of the Jaina religion most appropriately begins with the great saint's life; for in considering what may at first glance seem the bare facts of an individual existence, the reader will discover ties with the prehistoric past, a fantastically complex cosmological system, and the seeds of controversies that have split the Jaina community for 2,000 years.

The Digambara and Śvetāmbara Schism

In recounting the story of Mahāvīra we are actually dealing with two stories, or rather with divergent narratives each

purporting
These confl
tinct and vir
that of the D
baras (White
of the Jina m
of one porti
in the face o

Some sou
led by the f
Karnataka
twelve year
passed away
followers di
Patna in Bi
recension o
absence. Ma
leadership o
cently retu
"northerners
use of cloth
able. Unabl
the conteste
Sthūlabhad
baras) not
invalid, but
Eventually t
a history of
in the texts
baras.⁶ Our
and to bring

6. The acco
schism follows
of these events.
the Digambara
bāhu was at th
the schism actu
(A.D. 82), whe
Śivakoṭi in Ra

purporting to accurately describe a single set of events. These conflicting versions reflect the positions of two distinct and virtually irreconcilable traditions within Jainism: that of the Digambaras (Sky-clad) and that of the Śvetāmbaras (White [cotton]-clad). This split among the followers of the Jina may have originated with the southward flight of one portion of the previously unified Jaina community in the face of a disastrous famine, circa 300 B.C.

Some sources suggest that a large group of migrants was led by the famous ācārya Bhadrabāhu into what is now Karnataka State (Mysore), where they resided for some twelve years. It is further held that Bhadrabāhu himself passed away before any return was possible, but that his followers did make their way back to Pāṭaliputra (modern Patna in Bihar State), only to discover that an "official" recension of the sacred texts had been prepared in their absence. Many points of this recension, codified under the leadership of Sthūlabhadra, were unacceptable to the recently returned monks; even more significantly, the "northerners" had taken up certain habits, especially the use of clothing, which the southern group found intolerable. Unable to effect any alterations either with regard to the contested doctrinal issues or to the "lax" conduct of Sthūlabhadra's followers, this group (later called Digambaras) not only declared the entire canon heretical and invalid, but proclaimed themselves the only "true" Jainas. Eventually they wrote their own *purāṇas* (legends), giving a history of Mahāvīra which often contradicted that found in the texts possessed by the other faction, the Śvetāmbaras.⁶ Our story will attempt to reflect both versions, and to bring into focus the points of contention from which

6. The account given here of the Pāṭaliputra council and the subsequent schism follows main elements of the Digambara and Śvetāmbara description of these events. It should be noted that Śvetāmbaras do not completely accept the Digambara version of the migration incident, contending that Bhadrabāhu was at that time not in the south but in Nepal. They also maintain that the schism actually began in the 609th year after the nirvāṇa of Mahāvīra (A.D. 82), when an order of naked (*boḍiya*) monks was established by one Śivakoṭi in Rathavīrapura; members of this order supposedly became the

such important religious and social ramifications have developed.

Vardhamāna Mahāvīra:

Legends Connected with His Birth

The word Mahāvīra, great hero, is an epithet, not the given name of the man to whom it is applied; but the universality of its application has rendered it functionally equivalent to a personal name. Tradition has it that this Jina-to-be was born in 599 B.C. at Kuṇḍagrāma, a large city in the kingdom of Vaiśālī (near modern Patna).⁷ His father was one Siddhārtha, a warrior (*kṣatriya*) chieftain of the Jñātr clan; his mother, Trīśalā, was the sister of the Vaiśālī ruler Ceṭaka.

Before a description of the birth itself, several important events said to have preceded it must be considered. According to Śvetāmbara sources, conception of the child was accompanied by Trīśalā's witnessing of fourteen dreams (see pl. 4): (1) A white elephant; (2) a white bull; (3) a lion; (4) Śrī, the goddess of beauty; (5) garlands of mandāra flowers; (6) the full moon; (7) the rising sun; (8) a large and beautiful flag; (9) a vase of costly metal, filled with water; (10) a lake adorned with lotuses; (11) an

first of the "sky-clad" sect. (See Stevenson 1915: 70-80; C. J. Shah 1932: 67-74; Schubring 1962: §26-27.) Digambaras, for their part, claim that Bhadrabāhu migrated to Mysore together with Candragupta Maurya, first king of the Maurya dynasty, who had become a Jaina mendicant. It is believed that they both ended their lives in the holy manner on the site of modern Shravanabelgola. Numerous inscriptions in that area, dating from the fifth century A.D., lend some credibility to the account of a southward migration, though not necessarily to the fact that either Candragupta or Bhadrabāhu took part therein. (See B. L. Rice 1909: intro. 3-10; Saletore 1938: 4, n. 1.)

Certain Jaina sources (e.g., the Kannada *Vaḍḍārādhane* of Śivakoṭi, circa A.D. 1000) place the great schism not in Pāṭaliputra but in Ujjeni. They also indicate that final separation between the two sects occurred in Valabhi, when those monks wearing a single loincloth (*ardha-phālaka*) were required by King Lokapāla to become fully clothed in white garments; this group thus came to be known as Śvetapaṭa or Śvetāmbaras.

7. For the Svetāmbara accounts of Mahāvīra's life, see Jacobi 1884; *TSPC*: X (tr. Johnson); Boolchand 1948; Schubring 1962: §17-22. For the Digambara version, see *UP*: lxiv-lxxvi; and *Mahāpurāṇu*: lxv-cii. For a complete bibliography, see H. Jain 1974: 41-45.

ocea
the s
fire.
and (Jai
they
of M
renur
final
sculp
temp
Mah
enly
beco
saint

In
episo
durin
that
coupl
the g
the e
wom
withi
as we
rior o
temp
victio

8. T
Śakra's
sentatio
as a go
Also, s

9. J
arahan
KS: §2
kule v
dvisu y
nibbatt

ocean of milk; (12) a celestial abode (a glorious house in the sky); (13) an enormous heap of jewels; (14) a blazing fire. To this list the Digambaras add: (15) a lofty throne; and (16) a pair of fish playing in a lake.

Jainas recall and re-enact these dreams even today when they celebrate the five auspicious moments (*kalyāṇakas*) of Mahāvīra's life: conception (*garbha*), birth (*janma*), renunciation (*vairāgya*), enlightenment (*kevalajñāna*) and final death (*nirvāṇa*). The dreams are also depicted in the sculptures and paintings which adorn the interiors of Jaina temples. They seem to allegorically portray the descent of Mahāvīra's soul into the womb from an exalted and heavenly abode. Such symbols indicate that he was destined to become either a universal monarch (*cakravartin*) or a great saint, a Tīrthaṅkara.

In the Śvetāmbara texts there is also an unusual prebirth episode, unknown to the Digambaras: a change of womb during the early embryonic period. This story maintains that the child was originally conceived by a brahman couple, Rṣabhadatta and Devānandā. But Śakra, king of the gods, found this situation unacceptable and transferred the embryonic Jina-to-be to the womb of the kṣatriya woman Trīśalā; the baby she had been carrying was placed within Devānandā.⁸ It is well known in the Jaina tradition, as well as in the Buddhist, that only a member of the warrior caste can become a "monarch," whether spiritual or temporal.⁹ But this tenet itself reflects the underlying conviction that, contrary to the ordinary caste hierarchy

8. The actual transference was carried out by Harinegamesi, commander of Śakra's celestial armies. The antiquity of this legend is attested to by its representation in certain sculptures found at Mathura; these, depicting Harinegamesi as a goat-headed demigod, probably date from around A.D. 200. See Smith 1901. Also, see below, pl. 5.

9. . . . na eyaṃ bhūyaṃ na eyaṃ bhavvaṃ, na eyaṃ bhavissaṃ, jaṃ naṃ arahantaṃ vā cakkavaṭṭi vā . . . bhikkhāyakulesu vā māhaṇakulesu vā āyāyimsu. KS: §21. Compare: tato kulam olokayanto "Buddhā nāma vessakule vā suddakule vā na nibbattanti, lokasammute pana khattiyakule vā brāhmaṇakule vā dvīsu yeva kulesu nibbattanti, idāni ca khattiyakulam lokasammataṃ, tattha nibbattissāmi" ti kulam passi. *Jātaka*: I, 40.

which places *brahmans* at the apex, it is in fact the *kṣatriyas* who are highest. The rationale here is that a *brahman* must depend for his subsistence upon the gifts of others; he is thus placed in a lower position than the *kṣatriya*, who not only gets what he wants or needs in the world by his own power, but also supports the *brahman* out of his goodness and generosity. The *brahmanical* tradition, of course, rejects any such notion, and it is to the proponents of this tradition that the story seems addressed. Not only does it suggest that the great saint was born as a *kṣatriya*, but also that the opportunity for birth as a *brahman* was available and yet was rejected.

While this tale has been treated here as a pointed metaphor, the *Śvetāmbaras* consider it true; indeed, they sometimes list the time of embryo transfer as a sixth auspicious moment in *Mahāvīra's* life. One scholar has suggested that *Devānandā* was in fact a *brahman* wife of *Siddhārtha*, and that her child by him was foisted upon the *kṣatriya* queen to give it greater status.¹⁰ This explanation seems dubious, however, in light of the strict rules that have always prevailed forbidding the marriage of a *brahman* woman and a *kṣatriya* man. Certain modern Jaina scholars have dealt with the problem by proposing that *Devānandā* was perhaps a wet nurse to the baby.¹¹ This view is given some credence by a famous scene in the *Bhagavatī-sūtra*, in which *Devānandā*, now an old woman, meets the fully-grown *Mahāvīra*. Milk flows from her breast at that moment, while he is heard to say, "This is my mother."¹²

A final important prebirth episode relates how, even in *Trīśalā's* womb, the baby *Mahāvīra* displayed a highly developed sense of *ahiṃsā*, nonharming, the primary moral precept for all Jains. He lay completely still, lest his kicks should cause his mother pain. Only when he

10. Jacobi 1884: intro. xxxi, n. 2.

11. Boolchand 1948: 23.

12. *Devāṇandā māhaṇī mama ammagā, ahaṇ ṇaṇ Devāṇandāe māhaṇī attae. BhS: ix, 33 (§380).*

perceived with his supernatural knowledge that Trīśalā feared him dead did he stir slightly to reassure her. Further, his awareness at this time of the ease with which parental concern is converted into mental anguish moved him to vow that he would not renounce the household life until both his parents had passed away.¹³ This last point is not accepted by the Digambaras, who believe that Mahāvīra became a mendicant while his parents still lived, although he solicited and received their permission to do so. Both versions stand in sharp contrast to the description of Gautama's renunciation in the Buddhist Pāli literature, where great emphasis is placed upon the need to abandon the worldly life no matter how strong familial pressures to the contrary.

The birth was attended by numerous marvels: gods and humans celebrated, music filled the air, a general amnesty was proclaimed throughout the land. The prenamings rites were performed on Mount Meru, where the baby had been taken immediately after birth by the power of Śakra. Following the ritual bath and various auspicious rites, the child was named Vardhamāna, he who brings prosperity, apparently because his parents' wealth had increased markedly during the pregnancy. The name Vardhamāna was of course only the first of many to be given him: Vīra (Hero); Mahāvīra (Great hero);¹⁴ Sanmati (Of excellent wisdom); Kāśyapa, his lineage name; Jñātṛputra,¹⁵ his clan

13. tae ṇaṃ samaṇe bhagavaṃ Mahāvīre gabbhatthe ceva imevārūvaṃ abhiggahaṃ abhigaṇhai: no khalu me kappai ammāpiūhiṃ jīvaṃtehiṃ . . . agārāo anagāriyaṃ pavvaittae. KS: §91.

14. According to the canonical tradition, the name Mahāvīra was given to Vardhamāna by the gods in recognition of the fortitude and steadfastness with which he performed austerities: bhīmabhayaḥbheravaṃ urālaṃ acelayaṃ parisaḥaṃ saḥai tti kaṭṭu devehiṃ se ṇāmaṃ kayaṃ samaṇe bhagavaṃ Mahāvīre. AS: §998. A later tradition suggests that they gave him this name when, as a baby, he caused Mount Meru to tremble by pressing it with his toe: ākampio va jeṇaṃ Merū aṃguṭṭhaeṇa līlāe/ teṇeha Mahāvīro nāmaṃ si kayaṃ surindehiṃ// *Paumacariya*: ii, 26.

15. Prakrit Nāyaputta (or Nātaputta): teṇaṃ kāleṇaṃ . . . samaṇe bhagavaṃ Mahāvīre Nāyaputte Nāyakulaṇivvatte . . . AS: §1002. It is identical with the Pali Nātaputta. See Malalasekera 1938: II, 61-65.

name; and śramaṇa *bhagavān* [venerable] Mahāvīra (the Venerable Ascetic Mahāvīra).

Mahāvīra's Early Life

It should be noted that both Siddhārtha and Triśalā are described in the *Ācārāṅga-sūtra* as followers of Pārśva,¹⁶ the penultimate Jina of the time cycle that Mahāvīra was to complete. The historicity of this Pārśva, who is said to have flourished in Banaras circa 850 B.C., seems definite. Buddhist texts refer to the existence of large numbers of Nigaṇṭhas (Unattached ones) who followed the *cātuyāmasaṃvara*,¹⁷ the fourfold restraint that Jacobi and others have convincingly identified with the teachings of Pārśva.¹⁸ Such references, moreover, suggest a Jaina community older than that of the Buddhists, hence predating Mahāvīra as well. This conclusion is based upon the fact that sectarian writings of the period were not ordinarily willing to grant "established" status to rival groups only then developing (witness the failure of Jaina texts to provide any mention whatsoever of the Buddha or his followers). The Nigaṇṭhas of the Pali literature, therefore, must have been members of a very ancient religious order.¹⁹

Little information is available pertaining to Mahāvīra's childhood. There is one story of how he subdued a terrify-

16. samaṇassa bhagavao Mahāvīrassa ammaṇḍariyaro Pāsāvaccijjā samaṇovāsagā yāvi hotthā. AS: §1002. For an account of the legends surrounding Pārśva, see Jacobi 1884: 271-275; Bloomfield 1919; B. D. Jain 1925; Zimmer 1951: 181-204.

17. idha, mahārāja, Nigaṇṭho Nātaputto cātuyāmasaṃvarasaṃvuto hoti. *Dīghanikāya*: I, 57 (Sāmaññaphala-sutta).

18. See Jacobi 1880; also n. 32 below.

19. Jacobi seems to have been the first scholar to recognize this fact: "The Nirgranthas are frequently mentioned by the Buddhists, even in the oldest part of the *Piṭakas*. But I have not yet met with a distinct mention of the Buddhas in any of the old Jaina *Sūtras*, though they contain lengthy legends about Jamālī, Gosāla and other heterodox teachers. As this is just the reverse position to that which both sects mutually occupy in all aftertimes, and as it is inconsistent with our assumption of a contemporaneous origin of both creeds, we are driven to the conclusion that the Nirgranthas were not a newly founded sect of Buddha's time. This seems to have been the opinion of the *Piṭakas* too; for we find no indication of the contrary in them." Jacobi 1880: 161.

ing s
beyo
that
spen
of a
W
age,
along
the c
baras
hous
one
abov
died.
Maha
thoug
attain
his di
Bo
years
noun
predis
been
ageme
partic
desigr
last bi
and a
Their

Vict
vict
kṣat

20. s
dhūyā K
Piyada
21. l
garbhā

ing snake by means of his great courage and peaceful aura; beyond this, we know virtually nothing. It can be assumed that as a member of a royal household the child must have spent his time in mastering the arts suitable to the vocation of a prince: writing, mathematics, archery, and the like.

With regard to Mahāvīra's family life after coming of age, both traditions provide commentaries; these diverge along lines generally corresponding to those laid down in the controversy over the saint's vows *in utero*. Śvetāmbaras contend that the young man fulfilled all duties of the householder: that he married the princess Yaśodā, fathered one daughter called Priyadarśanā,²⁰ and, as mentioned above, continued in this role until both his parents had died. The Digambaras, on the other hand, believe that Mahāvīra remained a bachelor throughout his life (although they do not hold that this is a prerequisite to the attainment of Jinahood). In general, their version stresses his disinclination for worldly affairs from an early age.

Both traditions agree that when Mahāvīra was thirty years of age certain gods appeared and urged him to renounce the world; only thus could he fully develop the predispositions towards becoming a Tīrthaṅkara that had been fostered during so many previous lives. This encouragement of the Jina-to-be is customarily performed by a particular type of god called Laukāntika, world-ender; the designation refers to the fact that such beings are in their last birth but one (that is, that they will take human form and achieve *mokṣa*, release, in the very next lifetime).²¹ Their words to Mahāvīra:

Victory, victory to thee, gladdener of the world! Victory, victory to thee, fortunate one! Luck to thee, bull of the best kṣatriyas! Awake, reverend lord of the world! Establish the

20. samaṇassa bhagavaṃ Mahāvīrassa bhajjā Jasoyā gottenaṃ Koḍiṇṇā, dhūyā Kāsāvagottenaṃ, tise naṃ do nāmadhejjā evaṃ āhijjanti: Aṇojjā i vā Piyadaṃsaṇā i vā. AS: §1001.

21. lokānte bhavāḥ laukāntikāḥ. te sarve parītasamsārāḥ, tataścyutā ekaṃ garbhāvāsaṃ prāpya parinirvāsyanti. SS: §489.

12 / The Jaina Path of Purification

dharma-tīrtha (teaching of the holy path) for the sake of every living being in the entire universe; it will bring supreme benefit to all!²²

The Great Renunciation

Mahāvīra's renunciation is made much of in the texts; indeed, such an act engenders widespread glorification of the renunciant in Jaina communities even today. One reads that he was adorned with garlands by the gods, then carried on a palanquin in magnificent procession through the city and beyond it to a large park. There, accompanied by a great retinue, he descended from his seat and, beneath a holy *aśoka* tree, renounced all possessions. According to the Digambaras he removed his clothing and garland-ornaments and then, following the ancient tradition, pulled out his hair by hand; this final act indicates both an end of concern for the body and willingness to face pain for the sake of the goal. Having thus become "sky-clad" (totally nude), he abandoned the household life.²³

The Śvetāmbara version of this event states that after arriving at the park Mahāvīra isolated himself and sat, fasting, for two-and-a-half days. Then still completely alone, he put on a *deva-dūṣya* (divine cloth) given to him by Śakra, tore out his hair as above, and set forth upon the mendicant's path.²⁴ It is further said that he continued to wear the *deva-dūṣya* for thirteen months thereafter;²⁵ at that point, the garment was accidentally caught on a

22. jaya jaya naṃdā! jaya jaya bhaddā! bhaddaṃ te jaya jaya khattiya-varavasahā! bujjhāhi bhagavaṃ loganāhā! pavattehi dhammatitthaṃ . . . KS: §110.

23. vastrābharaṇamālyāni svayaṃ śakraḥ samādade/ muktāny etāni pūtāni matvā mātmyam īdṛśam// UP: xlvii, 305.

24. . . . āharaṇamallāṃkāraṃ omuittā sayameva paṃcamuṭṭhiyaṃ loyaṃ karei . . . chaṭṭheṇaṃ bhatteṇaṃ apāṇaṇaṃ . . . egaṃ devadūsaṃ ādāya ege abīe muṇḍe bhavittā āgārō aṇagāriyaṃ pavvaie. KS: §114. The *deva-dūṣya* would appear to be a finely woven piece of cloth thrown over the shoulders: komalaṃ dhavalaṃ sūkṣmaṃ syūtaṃ candrakarair iva/ devadūṣyaṃ devarājaḥ skandhadeśe nyadhād vibhoḥ// TSPC: I, iii, 64.

25. saṃvaccharaṃ sāhiyaṃ māsaṃ jaṃ ṇa rikkāsi vatthagāṃ bhagavaṃ/ acelao tato cāi taṃ vosirijja vattham aṇagāre// AS: §465.

thorn
pick
when
brah
TH
the s
two t
The
were
tions
the J
of nu
clad
differ
Digam
aside
he we
given
that t
never
passa
Mahā
erthel
his m
less th
tentio
it con
all pos
of a J
still ha
one a
whats
thus n

26. T
as Hema
27. r
lae dhan

thorn bush and pulled off. Either Mahāvīra neglected to pick it up or he remained unaware of the loss until later, when the cloth had already been carried off by a brahman.²⁶

The latter narrative brings to attention what is doubtless the single most important point of contention between the two traditions: *is a man who wears clothing truly a monk?* The Digambaras believe that Mahāvīra and the other Jinas were sky-clad at all times after their respective renunciations, and that anyone who claims to be a true follower of the Jina's path, a Jaina mendicant, must adopt the practice of nudity. The fact that Mahāvīra eventually became sky-clad even in the Śvetāmbara story does not alter the basic difference of *intent* in the two recensions. Whereas the Digambaras clearly show the renunciant purposely casting aside all garments, the Śvetāmbaras not only suggest that he wore clothes for a time but even that he may not have given them up voluntarily. Of course, they do not assert that the great saint was *attached* to clothing; after all, he never bothered to obtain a second garment. Indeed, one passage in the Śvetāmbara canon goes so far as to show Mahāvīra saying "I uphold the practice of nudity."²⁷ Nevertheless, the Śvetāmbaras maintain that he did not require his mendicant disciples to go naked. All of this is nothing less than anathema to the Digambaras, for whom the retention of clothing indicates the retention of shame; hence it constitutes a falling away from the strict renunciation of all possessions, internal as well as external, that is required of a Jaina monk. Of course a man who goes naked may still harbor a sense of shame; nudity alone does not make one a monk. But for the Digambara the use of any clothing whatsoever is an *absolute* indicator of residual shame and thus negates all pretensions to monkhood.

26. This narrative is found only in the commentaries and such later works as Hemacandra's *TSPC*. See Johnson 1962: 40ff.

27. *mae samanāṇaṃ ṇiggaṃthāṇaṃ paṃcamahavvaie sapaḍikkamaṇe ace-lae dhamme paṇṇatte. SthS: §916.*

The controversy is deepened by Śvetāmbara doctrine concerning the practices of Jinas other than Mahāvīra. Not only do they maintain that Ṛṣabha, first Tīrthaṅkara of the present cycle, went naked in the same rather haphazard or optional manner that Mahāvīra did (see pl. 1), but they hold further that the twenty-two remaining Jinas never abandoned the clad state. (It is even suggested that some of them wore decorative clothes of variegated colors.)²⁸ In the context of such a belief, Mahāvīra's practice of nudity can be depicted as a departure from the tradition of his predecessor, Pārśva. This theory is based mainly upon the Keśi-Gautama-saṃvāda,²⁹ a dialogue in the Śvetāmbara text *Uttarādhyaṇa-sūtra*. Here Keśi, a fully-clad mendicant-disciple of Pārśva, is discussing doctrinal issues with the naked monk Indrabhūti Gautama, chief disciple of Mahāvīra. The two consider certain differences in doctrine between their respective sects, especially those pertaining to the use of clothing. They eventually arrive at a compromise, concluding that external signs are of little consequence and function merely to help identify various groups engaging in particular practices.³⁰ The underlying implication of the dialogue is, of course, that since Pārśva is more ancient than Mahāvīra his teachings are in some sense superior; thus it is better to remain clad, or at most to have nudity as an optional practice. The Digambaras reject the

28. Devendra (KS: app. I, nn. 7-10) quotes the following in support of these beliefs: "acelatvaṃ" śrī Ādinātha-Mahāvīra-sādhūnāṃ vastraṃ māna-pramāṇasahitaṃ jīṇaprāyaṃ dhavalam ca kalpate. śrī Ajitādiviṃśatitīrthaṅkarasādhūnāṃ tu pañcavarṇam. (*Kalpa-sūtrakalpalatā*); ācelukko dhammo purimassa ya pacchimassa ya jīṇassa/ majjhimagāṇa jīṇāṇaṃ hoi sacelo acelo ya// (*Kalpasamarthana*).

29. Jacobi 1895: 119-129.

30. acelago ya jo dhammo, jo dhammo saṃtaruttaro/ desiyo Vaddhamāneṇa Pāseṇa ya mahājasā// ekakajjapavannāṇaṃ visese kiṃ nu kāraṇaṃ/ liṃge duvihe mehāvī kahaṃ vippaccāo na te// Kesim evaṃ buvāṇaṃ tu Goyamo iṇamabbavī/ vinnāneṇa samāgama dhammasāhaṇamicchiyaṃ// paccayatthaṃ ca logassa nāṇāvihavigappaṇaṃ/ jattatthaṃ gahaṇatthaṃ ca loge liṃgapaoyaṇaṃ// aha bhava painnā u, makkhasabbhūyasāhaṇā/ nāṇaṃ ca dāsaṇaṃ ceva carittaṃ ceva nicchae// sāhu Goyamaṃ pannā te, chinno me saṃvāso imo// *UtS*: xxiii, 29-34.

aut
mis
I
the
sect
reg
"co
flou
ind
wer
(eka
the
prop
to S
the
seen
com
cies

The
A se
Gau
the
prea
vrat
affili
of Pā
Budd

31.
Upadh
32.
Pāseṇa
duvihe
iṇaṃ a
purimā
suvisoj
UtS: xx
For fur
1962: §

authenticity of this dialogue, as well as the sort of compromise it explicitly suggests.

Indeed, the history of Jainism is rather remarkable for the almost total lack of doctrinal accommodation between sects that has taken place over the centuries, especially regarding the issue of nudity. There was only one apparent "compromise" movement, now long extinct, that probably flourished in South India circa A.D. 500. Literary evidence indicates that monks of this sect, known as Yāpanīyas, went naked in the forest but wore a single piece of clothing (*eka-phālaka*) when in populated areas.³¹ They recognized the authenticity of the Śvetāmbara scriptures, and they propounded two doctrines traditionally acceptable only to Śvetāmbaras: that women can attain salvation and that the omniscient being partakes of food. The Yāpanīyas seem to have eventually merged into the larger Digambara community by which they were surrounded; their tendencies toward a more ecumenical Jainism died with them.

The Tradition of Pārśva: Cāturyāma-dharma

A second issue raised by the discussion between Keśi and Gautama has to do with the apparent difference between the "law of the four restraints" (*cāturyāma-dharma*) preached by Pārśva and the five great vows (*pañca mahāvratā*) taken by mendicant followers of Mahāvīra.³² The affiliation of Mahāvīra's own parents with the tradition of Pārśva has already been noted, as has the existence of Buddhist materials which specifically identify cāturyāma

31. For various traditions concerning the origin of the Yāpanīyas, see Upadhye 1933; Premi 1956: 56-73; and n. 92 below.

32. *cāujjāmo ya jo dhammo, jo imo paṃcasikkhio/ desio Vaddhamāṇena, Pāseṇa ya mahāmuṇī// egakajjapavannāṇaṃ, visese kiṃ nu kāraṇaṃ/ dhamme duvihe mehāvī, kahaṃ vippaccāo na te// tao Kesim buvaṃtaṃ tu, Goyama iṇaṃ abbavī/ pannā samikkhae dhammaṃ, tattaṃ tattaviñicchayaṃ// . . . purimāṇaṃ duvisojjho u, carimāṇaṃ duraṇupālao/ kappo majjhimagāṇaṃ tu, suvisojjho supālao// sāhu Goyama pannā te, chinno me saṃsāo imo/ . . .* *UtS*: xxiii, 23-27. For a translation of this section, see Jacobi 1895: 119-129. For further details on the four vows and five vows, see Jacobi 1880; Schubring 1962: §16.

with this tradition. Whereas the Digambaras may reject the authenticity of the Keśi-Gautama dialogue, particularly with regard to its position on nudity, the Buddhist reference to *cāturyāma* forces them to confront the "discrepancy" between the teachings of Pārśva and Mahāvīra which this dialogue seems to express. The problem is rendered even more crucial by the Śvetāmbaras' use of this discrepancy to support their view that not all Jinas propound identical doctrines; once such variation is admitted, it is only a small step to suggesting that Pārśva need not have required nudity even if Mahāvīra did.³³

Although Buddhists employ the term *cāturyāma-saṃvara* (Pali: *cātuyāma-saṃvara*) to describe the teachings of Pārśva, they fail to make clear exactly what the term entails.³⁴ The Śvetāmbara canon gives the first comprehensive definition. Here, the *cāturyāma* is said to involve restraint from four sorts of activities: injury, nontruthfulness, taking what is not given, and possession.³⁵ This list agrees with that of Mahāvīra except that it omits the fourth of his five vows, which specifically prohibits sexual activity.³⁶ But even the Śvetāmbaras have not been willing to suggest that Pārśva allowed his monks to engage in such activity; their later eleventh-century commentators Abhayadeva and Śāntyācārya interpreted the vow of nonpos-

33. . . . purimapacchimavajjā majjhimagā bāvīsaṃ arahantā bhagavaṃtā cāujjāmaṃ dhammaṃ pannaviṃti. *SthS*: §329.

34. idha, mahārāja, Nigaṇṭho cātuyāmasaṃvarasaṃvuto hoti. kathaṃ ca . . . hoti? idha, mahārāja, Nigaṇṭho sabbavāriyārīto ca hoti, sabbavāriyutto ca hoti, sabbavāridhuto ca, sabbavāriphuṭo ca. *Dīghanikāya*: I, 57. The Pali commentaries suggest that the word *vāri* in this passage refers to water and thus explain the *cātuyāma-saṃvara* as restraint from the use of water (by a Nigaṇṭha mendicant). See Malalasekera 1938: II, 61. The Buddha is said to have also taught a kind of *cātuyāma-saṃvara*, in this case involving the four precepts against injury, stealing, lying, and unchastity. See *Dīghanikāya*: III, 48.

35. . . . cāujjāmaṃ dhammaṃ . . . taṃ jahā: savvāo pāṇāivāyāo veramaṇaṃ, evaṃ musāvāyāo, adinnādāṇāo, savvāo bahiddhādāṇāo veramaṇaṃ. *SthS*: §329.

36. paṃca mahavvayā pannattā taṃ jahā: savvāo pāṇāivāyāo veramaṇaṃ, savvāo musāvāyāo veramaṇaṃ, savvāo adinnādāṇāo veramaṇaṃ, savvāo mehuṇāo veramaṇaṃ, savvāo pariggahāo veramaṇaṃ. *SthS*: §48.

session a
the sligh
rules doe
Jina to th

Weste
cepted th
cāturyān
action.³⁸
shows th
culties.³⁹
of the tra
vows as
the Śvetā
great re
avoiding
cāturyām
vīra is in
sāmāyika
shown to

37. "cātu
. . . ." Quote
commentary

38. For
the ethical
modification
monks to d
monks were
yāma and th
followers o
this interest
1930, and K

39. Mo

40. tao
karettā sid
kammaṃ t
198) seems
failing to u
its wider im

41. Mo
virado savv
ṇaṃ uttama
dhammaṃ/
(§785).

session as including celibacy.³⁷ Even so, they imply that the slight difference in emphasis between the two sets of rules does leave open the possibility of variation from one Jina to the next.

Western scholars, following Jacobi, have generally accepted the Śvetāmbara interpretation and understood the cāturyāma as above, prohibiting four specific kinds of action.³⁸ The recent research of P. K. Modi, however, shows that this interpretation is subject to serious difficulties.³⁹ First, we should expect Mahāvīra, as a follower of the tradition of Pārśva, to have initially taken the same vows as his predecessor. Yet even the *Ācārāṅga-sūtra* of the Śvetāmbaras has him pledging only to follow a single great restraint called *sāmāyika-cāritra*, which entails avoiding all evil actions whatsoever.⁴⁰ Moreover, the term cāturyāma never appears in Digambara literature; Mahāvīra is invariably said therein to have undertaken the *sāmāyika-saṃyama*, which in the *Bhagavatī-sūtra* is shown to be identical to the *sāmāyika-cāritra*.⁴¹ In light of

37. "cāturyāma . . . sa eva maithunaviramaṇātmakaḥ pañcavratasahitaḥ . . ." Quoted from Modi in *Pāsaṇāhacariu*: intro. 47 (from Śāntiācārya's commentary on the *UṭS*.).

38. For example, Renou (1953: 115): "Mahāvīra seems to have developed the ethical aspect of Jainism by introducing a fifth axiom which brought a modification in the import of the fourth . . . Finally, it was he who required his monks to dispense with clothing, setting an example himself, whereas Pārśva's monks were clothed." Jacobi's rather pro-Śvetāmbara views on both the cāturyāma and the issue of nudity generated a good deal of heated discussion between followers of the two Jaina sects. The Śvetāmbara and Digambara positions in this interesting dispute have been set forth, respectively, by P. C. Nahar 1929, 1930, and K. P. Jain 1930.

39. Modi's ed. (1965) of the *Pāsaṇāhacariu*: intro. 46-53.

40. *tao ṇaṃ samaṇe bhagavaṃ Mahāvīre . . . paṃcamuṭṭhiyaṃ lōyaṃ karettā siddhāṇaṃ namokkāraṃ karei, karettā savvaṃ me akaraṇijjaṃ pāvakkammaṃ ti kaṭṭu sāmāyaṃ carittaṃ paḍivajjai. AS: §1013.* Jacobi (1884: 198) seems to have gone wrong here by translating *sāmāyika* simply as "holy"; failing to understand the technical meaning of the term, he was unable to see its wider implications. See P. S. Jaini 1976a.

41. Modi quotes the following passages from the Digambara text *Mūlācāra*: *virado savvasāvajjaṃ tigutto pihitiṃdiyo/ jīvo sāmāyaṃ ṇāma saṃjamaṭṭhāṇaṃ uttamaṃ// vii, 23.* Compare: *sāmāyammi u kae cāujjāmaṃ aṇuttaraṃ dhammaṃ/ tivahēṇa phāsayaṃto sāmāyasaṃjao sa khalu// BhS: xxv, 7, 1 (§785).*

these facts, Modi has suggested that *cāturyāma* did not imply four *vows* at all, but rather the four *modalities* (mind, body, speech, and the senses) through which evil could be expressed.⁴² Thus, he concludes, both Pārśva and Mahāvīra practiced and taught the same, single, all-encompassing *sāmāyika* restraint, while the five-vows that Mahāvīra set forth are no more than a specification of the main areas of conduct to which this restraint applied. Whether or not any variation of doctrine between Jinas is possible remains an open question; in any case, the “*cāturyāma* evidence” so often used in support of such a possibility can no longer be considered particularly significant.

Addressing the issue of nudity more directly, the Śvetāmbaras have cited passages from the Buddhist Pali texts that talk of certain “*eka-śāṭaka*” (one-cloth) Nigaṇṭhas;⁴³ this is taken as testimony to the clothed state of at least some Jaina monks in Mahāvīra’s time. The Digambaras interpret this admittedly unbiased evidence as referring simply to certain laymen who progressively renounce their possessions while continuing in the household life.⁴⁴ This sort of renunciation involves eleven stages (*pratimā*); in the final stage, called *ailaka* (perhaps Prakrit for *acelaka*, unclothed), the aspirant retains only one piece of clothing.⁴⁵ Such “progressive renunciants” are found in the Digambara community even today. They take no “great” vows (*mahāvratā*) and thus technically remain householders until such time as these vows, which go hand in hand with complete nudity, are taken. Digambaras further cite a passage from the Śvetāmbaras’ own *Ācārāṅga-sūtra* in support of their position. This passage states that weak men, who cannot tolerate going sky-clad but wish to practice fasting and other virtuous activities, should do so

42. Compare: *cauvvihe saṃjame paṇṇatte taṃ jahā: maṇasaṃjame, vaisaṃjame, kāyasaṃjame, uvāgaraṇasaṃjame. SthS: §385.*

43. *Anguttaranikāya*: III, 384.

44. K. P. Jain quotes *SD*: vii, 38, 48.

45. See below, ch. VI n. 54.

while cont
to identify
with these
gaged in b
Even some
support su
But to sug
monks, as
able to the

Modern
tion that f
of Mahāvī
instituted
and being
sāla, even
apparent
and Mahāv
this is too
tion is som
were far fr
given to nu
the first en
a clothed l

46. je bhil
phāsaṃ . . . s
ṇaṃ ca’haṃ r
rittae. AS: §43

47. K. P. J

48. Comp
ṣūṇām. hrīmā
sahane vā akṣ
63) is of the op

49. For ex
the world app
increased; orig
ditional chasti
at a later time
tion is ascribe
penultimate ti
monks itself.”

50. Ghatg
attached to th
his meeting wi

while continuing to wear clothing.⁴⁶ The Digambaras wish to identify the "clothed Nigaṇṭhas" of the Buddhist sources with these "weak" practitioners—whom they regard as engaged in beneficial but not mokṣa-producing activities.⁴⁷ Even some of their own books, such as *Mūlācāra*, seem to support such modified practices in certain unusual cases.⁴⁸ But to suggest that these practices are legitimate for *all* monks, as well as for a Tīrthaṅkara, is of course unacceptable to them.

Modern scholars tend to favor the Śvetāmbara contention that followers of Pārśva did wear clothes while those of Mahāvīra did not.⁴⁹ Some have suggested that Mahāvīra instituted the practices of nudity as a result of meeting with and being influenced by the naked ascetic Makkhali Gosāla, eventually leader of the Ājīvika school. There is an apparent correspondence in time between their meeting and Mahāvīra's "loss" of his garment. It has been held that this is too great a coincidence to ignore;⁵⁰ but this contention is somewhat weakened by the fact that the Ājīvikas were far from being the only mendicant sect of that period given to nudity. Furthermore, the canonical description of the first encounter between the two men shows Gosāla as a clothed householder who threw away his garments and

46. je bhikkhū acele parivusie tassa ṇaṃ evaṃ bhavai: cāemi ahaṃ taṇa-phāsaṃ . . . siyaphāsaṃ . . . teuphāsaṃ . . . ahiyāsettae . . . hiripaḍicchāda-ṇaṃ ca'haṃ no saṃcāemi ahiyāsettae. evaṃ se kappai kaḍibamḍhaṇaṃ dhārittae. AS: §433.

47. K. P. Jain 1928: 61ff.

48. Compare: āryikāṇāṃ āgame anujñātaṃ vastraṃ, kāraṇāpekṣayā bhikṣūṇāṃ. hrīmān ayogyaśarīrāvayavo duścarmābhilambamānabījo vā pariśahasahane vā akṣamaḥ sa grhṇāti. *Mūlācāra* [*Vijayodayā-ṭīkā*] 427. Premi (1956: 63) is of the opinion that the *Mūlācāra* was originally a text of the Yāpanīya sect.

49. For example, see Weber (1958: 196): "The severity of the flight from the world appears to have varied. According to the tradition, it must have increased; originally it entailed neither absolute lack of possessions nor unconditional chastity. It is controversial which of the two forms was introduced at a later time as an absolute commandment. As this supplementary introduction is ascribed to Mahāvīra, in contrast to the milder commandments of the penultimate tīrthaṅkara, it is identical with the formation of the order of monks itself."

50. Ghatge, quoted by Deo (1956: 75): "... some significance must be attached to the coincidence of Mahāvīra giving up his garment in the year of his meeting with Gosāla."

begged Mahāvīra to take him as a disciple.⁵¹ The whole problem of this and other contacts between these teachers is of great interest to the study of both doctrine and practice in Jainism; we shall have reason to return to it shortly.

In the final analysis, Digambaras have shown very little interest in such academic discussions. Śvetāmbaras have traditionally recognized two sorts of monks, the *jinakalpin* (who follows Mahāvīra's example and lives alone, naked, in the forest) and the *sthavirakalpin* (who lives clothed and in an ecclesiastical community), and have considered both practices equally valid paths to salvation; but all such distinctions are heretical and even blasphemous to the Digambaras.⁵² For them, nudity remains *the* necessary condition for mokṣa; hence they denounce Śvetāmbara mendicants as false Jainas (*Jainābhāṣa*).

On this level, the level of faith and practice, matters of textual criticism and scholarly research have had negligible impact. Thus the two sects have remained generally indifferent to one another through the ages; there have been no joint councils and few cordial meetings of monks. Encounters between the two laities have been purely for the purpose of disputation; indeed, it is only recently that leaders of the long-estranged communities have begun to suggest that, in light of the Jainas' extreme minority position in India, certain joint activities might be valuable. Thus far these have been restricted to shared celebration of the auspicious moments in Mahāvīra's career. It remains to be seen whether such efforts will be fruitful in healing a rift of two millennia. When such factors are considered as the continuing Digambara claim that the Śvetāmbara scriptures are totally inauthentic, or the still prevalent Śvetām-

51. *sāḍiyāo ya pāḍiyāo ya kuṇḍiyāo ya pahāṇāo ya cittaphalagaṃ ya māhaṇe āyāmettā . . . BhS: xv, §540. See Basham 1951: 40.*

52. The Digambaras recognize these two categories of monks but maintain that both must adhere to the vow of nudity: "jinā iva viharantīti jīnakalpikā eka evety atīśayo jīnakalpikānām. itaro līṅgādir ācārah prāyeṇa vyāvāṇitarūpa eva." Quoted in *JSK: II, 329*. For the Śvetāmbara view, see Caillat 1968: 94-95, n. 22-23.

bara p
Jina-in
"cloth
to wor
reconc

Mahā
To ret
traditi
twelve
penanc
cations
as wel
epithet
ances),
probab
made a
today
elderly,
major e
ing, mo
religiou
Hindu
undergo
daily ex

The
served
wander
life ever
garding
certain
same pe
which w
Ājīvika

53. ter
mahatiyā
yena bhag

bara practice of marking the lips, eyes, and torsos of naked Jina-images (even those of Mahāvīra) in their temples, thus "clothing" them and making it impossible for Digambaras to worship there, it must be admitted that a full-fledged reconciliation may not be forthcoming in the near future.

Mahāvīra's Encounters with Makkhali Gosāla

To return to Mahāvīra's postrenunciation career, both traditions have him wandering from place to place for twelve years, engaging with grim determination in severe penances. The most important of these voluntary mortifications involved complete fasting—abstaining from water as well as food, sometimes for as long as a week. The epithet *dīgha-tapassī* (he who engages in extended penances), which is applied to Nigaṇṭhas in the Buddhist texts, probably alludes to this sort of fasting.⁵³ The practice has made an indelible impression upon the Jaina psyche; even today many of the Jina's followers, from children to the elderly, occasionally undertake long waterless fasts as a major expression of the holy life. This emphasis upon fasting, more than any other single factor, distinguishes the religious practice of the Jaina layperson from that of the Hindu communities which surround him. Jaina monks undergo such fasts as a common and regular aspect of their daily existence.

The Digambaras have a tradition that Mahāvīra observed a vow of silence during these twelve years as a wanderer. Since silence is not a prerequisite to the saintly life even for Digambaras, we may well be justified in regarding this notion as a sectarian device aimed at denying certain episodes found in the Śvetāmbara version of the same period. Of greatest import here are several stories, to which we have alluded earlier, involving Mahāvīra and the Ājīvika Makkhali Gosāla. Gosāla was by profession a

53. tena kho pana samayena Nigaṇṭho Nātaputto Nālandāyaṃ paṭivasati mahatiyā Nigaṇṭhapaṇḍitaṃ saddhiṃ. atha kho Dīghatapassī Nigaṇṭho . . . yena bhagavā ten' upasaṅkami . . . *Majjhimanikāya*: I, 371 (Upāli-sutta).

bard, spinning tales and showing pictures for the entertainment of local audiences. He was the follower of an old, established Ājīvika sect; eventually he came to be regarded as the leader of this sect and as the chief spokesman of the "fatalist" doctrines to which it adhered.

According to the *Vyākhyāprajñapti* (also known as the *Bhagavatī-sūtra*),⁵⁴ a prominent Śvetāmbara scripture, Gosāla heard tales of Mahāvīra's miraculous powers, particularly his uncanny accuracy in prognostication; wishing to come into contact with such powers himself, the Ājīvika came to the future Jina and asked to become a disciple. It is further related that the two spent six years together. On one occasion Mahāvīra displayed his yogic prowess to his companion, when they came across a heretical brahman ascetic named Vesiyāyana, who was doing penance by fasting and sitting with hands upraised to the sun for several days. He was covered with lice but was too compassionate to hurt them. Gosāla taunted him, saying, "Are you a muni (sage), or a host for lice?" When this insult was uttered a second time Vesiyāyana became enraged; stepping back eight paces, he released in Gosāla's direction the magical heat which he had accumulated through long yogic practice. But Mahāvīra quickly neutralized the effects of this deadly heat with a cooling emanation of his own. The brahman recognized that he was no match for Mahāvīra.

Gosāla begged to be given the secret of such power. Granting his request, Mahāvīra described the six-month penance required for accomplishment of the goal. Gosāla then left his teacher and pursued his own career; eventually, through the practices that Mahāvīra had taught him, he attained great yogic powers and proclaimed himself a Jina. It is said that he made his headquarters in Śrāvastī at the workshop of the potter woman Hālāhalā, with whom he lived under compromising circumstances. There he spent his time codifying the Ājīvika scriptures

54. *BhS*: xv. For a complete account, see Basham 1951: 39-79.

and
comp
M
in th
of th
enlig
publ
and
was
agai
yone
soug
pow
tried
vīra
perv
will
ity p
to c

55
anto
ceva l
Ev
They
round
this b
story
ordina
ishing
have
remain
of cou
n. 8) a
A list
It
under
there
a Tirt
cusse
but th
affect
56
even
to pe

and mounting polemics against all rivals, even his former companion and instructor.

Makkhali Gosāla has one other important part to play in the life of Mahāvīra. To observe this we must go ahead of the story for a moment to a time long after Mahāvīra's enlightenment, when the Jina felt it necessary to make public the history of his relation with the Ājīvika leader and to show the latter's claim to Jinahood for the sham it was. Gosāla reacted to this "slander" with verbal threats against Mahāvīra's life. When this produced no effect beyond the refusal of Jainas to associate with Ājīvikas, he sought out and reviled Mahāvīra, even using his magic powers to incinerate two of the Jina's disciples when they tried to oppose him. Finally he turned his power on Mahāvīra himself, accompanying it with a curse: "You are now pervaded by my magic forces, and within six months you will die of a fever."⁵⁵ But Mahāvīra's superiority and purity protected him; although he did become ill, he was able to cure himself.⁵⁶ As for Gosāla, it is said that the evil

55. *tumaṃ ṇaṃ āuso Kāsavā, mamaṃ taveṇaṃ teeṇaṃ annāiṭṭhe samāṇe anto chaṇhaṃ māsaṇaṃ pittaṃ jaraparigayasaṃ dāhāvakkamṭṭhe chaumatthe ceva kālaṃ karessasi. BhS: xv, §552.*

Even Śvetāmbaras have difficulty in dealing with this particular episode. They have traditionally shared with Digambaras a belief that the area surrounding a Tīrthaṅkara is pervaded by peace and good feeling; to accommodate this belief with an acceptance of the kind of malice and death manifested in the story is no easy task. Hence they classify the whole occurrence as an extraordinary thing (*āścarya*), an unheard of calamity (*upasarga*), an event so astonishing that it could happen only once in billions of years. In fact the Śvetāmbaras have noted altogether ten such events described in their scriptures. Of the remaining nine, two are points of great controversy with the Digambaras, who of course reject them completely: the transfer of embryo episode (see above, n. 8) and the attainment of Tīrthaṅkara status by a woman (see below, n. 93). A list of all ten āścaryas is given in the *SthS: §777*.

It should be noted here that the Digambaras have a similar belief, subsumed under the doctrine of *hundaṃvasarpiṇī*. This designates a period during which there may occur certain extraordinary events, for example, a calamity befalling a Tīrthaṅkara. The *Tiloyopannatti* (k 1615-1623), in which this topic is discussed, informs us that the current avasarpinī falls into the *hunda* category, but the text remains silent on whether or not any untoward events actually affected Mahāvīra himself. See *JSK: II, 91-92*.

56. The circumstances surrounding this cure are controversial. First of all, even Śvetāmbaras would never suggest that the Jina was so attached to life as to personally desire such a cure. The text relates, however, that one mendicant

power of his attack returned to its source; he became delirious and died soon afterwards in the workshop of Hālāhalā.

Both of these tales, found in the *Bhagavatī-sūtra*, are unknown to, and thus rejected by, the tradition of the Digambaras. While they would clearly suppress, on the basis of doctrinal considerations, any notion of a perfected Jina engaging in worldly dispute, their nearly total lack of awareness of the significant place held by Makkhali Gosāla in Mahāvīra's pre-enlightenment career is less easily explained.⁵⁷ Perhaps the idea of a Jina-to-be associating so intimately with a heretic was repugnant to them. Other

disciple, called Siha, was distraught over the possibility that his master's illness would prove fatal. To assuage Siha's anguish, Mahāvīra sent him to procure a particular medicinal substance which would undo the harmful effects of Gosāla's attack. The substance in question is called *kukkuṭa-māṃsa*, which ordinarily refers to the flesh of a chicken. But no Jaina can accept the idea of even an ordinary mendicant consuming meat, regardless of circumstances; to suggest that a Jina might have done so is nothing less than blasphemous. The Śvetāmbara commentators have therefore gone to great pains to show that the term *kukkuṭa-māṃsa* here refers not to meat at all but to the flesh of a certain seed-filled fruit (called *bijapūraka-kaṭāha*, perhaps Aegle Marmelos, or *bel-phal* in Hindi) commonly used for medical purposes (to treat dehydration;) such "animal" terminology for an herbal substance is often found, for example, in the *Āyurveda*. The fact that this term was not suppressed or eliminated from the literature long ago supports their interpretation; those commentators closest in time to the original text must have assumed that there would be no danger of misunderstanding. Indeed, it was not until the 1941 publication of Dharmānanda Kosambi's *Bhagavān Buddha* (in Marathi) that anyone (in India) even suggested the possibility of taking *kukkuṭa-māṃsa* as actual flesh. The controversy raised among Jainas by Kosambi's remarks was of course restricted to the Śvetāmbara community; Digambaras, who deny that a kevalin eats anything at all (see below, n. 83), found the entire issue irrelevant.

The controversial passage appears as follows in the *BhS*: xv (Vaidya ed., p. 34.): *taṃ no khalu ahaṃ Sihā . . . kālaṃ karessaṃ; ahaṃ ṇaṃ annāiṃ soḷa-savassāiṃ jiṇe suhatthī viharissāmi. taṃ gacchaha ṇaṃ tumāṃ Sihā, Meṇḍhi-yagāmaṃ nayaraṃ, Revaie gāhāvaiṇie gihe. tattha ṇaṃ Revaie . . . mamaṃ aṭṭhāe duve kavoyasarirā uvakkaḍiyā, tehiṃ no aṭṭho. atthi se anne pāriyāsie majjārakaḍae kukkuḍamaṃsae, tamāharāhi, eenaṃ aṭṭho. ("mārjāro" virālā-bhidhānako vanaspativiśeṣas tena "kṛtaṃ" bhāvitāṃ yat tat tathā, kiṃ tat? ity āha "kukkuḍamāṃsakam" bijapūrakaṃ kaṭāhaṃ, "āharāhitti" niravadyatvād iti.")* *Abhayadevasūri-vṛtti* (quoted in Vaidya ed., p. 66).

57. Digambaras do admit an encounter between the two men shortly after Mahāvīra's attainment of kevalajñāna, but they describe Makkhali Gosāla (called Makkaḍi or Masayari) as a mendicant in the tradition of Pārśva who wished to become one of Mahāvīra's gaṇadharas. Failing to be chosen, he established his own school—for which heresy he is said to have suffered rebirth in the dismal state of the *nigodas* (see Ch. IV, n. 7): *Masayari-pūraṇa-risīṇo*

pos
The
Āj
Dig
tain
exa
rat
wa
rea
into
I
wo
bac
hor
eno
sim
the
as C
disp
rece
mat
wha
gam
peci
of a
of t
vidu

Ma
If an
Mah

uppar
...
veyab
siriVi
ṇaṃ
nicca
1933:
58
59

possibilities have been suggested by Hoernle and Basham. The former makes the rather sweeping statement that the Ājīvikas were in fact themselves the earliest form of the Digambara movement; this idea seems to be based on certain similarities in the dietary practices of the two sects (for example, the lack of a begging bowl), as well as on the rather unconvincing premise (noted above) that nudity was introduced by the Ājīvikas.⁵⁸ Basham's theory is more reasonable, suggesting that many Ājīvikas were absorbed into the Digambara community in medieval times.⁵⁹

In either case, it might follow that the Digambaras would thus have quashed all reference to the "heretical" background of part of their community in order to ensure homogeneity and orthodoxy in the present; this phenomenon is common enough in cases of conversion and assimilation. It would seem however, that we can understand the Digambaras' glaring omission of so important a figure as Gosāla without resorting to such speculations. In their displeasure over certain portions of the codified canonical recension of Pāṭaliputra, they probably rejected so much material as to leave themselves with virtually no canon whatsoever. This explanation also fits well with the Digambaras' extreme emphasis upon aspects of practice (especially nudity) rather than literature, for in the absence of ancient scripture it was finally only the code of conduct of their sect which could define it as a unique and individual entity.

Mahāvīra's Austerities

If any single event can be labeled the most significant of Mahāvīra's life, it must be his attainment of kevalajñāna,

uppanṇo Pāsaṇāhatitthammi/ siriVīrasamavasaraṇe agahiyajhuṇinā ṇiyattaṇa//
... ṇa muṇai jīṇakahiyaṣuyam sampai dīkkhāya gahiya Goyamao/ vip̐po
veyabbhāsī tamhā mokkham ṇa ṇāṇāo// *Bhāvasaṅgraha*: k 76-78. See also:
siriVīraṇāhatitthe bahussudo Pāsasaṃghagaṇisīso/ Makkaḍapūraṇasāhū aṇṇā-
ṇam bhāsaye loe// Jīṇamaggabāhiraṃ jaṃ taccam saṃdarisiūṇa pāvamaṇo/
ṇiccaṇigoye patto satto majjesu vivihesu// *Darśanasāra*: k 20-23. See Upadhye
1933: K. P. Jain 1928: 20; Premi 1956: 202; P. S. Jaini 1976a.

58. *Encyclopaedia of Religion and Ethics*: I. 259-269.

59. Basham 1951: 277.

for it was upon this experience that his entire career as a Tīrthaṅkara was based. He is said to have pursued the austerities leading up to this event with unswerving dedication, never once deviating from their practice. The *Ācārāṅga-sūtra* has many passages describing such austerities:

Ceasing to inflict injury on living beings, abandoning concern for the body, and having perceived the true nature of the self, the Venerable One, houseless, endured the thorns of the villages [that is, the abusive language of the peasants].

Like an elephant at the head of battle, so was Mahāvīra there victorious. Sometimes, in the country of Lāḍha, he could not even enter a village [to stay overnight].

At other times, when he approached a village the inhabitants met him outside and attacked him, saying, "Get away from here."

He was struck with sticks, fists, and lances; he was hit with fruit, clods, and potsherds. Beating him again and again, they raised a huge din.

Once when he [sat in meditation], his body unmoving, they cut his flesh, tore his hair, and covered him with dirt. They picked him up and then dropped him, disturbing his meditational postures. Abandoning concern for his body, free from desire, the Venerable One humbled himself and bore the pain. Just as a hero at the head of a battle is surrounded on all sides, so was Mahāvīra there. Undisturbed, bearing all hardships, the Venerable One proceeded [on the path of salvation].⁶⁰

Or again:

Being averse to the impressions of the senses, he wandered about, speaking little. Sometimes in the cold season the Venerable One meditated in the shade.

60. nihāya daṇḍaṃ pāṇehiṃ taṃ vosajja kāyaṃ aṇagāre/ aha gāmakamṭae bhagavaṃ te ahiyāse abhisameccā// nāo saṃgāmasīse va pārae tattha se Mahāvīre/ evaṃ pi tattha Lāḍhehiṃ aladdapuvvo vi egadā gāmo// uvasaṃkamaṃtaṃ apaḍinnaṃ gāmaṃtiyaṃ pi appattaṃ/ paḍinikkhamittu lūsiṃsu etāo paraṃ palehi tti// hayapuvvo tattha daṇḍeṇa aha vā muṭṭhiṇā aha phaleṇaṃ/ aha leḷunā kavāleṇaṃ haṃtā haṃtā bahave kaṃdiṃsu// maṃsūṇi chinna-puvvāiṃ oṭṭhabhiyāe egadā kāyaṃ/ parissahāiṃ luṃciṃsu ahavā paṃsuṇā uvakarīṃsu// uccāliya nihiṇiṃsu aha vā āsaṇāo khalaiṃsu/ voṣaṭṭhakāe paṇa-tāsī dukkhasahe bhagavaṃ apaḍinne// sūro saṃgāmasīse va saṃvuḍe tattha se Mahāvīre/ paḍisevamāṇe pharusāiṃ acale bhagavaṃ rīlthā// AS: §502-507.

ne
ju
O
no
he
m
w
le
ei
re
av
th
le

Thu

W
su
va
w
su
tr
O

Ja
dha,
aust
that
Budd
sorts
upon

The
Mah
prec
he se

61
more
he to
Dever
62
vacch

In summer he exposed himself to the heat, squatting beneath the blazing sun. He lived on rough foods: rice, pounded jujube, and beans. Taking only these three, the Venerable One sustained himself for eight months. Sometimes he drank nothing for two weeks or even for a month. And sometimes he did not drink for more than two months, or even for six months; day and night he was without desire [for food and water]. Even when he did eat, his food was always of a tasteless kind. Sometimes he ate only every sixth day, or every eighth, or every tenth, or every twelfth; free of desires, he remained engrossed in meditation. He meditated free from aversion or desire, attached neither to sounds nor to colors; though still in bondage (*chadmastha*), he never behaved carelessly during his wanderings.⁶¹

Thus:

With supreme knowledge, with supreme intuition, with supreme conduct, with supreme uprightness, with supreme valor, with supreme dexterity, with supreme patience . . . with supreme contentment, with supreme insight, on the supreme path to that final liberation which is the fruit of truthfulness, restraint, and good conduct, the Venerable One meditated for twelve years on the nature of the self.⁶²

Jainas point with pride to the fact that Gautama Buddha, unlike his Nigaṇṭha counterpart, gave up extreme austerities and followed the "middle path"; they suggest that this model of less than single-minded purpose led the Buddhist order (*saṃgha*) to fall eventually into various sorts of laxity from which the Jaina community, based upon the example of Mahāvīra, remained free.

The Enlightenment

Mahāvīra's actual attainment of kevalajñāna took place precisely twelve years, six months, and fifteen days after he set out upon the mendicant's path:

61. AS: §512-521. According to Śvetāmbara commentators, during the more than twelve years that Mahāvīra wandered prior to his enlightenment, he took food on only 349 days. At other times he fasted completely. See Devendra's *Kalpa-sūtra*: 185.

62. *tassa ṇaṃ bhagavaṃtassa . . . appāṇaṃ bhāvēmaṇassa duvālasasaṃvaccharāṃ vikkamāṃ*. KS: §120.

28/The Jaina Path of Purification

During the thirteenth year, in Vaiśākha, in the second month of summer (May/June), on the tenth day of the waxing moon, when the shadow had turned towards the east . . . outside the town of Jṛmbhikagrāma, on the bank of the river Rjupālikā, not far from an old temple, in the field of the householder Samaga, when the moon was in conjunction with the constellation Uttaraphālguṇi, (the Venerable One) sat with joined heels, exposing himself to the heat of the sun. After fasting for two-and-a-half days, taking not even water, engaged in deep meditation, he reached the highest *jñāna* (knowledge) and *darśana* (intuition), called kevala, which is infinite, supreme, unobstructed, unimpeded, complete, and full.⁶³

When the Venerable Ascetic Mahāvīra had become a Jina and an *arhat* (worthy of worship), he was a kevalin, Omniscient, comprehending all objects. He saw and knew whence they had come, where they would go, and whether they would be reborn as men, animals, gods, or hell beings. He knew the ideas and thoughts, the food, doings, desires, and deeds of all the living beings in the world.⁶⁴

Upon attaining the omniscient state Mahāvīra became, as we have noted earlier, the twenty-fourth and final Jina of the present cycle. In order to understand exactly what this means, it is necessary to digress once more from the

63. terasamassa saṃvaccharassa aṃtarā vaṭṭamāṇassa je se gimhāṇaṃ māse cautte pakkhe vaisāhasuddhe tassa ṇaṃ . . . dasamīe . . . Jambhiyagāmassa nagarassa bahiyā Ujuvāliyaṇe naīe tīre viyāvattassa ceṇyassa adūrasāmaṃte Sāmāgassa gāhāvaissa kaṭṭakaraṇaṃsi sālāpāyavassa ahe godohiyāe ukkuḍuḍayanisijjāe āyāvaṇāe āyāvemāṇassa chaṭṭheṇaṃ bhatteṇaṃ hatthuttharāhiṃ nak-khatteṇaṃ jogāṃ uvāgaṇaṃ jhāṇaṃtariyāe vaṭṭamāṇassa aṇaṃte aṇuttare nivvāghāe nirāvaraṇe kaṣiṇe paḍipunṇe kevalavaraṇaṇaḍaṃsaṇe samuppanne. KS: §120. See also: bhagavān Vardhamāno 'pi nītvā dvādaśavatsarān/ chādma-sthyena jagadbandhur Jṛmbhikāgrāmasannidhau// Rjukulānadītīre manohara-vanāntare/ mahāratnaśilāpaṭṭe pratimāyogam āvasan// sthitvā śaṣṭhopavāseṇa so 'dhaṣṭāt sālābhūruhaḥ/ vaiśākhe māsi sajjyotsnādaśamyām aparāhṇake// . . . paramātmāpadam prāpat parameṣṭhī sa Sanmatih// UP: lxxiv, 348-355.

64. tae ṇaṃ se bhagavaṃ arahā jāe jiṇe kevalī savvannū savvadarisī sadeva-maṇuyāsuraṇaṃ logassa pariyaṇaṃ jāṇai pāsai, savvaloe savvajīvāṇaṃ āgāṃ gāṃ ṭhiṃ cavaṇaṃ uvavāyaṃ takkaṃ maṇo māṇasiyaṃ bhuttaṃ kaḍaṃ paḍiseviyaṃ āvikammaṃ rahokammaṃ arahā arahassabhāgi taṃ taṃ kālaṃ maṇavayaṇakāyājoge vaṭṭamāṇāṇaṃ savvajīvāṇaṃ savvabhāve jāṇamāṇe pā-samāṇe viharai. KS: §121.

life of
logica

The J
the R
Jainas
dimer
arms
main
Madh
the "v
worl
rings
ring i
reefs.
system
of hu
ings o
lying
and th

Th
tree v
Jamb
rata,
and
anoth
only
bhūm
can b
high
karm
are b

65.
beings

66.
dhyad
na bah

life of Mahāvīra, this time to explore the larger cosmological system of which that life is a part.

The Jaina Universe and the Role of the Tīrthaṅkaras

Jainas envision the universe as a vast but finite three-dimensional structure, somewhat resembling a man with arms akimbo and legs apart. Within this structure are three main tiers, ordered vertically. The middle tier, called *Madhya-loka*, is of primary concern to us, for here exist the "worlds" in which all human activity takes place. These worlds are arranged in countless (*asaṃkhyāta*) concentric rings of land surrounding a central island (*dvīpa*); each ring is separated by water, much in the manner of coral reefs. The land of the second ring from the center of this system is divided into inner and outer halves by a range of huge mountains. It is usually believed that human beings cannot be born anywhere beyond this range;⁶⁵ outlying regions are hence the domain solely of the animals and the vegetable kingdom.

The central island is called *Jambūdvīpa*, after the *jambū* tree which stands, atop Mount Meru, at its very center. *Jambūdvīpa* comprises seven *varṣa* or "continents": *Bharata*, *Haimavata*, *Ramyaka*, *Videha*, *Hari*, *Hairaṇyaka*, and *Airāvata*.⁶⁶ These continents are separated from one another by six great mountains. Of the seven continents, only *Bharata*, *Airāvata*, and half of *Videha* are *karma-bhūmi*, or realms of action, that is, places in which *mokṣa* can be attained. Actions which bring about rebirth in the highest heaven or the lowest hell are also limited to these *karma-bhūmis*. The remaining four-and-a-half continents are *bhoga-bhūmi*, realms of enjoyment, where there occurs

65. The upper and lower tiers are for the most part occupied by gods and hell beings, respectively. For details, see below, Ch. IV, the sketch of *loka-ākāśa*.

66. *prāṇ Mānuṣottarān manuṣyāḥ*/ TS: iii, 35. *Puṣkaravaradvīpabahumadhyadeśabhāgī valayavṛtto Mānuṣottaro nāma śailaḥ. tasmāt prāg eva manuṣyā na bahir iti.* SS: §434.

nothing but the experiencing of sense pleasures; such places are not, of course, conducive to renunciation.⁶⁷

The first ring surrounding Jambūdvīpa is called Dhātakī-khaṇḍa; its land mass is twice that of Jambū, and it has an identical arrangement of continents and bhūmis. Next is Puṣkaravara, which is in turn double the size of Dhātakī-khaṇḍa; it too has an analogous internal structure. (As we have seen, however, only the interior half of this ring is inhabitable by human beings. Questions of action [karma] versus enjoyment [bhoga] thus become irrelevant beyond this point.) Given the fact that Jinahood can only be attained in a karma-bhūmi area, we are now in a position to tentatively calculate how many continents are "available," as it were, to the appearance of a Tīrthaṅkara. Jainas perform this calculation by taking the continent-size of Jambūdvīpa as the standard of measurement.

Thus we have:

Jambūdvīpa

2½ karma-bhūmi continents

Dhātakī-khaṇḍa

5 karma-bhūmi continents (2½ x 2, since each continent is twice the size of its Jambūdvīpa counterpart)

Puṣkaravara

5 karma-bhūmi continents (2½ x 4 = 10 x ½ = 5, since each continent is four times the size of its Jambūdvīpa counterpart, but only half the land is inhabitable by human beings)

This gives a total of twelve-and-a-half continents conceivably suitable for the arising of a Jina. The situation is complicated further, however, by the Jainas' belief that karma-bhūmi areas are subject to an endless temporal cycle, half progressive and half regressive. These half-cycles, called *utsarpiṇī* and *avasarpiṇī*, respectively, are themselves each divided into six time stages (*kāla*) as follows.

67. . . . kṣyādīlakṣaṇasya . . . tatraivārambhāt karmabhūmivyapadeśo veditavyaḥ. itarās tu . . . kalpavṛkṣakalpitabhogānubhavanād bhogabhūmayah . . . SS: §437.

utsarpi

1) a

2) a

3) a

4) s

5) s

6) s

avasarp

1) s

2) s

3) s

4) c

5) c

6) c

The
another

laya (

are no

last fo

tancy

increas

ingly

believe

half-cy

nor of

The p

sufficie

manen

conceiv

be prec

is true

has (th

68. S

69. S

mokṣa, c

The disti

teacher-p

they wou

on the st

utsarpiṇī (progressive half-cycle):

- 1) *duṣamā-duṣamā* (extremely unhappy)
- 2) *duṣamā* (unhappy)
- 3) *duṣamā-suṣamā* (more unhappy than happy)
- 4) *suṣamā-duṣamā* (more happy than unhappy)
- 5) *suṣamā* (happy)
- 6) *suṣamā-suṣamā* (extremely happy)

avasarpiṇī (regressive half-cycle):

- 1) *suṣamā-suṣamā* (extremely happy)
- 2) *suṣamā* (happy)
- 3) *suṣamā-duṣamā* (more happy than unhappy)
- 4) *duṣamā-suṣamā* (more unhappy than happy)
- 5) *duṣamā* (unhappy)
- 6) *duṣamā-duṣamā* (extremely unhappy)⁶⁸

The *utsarpiṇī* and *avasarpiṇī* follow directly upon one another in unbroken succession; there is no period of *pralaya* (demanifestation) during which the karma-bhūmis are not in one of the above stages. These half-cycles each last for a vast but finite number of years. The life expectancy of human beings dwelling in the karma-bhūmis increases with each stage of the *utsarpiṇī*, and correspondingly decreases with each stage of the *avasarpiṇī*. It is believed that only during the third and fourth stages of a half-cycle, when there is neither an extremity of happiness nor of unhappiness, can anyone possibly attain mokṣa. The point is that only at such a time are human beings sufficiently short-lived and unhappy to understand impermanence and suffering, yet free enough from misery to conceive of and pursue mokṣa. Jainas claim that there will be precisely twenty-four Jinas during each half-cycle;⁶⁹ this is true for every karma-bhūmi continent except the Videhas (that is, the "half-in-karma-bhūmi" areas of each

68. SS: §418.

69. Some of the Jina's followers may also attain to kevalajñāna, hence mokṣa, during this period. But they are known as kevalin or arhat, not Jina. The distinction here derives not only from the fact that they do not become teacher-propagators, as Jinas do, but also that without the Jina's assistance they would not have reached so exalted a state in the first place. For a discussion on the status of an arhat in Jainism and Buddhism, see Ch. VIII, n. 31.

dvīpa), which are said to be *always* in a condition equivalent to the end of the third stage. This latter claim underlies the further contention that at every moment there is a living Jina *somewhere*. In other words the path of salvation is open at any time; one need only be born into one of the Videhas in order to have an immediate chance for mokṣa.⁷⁰

At the present time our earth (Bharata-kṣetra) is in a descending or regressive half-cycle, an avasarpinī. The first Tīrthaṅkara of this avasarpinī was Rṣabha, who is said to have introduced agriculture, the caste system, law, monarchy, and the spiritual path of the mendicant. Thus he was, in the Jaina view, not only the first to undertake the holy life in this era, but also responsible for laying the groundwork of our entire civilization. After living for an extremely long period, approximately 600,000 years, he obtained mokṣa on the summit of Mount Kailāsa. The cult of Rṣabha has long been extremely popular among Jains; indeed, during the medieval period, this cult was so well known in India that the Hindu text *Bhāgavata Purāṇa* included Rṣabha as an *aṃśāvatāra* (minor incarnation of Viṣṇu).⁷¹

We may thus assume that the first Tīrthaṅkara has been the object of more worship than even Mahāvīra; but it is probably not correct to infer that he was ever considered *the* teacher of our era; this role has belonged to Mahāvīra alone. One interesting tale, found in the later Purāṇas, links these two Jinas by suggesting that Rṣabha's grandson, Marīci, was later born as Mahāvīra.⁷² It is further related how this Marīci became full of vanity and conceit upon hearing a prophecy of his future Jinahood; such excessive pride necessitated that he become the last (shortest-lived) Jina of the cycle. Scholars like Hiralal Jain have tried to

70. Such ācāryas as the famous Kundakunda are reputed to have traveled to these "continents" by yogic methods, obtaining first-hand clarification on doctrinal matters from the Tīrthaṅkaras living there. See *Pravacanasāra*: intro. 6.

71. *Śrīmad Bhāgavata*: V, iii-vii. See P. S. Jaini 1977a.

72. See *Vīśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya*: k 1781-1812; AP: xviii, 61-65; TSPC: I, vi, 1-52.

bring
hist
the
Rg
con
and
sou
Ind
dus
Jain
Ind
C
way
seco
near
tion
va,
of c
by M
Ved
rece
valle
othe
Upa
Mag
post

73

74

motif
the sic
upon
rigid c
that it
over n

75

and th
legend
descri
and C
76
Mahā

bring the first Jina, and thus the beginnings of Jainism, into historical times, maintaining that the name Rṣabha (having the sense of "bull") appears as an honorific term in the *Rgveda* and could there refer to the Jaina lawgiver.⁷³ More convincing theories, taking note of the yogic, śramaṇic, and anti-Vedic underpinnings of Jaina tradition, have sought to discover the roots of this tradition in pre-Āryan Indic civilizations. Nude standing images found in the Indus Valley ruins bear a striking resemblance to the oldest Jaina sculptures;⁷⁴ further, there may be a link between the Indus bull-seals and the bull-insignia of Rṣabha.

Of the remaining Tīrthaṅkaras, only three can in any way be connected with historical evidence. The twenty-second, Nemi, seems to have flourished in Saurashtra, near the famous Girnar mounts (site of the Aśokan inscriptions), and to have been a contemporary of Kṛṣṇa.⁷⁵ Pārśva, as we have seen, lived and taught in Banaras; he was of course followed in the same area some 250 years later by Mahāvīra.⁷⁶ Thus, while Jainism may very well be pre-Vedic, the geographical location of at least its two most recent teachers does not suggest an origin in the Indus valley. A. N. Upadhye has proposed that in light of the other śramaṇa sects (Ājīvika, Buddhism, the antiritualistic Upaniṣadic tradition, and so on) which flourished in the Magadha region along with Jainism, we can reasonably postulate a distinct Magadhan religious complex, devel-

73. H. Jain 1962: 11-18.

74. "Another familiar motif is that of a nude man represented as a repeat motif in rigidly upright posture, his legs slightly apart, arms held parallel with the sides of his body, which recurs later as the Jain Tīrthāṅkara, repeated row upon row. The hieratic style favoured by that religious community . . . its rigid conformism, and its utilitarian outlook, so resemble the Harappan culture that it appears more than likely that the prehistoric traits were handed down over many centuries." Lannoy 1974: 10.

75. "Even more remarkable is the traditional contemporaneousness of Nemi and the divine hero Kṛṣṇa . . . Kṛṣṇaism seems to have left its mark on Jaina legend, a Kṛṣṇaism which we must assume . . . to be an earlier form than that described in the Brahmanical texts." Renou 1953: 114. See Jacobi 1884: 276-279; and Ch. IX, no. 54.

76. Pārśveśatīrthasantāne pañcāśad dviśatābdake/ tad abhyantaravartyāyur Mahāvīro 'tra jātavān// UP: lxiv, 279.

oped at the foot of the Himalayas where Āryans from the Punjab encountered the non-Vedic cultures of the Ganges Valley.⁷⁷

Mahāvīra's Career as a Tīrthaṅkara

All these questions remain open to debate. Our aim here is not to solve such problems, but to gain some feeling for the position of Mahāvīra in the overall Jaina scheme of universal cycles and Tīrthaṅkara lineages. It is said that Mahāvīra was born when seventy-five years, eight-and-a-half months were left in the fourth stage of the current avasarpinī, and that he remained in the world for exactly seventy-two years. Thus the fifth stage began less than three years after his death; no more Jinas will appear in our world until it enters the third stage of the upcoming utsarpinī. As the fifth and sixth stages last 21,000 years each, it will be a long time before the next half-cycle even begins, and far longer before it reaches its third phase. Hence, despite the fact that there has been an infinite number of Jinas and that somewhere in the universe a Jina is at this very moment preaching the path of salvation, the accomplishment of Mahāvīra nevertheless assumes majestic proportions when considered from the limited perspective of the average person. By attaining the omniscient state, he reached a position so rare and exalted that we can hardly be surpsied to find that most Jainas view him as something more than human.

As we have seen, the Digambaras adopt this "more than human" position doctrinally as well as on the level of conventional belief. They describe Mahāvīra after his enlightenment as totally free from the eighteen defects of human existence—hunger, thirst, sleep, sweat, fear, disease, aging, and so on.⁷⁸ He is said to have engaged, at that time, in no mundane activities whatsoever, since omniscient

77. See Upadhye, intro. to *Pravacanasāra*.

78. For eighteen imperfections (*doṣa*) from which a kevalin is forever freed, see *Upāsakādhyayana*: k 52-56.

cogniti
antithe
consta
which
body,
sides.⁷⁹
white u
holier
from h
audienc
animals
place o
tiated r
neverth
attracted
is conve
tīrtha: m

Specifi
after the
man call
the Veda
prehend
him by I
he went
his splen
this hall,
he instant
of the gar
bhūti, fol

79. It is s
transparent o
Zimmer (1951)
as well as the
can be traced

80. For a
iii, 452-477. S

81. Pillars
stambha (tha
apex a four-f
1891: 276-278

cognition and sensory cognition are held to be mutually antithetical. Thus he sat in the lotus posture, maintaining constant omniscient trance, housed in an assembly hall which had been miraculously created by the gods. His body, free from all impurities, shone like a crystal on all sides.⁷⁹ Above his head was hoisted the royal insignia of a white umbrella, signifying that nothing could be higher or holier than he. A divine sound (*divyadhvani*) emanated from his person for the benefit of the audience. As this audience consisted of gods, demi-gods, human beings, and animals, the entire assembly was called *samavasaraṇa*, a place of resort for all.⁸⁰ Although the perfected Jina initiated no acts of organization, a Jaina community was nevertheless formed through the efforts of the gaṇadharas attracted by his Tīrthaṅkara nature. In this sense the Jina is conventionally said to have "established" the four-fold *tīrtha*: monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen.

Specifically, according to Digambaras, sixty-six days after the enlightenment there appeared on the scene a brahman called Indrabhūti Gautama; although well-versed in the Vedas and proud of his knowledge, he could not comprehend the Jaina teachings when they were conveyed to him by Indra, king of gods (disguised as a brahman). Thus he went to the assembly hall where Mahāvīra dwelt in all his splendor. At the mere sight of the pillar standing before this hall, all of Gautama's pride and vanity disappeared; he instantly understood the teachings and became the first of the gaṇadharas.⁸¹ His brothers, Agnibhūti and Vāyubhūti, followed his lead. Soon the three of them were

79. It is said that even the blood which flowed through his veins became transparent or milky in color (*gokkhīrapaṇḍure maṃsa-sonie*, *SamS*: §111). Zimmer (1951: 209) suggests that the use of alabaster in making Jina images, as well as the practice of pouring milk over these images during the *abhiṣeka*, can be traced to this belief.

80. For a description of the *samavasaraṇa*, see *AP*: xxii, 76–312; *TSPC*: I, iii, 452–477. See below, pl. 10.

81. Pillars which stand before Digambara temples are thus called *māna-stambha* (that which brings an end to pride); these typically include at their apex a four-faced Jina in *samavasaraṇa*. For further details, see Fergusson 1891: 276–278, U. P. Shah 1955: 60ff. See below, pl. 23.

joined by eight other brahmans. These eleven gaṇadharas formed the nucleus of the new order; having mastered the Jina's doctrine upon hearing his divine sound, they in turn composed all the Jaina litanies, rules of conduct, and so on.

According to the Śvetāmbaras, Mahāvīra's first audience after his enlightenment consisted only of gods, to whom he preached his doctrine for a short time. After a while he approached a ceremonial enclosure, where a Vedic sacrifice was in progress. There he delivered a sermon on the virtue of nonharming and was subsequently able to convert three of the brahman priests, Indrabhūti Gautama and his two brothers. These three, along with their 1,500 disciples, were immediately received into the new mendicant order. Soon thereafter, eight other brahmans were converted, completing the "inner circle" of eleven chief disciples, the gaṇadharas.⁸² The addition of their many followers to the Jaina order swelled its ranks to over 4,000.

Countering the Digambara belief that a person endowed with kevalajñāna does not partake of ordinary human food (*kavala-āhāra*, literally "food made into morsels") but subsists merely on the (involuntary) intake of some subtle food, such as that partaken by the gods,⁸³ Śvetāmbaras maintain that existence in the state of embodiment requires even the most exalted one to obey bodily laws. Hence they suggest that the Jina must eat and perform other mundane activities; but these activities are said to in no way interfere with his omniscient cognition.⁸⁴

Consistent with their belief in the relatively "human" characteristics of the Jina, the Śvetāmbaras have preserved a meticulous record of Mahāvīra's travels during and after

82. See Solomon 1966; *Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya*: k 1993–2080.

83. For the Digambara position on this as well as on *strīmukti* see *Pravacana-sāra* [Tātparyavṛtti]: i,20; iii,25. For a refutation of the Digambara views (by Yāpanīyācārya Śākaṭyāna) see *Strīnirvāṇa-Kevalibhukti prakaraṇe*.

84. Śvetāmbara commentators have sought to "refine" these activities in the case of the Jina by adding that he did not beg; food was brought to him by the disciple Lohārya. It is held, moreover, that no one ever saw him eat or engage in other bodily functions; these were carried out in absolute privacy: *pacchanne āhāraṇihāre adisse maṃsacakkhuṇā* / *SamS*: §111.

his enl
lists the
rainy s

At th
rainy
and
teen
two i
in Kir
rainy

Rega
of his p
that du
congreg
monks,
Candan
preponc
the fact
these w
vows of

Mahāvī
It is agr
two the
he thus
ever free
this even
King Ha
ern Pāvā
vīra's de
527 B.C.;
nirvāṇa

85. KS:

86. Ibid

87. This
Jainas were
manner to th

his enlightenment. The following passage, for example, lists the various places in which he resided during the forty rainy seasons of his teaching career:

At that time, the Venerable Ascetic Mahāvīra stayed the first rainy season in Asthikagrāma, three rainy seasons in Campā and Pṛṣṭicampā, twelve in Vaiśālī and Vāṇijagrāma, fourteen in Rājagrha and the suburb of Nālandā, six in Mithilā, two in Bhadrīkā, one in Śrāvastī, and one in the town of Pāpā in King Hastipāla's office of the scribes; that was his very last rainy season.⁸⁵

Regardless of their dispute over the location and method of his preaching, both Digambaras and Śvetāmbaras agree that during Mahāvīra's career as a Tīrthaṅkara the Jaina congregation grew to a large number: ostensibly, 14,000 monks, 36,000 nuns (under the supervision of the chief nun Candanā), 159,000 laymen, and 318 000 laywomen.⁸⁶ The preponderance of female followers probably resulted from the fact that many men had more than one wife, and that these wives became nuns when their husbands took the vows of a monk.⁸⁷

Mahāvīra's Death

It is agreed by both traditions that at the age of seventy-two the Venerable Ascetic Mahāvīra passed into nirvāṇa; he thus became a *siddha*, one who is fully liberated, forever free of embodiment. Śvetāmbara records tell us that this event took place at the office of scribes maintained by King Hastipāla in the town of Pāpā, identified with modern Pāvāpurī, near Patna. The traditional date of Mahāvīra's death is fixed near the end of the rainy season in 527 B.C.; it is from this date that Jains count the Vīra-nirvāṇa period, the longest continuous "era" in Indian

85. KS: §122.

86. Ibid.: §133-135.

87. This step seems to have been preferable to functional widowhood. The Jains were probably the first religious sect in India to open their ranks in this manner to the female relatives of initiates. See Ch. VIII n. 8.

history.⁸⁸ At the time of Mahāvīra's departure from this earth, only two of the eleven gaṇadharas—Indrabhūti Gautama and Sudharman—still lived.⁸⁹ It is believed that Indrabhūti Gautama attained omniscience in a matter of hours after his teacher had passed away. These two nearly simultaneous events are celebrated by the Jains in their Dīpāvalī (Festival of lights), following a tradition supposedly begun by the local kings on that very day so many years ago. As the *Kalpa-sūtra* says:

On that night during which the Venerable Ascetic Mahāvīra died . . . cut asunder the ties of birth, old age, and death, became a siddha, finally liberated . . . his oldest disciple, the monk Indrabhūti of the Gautama gotra, obtained the highest knowledge and intuition, called kevala, which is infinite, supreme . . . and full.⁹⁰

And on that night during which the Venerable Ascetic Mahāvīra died . . . the eighteen confederate kings of Kāśī and Kośala, the nine Mallikas and nine Licchavis instituted an illumination on the day of the new moon, which was a fasting day; for they said: "Since the internal (*bhāva*) light (of intelligence) is gone, let us make an illumination with the external (*dravya*) light (of matter)."⁹¹

Points of Controversy between the Two Major Sects

In the account above many examples of conflict have been noted between the Digambara and Śvetāmbara traditions

88. One Jaina source (Hemacandra's *Parīśiṣṭaparva*: viii, 341) places this event at 427 B.C.; this is somewhat closer to the approximate date of 477 B.C. put forth by Jacobi (1932: intro. vii). See Basham 1951: 77ff. H. Jain (1974: 50–52) refutes these views in favor of the traditional date.

89. For details concerning the gaṇadharas, see Ch. II.

90. KS: § 126.

91. jaṃ rayañiṃ ca ṇaṃ samaṇe bhagavaṃ Mahāvīre . . . jāva dukkhappa-hiṇe taṃ rayañiṃ ca ṇaṃ nava Mallī nava Licchavī Kāśī-Kosalagā aṭṭhārasa vi gaṇarāyāṇo amāvāse pārābhoyam posahovavāsam paṭṭhavaiṃsu, gate se bhāvujjoe davvujjōyam karissāmo. KS: § 127. Compare: tatas tu lokāḥ prativarṣam ādarāt, prasiddha-dīpālikayātra bhārāte/ samudyataḥ pūjayitum jineśvaram, jinendranirvāṇavibhūtibhaktibhāk// *Harivaṃśapurāṇa*: lxvi, 21.

of Jaini
points o
paramo

1. Th
such a b
function
sidered
by mea
the Jina
tions wh

2. Th
their na
solute p
of cond
shame a
tāmbara
while th
that clot
baras he
equivale
a househ
are mon

3. Th
woman
mokṣa; h
attainme
tion, stat
thus are
tual acco

92. Guṇ
features of
Digambarās
colapaṭṭakal
te caturdhā
bhedena. A
sadvratasyā
mukṭim kev
. . . śeṣam ā
mithaḥ śāstr
history of th

of Jainism. It might now be helpful to categorize these points of controversy in a general way.⁹² Three issues seem paramount:

1. *The nature of the omniscient Jina.* For Digambaras, such a being engages in no worldly activity and no bodily functions (eating meals, for example), since these are considered antithetical to omniscient cognition. He "preaches" by means of a magical "divine sound." Śvetāmbaras see the Jina as engaging in normal human activities and functions while *simultaneously* enjoying omniscient cognition.

2. *The role of nudity in the holy life.* Digambaras, as their name implies, stress the practice of nudity as an absolute prerequisite to the mendicant's path—the only mode of conduct through which one can become truly free of shame and sexuality and thus hope to attain mokṣa. Śvetāmbaras emphasize the optional nature of this practice; while they decry *attachment* to clothing, they do not admit that clothing per se is an obstacle to salvation. The Digambaras hold that retaining *any* possession is functionally equivalent to retaining *all* possessions, that is, to remaining a householder. Hence they deny that Śvetāmbara monks are monks at all.

3. *The position of women.* Digambaras believe that a woman lacks the adamantine body necessary to attain mokṣa; hence, she must be reborn as a man before such an attainment is possible. Śvetāmbaras take the opposite position, stating that women can be born with such bodies and thus are capable, in the present lifetime, of the same spiritual accomplishments as men. Indeed, they claim that the

92. Guṇaratnasūri, a Śvetāmbara writer (circa 1400), summarizes the main features of the various Jaina sects as follows: Jaināḥ dvividhāḥ Śvetāmbarā Digambarāś ca. tatra Śvetāmbarāṇāṃ rajoharaṇa-mukhavastrikālocādi liṅgaṃ, colapaṭṭakalpādikā veśaḥ . . . Digambarā punar nāgnyalingāḥ pāṇipātrāś ca. te caturdhā Kāṣṭhāsaṃgha-Mūlasaṃgha-Māthurasaṃgha-Gopyasaṃgha-bhedena. Ādyās trayo 'pi saṃghāḥ . . . strīṇāṃ muktiṃ kevalināṃ bhuktiṃ sadvratasyāpi sacivarasya muktiṃ ca na manvate, Gopyās tu . . . strīṇāṃ muktiṃ kevalināṃ bhuktiṃ ca manyante. Gopyā Yāpanīyā ity apy ucyante . . . śeṣaṃ ācāre gurau ca deve ca sarvaṃ Śvetāmbarais tulyaṃ, nāsti-teṣāṃ mithaḥ śāstreṣu tarkeṣv aparo bhedaḥ. *Śaḍdarśanasamuccaya*: iv, 1. For a history of the three saṃghas mentioned in this passage, see Johrapurkar 1958.

nineteenth Tirthaṅkara, Malli, was a woman.⁹³ These conflicting doctrines seem to grow mainly out of the social implications of the nudity issue. The idea of a woman appearing naked in public, particularly while subject to the menstrual cycle, is unacceptable to Indian society at large; neither of the Jaina traditions allows its nuns to go about sky-clad.⁹⁴ For the Śvetāmbaras, of course, this poses no doctrinal difficulty with regard to salvation, but for the Digambaras it is an automatic disqualification.

Other important differences in practice between the two traditions which should be noted here concern begging and eating habits. Śvetāmbara monks carry small pots and beg food door-to-door. They may not enter a house to eat; all food and water must be collected in bowls, taken back to the monastery, and there entirely consumed. A Digambara monk, on the other hand, has no pot or bowl; he receives

93. In addition to its unique claim that Tirthaṅkara-hood is available to women, the Śvetāmbara legend of Malli provides useful insight into Jaina ideas on the factors leading to a female birth. It is said that the soul which later became Malli was in a former life a male, specifically, a king named Mahābala. This king, together with seven friends, renounced the world and became a Jaina mendicant. All eight made a solemn agreement to undertake an identical number of fasts as part of their austerities. Mahābala, however, constantly found excuses (ill health, and so on) to skip meals; he thus abrogated the agreement by deviously accumulating a larger number of fasts than his friends. His conduct being in all other ways quite faultless, and including the several virtues prerequisite to Tirthaṅkara-hood, he attained in the second subsequent birth to the destiny of a teacher-savior. The prior misdeed of "cheating" on a pact, however, could not go without retribution. Thus the soul of this being, although ready for the exalted status of a Tirthaṅkara, was born as a female, Malli. During her youth she was sought after by numerous lustful suitors, some of whom went to war over her. Disgusted both by being regarded as a sexual object and by being the cause of violence, she renounced the world, became a nun, attained to kevalajñāna, and propagated the Jaina doctrine. Both Digambaras and Śvetāmbaras, while disagreeing over the verity of this particular story, share the notion that such vices as cheating, capriciousness, greed, and cunning are the fundamental causes of rebirth as a woman. For the Śvetāmbara account of Malli, see *Jñātrdharmakathā-sūtra*: viii; *TSPC*: VI, vi, 19-213. For the Digambara version, see *UP*: lxvi, 1-65. For a sculptural representation of the female Malli, see U. P. Shah 1956. See below, pl. 9.

94. Āśādhara, a Digambara writer of the thirteenth century, approved of administering vows of nudity to a woman on her deathbed; he appears to have been the only authority to adopt such a position, however: yad autsargikam anyad vā liṅgam uktaṃ jinaiḥ striyāḥ/ pūṃvat tad iṣyate mṛtyukāle svalpī-kṛtopadheḥ// *SD*: viii, 38.

offerings in his upturned palms, called *pāṇi-pātra* (hand-bowl). He may enter a house and eat if he has gone there only to beg, without any prior invitation.⁹⁵ Even inside, however, he must use no plate or utensils. Finally, the Śvetāmbara monks beg and take food two or three times daily; Digambaras are restricted to a single meal.

Thus concludes this brief introduction to the foundations of the Jaina faith and to the two traditions through which this faith has manifested itself. We have seen the ways in which these traditions differ: one a bit more conservative, with a doctrine that rests heavily upon faith; the other tending to be more liberal, relaxed, pragmatic, and oriented toward scriptural and historical evidence. But in the remainder of this book we shall discover that on many levels, from the layperson's daily practice to the logical intricacies of the philosopher-monk's most abstruse formulations, it is in fact a combination of essential contributions from both traditions that has sustained the vital flow of the Jina's teachings through so many centuries.

95. For details on the rituals pertaining to this practice, see Ch. VII.

II

The First Disciples and the Jaina Scriptures

The "Divine Sound" of the Tīrthaṅkara

Earlier, the Jaina belief that the sermons of a Jina take the form known as divyadhvani, the divine sound, was alluded to. It is said, moreover, that this sound manifests *artha*, the meaning or import of a Jina's teachings. Artha is in turn translated into *sūtra*, the canonical scriptures, by the several gaṇadharas or chief disciples;¹ these gaṇadharas must have taken their mendicant vows in the presence of the Jina and must be endowed with such purity as to attain nirvāṇa in that very life.² All Jainas accept the fact that their scriptures originated in this way. There is sectarian disagreement, however, over the precise nature of the events involved. Whereas Digambaras imagine the divyadhvani as a monotone—like the sound of om—which only the gaṇadharas are able to comprehend, Śvetāmbaras suggest that the Jina speaks in a human language that is divine in the sense that men of all regions, and animals, can benefit from hearing it.³ In the latter interpretation, the role

1. "atthaṃ bhāsai arahā suttam gaṇthaṃti gaṇaharā niunaṃ/ sāsaṇassa hiyaṭṭhāe tao suttam pavattai// " Quoted in NS-ADS: intro. 11 (from *Āvaśyakaniryukti*: k 92). Compare: arahamtabhāsiyatthaṃ gaṇaharadevehiṃ gaṇthiyaṃ savvaṃ/ paṇamāmi bhattijutto sudaṇāṇamahovayaṃ sirasā// JP: 465..

2. "sagapādamūlammi paḍivaṇṇamahavvayaṃ mottūṇa aṇṇaṃ uddissiya divvajjuṇi kiṇṇa pavattaṇṇa sāvāviyādo." JSK: II, 430 (quoted from *Dhavalā*)

3. The Śvetāmbara scriptures maintain that Mahāvīra spoke Ardhamāgadhī, a Prakrit dialect of Magadha: bhagavā ca ṇaṃ Addhamāgahīe bhāsāe āikkhai, sā vi ya ṇaṃ Addhamāgahī bhāsijjamāṇi tesim savvesim āriyamaṇāriyāṇaṃ appaṇo hiyasivasuhayabhāsattāe pariṇamai . . . SamS: §111. The Digambaras

of the gaṇadharas would be less one of translation than simply of compiling and organizing the Jina's words into a comprehensive and systematic body of teachings.

The Gaṇadharas: the Chief Disciples of Mahāvīra

Tradition has preserved the names and brief accounts of the lives of Mahāvīra's gaṇadharas.⁴ These men belonged without exception to the brahman caste, a fact which might seem unusual in light of the pro-kṣatriya bias among śramaṇa sects noted above in discussing Mahāvīra's birth. Even so, the pattern of a kṣatriya monarch surrounded by brahman ministers was typical in India at the time, and thus may well have been an acceptable norm even for Jains. These gaṇadharas came from the neighborhood of modern Patna and were new converts to the Jaina faith. Rather than graduating from the lay state to mendicancy, the normal procedure under Jaina law, they took all monastic vows on the same day, at the very moment of their conversion, and adopted the practice of nudity as prescribed by Mahāvīra. At this time, five of the eleven

seem to have similar views on the nature of this "language": "yojanāntaradūra-samīpasthāṣṭādaśabhāṣāsaptasatakubhāṣāyutatiryagdevamanuṣyabhāṣākāra. . . vāgatiśayasampannaḥ . . . Mahāvīro 'rthakartā." JSK: II, 431 (quoted from *Dhavalā*).

4. paḍhamettha Imḍabhūi bīo puṇa hoi Aggibhūi tti/ taie ya Vāyubhūi tao Viyatte Suhamme ya// Maṇḍiya-Moriyaputte Akampie ceva Ayalabhāyā ya/ Meyajje ya Pabhāse ya gaṇaharā huṃti Vīrassa// NS-ADS: k 20-21. Compare: Indrabhūti itī proktaḥ prathamō gaṇadhārīṇām/ Agnibhūti dvitīyāś ca Vāyubhūtiś tṛtīyakāḥ// Śucidattas tūṛiyas tu Sudharmaḥ pañcamas tataḥ/ ṣaṣṭo Māṇḍavya ity ukto Mauryaputras tu saptamaḥ// aṣṭamo 'kampanākhyātir Acalo navamo mataḥ/ Medāryo daśamo 'ntyas tu Prabhāsaḥ sarva eva te// *Harivaṃśapurāṇa*: iii, 41-43. For further biographical information on these gaṇadharas, see Solomon 1966: 22-32. Both traditions depict the gaṇadharas as endowed with great yogic powers and adamant bodies. The following description of Indrabhūti Gautama seems to have been taken as a model for the others: samaṇassa bhagavao Mahāvīrassa jeṭṭhe antevāsī Indabhūi nāmaṃ aṇagāre Goyamasagotteṇaṃ sattussehe samacauramaṣasamṭhāṇasamṭhie vajjarisahanārāyasamghayaṇe kaṇapulagaṇibhasapamhagore uggatave dittatave tattatave mahātave orāle ghore ghoraguṇe ghoratavassī ghorabambhaceravāsī ucchūḍhasarīre samkhittaviulatēyalese coddasapuvvī caunāṇovagae savvakharasannivāi samaṇassa bhagavao Mahāvīrassa adūrasāmanante uḍḍhamjāṇū aho-sire jhāṇakoṭṭhovagae samjameṇaṃ tavaśā appāṇaṃ bhāvamāṇe viharai. *BhS*: i, 7 (§7).

(namely, Indrabhūti Gautama, Arya Vyakta, Sudharman, Maṇḍika, and Mauryaputra) were in their early fifties and four (Agnibhūti, Vāyubhūti, Akampita, and Acalabhrātā) were in their forties; Metārya was thirty and Prabhāsa, the youngest, was only sixteen.

With the exceptions of Indrabhūti Gautama and Sudharman, all attained to omniscience (kevalajñāna) after approximately twelve years of mendicancy. The youthful Prabhāsa became a *kevalin* at the remarkable age of twenty-four and died, that is, went to nirvāṇa, in his fortieth year. This life-span of sixteen years after the attainment of kevalajñāna was fairly typical for the other gaṇadharas as well. These kevalin disciples had reached a level of perfection equivalent to that of their master; they were the Jina's equals in every respect, but did not preach the doctrine and were not surrounded by the miraculous phenomena that attend a Tīrthaṅkara.⁵ With the attainment of omniscience their clerical activities came to an end; thereafter they were gaṇadharas in name only. Thus it would seem that whatever "transmission" of the Jina's teachings these gaṇadharas had performed must have taken place during their "pre-omniscience" careers as ordinary mendicants. Digambaras and Śvetāmbaras are in basic agreement on this point, although the former take a more strict position, maintaining that the gaṇadharas, like anyone who has become a kevalin, ceased to partake of any food after reaching that state. Śvetāmbaras believe that the disciples continued to take food until one month before death, eventually laying down their bodies in Rājagṛha at a park named Guṇaśīla.

Agnibhūti, Vāyubhūti, Ārya Vyakta, and Metārya died a few years before Mahāvīra; Maṇḍika, Mauryaputra,

5. A Tīrthaṅkara is said to be distinguished from an ordinary kevalin by the presence of the following eight *prātihāryas* (miraculous phenomena): aśoka-vṛkṣaḥ surapuṣpavṛṣṭir divyadhvaniś cāmaram āsanaḥ ca/ bhāmaṇḍalaṃ dundubhir ātapatram satprātihāryāṇi jineśvarāṇām// JP: 85. For a more elaborate list, comprising some thirty-four items, see SamS: §111; JSK: I, 141.

Akampita, and Acalabhrātā passed away in the same year as did their master. The effective leaders of the saṃgha during the kevalin period of these chief disciples were the two gaṇadharas, Indrabhūti Gautama and Sudharman, who had not yet attained to kevalajñāna and were thus still "available" to lead the community after the death of Mahāvīra. It is likely, therefore, that the extant Jaina canon comprises the recensions of only these two gaṇadharas, who must have previously absorbed the recensions of the others (if there were any), and who therefore figure in the canon as the major interlocutors to whom Mahāvīra's answers are directed. Indrabhūti Gautama, like his contemporary Ānanda,⁶ chief attendant of Gautama the Buddha, was unable to attain arhatship due to his deep attachment to his master. Even the practice of severe austerities, which earned him the title *ghorataṇḍi*, could not overcome the bonds of this devotion. The tenth lecture of *Uttarādhyayana*, a subsidiary canonical text, is said to have been delivered by Mahāvīra on the last day of his life with the specific aim of curing his chief disciple of this weakness. In words which move the hearts of Jainas to this day, Mahāvīra exhorted Indrabhūti Gautama not to linger on the path and not to miss the moment (*samaya*) of self-realization:

As the fallow leaf of the tree falls to the
ground when its days are gone, even so the life
of men [will come to its end];
Gautama, be careful all the while!
As a dewdrop clinging to the top of a blade
of Kuśa-grass lasts but a short time,
even so the life of men;
Gautama, be careful all the while!
You have crossed the great ocean; why do
you halt so near the shore? Make haste

6. See Malalasekera 1938: I, 264.

to attain the other side;
Gautama, be careful all the while!⁷

Tradition is unanimous in asserting that Mahāvīra died soon after giving this sermon, and that Indrabhūti Gautama, "cutting off love and hatred," attained the noble goal of omniscience on that same day, making it a doubly memorable one for followers of the Jina. He lived on as a kevalin for twelve years, finally entering nirvāṇa in Rājagṛha at the age of 92.

Since the kevalin neither administers nor preaches, Sudharman must have assumed the leadership of the Jaina order upon Indrabhūti Gautama's attainment of omniscience. He also remained sole custodian of the scripture, which now contained, in addition to his own version, the recension handed down in the tradition of Indrabhūti Gautama. This body of sacred material he taught to his disciple Jambū. Most sermons of the extant canon thus begin with Sudharman saying to Jambū: "Oh long-lived One! Thus have I heard the following discourse from the Venerable [Mahāvīra]" (*suyam me āvusam! teṇam bhagavayā evam akkhāyam*). Sudharman taught the scriptures for some twelve years after Mahāvīra's nirvāṇa; in the thirteenth year he himself reached omniscience.

With Sudharman's death in that year (his hundredth), the first generation of the disciples of Mahāvīra came to an end. Jambū then succeeded to leadership of the order and taught for eight years. Upon attaining kevalajñāna and entering nirvāṇa in the sixty-fourth year after Mahāvīra's death, he became the last person in this time cycle to reach mokṣa. The tradition of oral transmission was carried on for a century and a half by his successors in the line of Prabhava, Śayyambhava, Yaśobhadra, and finally Bha-

7. *dumapattae paṇḍuyae jahā nivaḍai rāigaṇāṇa accae/ evam maṇuyāṇa jīviyam, samayam Goyama mā pamāyae//1// kusagge jaha osabimdue, tho-
vam ciṭṭhai lambamāṇae/ evam maṇuyāṇa jīviyam, samayam Goyama mā
pamāyae//2// tiṇṇo hu si aṇṇavam maham, kiṃ puṇa ciṭṭhasi tīramāgao/
abhitura pāram gamittae, samayam Goyama mā pamāyae//35// UtS: x, 1-2, 35.*

drab
mur
of it

The
The
vari
tha)
(scri
cons
worl
dow
gadk

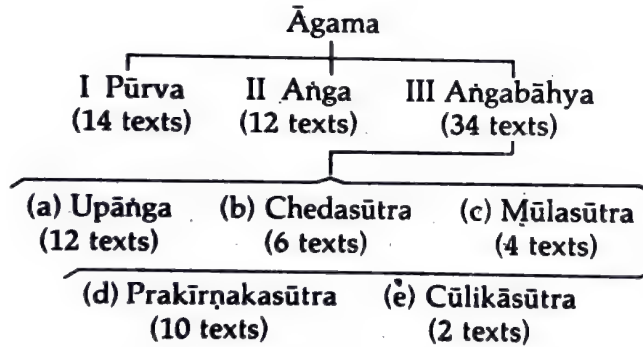
I. T
(1
ya
(5
p.

8.
Jacobi
9.
1941;
10.
guage
referre
anothe
other v
11.
equiv

drabāhu, in whose time, as we have seen, the Jaina community was scattered by famine and suffered a major loss of its canon.⁸

The Literature

The canonical literature (*āgama*) of the Jainas is known variously as *Nigaṇṭha-pāvayāna* (sermons of the Nirgrantha), *gaṇi-piḍaga* (basket of the gaṇadharas), *suya-ñāṇa* (scriptural knowledge), or merely *siddhānta* (doctrine).⁹ It consists of some sixty texts divided into three groups of works known as *pūrva*, *aṅga*, and *aṅgabāhya*, all handed down in an ancient Magadhan language called Ardhamāgadhī:¹⁰



I. The fourteen Pūrvas (all extinct)¹¹

(1) *Utpāda* (*Uppāda*); (2) *Agrāyaṇī* (*Aggāṇiya*); (3) *Vīrya* (*Viriya*); (4) *Astināstipravāda* (*Atthinātthi-pavāya*); (5) *Jñānapravāda* (*Nāṇa-p.*); (6) *Satyappravāda* (*Sacca-p.*); (7) *Ātmapravāda* (*Āya-p.*); (8) *Karmappravāda*

8. For a Jaina history of the patriarchate from Jambū to Bhadrabāhu, see Jacobi 1932: intro, xxxviff.

9. For histories of Jaina literature, see Winternitz 1933: II, 424–595; Kapadia 1941; Schubring 1962: §37–50; Folkert 1976.

10. Ardhamāgadhī was employed only in the most ancient times; the language of extant Śvetāmbara texts is very close to Mahārāṣṭrī Prakrit and is often referred to as Jaina Mahārāṣṭrī by modern scholars. Digambaras adopted another dialect called Śauraseni Prakrit, the language of the *Ṣaṭkhaṇḍāgama* and other works. See NS-ADS: intro, 19.

11. The original Prakrit titles are given in parentheses. I have used Sanskrit equivalents throughout, following the practice adopted by the Jainas.

(Kamma-p.); (9) *Pratyākhyānapravāda* (*Paccakkhāṇa-p.*); (10) *Vidyānuvāda* (*Vijjā-p.*); (11) *Kalyāṇavāda* (*Kallāṇavāda*—also known as *Avanḥa*); (12) *Prāṇavāda* (*Pāṇavāda*); (13) *Kriyāviśāla* (*Kiriyavisāla*); (14) *Lokabindusāra* (*Logabindusāra*).

II. The twelve Aṅgas

(1) *Ācārāṅga-sūtra* (*Āyāraṅga-sutta*); (2) *Sūtrakṛtāṅga* (*Sūyagaḍaṅga*); (3) *Sthānāṅga* (*Ṭhāṇaṅga*); (4) *Samavāyāṅga* (*Samavāyaṅga*); (5) *Bhagavati Vyākhyāprajñapti* (*Bhagavai Viyāhapannatti*); (6) *Jñātrdharmakathā* (*Nāyādhammakahāo*); (7) *Upāsakadaśāḥ* (*Uvāsagadasāo*); (8) *Antakṛddaśāḥ* (*Aṃtagaḍadasāo*); (9) *Anuttara-upapātikadaśāḥ* (*Aṇuttarovavāiyadasāo*); (10) *Praśnavyākaraṇa* (*Paṇhāvāgaraṇāim*); (11) *Vipākaśruta* (*Vivāgasuyam*); (12) *Drṣṭivāda* (*Diṭṭhivāya*), extinct.

III. a. The twelve Upāṅgas

(1) *Aupapātika* (*Uvavāiya*); (2) *Rājaprasnīya* (*Rāyapa-senaiija*); (3) *Jīvājīvābhigama* (*Jīvājīvābhigama*); (4) *Prajñāpanā* (*Pannavaṇā*); (5) *Sūryaprajñapti* (*Sūriyapannatti*); (6) *Jambūdvīpaprajñapti* (*Jambuddīvopannatti*); (7) *Cāndraprajñapti* (*Caṃdapannatti*); (8) *Nirayāvalī* (*Nirayāvalī*); (9) *Kalpāvatamsikāḥ* (*Kappāva-ḍamsiāo*); (10) *Puṣpikāḥ* (*Pupphiāo*); (11) *Puṣpacūlikāḥ* (*Pupphacūliāo*); (12) *Vrṣṇidaśāḥ* (*Vaṇhidasāo*).

b. The six Chedasūtras

(1) *Ācāradaśāḥ* (*Āyāradasāo*); (2) *Brhatkalpa* (*Bihā-kappa*); (3) *Vyavahāra* (*Vavahāra*); (4) *Niśītha* (*Nisīha*); (5) *Mahāniśītha* (*Mahānisīha*); (6) *Jītakalpa* (*Jīyakappa*).

c. The four Mūlasūtras

(1) *Daśavaikālika* (*Dasaveyāliya*); (2) *Uttarādhyayana* (*Uttarajjhayana*); (3) *Āvaśyaka* (*Āvassaya*); (4) *Piṇḍaniryukti* (*Piṇḍanijjutti*).

d. The ten Prakīrṇakasūtras

(1) *Catuḥśaraṇa* (*Causaraṇa*); (2) *Āturapratyākhyāna* (*Āurapaccakkhāṇa*); (3) *Bhaktaparijñā* (*Bhattaparinnā*); (4) *Samstāraka* (*Samthāra*); (5) *Taṇḍulavaicārika* (*Taṇ-dulaveyāliya*); (6) *Candravedhyaka* (*Caṃdāvijjhaya*); (7) *Devendrastava* (*Devimdatthaya*); (8) *Gaṇividyā*

(Gaṇi
na); (1
e.

(1) Na
(Aṇu

I. THE PU
The Pūr
claimed
These te
their cor
seem to
on the m
bondage
tempora
great de
esoteric
Pūrvas w
said to h
tematize
material
which on
believe th
the main
Partly
and perha
this bran

12. All f
the Śvetāmb
recognize on
Upāṅgas, six
lika, Nandī-s
one work kn
culled from
names for th
survived in a
only a few of
It should
canonical tex
scriptures the
Aṅgavidyā (A
13. On the

(*Gaṇivijjā*); (9) *Mahāpratyākhyāna* (*Mahāpaccakkhāna*); (10) *Vīrastava* (*Vīratthaya*).

e. The two *Cūlikāsūtras*

(1) *Nandī-sūtra* (*Naṇḍī-sutta*); (2) *Anuyogadvāra-sūtra* (*Aṇuogaddārāim*).¹²

I. THE PŪRVAS (OLD TEXTS)

The Pūrvas include fourteen works of great antiquity, claimed by the Jainas to go back to the time of Pārśva. These texts are no longer extant, but brief descriptions of their contents have survived in the later literature. They seem to have included the most ancient Jaina speculations on the nature of the cosmos, doctrines pertaining to the bondage of the soul by matter, and polemics against contemporary philosophical schools. They also contained a great deal of Jaina astrology and astronomy, as well as esoteric methods of attaining yogic and occult powers. The Pūrvas were transmitted in an oral tradition (*śruta*) and are said to have been preached anew by Mahāvīra and systematized by the gaṇadharas. Eventually, much of this material was probably integrated into the Aṅga texts, which originated with Mahāvīra himself. Indeed, Jainas believe that the twelfth Aṅga, called *Drṣṭivāda*, contained the main Pūrva teachings.¹³

Partly because it was thus incorporated into the Aṅgas, and perhaps due to the esoteric nature of its subject matter, this branch of the canon appears to have been mastered by

12. All forty-five extant texts referred to here are accepted as canonical by the Śvetāmbaras. Members of the Sthānakavāsi sect (see Ch. IX), however, recognize only thirty-one of these as authentic: the eleven Aṅgas, twelve Upāṅgas, six Chedasūtras, and four texts from various categories (*Daśavaikālika*, *Nandī-sūtra*, and *Anuyogadvāra-sūtra*). They also include in this category one work known as *Āvaśyaka-sūtra*, which seems to be a collection of material culled from various Prakīrṇakasūtras. Digambaras, while retaining identical names for the Pūrva and Aṅga texts, do not admit that any of these have survived in authentic form. Among all the remaining works, they recognize only a few of the Prakīrṇakasūtras as valid scripture.

It should be noted here that in the Śvetāmbara tradition, several extra-canonical texts have gained a status functionally equivalent to that of the scriptures themselves; notable among these are *Rṣibhāṣitāni* (*Isibhāsiyāim*) and *Aṅgavidyā* (*Aṅgavijjā*). For details, see Schubring 1962: §56.

13. On the possible contents of the *Drṣṭivāda*, see Alsdorf 1973.

very few. The Jaina tradition is unanimous in affirming that the great pontiff Bhadrabāhu (circa 300 B.C.) was the last person who knew all fourteen Pūrvas by heart. After him, knowledge of the Pūrvas was lost; most of those mendicants who had memorized portions thereof perished in the great Magadha famine. Thus no more than a small part of the *Drṣṭivāda* seems to have been recited at the first Jaina council, held under the leadership of Sthūlabhadra.

Even this incomplete *Drṣṭivāda* was totally lost from the Śvetāmbara tradition in a subsequent period. But the Digambaras were able to preserve a few sections dealing with karma theory from the third book, called *Pūrvagata* (That which belongs to the Pūrva). These were transmitted by the Digambara mendicant Dharasena (circa A.D. 156) to his disciples Puṣpadanta and Bhūtabali, who in turn committed the teaching to writing. The resulting work, known as *Ṣaṭkhaṇḍāgama* (Scripture in six parts), was probably the first written scripture of the Jainas. Soon thereafter another Digambara mendicant named Guṇabhadra, drawing upon the same sources as had Dharasena, compiled a second work called *Kaṣāyaprābhṛta*. Both of these early texts deal with Jaina theories of bondage of the soul, and were probably comprehensible only to the most advanced mendicant scholars of the day. Voluminous commentaries are reported to have been written on them, most notably Vīrasena's *Dhavalā* (The luminous) on the *Ṣaṭkhaṇḍāgama* (A.D. 800) and Jinasena's *Jayadhavalā* (The victoriously luminous) on the *Kaṣāyaprābhṛta* (A.D. 820).¹⁴ The texts and their commentaries run altogether to some 120,000 verses; preserved on palm-leaf manuscripts (perhaps the oldest of their kind to have been found in India), they have only recently been critically edited and published.

14. This entire literature consists of some thirty-eight volumes (16 volumes of the *Dhavalā*, 7 of the *Mahādhavalā*, and 15 of the *Jayadhavalā*). It compares well with the Śvetāmbara literature on the doctrine of karma, known as the *Karmagrantha* of Devendrasūri (fourteenth century), vols. I-VI. See Glasenapp 1942: xii-xx.

The
canon
of thi
Aṅga
the se

For
The D
order
ticity
is also
canon
migrat
bulk
case,
that h
able to
bāhya
the D
which
must h
was he
guidan

The
also all
(in Sau
rjuna.
to reso
such a
and las
980 or
in A.D.

15. In
mastered i
Nemicand
sidered the
of the wo
1958: 94-1

16. See

The *Ṣaṭkhaṇḍāgama* and *Kaṣāyaprābhṛta* are the only canonical works that the Digambaras possess;¹⁵ followers of this tradition have consistently maintained that the Aṅga and Aṅgabāhya texts were "totally lost" as early as the second century A.D.

Fortunately, however, the loss was not really "total." The Digambaras perhaps first adopted this expression in order to reject, for reasons discussed earlier, the authenticity of scriptures retained by their Śvetāmbara rivals. It is also likely that the former sect actually did lose whatever canonical materials they may have possessed during their migration to the south and subsequent isolation from the bulk of the Jaina mendicant community. Whatever the case, the Śvetāmbaras who had inherited the scriptures that had been approved at the Pāṭaliputra council were able to preserve large portions of the Aṅga and the Aṅgabāhya materials, even though they had lost the Pūrvas and the *Drṣṭivāda* Aṅga. We do not know the earliest date at which they began to put the canon into written form; this must have taken place prior to the second council, which was held at Mathura in the fourth century A.D. under the guidance of Pontiff Skandila (A.D. 300–343).

The Śvetāmbara tradition that speaks of this council also alludes to another synod held concurrently at Valabhi (in Saurashtra) under the supervision of one ācārya Nāgārjuna. It is said that the two leaders could not meet in order to resolve the differences in their recensions at that time; such a resolution was accomplished, however, by a third and last council, again in Valabhi, which took place either 980 or 993 years after Mahāvīra's nirvāṇa (that is, either in A.D. 453 or 466).¹⁶ The leader of this meeting, Devardhi-

15. In medieval times this literature was known as *siddhānta*, and one who mastered it was honored by the title *siddhānta-cakravartī*. The famous author Nemicaṇḍra (A.D. 950) was a scholar of this type; his *Gommaṣasāra* was considered the most sacred of available Digambara texts until the recent discovery of the works noted above. For an analysis of the *Gommaṣasāra*, see Jindal 1958: 94–186.

16. See Kapadia 1941: 63.

gaṇi Kṣamāśramaṇa, compiled the final redaction of the extant canon and had it committed to writing in its entirety.¹⁷

II. THE AṅGAS (LIMBS)

The Aṅgas, so called because they were seen as components of the body of scripture, include twelve texts; of these only the twelfth, the aforementioned *Drṣṭivāda*, is no longer extant. There is also a subsidiary canon, the *Aṅgabāhya* (Outside the limbs), which is a collection of miscellaneous texts that in some cases originate not from Mahāvīra directly but from certain Elders (*sthaviras*) of a later date. The overall canon in its present form cannot be claimed to go back to the times of Mahāvīra. Hermann Jacobi, who prepared the first critical edition and translation of the *Ācārāṅga* (the first Aṅga),¹⁸ has established that the canon was recited neither in a single period nor by a single individual. The appearance of different spellings for the same word indicate Prakrit recitations from various periods. It is also possible to find long, archaic chapters side by side with relatively modern ones in a single work; this strongly suggests the attempt to fill in a previously incomplete version.¹⁹ There are even entire texts (for example, the tenth Aṅga, called *Praśnavyākaraṇa*) the contents of which are at variance with the descriptions applied to them in older sources, indicating that later substitutions were made for materials lost in the process of oral transmission. In spite of all such omissions, additions, and

17. "śrīDevarddhigaṇikṣamāśramaṇena śrīVirād aśītyadhikanavaśata (980) varṣe jātēna dvādaśavarṣīyadurbhikṣavaśād bahutarasādhuvyāpattau bahuśrutavicchittau ca jātāyām . . . bhaviṣyadbhavyalokopakārāya śrutabhaktaye ca śrīsaṅghāgrahād mṛtāvaśiṣṭatadākālīnasarvasādhūn Valabhyām ākārya tanmukhād avicchinnāvaśiṣṭān nyūnādhikān truṭitānutruṭitān āgamālāpakān anukrameṇa svamatyā saṅkalayya pustakārūḍhāḥ kṛtāḥ. tato mūlato gaṇadharabhāṣitānām api āgamānām kartā śrīDevarddhigaṇikṣamāśramaṇa eva jātāḥ." Quoted in Kapadia 1941: 63, n. 1 (from the *Sāmācārīśataka* of Samayasundara).

18. *The Āyāraṅga Sutta of the Śvetāmbara Jains*, London, 1882, tr. Jacobi 1884.

19. Compare, e.g., the eighth lecture of AS (§462-522), bk. I, with the obviously older materials of lectures 1-7 (§1-461).

mod
must
disc
and

TH
four
view
of th
(Con
It re
vows
minu
tions
requi
Ācār
its ex
mend
certai
Mahā
metri
extan
own v

A
motiv
"false
of tea
taken
(fatali
akriyā
annihil
all are
inferio
reality

The
kind of

20. T

modifications, a considerable portion of the extant canon must be considered authentic, reflecting (at least in those discussions where sectarian conflict is absent) the earliest and most basic teachings of Mahāvīra.

The eleven Aṅga texts can be broadly categorized into four areas: ecclesiastical law; the examination of false views; doctrine; and finally, narratives for the edification of the laity. The first Aṅga, appropriately called *Ācāra* (Conduct), forms the law book for Jaina monks and nuns. It regulates their conduct by delineating the obligatory vows (such as the vow to avoid injuring even the most minute forms of life), and also by giving specific instructions pertaining to permissible methods for obtaining such requisites as food, clothing, lodging, and medicine. The *Ācārāṅga* is accorded great reverence, not only because its explication of the law forms the very foundation of mendicant conduct, but also because it contains what is certainly our most authoritative account of the life of Mahāvīra. The work has been judged on linguistic and metrical grounds to comprise the oldest portion of the extant canon, and it may well have preserved Mahāvīra's own words on the cardinal doctrine of *ahiṃsā* (noninjury).

A person may enter monastic life with the noblest of motives and yet be led into "wrong" paths by advocates of "false," that is, heretical, doctrines. A critical examination of teachings opposed to that of the Jina is therefore undertaken in the *Sūtrakṛta*, the second Aṅga.²⁰ *Niyativāda* (fatalism), *ajñānavāda* (agnosticism), and several types of *akriyāvāda* (nonaction)—Sāṃkhya eternalism, Cārvāka annihilationism, and others—are discussed in this Aṅga; all are rejected as being one-sided (*ekāntavāda*) and thus inferior to the comprehensive (*anekānta*) Jaina view of reality.

The third Aṅga volume, entitled *Sthāna* (Cases), is a kind of encyclopedia; it considers an almost bewilderingly

20. Translated by Jacobi 1895: 235-435.

detailed variety of doctrinal issues in a schematic way, calculated to aid in their memorization and comprehension.

The fourth Aṅga, *Samavāya* (Putting together), is a continuation of the third. It preserves what is probably the earliest record of the contents of the twelve Aṅgas, and is therefore of great importance in determining the authenticity of the extant canon.

The fifth, *Vyākhyāprajñapti* (Proclamation of explanations) is by far the most voluminous work of the entire canon.²¹ Countless questions, asked by Indrabhūti Gautama, fill the text. Mahāvīra's answers demonstrate his unique method of responding to each question with a statement "subject to qualifications" (*syādvāda*).²² This practice was to have a profound effect upon the development of Jaina philosophy; thus we find the *Vyākhyāprajñapti* held in high esteem and referred to as *Bhagavatī*, the venerable. The *Bhagavatī* is also of great historical importance, containing the controversial episodes of Mahāvīra's encounters with the Ājīvika teacher Makkhali Gosālā and the events that culminated in the latter's tragic death.

The remaining Aṅgas, with the exception of the tenth, can be grouped under the genre of *kathā*, narratives intended for the edification of the laity. The sixth, *Jñātṛdharmakathāḥ*,²³ sets the tone for such religious tales (*dharma-kathā*), which came to be a favorite genre among Jains of the medieval period.²⁴ Of special importance in this text is the narrative concerning Malli, the female Tīrthaṅkara of the Śvetāmbara sect. The next (seventh) Aṅga,

21. For a study and analysis of this work, see Sikdar 1964; Deleu 1970: intro. 17-50.

22. The following provides a good example of such a dialogue: *jīvā ṇaṃ bhaṃtel kiṃ sāsaya, asāsaya? Goyamāl jīvā siya sāsaya, siya asāsaya. se kiṇaṭṭheṇaṃ bhaṃtel evaṃ vuccai "jīvā siya sāsaya, siya asāsaya"? Goyamāl dāvvaṭṭhayāe sāsaya, bhāvaṭṭhayāe asāsaya; se teṇaṭṭheṇaṃ Goyamāl evaṃ vuccai " . . . jāva siya asāsaya."* *BhS*: vii, 2 (§273).

23. See Schubring 1962: §46.

24. For a survey of the Jaina narrative literature (*kathā*), see Upadhye's intro. to the *Bṛhatkathākośa*; Ghatge 1934.

Upāsaka
men; we
these, th

The
daśāḥ²⁶
treme a
practice
those w
takṛddā
the twe
tāra Kṛṣṇ
describe
his expl

The t
mahāvīr
not agre
style too
version
until aft

The
work de
results (
formed
Miyapu
previous
stories,
must ha
doing an
a mendi

III. THE
The Aṅ
the gaṇa

25. Tra

26. Tra

27. See

Upāsaka-daśāḥ,²⁵ sets forth the lives of ten exemplary laymen; we will have occasion to look more closely at one of these, the tale of Ānanda, in a later chapter.

The *Antakṛddasāḥ* (eight) and the *Anuttaraupapātika-daśāḥ*²⁶ (nine) recount legends of monks undergoing extreme austerities. The former describes individuals whose practice leads them to nirvāṇa, while the latter deals with those who attain rebirth in the highest heavens. The *Antakṛddasāḥ* contains several stories set in the time of Nemi, the twenty-second Tīrthaṅkara. The famous Hindu *avatāra* Kṛṣṇa is here integrated into Jaina mythology by being described as the nephew of Nemi; several stories deal with his exploits.

The tenth Aṅga, called *Praśnavyākaraṇa*, delineates the mahāvratas. As above, the content of the extant text does not agree with that ascribed to it in the *Samavāya*. The style too betrays a later hand, and it seems likely that the version which has come down to us was not composed until after the last Valabhi council (A.D. 450).²⁷

The eleventh and last Aṅga is the *Vipākaśruta*. This work deals with the irrevocable law of karma; the sorts of results (*vipāka*) that follow from good and bad deeds performed in previous lives are vividly described. The tale of Miyaputta, born with a terribly deformed body due to previous sinful conduct, dominates the collection. These stories, which depict ten good and ten evil "outcomes," must have acted both as powerful deterrents to wrongdoing and as inducements to undertaking the holy life of a mendicant.

III. THE AṅGABĀHYA

The Aṅgabāhya (Subsidiary canon) originates not with the gaṇadharas but with the sthaviras, mendicant authors

25. Translated by A. F. R. Hoernle 1890.

26. Translated by L. D. Barnett 1907.

27. See NS-ADS: intro. 28.

of a subsequent period.²⁸ In ancient times this collection was also known as *Prakīrṇaka* (The miscellaneous)²⁹ and contained some eighteen texts, mostly employed in confessional rites; a large number of these have survived.³⁰ This group formed the nucleus of the extant Śvetāmbara Aṅgabāhya, which probably reached its present form at or around the time of the Valabhi council and comprises thirty-four texts arranged in five groups: Upāṅga, Cheda-sūtra, Mūlasūtra, Prakīrṇakasūtra, and Cūlikāsūtra.

a. The Upāṅgas.—The Upāṅga (Subsidiary to the Aṅga) consists of twelve texts, mostly narratives addressed to the laity. The first, *Aupapātika*, opens with a beautiful description of the grand reception accorded Mahāvīra by King Kūṇika and his subjects when the Jina arrived in a park outside the city of Campā. This section is called *samavasaraṇa* (The coming together), a term that figured significantly in later ideas of the “holy assembly” of the Tīrthaṅkara; representation of such an assembly, moreover, became an important feature of Jaina art and temple architecture.

The main story of the *Aupapātika* concerns the extraordinary behavior of a group of non-Jaina mendicants (*parivrājakas*). Finding themselves in a forest with no access to any laypersons (the only acceptable source of alms), they bravely chose to face death by fasting rather

28. gaṇadharakayamaṃgagayaṃ, jaṃ kata therehi bāhiraṃ taṃ tu/ niya-taṃ vaṃgapaviṭṭhaṃ, aṇiyayasuyabāhiraṃ bhaṇiyaṃ// Quoted in *Nandisūtra* [Haribhadra's *Vṛtti*]: §79.

29. See NS-ADS: intro. 23.

30. Two ancient lists have survived: (1) Umāsvāti's *Tattvārthabhāṣya* (i, 20) accepted only by the Śvetāmbara tradition as an authentic work of this author) enumerates the following texts under the category of Aṅgabāhya: *Sāmāyika*, *Caturviṃśatistava*, *Vandana*, *Pratikramaṇa*, *Kāyavyutsarga*, *Pratyākhyāna*, *Daśavaikālika*, *Uttarādhyayana*, *Daśā*, *Kalpa-vyavahāra*, *Niśītha*, *Ṛṣibhāṣita*, and so on. (2) Vīrasena's *Dhavalāṭīkā*, accepted by the Digambara tradition, gives a somewhat different version: *tattha Aṅgabāhirassa coddasa atthāhiyārā, taṃ jahā Sāmāiyaṃ, Cauvīsattthao, Vaṃdaṇā, Paḍikammaṃ, Venāiyaṃ, Kidiyammaṃ, Dasaveyāliyaṃ, Uttarajjhayaṇaṃ, Kappavavahāro, Kappākappiyaṃ, Mahākappiyaṃ, Puṇḍarīyaṃ, Mahāpuṇḍarīyaṃ, Nisīhiyaṃ cedi. Dhavalāṭīkā*: I, 96. For a concordance of these two lists, see NS-ADS: intro. 21ff.

than b
what i
to a br
of a Ja
to tak
voking
broug

It sh
of any
tainin
Aupap
kinds
heretic
genera
ting ev
derline
mendic
of the

The
between
(Prasen
soul. T
reasons
sirājañ
and it e
doctrin
who is
destroy
mans o

31. iha
adīṇṇaṃ
saṃthārae
pāovagaya
tra: §38.

32. Or

33. Aj
abode cal
bhavaṃti
yāyaṃ pāu
vattāro bh

than breaking their vow of *adattādāna-virati* (not taking what is not given).³¹ Although these mendicants belonged to a brahmanical order, they had at one time been disciples of a Jaina layman named Ammaḍa; thus they now decided to take refuge in Mahāvīra (becoming his disciples by invoking his name) and to fast to death.³² This holy conduct brought about their rebirth (*upapāta*) in heavenly abodes.

It should be noted here that Jains admit the possibility of any mendicant, regardless of sectarian affiliation, attaining to the heavens, so long as he keeps his vows; the *Aupapātika* even provides specific information about the kinds of heavens that are open to members of various heretic orders.³³ This story, moreover, goes beyond a mere generalized emphasis upon adherence to vows; by depicting even death as preferable to improper conduct, it underlines the belief of Mahāvīra's followers that no other mendicants are as strongly committed as they to the rules of the holy life.

The second Upāṅga, called *Rājaprasnīya*, is a dialogue between a Jaina mendicant named Keśi and one King Pāesi (Prasenajit) of Seyaviyā concerning the existence of the soul. This work is of great historical importance for two reasons: it resembles, in both form and content, the Pāyā-sirājaññasutta of the Buddhist canon (*Dīghanikāya*: II.x.), and it employs a disciple of Pārśva as a proponent of Jaina doctrine. The story begins with a description of the king, who is a ruler bereft of righteousness. Harsh and cruel, the destroyer of many animals, he shows no respect to brahmins or ascetics and scourges his subjects with unbearable

31. iha ṇaṃ devānuppiyā! udagadātāro ṇatthi taṃ ṇo khalu kappai ahme adinṇaṃ giṇhittae adinṇaṃ sāijjittae, taṃ seyaṃ khalu amhaṃ . . . vāluṃ-saṃthārae saṃtharittā saṃlehaṇājhosiyaṇaṃ bhattapāṇapaḍiyāikkhiyaṇaṃ pāvogayāṇaṃ kālaṃ aṇavakaṃkhamāṇaṃ viharittae . . . *Aupapātika-sūtra*: §38.

32. On this holy practice, called *sallekhanā*, see Ch. VII.

33. Ājivika mendicants, for example, are said to attain an exalted heavenly abode called *Acyuta-kalpa*: se je ime gāmāgāra jāva saṃnivesesu Ājivikā bhavaṃti . . . teṇaṃ eyārūveṇaṃ vihāreṇaṃ viharamāṇā bahūiṃ vāsāiṃ pari-yāyaṃ pāuṇittā kālamāse kālaṃ kiccā ukkoseṇaṃ Accue Kappe devattāe uvavattāro bhavaṃti . . . *Aupapātika-sūtra*: §40.

taxation. At one time, this king sent his charioteer Citta to the neighboring city of Śrāvastī, where it happened that Keśi, a lifelong celibate (*kumāra-śramaṇa*) ordained in the discipline of Pārśva (*Pāsāvaccijja*), was also in temporary residence.³⁴ Upon listening to the mendicant's sermon on the four-fold restraint, Citta became Keśi's disciple;³⁵ returning to Seyaviyā, he persuaded the king to visit his new teacher.

The subsequent exchange between Keśi and the skeptical Pāesi is valuable in that it brings to light various popular notions regarding the soul, as well as the Jaina theories that were put forth to counter those of the materialists and of the brahmanical schools.³⁶ The *Rājaprasānīya* presents an important Jaina concept regarding the "dimensions" of the soul, stated in what is probably its most ancient form. Almost every soul-affirming Indian system holds that the soul, being nonmaterial, is totally free from limits and therefore all-pervasive (*vibhu*). Only the Jainas have posited a soul which is nonmaterial and yet subject to contraction and expansion when in its mundane state; such a soul is therefore of the same dimension as its body (*svadeha-parimāṇa*). King Pāesi asks, pertinently, whether such a soul would not lose weight when reincarnating from a large body into a small one, and if this process would not eventually result in its destruction. Keśi responds by introducing an important Jaina technical term, *agurulaghutva*, which designates a quality (*guṇa*) whereby there is neither gain (*guru*) nor loss (*laghu*) in the innate extent of a soul

34. *teṇaṃ kāleṇaṃ teṇaṃ samaṇaṃ Pāsāvaccijje Keśi nāmaṃ kumāra-samaṇe jāisaṃpanne kulasaṃpanne . . . caudasapuvvī caunāṇovagae paṃcahiṃ aṇaḡārasaehiṃ saddhiṃ saṃparivude . . . Sāvattihīe nayaṛīe bahiyā koṭṭhae ujjāṇe . . . saṃjameṇaṃ tavaṣā appāṇaṃ bhāvēmaṇe viharai. Rājaprasānīya-sūtra: §48.*

35. *tae ṇaṃ se Keśi kumārasamaṇe Cittassa sārāhissa tīse mahaimahāliyaē mahaccaparisaē cāujjāmaṃ dhammaṃ parikahe. taṃ jahā: savvāo pāṇāivāyāo veramaṇaṃ, savvāo musāvāyāo veramaṇaṃ, savvāo adinnādāṇāo veramaṇaṃ, savvāo bahiddhādāṇāo veramaṇaṃ. Ibid.: §50.*

36. "Paesi, amhaṃ samaṇāṇaṃ Nigganthāṇaṃ esā sannā . . . jahā anno jīvo annaṃ sarīraṃ no taṃ jīvo taṃ sarīraṃ." Ibid.: §61.

even v
body
exam
wheth

The
cant i
pling
that t
under
Mahā
calcul
antiqu
Pāesi
His qu
dedica
new a
so cor
of fast
dicant
though
and h
story
becom

The
sentier
these
totalit
opens

37. e
yassa mu

38. t
jānittā
teṇeva
māse kā

39. n
siyaṃ . .
maṃ ajj
Tīrthānk
Ch. VI n

even when it undergoes fluctuations to "fit" one particular body or another.³⁷ Such a process is illustrated by the example of a piece of cloth, which retains its original mass whether it is folded or spread out.

The notion of *agurulaghutva* became especially significant in later literature, when Jaina scholastics began grappling with the fundamental problem of change. The fact that this doctrine of "no *essential* change in the soul, even under conditions of defilement" is here enunciated not by Mahāvīra, but by a member of the older school, seems calculated to lend it greater authority by virtue of increased antiquity. The *Rājaprasānīya* goes on to tell us that King Pāesi was converted and became a Jaina layman (*upāsaka*). His queen, who like her husband had for many years been dedicated to the hedonistic life, could not bear the king's new austerity and poisoned him. But Pāesi had changed so completely that he went immediately to the public hall of fasting (*posaha-sālā*) where, taking the vows of a mendicant, he peacefully laid down his body; not a single thought of ill will towards his wife had entered his mind, and he was instantly reborn in a heavenly abode.³⁸ The story ends with the prophecy that Pāesi will eventually become a mendicant and attain *nirvāṇa*.

The third *Upāṅga*, *Jīvājīvābhigama* (Understanding the sentient and the insentient), is devoted to a discussion of these two modes of being, which together describe the totality of existents set forth in Jaina ontology. The work opens with a salutation to the twenty-four Tīrthaṅkaras,³⁹

37. *evāmeva Paesī, jīvassa agurulahuyattaṃ paḍucca jīvaṃtassa vā tuliyaṃsa muyassa vā tuliyaṃsa natthi kei āṇatte vā-jāva lahuyatte vā . . . Ibid.: §67.*

38. *tāe ṇaṃ se Paesī rāyā Sūriyakamṭāe devīe attāṇaṃ sampaladdhaṃ jāṇittā Sūriyakamṭāe devīe maṇasā vi appadussamāṇe jeṇeva posahasālā teṇeva uvāgacchi . . . dabbhasamṭhāragamṃ samṭharei . . . samāhipatte kāla-māse kālaṃ kiccā . . . Ibid.: §76.*

39. *ṇaṃ Usabhāiyāṇaṃ titthayaṇāṇaṃ. iha khalu jīṇamayaṃ . . . jīṇade-siyaṃ . . . aṇuvīya taṃ . . . roemāṇā therā bhagavaṃto Jīvājīvābhigamaṇā-maṃ ajjhayaṇaṃ paṇṇaviṃsu. Jīvājīvābhigama-sūtra: §1.* For the names of the Tīrthaṅkaras, as well as a description of their iconographic representations, see Ch. VI n. 19.

indicating that widespread belief in these exalted figures goes back to a very early period. The *Jīvājīvābhigama* is a virtual compendium of Jainism presented in dialogue form; the chief interlocutor, just as in the *Vyākhyāprajñapti* Aṅga, is Indrabhūti Gautama.

The fourth Upāṅga, called *Prajñāpanā* (Explanations), claims to present the essence of the long-lost *Drṣṭivāda* or twelfth Aṅga. Being the sole representative of the extinct Pūrva traditions, as well as of the *Drṣṭivāda*, the *Prajñāpanā* is viewed with great reverence by Śvetāmbaras, who refer to it as *Bhagavatī* (a title normally applied only to the Aṅga text *Vyākhyāprajñapti*). In both style and content the *Prajñāpanā* resembles the *Ṣaṭkhaṇḍāgama* of the Digambaras, indicating that both derive from similar, if not identical, traditions.⁴⁰ The work is rather voluminous, consisting of some thirty-six chapters in which the author considers the *jīva* (soul) in its manifold aspects: births (*gati*), sense organs (*indriya*), bodies (*śarīra*), language (*bhāṣā*), sexual feelings (*veda*), passions (*kaṣāya*), karma, the spiritual path (*saṃvara*), and so on. It is further distinguished by the fact that its authorship is known; the writer was apparently a monk called Ārya Śyāma, who flourished circa 79 B.C.⁴¹

The next three Upāṅgas, *Jambūdvīpaprajñapti*, *Sūryaprajñapti* and *Candraprajñapti*, deal respectively with cosmology, movements of the sun, and movements of the moon. Jambūdvīpa, as we have seen earlier, is the center of the universe (*loka-ākāśa*); it is of primary interest to the Jainas in that it contains the "continent" of Bharata (Bharata-kṣetra), one of the few areas of habitation where Tīrthaṅkaras are born and where other human beings may obtain mokṣa by following their teachings. The *Jambūd-*

40. For a comparison of the two texts, see Malvania 1969.

41. *suyasāgarā viṇeūṇa jeṇa suyarayaṇamuttamaṃ dinnam/ sīsagaṇassa bhagavaṃ tassa namo Ajjasāmassa// ajjihayaṇamiṇaṃ cittam suyarayaṇam Diṭṭhivāyaṇīsaṃdam/ jaha vanniyaṃ bhagavayā ahamavi taha vannaissāmi//* *Prajñāpanā-sūtra*: §1, 4-5. On the date of Ārya Śyāma, see Malvania 1969: 43ff.

vīpapra
progres
cycles;
tion, wh
lished t
significa
first Jin
set up s
later tin
originat
see in a
gated w
absorpt

Of st
Rṣabha
versal m
(probab
named.
Bharata
to the la
wealth
conduct
seeming
from his
worldly
renounc
The stor
else sugg
out first

Digar
trary to
great pu
had actu

42. See
refer to oth
devī, below

vīpaprajñapti furnishes a great mass of information on the progressive (*utsarpiṇī*) and regressive (*avasarpiṇī*) time cycles; it also discusses the dawn of current human civilization, when Rṣabha, first Tīrthaṅkara of our period, established the new tīrtha. The legends of Rṣabha are of great significance, expressing the Jaina attempt to show that the first Jina was also the first lawgiver, the individual who set up secular as well as spiritual laws for mankind. At a later time, Jaina teachers proclaimed Rṣabha to be the originator of even the caste system; this idea, as we shall see in a subsequent chapter (IX, nn. 24–28), was promulgated with the aim of protecting the Jaina laity from total absorption by brahmanical institutions.

Of still greater importance is the legend pertaining to Rṣabha's eldest son, Bharata, the first cakravartin (Universal monarch), after whom the Jainas' "Bharata-kṣetra" (probably identical with the Indian subcontinent) is named. Although he had conquered the entire realm, Bharata is said to have been an ideal Jaina king, adhering to the layman's vow of nonviolence and unattached to his wealth and domain. So pure was his heart, so perfect his conduct, and so firm his faith in Jaina doctrine that the seemingly trivial event of seeing a ring fall accidentally from his finger made him realize the futility and vanity of worldly wealth; then and there, even without formally renouncing the household life, he attained to kevalajñāna. The story of Bharata is unique in that the canon nowhere else suggests the possibility of achieving omniscience without first taking the mendicant vows.⁴²

Digambaras totally reject this particular episode as contrary to the Law, but they do consider Bharata a man of great purity who attained to kevalajñāna as soon as he had actually become a monk. He reigns supreme in their

42. See *Jambūdvīpaprajñapti-sūtra*: §70. Later Śvetāmbara literature does refer to other instances of such an achievement; see, e.g., the story of Marudevī, below, Ch. VII n. 25.

purāṇas and romances as a sage among kings, an ideal layman whose true vision (*samyak-darśana*) was never flawed by the vicissitudes of worldly existence.⁴³

The remaining five Upāṅgas (*Nirayāvalī*, *Kalpāvataṃsīkāḥ*, *Puṣpikāḥ*, *Puṣpacūlikāḥ* and *Vṛṣṇidaśāḥ*)⁴⁴ may have originally formed the nucleus of the entire collection; they are mainly narratives describing various laymen and laywomen who engage in good and evil actions and then reap the fruits appropriate thereto. The last text, *Vṛṣṇidaśāḥ*, is of particular interest in that it contains legends pertaining to Nemi; like the eighth Aṅga (*Antakṛddāśāḥ*), it incorporates many stories about members of the Vṛṣṇi clan, especially Kṛṣṇa and Balarāma.

b. The Chedasūtras.—Another important group of works is that of the Chedasūtras, which could collectively be called a Jaina “book of discipline” (Vinaya Piṭaka). This group originally consisted of seven texts, *Ācāradaśāḥ*, *Brhatkalpa*, *Vyavahāra*, *Niśītha*, *Mahāniśītha*, *Pañcakalpa*, and *Jītakalpa*, of which all but the sixth are extant. The *Brhatkalpa*, *Vyavahāra*, and *Niśītha* are known to be the works of Bhadrabāhu (circa 300 B.C.).

Cheda is a technical term in Jaina ecclesiastical law; it refers to a reduction in a monk’s seniority, accompanied by appropriate expiation (usually fasting), for offences committed. The first text, *Ācāradaśāḥ*⁴⁵ (also dalled *Daśāśrutaskandha*), is a compendium of such rules. It lists, for example, twenty-one offences (*śabala*) against the vows of monkhood, thirty-three kinds of disrespects (*āsātanā*) to the elders (particularly those shown by a student to his preceptor), eight qualifications (*sampadā*) of a leader (*gaṇin*) of the order, and twelve kinds of progressively more difficult austerities (*bhikṣu-pratimā*). There is also a fairly

43. Especially noteworthy is a Kannada romance by Ratnākara Varṇī (circa 1500) entitled *Bharateśavaibhava*, which seeks to synthesize the paths of renunciation and lay discipline.

44. See Deleu 1969.

45. See Caillat 1965, 1968; and Schubring 1966.

detail
saka-
incre
activ
menc

Th
kalpa
rainy
in a
must
with
conta
the S
in the
made
a coll
of suc
short
which
publi
Th
to fu
detail
forth
again
reade
study

46.

47.

48.

Trac

over 1,
of Vala
other to
beautifu
attest to

49.

1966; f
Schubri

detailed account of the eleven stages of laymanship (*upāsaka-pratimā*). These stages together make up a course of increasingly more comprehensive renunciation of worldly activities, eventually bringing the layman to the brink of mendicancy.⁴⁶

The eighth chapter of *Ācāradaśāḥ*, entitled *Paryuṣaṇa-kalpa* or *Sāmācārī*, gives rules for monastic life during the rainy season. Since monks and nuns are obliged to remain in a particular place while the monsoon continues, they must at that time undergo an unusual amount of contact with lay society. The spiritual hazards of such extended contact are well-known; hence the strictures laid down by the *Sāmācārī* serve a useful and highly regarded function in the life of the mendicant. The chapter has in fact been made into a separate book, to which are appended both a collective biography of the Jinās (*Jinacarita*) and a lineage of successors to the gaṇadharas (*Sthavirāvalī*). These three short works together comprise the so-called *Kalpa-sūtra*,⁴⁷ which is recited even today during the annual ceremony of public confession and forgiveness known as *saṃvatsarī*.⁴⁸

The remaining portions of the Chedasūtras are devoted to further codification of monastic law.⁴⁹ They furnish details on what constitutes transgressions, as well as setting forth appropriate proceedings (*vyavahāra*) to be brought against offenders. Although of little interest to the general reader, these texts are tremendously useful to anyone studying the growth of the monastic community. They

46. See Ch. VI.

47. Translated by Jacobi 1884: 217-311.

48. On *saṃvatsarī*, see Ch. VII.

Tradition holds that the *Kalpa-sūtra* has been used in public recitation for over 1,500 years, ever since Devarddhigaṇi chanted it before King Dhruvasena of Valabhi to relieve the latter's grief over the death of his son. Indeed, no other text has achieved such popularity among Jainas; the many ornate and beautifully illustrated manuscripts of the work that have come down to us attest to this esteem. See Brown 1934. (See pl. 12.)

49. For details on the *Vyavahāra* and *Niśītha*, see Schubring (with Caillat) 1966; for *Mahāniśītha*, see Hamm (with Schubring) 1951 and Deleu (with Schubring) 1963.

also provide valuable insight into the numerous restrictions imposed upon itself by that community, mainly in order to preserve its integrity in the face of increasing dependence upon the laity.

c. The Mūlasūtras.—Of the four Mūlasūtras, three have been preserved. One, the *Daśavaikālika*,⁵⁰ contains ten lectures (*adhyayana*) and two appendices (*cūlikā*) which together formed the material for study “beyond the prescribed hours” (*vaikālika*). The work is ascribed to Ārya Śayyambhava (circa 429 B.C.), who is said to have compiled it for his son Maṇaka. It begins with a declaration that dharma, the Law, consists of *ahiṃsā*, *saṃyama* (restraint), and *tapas* (austerity), and that even the gods bow down to one who abides by this Law.⁵¹

The lectures are mostly in verse and cover a variety of topics pertaining to the monastic life. The first, called *Druma-puṣpika* (Trees and flowers), compares the begging habits of a mendicant to the activity of a bee, who gathers honey by moving gently from flower to flower without ever becoming a burden. The second warns that a monk should guard his senses, for “How will he remain an ascetic if he does not shun sense-pleasure? Sinking at each step, he will fall under the control of lustful thoughts.”⁵² It goes on to tell a famous story concerning Rājimati, bride of Prince Nemi. When Nemi abandoned her to follow the mendicant path (for he was to become the twenty-second Tīrthaṅkara in that very life), Rājimati took the vows of a nun. At some later time she was caught in a sudden rainstorm and retired to a cave to dry her clothing. There she was faced with amorous advances by Nemi’s younger brother, himself a monk; rather than give in to the man’s

50. Translated by K. C. Lalwani 1973.

51. dhammo maṃgalam ukkiṭṭhaṃ, ahiṃsā saṃjamo tavo/ devā vi taṃ namaṃsaṃti, jassa dhamme siyā maṇo// *Daśavaikālika-sūtra*: §i, 1.

52. kahaṃ nu kujjā sāmaṇṇaṃ, jo kāme na nivārae/ pae pae viṣīyaṃto, saṃkappaṣsa vasaṃ gao// *Ibid.*: §ii, 1.

desi
the
vow

Sl
cr
be
gr
w
an

This
and
today

T
ates
men
cian
of a
him
neith
may
He
assis
their
sum
ing
seas

In
bein
refra
eral

53
seya
vāyā
54
55
mohā

desires, she admonished him in terms that well illustrate the Jaina attitude towards those who fall away from their vows:

Shame on you, who seek defeat! Shame, that you should crave for that which has been once abandoned. It would be better for you to die keeping your vows than to live in disgrace! And if you continue to feel desire whenever you see a woman, surely, oh unfortunate one, you will lose stability and will be destroyed like a boat assailed by strong winds!⁵³

This legend has formed the basis of several popular dramas and narratives, still widely read and told among Jains today.

The third lecture, entitled Kṣudrakācāra-kathā, enumerates fifty-two kinds of conduct that are not permitted to members of the mendicant community.⁵⁴ A Jaina renunciant must not, for example, receive food from the palace of a king, or food which is specially cooked or bought for him; neither may he store it nor eat it after sunset. He must neither bathe nor brush his teeth, nor sponge his body; he may not fan himself, or wear sandals, or use an umbrella. He must not live with a householder, or serve him, or assist him in his profession. Jaina ascetics are praised for their austerity and commended for "suffering heat in the summer, remaining uncovered in the winter, and remaining within shelters, fully restricted, during the rainy season."⁵⁵

In the fourth lecture we read of the six kinds of living beings (*ṣaṭ-jīva-nikāya*) and of the duty of a mendicant to refrain from hurting them. This lecture also contains several highly inspiring verses which admonish the monk to

53. dhiratthu te 'jasokāmī, jo taṃ jīviyakāraṇā/ vaṃtaṃ icchasi āveuṃ, seyaṃ te maraṇaṃ bhava// jai taṃ kāhisi bhāvaṃ, jā jā icchasi nārio/ vāyāviddhovva haḍo, aṭṭhiappā bhavissasi// Ibid.: §ii, 8-10.

54. Ibid.: §iii, 1-10.

55. āyāvayaṃti gimhesu, hemaṃtesu avāvuḍā/ vāsāsu paḍisaṃlīnā, dhuyamohā jiyiṃdiyā// Ibid.: §iii, 12.

"walk mindfully, stand mindfully, sit and sleep mindfully."⁵⁶ He must know the nature of the self and of others: "First knowledge, then compassion; thus does one remain in full control. How can an ignorant person be compassionate, when he does not know good from evil?"⁵⁷

Knowledge leads to compassion; compassion is manifested in behavior:

Whatever beings there are, whether moving or non-moving, thou shall not hurt, whether knowingly or unknowingly . . . All beings desire to live; no one wants to die. Therefore a nirgrantha refrains from all acts of injury.⁵⁸

The remaining lectures continue in a similar vein, eulogizing the ascetic life while warning of its rigors: "It is terrible, it is not easy to undertake . . . nowhere but in Mahāvīra's order is there such pure conduct, nor shall there ever be another Discipline like this one."⁵⁹

Another *Mūlasūtra*, the *Uttarādhyayana*⁶⁰ (Book of later instructions) is claimed to be the last sermon of Mahāvīra. Probably the best-known Jaina anthology, it seems to include the works of numerous authors, compiled over an extended period. The *Uttarādhyayana* is a mixture of dialogues, parables, and catechisms, mostly in verse. There are thirty-six lectures (adhyayanas), and except for the last few of these the text can be considered

56. kahaṃ care? kahaṃ ciṭṭhe? kahaṃ māse? kahaṃ sae?/ kahaṃ bhuṃjanto bhāsaṃto, pāvakkammaṃ na baṃdhaṃ// jayaṃ care, jayaṃ ciṭṭhe, jayaṃ māse, jayaṃ sae/ jayaṃ bhuṃjanto bhāsaṃto pāvakkammaṃ na baṃdhaṃ// savva-bhūyappabhūyassa sammam bhūyāi pāsao/ pihiyāsavassa dāmtassa pāvaṃ kammaṃ na baṃdhaṃ// Ibid.: §iv, 7.

57. paḍhamam nānam tao dayā, evam ciṭṭhai savvasamjāe/ annānī kim kāhī, kim vā nāhī seyapāvagam// Ibid.: §iv, 10.

58. tatthimam paḍhamam thānam, Mahāvīreṇa desiyam/ ahimsā niuṇā diṭṭhā, savvabhūesu samjamo// jāvamti loe pānā, tasā aduva thāvarā/ te jānamajānam vā, na haṇe no vi ghāyae// savve jīvā vi icchamti, jīviuṃ na marijjium/ tamhā pānivaham ghoram, niggamthā vajjayamti nam// Ibid.: §iv, 11.

59. haṃdi dhammatthakāmānam, niggamthānam suṇeha me/ āyāragoyaram bhīmam sayalam durahiṭṭhiyam// nannattha erisam vuttam jam loe paramaduccaram/ viulatthānabhāissa na bhūyam na bhavissā// Ibid.: §vi, 4-5.

60. Translated by Jacobi 1895: 1-232.

fairly a
contain
Gautam
also va
the mo
influen

It ha
disciple
that th
their s
young
tremen
lectures
pravraj
Samud
ence of
the fac
world v
individu
fairly a
follow
familial
first."

Anci
fairly r
born as
mercha
of caste
defying
This sy
and tha
(called
Vedic in
in fact,
privileg
undoub

fairly ancient. It is of historical importance in that it contains the controversial dialogue between Keśi and Gautama discussed in Chapter I. Portions of the work are also valuable for their descriptions of the milieu in which the monastic order developed, as well as of the social influence exerted by the order.

It has earlier been noted that all eleven of the original disciples of Mahāvīra were of the brahman caste, also that they entered his order together with hundreds of their students. This kind of large-scale movement of young people into the monastic life must have had a tremendous effect upon the society of the time; several lectures of the *Uttarādhyayana* (for example, x, *Nemi-pravrajyā*; xiv, *Isukārīyam*; xx, *Mahānirgranthīyam*; xxi, *Samudrapālīyam*; xxii, *Rathanemīyam*) attest to the presence of a widely felt uneasiness among householders in the face of such a phenomenon. Renunciation of the world was ordinarily not considered appropriate until an individual had fulfilled his social duties and reached a fairly advanced age; those who violated this norm to follow Mahāvīra must have done so despite tremendous familial and societal pressures to "enjoy worldly pleasures first."

Ancient Indian society was also structured around a fairly rigid system of castes, in terms of which one was born as either a priest (brahman), a warrior (kṣatriya), a merchant (*vaiśya*), or a wage-earner (*śūdra*). The breaking of caste rules was a very serious transgression, directly defying the value system enforced by the Vedic priesthood. This system held that caste distinctions were permanent, and that only the male members of the upper three castes (called twice-born (*dvija*) because they had received the Vedic initiations) were entitled to enter the mendicant life; in fact, many considered this vocation almost an exclusive privilege of the brahmans. The Jains of Mahāvīra's time undoubtedly believed in some kind of caste hierarchy



1. Rṣabha (left) and Mahāvīra, first and last Tīrthaṅkaras of our age. Note the animals symbolic of each teacher—a bull and a lion, respectively—at the base of the pedestal. Orissa. 13th century. Courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London (see p. 14).



2. Pārśva, seated beneath the hood of a cobra (detail of āyapaṭa from Mathura, circa A.D. 1st century). Lucknow Museum. Courtesy of Gary Tartakov (see p. 10).



4. The fourteen dreams of Trīśa, mother of Mahāvīra (miniature from a 15th-century illuminated manuscript of the *Kalpa-sūtra*). Courtesy of the Smithsonian Institution, Freer Gallery of Art, Washington D.C. (see p. 6).



2. Pārśva, seated beneath the raised hood of a cobra (detail of āyāga-paṭa from Mathura, circa A.D. 200). Lucknow Museum. Courtesy of Gary Tartakov (see p. 10).



4. The fourteen dreams of Trīśalā, mother of Mahāvīra (miniature from 15th-century illuminated manuscript of the *Kalpa-sūtra*). Courtesy of the Smithsonian Institution, Freer Gallery of Art, Washington D.C. (see p. 6).



3. Śvetāmbara image of Rṣabha, the first Tirthaṅkara. White marble, South Rajasthan, 12th century. The von der Heydt collection, Rietberg Museum, Zurich. Photo by Ernst Hahn.



5. Relief fragment depicting Mahāvīra's change of embryo (see p. 7). Mathura, circa A.D. 100. Lucknow Museum. Courtesy of American Institute of Indian Studies, Varanasi.



6. Mahāvīra being led in procession to the site of his renunciation. From Helmuth von Glasenapp's *Der Jainismus*. Berlin: Alf Hager Verlag, 1925.



7. Mahāvīra preaching. From illustrated manuscript of the *Kalpa-sūtra*. Courtesy of the Smithsonian Institution, Freer Gallery of Art. Washington, D.C.



8. Śāntinātha, the sixteenth Tirthankara, attended by yakṣas. Courtesy of Victoria and Albert Museum, London.



9. Stone image of a female ascetic, probably depicting the Śvetāmbara Tirthaṅkara Malli (see p. 40).
Courtesy of Lucknow Museum.



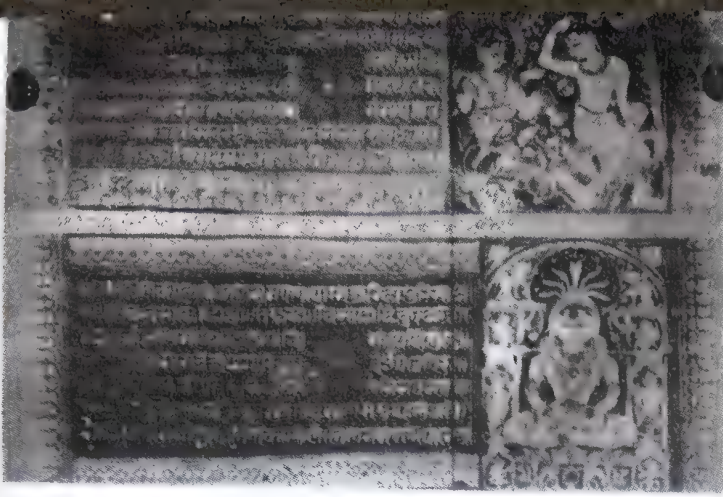
10. Pictorial representation of the samavasaraṇa as envisioned by Digambaras (see p. 56).



11. The Gaṇadharavalaya-yantra (see p. 254n20), a diagrammatic representation of the Pūrvas and Aṅgas, found in a Digambara temple, Mudbidre, South Kanara.
Courtesy of Cārukīrti Bhaṭṭāraka Paṭṭācārya, of Mudbidre Jaina Maṭha.



12. Pa
manus
Helmu
Janism
1925 (



12. Page from an illustrated manuscript of the *Kalpa-sūtra*. From Helmuth von Glasenapp's *Der Jainismus*. Berlin: Alf Hager Verlag, 1925 (see p. 63).



13. Candraprabha, the eighth Tirthankara (18th century, reddish stone). Courtesy of Victoria and Albert Museum, London. The seven heads, unique in Jain art, probably represent the sapta-bhaṅgi of Jain philosophy (see p. 95).

(*varṇa*); otherwise they would not have suggested the superiority of the warrior caste over all others (as demonstrated in the "transfer of embryo" myth related earlier). Nevertheless, they made no doctrinal claim of a divine origin for the castes, as did the brahmans, nor did they hesitate to admit members of any caste into their order; even the outcastes, or "untouchables," were welcomed.⁶¹

Two lectures in the *Uttarādhyayana* give a good idea of the situation created by violation of caste duties and distinctions. Each describes the encounter of a Jaina mendicant with brahman householders performing a Vedic sacrifice. The first narrative (xxv, *Yajñīya*) concerns the monk Jayaghoṣa, who had been a brahman prior to entering the order (and thus losing his caste identity). Wandering from place to place, he came at one time to Banaras and took residence in a park outside the city. He had fasted for an entire month; now, begging for alms, he happened to approach the house of a brahman named Vijayaghoṣa, who was offering a sacrifice in which brahman householders were given food as part of the ceremony. Jayaghoṣa, however, was given nothing; rather, he was turned away by the host with the words:

I shall not give you alms, mendicant; beg somewhere else. This food is meant only for brahmans, who are well versed in the Vedas and well grounded in the sacrificial science; they are the ones who deserve charity, because they save themselves and others.⁶²

The Jaina monk became neither angry nor disheartened; instead he calmly stated the qualities of the "true brah-

61. For later modifications, especially among the Digambaras, see Ch. IX n. 32.

62. aha se tattha aṇagāre, māsaṅkhamāṇapāraṇe/ Vijayaghoṣassa jannaṃmi, bhikkhamatthā uvaṭṭhie// samuvaṭṭhiyaṃ tahiṃ saṃtaṃ, jāyago paḍisehae/ na hu dāhāmi te bhikkhaṃ, bhikkhū, jāyāhi annaṃ// je ya veyaviū vippā, jannaṭṭhā ya je diyā/ . . . je samatthā samuddhattuṃ, paramappāṇameva ya/ tesu annamaṇaṃ deyaṃ, bho bhikkhū savvakāmiyaṃ// *UṭS*: xxv, 5-8.

man," adding that only a Jaina monk, such as Mahāvīra, was worthy of that designation:

He who is exempt from love, hatred and fear, and who shines forth like burnished gold, purified in fire, him we call a brahman. He who thoroughly knows living beings, those which move about (*trasa*) and those which do not (*sthāvara*), and does not injure them, him we call a brahman.

He who does not take anything that is not given him, be it small or large, him we call a brahman. He who is not defiled by pleasures (of the senses), just as a lotus grows on the water and yet is not immersed in it, him we call a brahman.⁶³

The redefinition of the term brahman coupled with the claim that the Jaina mendicant's vows constituted the essence of brahmanhood was an important milestone in the development of Jaina society; it made conduct (*cāritra*), rather than birth (*jāti*), the basis for determining the superiority of one person or group over another. It is for this reason that Mahāvīra, although a kṣatriya, is often called a *māhaṇa* (Prakrit for Sanskrit *brāhmaṇa*).⁶⁴

The importance of conduct is further emphasized in the second tale, called Harikeśīya (lecture xii). This account centers around one Harikeśa, who had been a *śvapāka* prior to becoming a monk. Śvapākas, also known as *caṇḍālas*, make up the lowest community in the Indian social hierarchy; they are called "untouchables," and any contact with them is considered ritually polluting by the rest of the society. Harikeśa was given to great austerities; like Jayaghoṣa, he had just completed a long fast when, in search of alms, he came to the enclosure of a brahmanical

63. jāyarūvaṃ jahā maṭṭhaṃ, niddhaṃtamalapāvagaṃ/ rāgadosabhayāyaṃ, taṃ vayaṃ būma māhaṇaṃ//22// tasapāṇe viyāṇettā, saṃgaheṇa ya thāvare/ jo na hiṃsai tivihēṇa, taṃ vayaṃ būma māhaṇaṃ//23// jahā pomaṃ jale jāyaṃ, novalippai vāriṇā/ evaṃ alittaṃ kāmehiṃ, taṃ vayaṃ būma māhaṇaṃ//28// Ibid.: §xxxv, 22-28.

64. kammaṇā baṃbhaṇo hoi, kammaṇā hoi khattiyo/ vaisso kammaṇā hoi, suddo havai kammaṇā// ee pāukare buddhe, jehiṃ hoi siṇāyao/ savva-kammaviṇimmukkaṃ, taṃ vayaṃ būma māhaṇaṃ// Ibid.: §xxv, 33-34.

sacrifice. Recognizing an untouchable at the holy place, the brahmans—referred to by the text as “killers of animals, rigid with the pride of birth”—reviled the sage, adding: “Better this food and drink should rot, than that we should give it to you.”⁶⁵

When the Jaina monk did not leave, but stated in a firm and yet peaceful manner that their behavior was improper, they “rushed forward and beat the sage with sticks, canes and whips.”⁶⁶ Bloodshed was prevented by the intervention of a demigod (*yakṣa*) on the monk’s behalf. Seeing this supernatural being, the brahmans begged Harikeśa for forgiveness. He pardoned them and proceeded to preach his views on the true meaning of sacrifice. Sacrifice was said to mean not bathing in holy waters or kindling the fire or offering animals to the gods, but rather guarding one’s purity by means of the *saṃvaras*, the restraints of a Jaina monk.⁶⁷

Such internalization of the sacrifice was not unknown to the Vedic brahmans; it is nevertheless true that external rituals, including the sacrifice of animals, formed an essential part of their religion. Jains seldom missed an opportunity to condemn this practice as unethical; their constant attacks on so important an aspect of Vedic religion earned them the undying hostility of the brahmanical community.

d. The *Prakīrṇakasūtras*.—The *Prakīrṇaka* (The miscellaneous) is a collection of ten short texts containing both ceremonial hymns and descriptions of the rituals to be used in preparation for a holy death.⁶⁸ The subject matter of each text is clearly indicated by its title: (1) *Catuḥśaraṇa*

65. *jāimayapaḍiṭṭhaddhā, himsagā ajiyimdiyā/ abambhacāriṇo bālā, imaṃ vayanamabbavī//5// . . . ajjhāvayāṇaṃ paḍikūlabhāsī, pabhāsase kiṃ nu sagāsi amhaṃ/ avi eyaṃ viṇassau annapāṇaṃ, na ya ṇaṃ dāhāmu, tuvaṃ nigamṭhā//16// Ibid.: §xii, 5-6.*

66. *ajjhāvayāṇaṃ vayanam suṇettā, uddhāiyā tattha bahū kumārā/ dam-ḍehiṃ vettehiṃ kasehiṃ ceva, samāgayā taṃ isi tālayaṃti// Ibid.: §xii, 19.*

67. *susaṃvuḍḍā paṃcahiṃ saṃvarehiṃ, iha jīviyaṃ aṇavakaṃkhamāṇā/ vosaṭṭhakāyā suicattadehā, mahājayaṃ jayai jannasiṭṭhaṃ// Ibid.: §xi, 42.*

68. For details on the *Prakīrṇakas*, see Winternitz 1933: 459-461.

(Taking the four refuges); (2) *Āturapratyākhyāna* (Renunciation by the sick); (3) *Bhaktaparijñā* (Renunciation of food); (4) *Samstāraka* (Preparing the deathbed); (5) *Taṇḍulavaicārika* (Contemplation on rice, that is, on food and the conditions of a living being); (6) *Candravedhyaka* (Hitting the mark, that is, retaining consciousness at the last moment of life); (7) *Devendrastava* (Praise of the Jinas by the king of gods); (8) *Gaṇividya* (Knowledge of propitious times for monastic activities); (9) *Mahāpratyākhyāna* (Renunciation at the time of death); (10) *Vīrastava* (In praise of Mahāvīra).

e. The Cūlikāsūtras.—The final portion of the Aṅgabāhya is entitled Cūlikā, Appendix. It contains two works: the *Nandī-sūtra*, ascribed to Devavācaka, and the *Anuyogadvāra-sūtra*, by an Elder named Ārya Rakṣita.⁶⁹ Both include valuable section-by-section summaries of the material found in most of the other canonical texts.

Thus concludes the list of works that constitute the basic Jaina canon. This canon was extensively studied by the monks, who produced scores of commentaries and sub-commentaries thereon during the seven centuries after its compilation at Valabhi. The earliest forms of such commentarial literature were the Niryuktis and Bhāṣyas, composed in Prakrit verse; these were followed by the Cūrṇis in Prakrit prose and finally by the Tīkās in Sanskrit prose.⁷⁰ Most famous among the commentators were Bhadrabāhu (author of the *Ācārāṅga-niryukti*, fifth century A.D.) and Jinabhadra (author of the *Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya*, sixth century A.D.). Other important figures were Jinadāsa (seventh century), Haribhadra (seventh century), Śīlāṅka (ninth century), Abhayadeva (eleventh century), Maladhāri Hemacandra (twelfth century), and finally Malayagiri (thirteenth century).

69. For a critical study of the *Anuyogadvāra*, see Hanaki 1970.

70. On the exegetical literature, see Kapadia 1941: 171-205.

The Anuyogas ("Expositions")

As noted earlier, the Digambaras preserved only a small portion of the original canon, the portion dealing mainly with the doctrine of karma; most of their scriptures (āgama) are thus the postcanonical compositions of various learned ācāryas. Most of these monk-scholars came from the south of India, principal region of Digambara strength since the time of Bhadrabāhu. Their literary output was enormous, resulting in the body of works called Anuyoga (The expositions), which have long enjoyed canonical status in the Digambara tradition.

Śvetāmbara monks produced a comparable secondary canon, also called Anuyoga, to supplement the older materials already in their possession. Taken together, these "expositions" of the two schools constitute one of the greatest collections of non-Vedic Indian literature. The collection is divided into four categories, sometimes styled "the four Vedas" of the Jinas.

THE PRATHAMĀNUYOGA

The first of these Anuyogas is called Prathamānuyoga, the primary exposition. It contains biographies of the Jinas and of certain famous mythological figures; these biographies, as the title suggests, form the basis of religious teaching for the layperson. Most notable of the Digambara writings in this category are the *Ādipurāṇa* of Jinasena (eighth century) and the *Uttarapurāṇa* of Guṇabhadra (ninth century); among the Śvetāmbara texts, the *Triṣaṣṭiśalākāpuruṣacaritra*⁷¹ of Hemacandra (twelfth century) is best known. Such works were highly influential in popularizing and spreading the Jaina faith among the masses.

THE KARAṆĀNUYOGA

The second of the four categories, Karaṇānuyoga (exposition on technical matters), contains treatises on such

71. Translated by Helen M. Johnson 1931-1962 (6 vols.).

ancient sciences as cosmology and astronomy. This group is represented by the *Trilokaprajñapti* (seventh century), *Trilokasāra* (eleventh century), *Jambūdvīpaprajñapti* (thirteenth century), and similar works.

THE CARAṆĀNUYOGA

Third is the *Caraṇānuyoga*, exposition on discipline. The discipline referred to is twofold; one set of rules applies to the mendicant, the other to the layperson. The most important Digambara work on mendicant discipline (*anagāra-dharma*) is the *Mūlācāra* of Vaṭṭakera. A collection of 1,243 verses arranged in twelve chapters, it has often been called the "Digambara *Ācārāṅga*." Another influential Digambara text on ecclesiastical law is the *Bhagavatī Ārā-dhanā* of Śivārya, which contains 2,116 verses. Both works are fairly ancient (circa second century A.D.), and both contain materials not strictly in keeping with the Digambara rules on nudity; this may indicate some connection with the Yāpanīya sect.⁷²

Orthodox Digambara tradition is best represented in the works of Kundakunda, who lived sometime in the second or third century A.D. He is credited with the authorship of several Prakrit texts which together form the most authoritative source for the study of the Digambara faith. Most important of these are *Niyamasāra* and *Pravacanasāra*, which deal at great length with the *āvaśyakas* (essential duties) of a monk. Also well known are the eight short *prābhṛta* ("gifts") texts, respectively called *Darśana* (Right view), *Cāritra* (Conduct), *Sūtra* (Scripture), *Bodha* (Knowledge), *Bhāva* (Internal practice), *Mokṣa* (Liberation), *Liṅga* (The emblem), and *Śīla* (Purity); these emphasize the essential aspects of inner development.⁷³

While they paid great attention to monastic law, Jaina ācāryas did not fail to provide rules and regulations for the conduct of the laity as well. This fact is demonstrated

72. See Premi 1956: 56-86.

73. See Upādhye, intro. to the *Pravacanasāra*.

by the large number of *śrāvakācāras* (books of the layman's discipline) that have come to light.⁷⁴ Earliest of these in the Digambara tradition is probably the *Ratnakaraṇḍa* of Samantabhadra (fifth century), followed by such works as the *Śrāvakācāra* of Amitagati (eleventh century) and the *Puruṣārthasiddhyupāya* of Amṛtacandra (twelfth century).⁷⁵ One discipline text worthy of special notice is the *Sāgāradharmāmṛta* of Āśādhara (thirteenth century), the only such work known to have been written by a layman. The same author also produced a manual on mendicant law entitled *Anagāradharmāmṛta*. Among Śvetāmbara texts we may mention the *Dharmabindu* of Haribhadra (eighth century), as well as Hemacandra's *Yogaśāstra*⁷⁶ (twelfth century).

The Jaina discipline (*ācāra*) is heavily oriented towards tapas (austerities) and ritualized confession (*pratikramaṇa*, and so on). Such activities aim mainly at bringing the aspirant to a state of pacification, but lay little stress upon the spiritually more important aspect of insight. One expects to find, therefore, a set of works relating more directly to meditation and similar practices. In this area the foremost writer is again Kundakunda, who espouses a *nīścaya-naya* (nonconventional point of view) that concentrates on the "innate" purity of the soul rather than on the "conditioned" state of its bondage. His *Samayasāra*,⁷⁷ along with Amṛtacandra's celebrated *Ātmakhyāti* commentary thereon, emphasizes this nonconventional viewpoint more than any other Jaina text; it must certainly be considered the pioneer work on Jaina yoga. The *Anuprekṣā* of Kārtikeya, *Samādhiśataka* of Pūjyapāda, and *Paramātmaprakāśa* of Yogindu, all from the sixth century, carried on the tradition of Kundakunda.

74. For a complete bibliography, see *JY*: intro. xxvii-xxx.

75. Translated by Ajit Prasada 1933.

76. Translated by Windisch 1874. For a brief survey of the main *śrāvakācāra* works of both the Śvetāmbara and Digambara sects, see *JY*: 1-31.

77. Translated by Chakravarti 1971. On the *vyavahāra* and *nīścaya-naya* in Kundakunda's works, see Bhatt 1972.

A
four
(eigh
drṣṭi
of Ja
pare
of H

DRAV
The
onda
tech
enur
mate
drav
(*ākā*
cons
sent
psyc

A
bear
the
an i
the ā
sūtra
guag
this
begu
own
pone
first
entat
ophy
Bāda

78.
SJP: 29
79.

As for the Śvetāmbara approach to yogic discipline, it found its ultimate expression in the works of Haribhadra (eighth century). His *Yogaśataka*, *Yogabindu*, and *Yoga-dr̥ṣṭisamuccaya* not only set forth the tenets and practices of Jaina yoga, but also represent the only attempt to compare these with other yogic systems prevalent in the India of Haribhadra's day.⁷⁸

DRAVYĀNUYOGA

The fourth and final group of texts making up the secondary canon is that called Dravyānuyoga. Dravya is a technical term meaning "substance" or "existent." Jains enumerate six kinds of such existents, namely, souls (jīva), material atoms (*pudgala*), the principle of motion (*dharmadravya*), the principle of rest (*adharma-dravya*), space (*ākāśa*), and time (*kāla*). The Dravyānuyoga literature, in considering these factors, touches upon almost every essential aspect of Jaina philosophy: ontology, epistemology, psychology, and so on.

Although Kundakunda's works probably have as much bearing on the existents (dravya) as on practice (*carāṇa*), the honor of systematizing Jaina canonical teachings into an integrated darśana (philosophical school) belongs to the ācārya Umāsvāti (second century A.D.). His *Tattvārthasūtra*⁷⁹ is the first Jaina text written in Sanskrit, the language of the brahmanical scriptures. Umāsvāti's choice of this language indicates that the Jains had by that time begun to write their texts not simply for the benefit of their own community, but also in order to dispute with proponents of rival darśanas. The *Tattvārthasūtra* is also the first Jaina work to use the terse, aphoristic mode of presentation known as sūtra style; its place in Jaina philosophy is comparable to that of Patañjali's *Yoga-sūtras* and Bādarāyaṇa's *Vedānta-sūtras* in the Yoga and Vedānta

78. For Haribhadra's comparative studies on yoga, see Sanghavi 1963; *SJP*: 293-304.

79. Translated by Jacobi 1906.

traditions, respectively. Umāsvāti manages to synthesize virtually the entire Jaina doctrinal system into a mere 350 sūtras, arranged in ten chapters as follows: (1) the path of salvation (*mokṣa-mārga*); (2) the states of the soul (*bhāva*); (3) the lower worlds and the human abodes (*naraka* and *dvīpa*); (4) the celestial abodes (*deva*); (5) the insentient existents (*ajīva-dravya*); (6) karmic influx (*āsrava*); (7) wholesome and unwholesome karmas (*śubha-aśubha karma*); (8) karmic bondage (*bandha*); (9) stoppage of karmic influx and disassociation from karmic bondage (*saṃvara* and *nirjarā*); (10) liberation of the soul from the bondage of embodiment (*mokṣa*).

The *Tattvārtha-sūtra* also has the distinction of being the one text recognized as authoritative by Digambaras and Śvetāmbaras alike. Both sects claim Umāsvāti as one of their own, and their respective versions of his work show predictable disagreement on such controversial matters as the nudity of the mendicant and the partaking of food by the kevalin. Each tradition has produced its own commentaries on the text; although these developed independently, they nevertheless present almost identical explanations of Jaina doctrine.

Umāsvāti is credited by the Śvetāmbaras with having written an autocommentary, the *Svopajñā-bhāṣya*.⁸⁰ Two major subcommentaries (*vr̥tti*) on this *bhāṣya* (commentary) appear among Śvetāmbara writings, one by Siddhasena (also called Gandhahastin, eighth century) and another by Haribhadra Gaṇi (ninth century). Digambaras have disputed the authenticity of the *Svopajñā-bhāṣya*, since it contains certain sections not in accord with their views. The earliest extant Digambara commentary on the *Tattvārtha-sūtra* is the *Sarvārthasiddhi*,⁸¹ an encyclopedic

80. See *Tattvārtha-sūtra*, Hindi exposition, by Sanghavi 1952: intro. 33–83. For a Digambara refutation of the Śvetāmbara claim, see *Sarvārthasiddhi*, Hindi tr. by Phoolchandra 1971: intro.

81. Translated by S. A. Jain 1958.

wor
Dev
low
tika
cent
text
mor
C
Jain
who
nīya
the
sūtr
esta
whe
tion
abs
were
chal
the
tion
and
T
seem
fifth
The
is a
of p
Dev
the
Jina
exam
ing),
be pe

work produced in the sixth century by the grammarian Devanandi (known popularly as Pūjyapāda). It was followed by two other commentaries, Akalaṅka's *Rājavārttika* (A.D. 780) and the *Śloka-vārttika* of Vidyānanda (ninth century). These three works even today comprise the basic textual materials used by advanced students in Digambara monasteries.

One other important writer is claimed equally by both Jaina schools; this is Siddhasena Divākara (fifth century), who actually seems to have been a member of the Yāpanīya sect.⁸² Divākara authored two pioneering works in the field of Jaina logic: the *Nyāyāvatāra* and the *Sanmati-sūtra*. The latter is a short Prakrit treatise which seeks to establish the validity of the various viewpoints (*naya*) when approached in the spirit of *syādvāda* (qualified assertion), as well as their nonvalidity when put forth in the absolutist (*ekānta*) manner of non-Jaina systems. Jains were probably drawn into the field of formal logic by the challenge of the Mīmāṃsakas, who staunchly supported the "infallible authority" of the Vedas, taking great exception to the Jaina claim that human Jinas are omniscient and able to show the path to heaven or salvation.

The first Jaina work to specifically take up this challenge seems to have been the *Āptamīmāṃsā*, composed in the fifth century by the Digambara ācārya Samantabhadra. The *Āptamīmāṃsā* (An examination of the perfect teacher) is a brief work of 114 verses written in *stotra* style, a sort of philosophical hymn; thus it was also known as the *Devāgamastotra*. Here Samantabhadra critically examines the nature of a Jina, pointing out that the true test of Jinahood consists not in the miracles that attend him (for example, *devāgama*, the arrival of gods at a holy gathering), but rather in his conduct and his teachings. He must be perfectly free from attachment and aversion (*vītarāga*),

82. For a bibliographic review, see *Nyāyāvatāra*, Upadhye intro.

and the tenets of his system must be uniquely capable of withstanding the critical application of logic (*yukti-śāstra-avirodhi-vāk*).⁸³ This position leads Samantabhadra to formulate an appropriate syllogism to "establish the omniscience" of the Jina, as well as to examine the validity of similar claims made by Buddhists for the Buddha and by theists for their God.

By dealing directly with the problem of how a given teacher could be legitimately claimed as final authority, the *Āptamīmāṃsā* introduced a major point of controversy into Indian philosophical dispute. This controversy inspired several Jaina logicians to produce extensive commentaries on Samantabhadra's work; most notable were the *Aṣṭaśatī* of Akalaṅka (eighth century) and the *Aṣṭasahasrī* of Vidyānanda (ninth century). These commentators were not content merely to expand upon the writings of their predecessors; each later produced several independent works of high quality. Akalaṅka, through such concise and closely reasoned texts as the *Laghīyastraya*, *Nyāyaviniścaya*, *Siddhiviniścaya*, and *Pramāṇasaṅgraha*, established a reputation as the outstanding critic of the Buddhist logician Dharmakīrti of Nālandā.⁸⁴ Vidyānanda wrote four "Examinations," entitled *Āptaparīkṣā*, *Pramāṇaparīkṣā*, *Patraparīkṣā*, and *Satyasāsanaparīkṣā*, in which he developed a sophisticated refutation of the doctrines espoused by contemporary philosophical schools, especially with reference to their theories on epistemology.

Subsequent Digambara scholastic activity was devoted mainly to clarifying the material of these texts and assimilating the results into two manuals on Jaina logic. Important works of the latter type were the *Parīkṣāmukha* of Māṇikyanandi (eleventh century); Prabhācandra's com-

83. devāgamanabhoyānacāmarādivibhūṭayaḥ/ māyāviṣv api dṛṣyante nātas tvam asi no mahān//1// tīrthakṛtsamayānām ca parasparavirodhataḥ/ sarveṣām āptatā nāsti kaścīd eva bhaved guruḥ//3// sa tvam evāsi nirdoṣo yukti-śāstrāvirodhivāk/ avirodho yad iṣṭam te prasiddhena na bādhyate//6// *Āptamīmāṃsā*: k 1-6.

84. For Akalaṅka's critique of Dharmakīrti, see N. J. Shah 1967.

mentar
enth co
mudac

The
philos
Siddh
verse
Of the
works
cakra
origin
his Śa
tinctio
writte
prave
The Ś
forem
His P
the la
comm
ing Ja
Navy
vijay
Jaina
work
schol

Stotra
the D

85.
1966.
86.
87.
śānasar
88.
89.
90.

mentary thereon, entitled *Prameyakamalamārtanḍa* (eleventh century); and the same author's substantial *Nyāyakumudacandra* commentary on Akalaṅka's *Laghīyastraya*.⁸⁵

The Śvetāmbaras also became involved in rigorous philosophical writing, particularly after the appearance of Siddhasena's *Sanmatitarka*.⁸⁶ This work inspired a 2,500 verse *ṭīkā* (commentary) by Abhayadeva (eighth century). Of those Śvetāmbara writers who produced independent works, the best known are Mallavādin (author of *Nayacakra*) and of course the celebrated Haribhadra; the latter's originality and level of erudition are especially evident in his *Śaḍdarśanasamuccaya*.⁸⁷ Haribhadra also has the distinction of being one of the few Jaina scholars to have written a commentary on a non-Jaina text, the *Nyāyapraveśa* of the Buddhist logician Dignāga (fifth century). The Śvetāmbara tradition produced numerous logicians; foremost among them was Hemacandra (twelfth century). His *Pramāṇamīmāṃsā*⁸⁸ and *Anyayogavyavacchedikā*, the latter made famous by Malliṣeṇa's *Syādvādamāñjarī* commentary,⁸⁹ have been widely studied as the outstanding Jaina contributions to the "old" Nyāya tradition. The Navya, or "new" school of logic is represented by Yaśovijaya, an eighteenth-century philosopher-monk whose *Jainatarkabhāṣā*,⁹⁰ *Jñānabindu*, *Nyāyāloka*, and other works show that even at this late date the level of Jaina scholarship remained high.

Stotras.—The final body of literature to be included under the Dravyānuyoga is the stotra, poetical hymns in praise

85. For a detailed study of the major Jaina logical works, see Kailashchandra 1966.

86. Translated by Sanghavi (with Doshi) 1939.

87. For a critical evaluation of this work, see Malvania's intro. to *Śaḍdarśanasamuccaya* (ed. M. K. Jain 1969).

88. Text and tr. Mookerjee (and Tatia) 1970.

89. Translated by Thomas 1960. Text ed. J. C. Jain 1970 (1st ed. 1935).

90. Text and tr. Bhargava 1973.

of one or more Jinas (addressed either individually or collectively).⁹¹ Strictly speaking, the only praiseworthy thing about a Jina is his preaching of the doctrine; hence the stotra assumes the nature of a philosophical poem, glorifying the Jina's doctrines (for example, *ahiṃsā*, *anekānta* [manifold aspects], *syādvāda*, *aparigraha* [nonpossession], and so on) and criticizing those of the *ekāntavādin*s (who hold an absolutist doctrine). One expects to find the sort of flowery embellishments called for by standard Indian works on poetics in a romantic drama, or perhaps in an ode to nature. For the Jainas, who produced virtually no such secular literature, the finest ornamentations (*alaṅkāra*) of the poets found expression purely in texts that strove to refute rival philosophies. Canonical materials were, in practice if not in theory, accessible only to the mendicants, while the various scholarly works, although available to the laity, were by and large beyond the comprehension of ordinary people. The stotras thus became an excellent means not only of popularizing the cultic worship of the Jinas, but also of introducing members of the lay community to abstruse philosophical doctrines.

Samantabhadra's *Svayambhūstotra* provides a fine example of such a work. He praises the twenty-four Jinas individually (with an average of five verses apiece), each time taking up some new aspect of doctrine and expanding it in a scholarly manner. The clarity of his presentation is matched throughout by its poetical beauty. Other outstanding works of this type are Siddhasena Divākara's *Dvātriṃśikā* (thirty-two hymns of thirty-two verses each), Amṛtacandra's *Laghutattvasphoṭa* (A brief exposition of reality), containing twenty-five hymns of twenty-five verses each,⁹² Hemacandra's *Anyayogavyavacchedikā* (Rescinder of other systems, in thirty-two verses),⁹³ and

91. For a list of approximately twenty-five Jaina hymns in Prakrit, Sanskrit, and Apabhraṃśa, see H. Jain 1962: 122-127.

92. Text and tr. P. S. Jaini 1978.

93. Translated by Thomas 1960.

the m
and V
event
fall u
existe
basic
ing h
of his
acy c
unbr

Ev
tion
vital
histo
intell
towa
ning
such
Pūjy
howe
so w
dice
scho
bhad
whor
that
a ma
scho
sense
ful a
were
petec

94.
among
95.
1962: 1

the more popular *Upasargahara*, *Bhaktāmara*, *Akalaṅka*, and *Viṣāpahāra* stotras associated with certain miraculous events in the lives of their respective authors.⁹⁴ All of these fall under the Dravyānuyoga because they deal with the existents as taught by the Jina. They form, moreover, the basic recitations performed by a devout Jaina, thus sustaining his interest in both the cultic and intellectual aspects of his religion. The stotras also serve to maintain the literacy of the community at a high level, thereby assuring an unbroken tradition of canonical scholarship.

Even so incomplete a sketch of the Jaina literary tradition as presented here gives some idea of the immense vitality which has pervaded this tradition throughout its history. This phenomenon is due in part to the strong intellectual influence of brahmans, traditionally oriented towards scholarly pursuits, within the Jaina order, beginning with the eleven gaṇadharas and continuing through such great ācāryas as Bhadrabāhu, Siddhasena Divākara, Pūjyapāda, Haribhadra, and Jinasena. We must be careful, however, not to overemphasize this influence, since to do so would invite acceptance of the traditional Indian prejudice that only brahmans are fully suited for religious scholarship. Such outstanding Jaina writers as Samantabhadra, Akalaṅka, Somadeva, and Hemacandra, none of whom came from brahman families, make it very clear that the vigor of Jaina literature was by no means purely a matter of caste. Perhaps even more important than the scholarly interest of the ācāryas was their highly developed sense of missionary zeal, which caused them to focus careful attention on the spiritual needs of their laity; thus they were led to produce great popular narratives which competed successfully with the Hindu epics and Purāṇas.⁹⁵

94. For the texts of these and several other popular hymns in daily use among the Jaina laity, see *JP*.

95. For an exhaustive survey of the Jaina Purāṇa literature, see H. Jain 1962: 127-180.

The Unity of Jaina Doctrine

We have seen the longstanding and perhaps irreconcilable differences that separate the two sects of Jainism. These sects have been very alike, however, in their remarkable unwillingness to depart from their basic doctrines and practices. No movement towards a more catholic viewpoint or liberalized discipline, no "Jaina Mahāyāna," was ever allowed to develop among either the Digambaras or the Śvetāmbaras. One does find canonical reports of certain disagreements over doctrine, but they failed to generate the rise of new sects; such heterodox views were simply labeled *nihnava* (falsehoods) and quickly died out.⁹⁶ As for arguments between ācāryas over minor philosophical issues, these have traditionally been accommodated within the spirit of syādvāda.

The basic Jaina doctrines thus show an extraordinary uniformity through the centuries; indeed it is possible to consider them as a coherent whole, with little reference to questions of interpretation or chronology. Students of such internally diverse traditions as Vedānta or Buddhism will be particularly struck by the degree to which Jainism lacks such diversity.

We have had a brief look at the literature through which the core teachings of Jainism have found expression.⁹⁷ Let us now examine the teachings themselves, keeping in mind their universal acceptance by, and hence profound influence upon, members of the Jaina community.

96. The *SthS* lists the following seven schisms: samaṇassa ṇaṃ bhagavao Mahāvīrassa titthaṃsi satta pavayaṇaṇiṇhagā paṇṇattā, taṃ jahā: Bahurayā Jīvapaesiyā Avattiyā Sāmuccheyiyā Dokiriyā Terāsiyā Abaddhiyā. eesi ṇaṃ sattaṇṇaṃ pavayaṇaṇiṇhagāṇaṃ satta-adhammāyariyā hotthā taṃ hajā: Jamālī Tisagutte Āsāḍhe Āsamitte Gaṃge Chalue Goṭṭhāmāhile. eesi ṇaṃ sattaṇṇaṃ pavayaṇaṇiṇhagāṇaṃ satta uppattinagarā hotthā, taṃ jahā: Sāvattī Usabhapuraṃ Seyaviyā Mihila-Mullagātīraṃ/ Purimaṃtaraṃji Dasapura ṇiṇhaga-
uppattinagarāṃ// *SthS*: §744. For further details, see Sen 1931: 44; P. R. Jain 1956: 61-73.

97. Mention should be made here of the considerable contribution of Jains to Indian narrative literature (particularly in Tamil and Kannada), as well as to their work in such scientific fields as astronomy, mathematics, rhetoric, and grammar. (See Chakravarti 1974; E. P. Rice 1921; Saletore 1938: 111. Jaina themes also dominate the surviving Apabhraṃśa materials. (See H. Jain 1962: 153-164, 181-200.)

The Th
The reli
dition c
ing the
Not bei
through
deal on
require
of a ph
unques
experie

The
on the
being; t
as thos
Neverth
of the J
contend
ample,
consiste
ful.² Al
ticularl

1. Jain
twofold. (C
imperfecti
destinies o
karma of

2. For
cism" of Ś

III

The Nature of Reality

The Theory of Being (*Sat*)

The religious experience of one who follows the Jaina tradition cannot be properly understood without first grasping the theory of "existents" developed by that tradition. Not being a theist, the Jaina is unable to support himself through faith in "divine grace"; he is forced to rely a great deal on his own initiative and effort, both for his worldly requirements and for his salvation.¹ He is therefore in need of a philosophical system that neither demands too much unquestioning faith nor is at variance with everyday experience.

The authority of the Jaina teachings rests ultimately on the fact that they were preached by an omniscient being; thus they are every bit as unverifiable and dogmatic as those accepted by an orthodox Hindu or Christian. Nevertheless, Jaina teachers claim that only the teachings of the Jina can stand the scrutiny of reason; they further contend that in comparison with other religions (for example, Vaiṣṇavism or Śaivism) Jaina doctrines are most consistent with the actual conduct demanded of the faithful.² Almost all the works mentioned in Chapter II, particularly those included under Dravyānuyoga, make a

1. Jaina arguments against the theory of a world-creating God are basically twofold. (1) Creation is not possible without a desire to create, and this implies imperfection on the part of the alleged creator. (2) If karma is relevant in the destinies of human beings, then God is irrelevant; if he rules regardless of the karma of beings, then he is cruel and capricious. See Thomas 1960: 29-36.

2. For the Jaina rejection of the "divinity" of Hindu gods and the "asceticism" of Śaiva and Vaiṣṇava mendicants, see Handiqui 1949: 326-376.

point of critically examining the doctrines of other philosophical schools. While these doctrines are invariably described as "wrong" on account of their one-sidedness, it is nevertheless held that from the proper perspective (that of *syādvāda*, discussed below), they can be well integrated into the Jaina system.

The Doctrine of Anekānta (Manifold Aspects)

The Jaina term for "existent" is *sat* (literally, being). This term designates an entity comprised of three aspects: substance (*dravya*), quality (*guṇa*), and mode (*paryāya*). By substance the Jaina understands a support or substratum (*āśraya*) for manifold qualities (*guṇas*). The qualities are free from qualities of their own (otherwise they would themselves become substances), but invariably they undergo modifications (*pariṇāma*) in the form of acquiring (*utpāda*) new modes (*paryāya* or *bhāva*) and losing (*vyaya*) old modes at each moment.³ Thus, any existent must be seen on three levels: the modes, which last only a moment and belong to the qualities; the qualities, which undergo changes and yet inhere forever in their substances; and the substance, which remains the abiding common ground of support for the qualities and their modes.

A material atom (*pudgala-paramāṇu*), for example, is considered by the Jaina as a substance. It possesses at all times four qualities, namely, a color (*varṇa*), a taste (*rasa*), a smell (*gandha*), and a certain kind of palpability (*sparsa*, touch). These qualities will vary from one moment to another—for example, a red color being replaced by blue, or a sweet taste by bitter—but an atom will never be found without these qualities or without some mode of each one of them. The same rule applies to an animate entity like a soul (*jīva*). A soul is designated as substance (*dravya*) in that it is the locus of innumerable qualities such as knowl-

3. *sad dravyalakṣaṇam/ utpādayayadhrauvyayuktaṁ sat/ guṇaparyaya-vad dravyam/ TS: v, 29, 30, 38.* For a discussion of the Jaina theory of substance, see Padmarajiah 1963; Matilal 1976.

edge (*jñāna*), bliss (*sukha*), energy (*vīrya*). The knowledge-quality, for example, will increase and decrease, but there is never a time when the soul is without knowledge; otherwise it would become by definition a nonsoul, a material atom. The states of imperfection and perfection, expressed by such terms as *matijñāna* (mind-based knowledge) and *kevalajñāna* (omniscience), are in turn modes of this quality.⁴ The other qualities of the soul similarly undergo constant change. These changes do not take place merely on a surface level; rather, their cumulative effect so transforms the soul that we can distinguish various states—bound and free, pure and impure, and so on—and yet relate them to one and the same soul.

Because the qualities are innumerable and their modes are infinite, stretching from the beginningless past to the endless future, it is not possible for an ordinary (non-omniscient) person to perceive the existent in its entirety. At a single moment he can be aware either of the persisting unity (*ekatva*) of the substance or the transient multiplicity (*anekatva*) of its modes. This complexity of the existent—its simultaneous unity and multiplicity, eternity and transience—finds expression in the Jaina term *anekānta*, manifold aspects, which purports to fully describe the existent's nature.⁵

Criticism of Non-Jaina Systems

Jainas claim that non-Jaina systems (*darśanas*) are defective in that they view Being (*sat*) in only a single aspect (*ekānta*), either as eternal (*nitya*) or noneternal (*anitya*),

4. *dravyaṃ dravyāntarād yena viśiṣyate sa guṇaḥ. tad yathā—jīvaḥ pudgalādibhyo jñānādibhir guṇair viśiṣyate, pudgalādayaś ca rūpādibhiḥ. teṣāṃ vikārā viśeṣātmanā bhidyamānāḥ paryāyāḥ. ghaṭajñānaṃ paṭajñānaṃ krodho māno . . . ity evaṃ ādayaḥ. tebhyo 'nyatvaṃ kathamcid āpadyamānaḥ samudāyo dravyavyapadeśabhāk. SS: §600.*

5. *tattvaṃ paramārthabhūtaṃ vastu jīvājīvalakṣaṇaṃ anantadharmātmakam eva. anantās trikālaviśayatvād aparimitā ye dharmāḥ sahabhāvināḥ kramabhāvināś ca paryāyāḥ. ta evātmā svarūpaṃ yasya tad anantadharmātmakam. yad anantadharmātmakam na bhavati tat sad api na bhavati. SM: k 20.* For a critical study of the *anekānta-vāda*, see Mookerjee 1944.

unchanging (*aparīṇāmin*) or changing (*parīṇāmin*). The monistic (Advaita) school of the Vedānta system maintains, for example, that Being is unitary (*eka*) and that this Being, called *Brahman*, is eternal and absolutely unchanging. It denies the existence of the phenomenal world, that is, multiplicity and change, relegating it to the realm of illusion (*vivarta*). Another school of the Vedic tradition, the Sāṃkhya, on the other hand, is a dualist who postulates two kinds of Being: one an eternal but constantly changing (*parīṇāmi-nitya*) mind-matter complex (*prakṛti*), the other a multiplicity of eternal and totally incorruptible, unchangeable (*kūṭastha-nitya*) souls (*puruṣas*). Here *prakṛti* is conceived in a manner very similar to the Jaina view of the total range of Being, but *puruṣa* resembles the *Brahman* of Advaita. Consequently, the Sāṃkhya too ends up by saying that "bondage" of *puruṣas* by the *prakṛti* is illusory and not to be taken as real.⁶

The Jaina maintains that both these schools can be categorized as "extremist" (*ekāntavāda*), propounding a one-sided dogma of eternalism (*nityavāda*). They are said by the Jaina to perceive only the substance aspect of the existent, denying its modal aspect; thus they cannot explain the true nature of bondage and are unable to teach the path of salvation.

The Buddhist—particularly the Ābhidharmika, who upholds a doctrine of discrete (*niranvaya*) and momentary (*kṣaṇika*) elements (*dharma*s)—is considered an *ekāntavādin* of the other type, one who follows the dogma of noneternalism (*anityavāda*). He denies the reality of an abiding substance (the *dravya*, or the *ātman*), accepting the existence only of what would in Jaina doctrine be called modes. This denial of substance, according to the Jaina critique, makes it impossible for Buddhists to explain logically either bondage by karma (*saṃsāra*) or the release

6. *tasmān na badhyate 'ddhā na mucyate nāpi saṃsarati kaścit/ saṃsarati badhyate mucyate ca nānāśrayā prakṛtiḥ// Sāṃkhyakārikā: k 62.*

from
hila

Part
In c
extre
total
valid
they
abso

T
(sa
anal
pin
vali
the
tanc
(as

7
durn
vyat
sukh
ghat
dyet
cārth
evan
ched
vina
mok
bhā
SM:
8
iti n
...
reṇa
dhan
9
seṇa
1
lavi
natv
pary

from this bondage (nirvāṇa). Such a doctrine, being annihilationist (*ucchedavādin*), must be rejected.⁷

Partial Truths (Nayas)

In condemning the Vedāntin, Sāṃkhya, and Buddhist as extremists, the Jaina is not saying that their views are totally wrong. In fact he will admit that these views *are* valid when seen as *nayas*, or *partial* expressions of truth; they become false only when considered to possess an absolute and exclusive validity.⁸

The eternalist takes what the Jaina calls a synthetic view (*saṅgraha-naya*) of reality;⁹ the noneternalist adopts an analytical standpoint (*ṛjusūtra-naya*—"straight thread," or pinpoint view).¹⁰ For the Jaina, both positions are partially valid and must be accorded an equal place in describing the existent. Jainism maintains that an existent may simultaneously be both eternal (as substance) and non-eternal (as modes), but that it can be fully described only in a

7. *naikāntavāde sukhaduḥkhabhogau, na puṇyapāpe na ca bandhamokṣau/ durnītivādavyasanāsinaiṣaṃ parair viluptaṃ jagad apy aśeṣam// Anyayoga-vyavacchedikā: k 27. ekāntavāde nityānityaikāntapakṣābhyupagame na sukhaduḥkhabhogau ghaṭete. na ca puṇyapāpe ghaṭete. na ca bandhamokṣau ghaṭete . . . tathāhi—ekāntanītye ātmani tāvat sukhaduḥkhabhogau nopapadyete . . . kimca, sukhaduḥkhabhogau puṇyapāpanirvartyau. tan nirvartanaṃ cārthakriyā. sā ca kūṣaṣtanītyasya krameṇa akrameṇa vā nopapadyate . . . evaṃ anityaikāntavāde 'pi sukhaduḥkhādy anupapattiḥ. anityaṃ hi atyantocchedadharmakam. tathābhūte cātmani puṇyopādānakriyākāriṇo niranvayaṃ vinaṣṭatvāt kasya nāma tatphalabhūtasukhānubhavaḥ? . . . evaṃ bandhamokṣayor apy asambhavaḥ . . . niranvayanāśābhyupagame caikādhikaraṇābhāvāt santānasya cāvastavatvāt kutas tayoḥ sambhāvanāmātram api? . . . SM: k 27.*

8. *nīyate paricchidyate ekadeśaviśiṣṭo 'rtha ābhir iti nītayo nayāḥ . . . 'sad iti nayāḥ. sad eveti durnayaḥ . . . tathāhi—durnayas tāvat sad eveti bravīti . . . ayaṃ vastuni ekāntāstitvaṃ evābhyupagacchan itaradharmāṇāṃ tiraskāreṇa svābhipretam eva dharmāṃ vyavasthāpayati . . . mithyārūpatvaṃ tatra dharmāntarāṇāṃ satāṃ api nihnavāt. Ibid.: k 28.*

9. *svajātyavirodhena aikādhyam upānīya paryāyān ākrāntabhedān aviśeṣeṇa samastagrahaṇāt saṅgrahaḥ. sat, dravyaṃ, ghaṭa ity ādi. SS: §243.*

10. *ṛjuṃ praguṇaṃ sūtrayati tantrayati ti ṛjusūtraḥ. pūrvāparāṃs trikā-laviṣayān atīṣayya vartamānakālaviṣayān ādatte atītānāgatayor vinaṣṭānutpannatvena vyavahārābhāvāt. tac ca vartamānaṃ samaya-mātram. tadviṣaya-paryāyamātragrahyam ṛjusūtraḥ. Ibid.: §245.*

sequential order; the emphasis of the speaker (*vivakṣā*) will then determine which particular aspect receives precedence.¹¹ To describe the multidimensional existent solely as eternal or noneternal would be to deny the other aspects not expressly stated by the speaker. The Jaina recognizes this unavoidable limitation of language and seeks to overcome it by a device known as *syādvāda*, according to which a statement is correct only when it is qualified by the indeclinable *syāt*, reinforced by another indeclinable, *eva*. *Syāt* ordinarily has the optative sense of "might be" but in the Jaina usage is best rendered as "in some respect."¹² The further addition of *eva* (in fact) to an assertion qualified by *syāt* gives that assertion a certain necessary emphasis: that is, it is *this* particular perspective on reality (of the several which *syāt* implies) that the speaker has chosen to adopt.

Thus the statement "the soul is eternal," when read with *syāt* and *eva*, would mean: "In some respect—namely, that of substance and not of modes—the soul is in fact eternal." By qualifying the statement in this manner, the Jaina not only makes a meaningful assertion, but leaves room for other possible statements (for example, "it is not eternal") that can be made about the soul. This "balancing act" between two (or many) alternatives (*nayas*) in order to get at the truth is pictured as analogous to churning curds in order to obtain butter: the Indian milkmaid, rope in hand, draws one end taut as she slackens the other.

The Sevenfold Application of *Syādvāda* (Conditional Assertion)

The endeavor to be precise in making statements that do not violate the *anekānta-vada* has led to a system known

11. *tadyathā—ekasya Devadattasya pitā putro bhrātā bhāgineya ity evamādayaḥ sambandhā janakajanyatādinimittā na virudhyante; arpaṇābhedaḥ. putrāpekṣayā pitā, pitrāpekṣayā putra ity evam ādiḥ. tathā dravyam api sāmānyārpaṇayā nityam, viśeṣārpaṇayā 'nityam iti nāsti virodhaḥ. Ibid.: §588.*

12. *vākyeṣv anekāntadyotī gamyaṃ prati viśeṣaṇam/ syān nipāto 'rthayogitvāt tava kevalinām api// Āptamīmāṃsā: k 103.*

as sa
The J
or ne
situa
dravy
(sva-
When
stood
places
a part
comp
predi
precl
be ca
other

Th
the b
the b
stater
order
in fac
exist
both
diffic
than
and
respe

13.
sattvā
prthag
chabda
tadyath
(2) syā
syān n
eveti y
avakta
maḥ. (v
vidhini
avakta
panayā

as *sapta-bhaṅgi-naya*, the sevenfold application of *syāt*.¹³ The Jaina maintains that every assertion, whether positive or negative, is made within the framework of a certain situation defined by four factors: the specific being (*sva-dravya*), the specific location (*sva-kṣetra*), the specific time (*sva-kāla*) and the specific state (*sva-bhāva*) of the referent. When one says, for example, "the book exists," it is understood that existence is not being asserted for all books in all places, times, and states, but only for a *particular* book (at a particular place, and so on). The term *syāt* indicates this complex set of conditions, which must be referred to if the predication "exists" is to be valid. At the same time, *eva* precludes other conditions in terms of which the book may be called nonexistent: the being, location, time, or state of other objects (*para-dravya/ -kṣetra/ -kāla/ -bhāva*).

Thus we may have the two statements "in some respect the book in fact exists" (*syād asti eva*) and "in some respect the book in fact does not exist" (*syād nāsti eva*). A third statement, combining the two but expressed in a sequential order (*krama*), is also possible: "In some respect the book in fact exists, and in some further respect in fact does not exist" (*syād asti-nāsti eva*). If the speaker wants to express both aspects simultaneously (*yugapat*), he encounters the difficulty imposed by the law of contradiction; thus, rather than saying "in some respect the book in fact both exists and does not exist," one can assert only that "in some respect the (ontological situation of the) book is in fact

13. atha ke 'mī saptabhaṅgāḥ . . . 7 ucyate. ekatra jīvādaḥ vastuni ekaika-sattvādidharmaviśaya-praśnavaśād avirodhena pratyakṣādibādhāparihāreṇa prthagbhūtaḥ samuditayoś ca vidhiniśedhayoḥ paryālocanayā kṛtvā syāc chabdalāñchito saptabhiḥ prakārair vacanavinyāsaḥ saptabhaṅgīti gīyate. tadyathā—(1) syād asti eva sarvaṃ iti vidhikalpanayā prathamā bhaṅgaḥ. (2) syān nāsti eva sarvaṃ iti niśedhakalpanayā dvitīyāḥ. (3) syād asti eva syān nāsti eveti kramato vidhiniśedhakalpanayā tṛtīyāḥ. (4) syād avaktavyam eveti yugapad vidhiniśedhakalpanayā caturthāḥ. (5) syād asti eva syād avaktavyam eveti vidhikalpanayā yugapad vidhiniśedhakalpanayā ca pañcamaḥ. (6) syān nāsti eva syād avaktavyam eveti niśedhakalpanayā yugapad vidhiniśedhakalpanayā ca ṣaṣṭhāḥ. (7) syād asti eva syān nāsti eva syād avaktavyam eveti kramato vidhiniśedhakalpanayā yugapad vidhiniśedhakalpanayā ca saptamaḥ. SM: k 23.

as *sapta-bhaṅgi-naya*, the sevenfold application of *syāt*.¹³ The Jaina maintains that every assertion, whether positive or negative, is made within the framework of a certain situation defined by four factors: the specific being (*sva-dravya*), the specific location (*sva-kṣetra*), the specific time (*sva-kāla*) and the specific state (*sva-bhāva*) of the referent. When one says, for example, "the book exists," it is understood that existence is not being asserted for all books in all places, times, and states, but only for a *particular* book (at a particular place, and so on). The term *syāt* indicates this complex set of conditions, which must be referred to if the predication "exists" is to be valid. At the same time, *eva* precludes other conditions in terms of which the book may be called nonexistent: the being, location, time, or state of other objects (*para-dravya/ -kṣetra/ -kāla/ -bhāva*).

Thus we may have the two statements "in some respect the book in fact exists" (*syād asti eva*) and "in some respect the book in fact does not exist" (*syād nāsti eva*). A third statement, combining the two but expressed in a sequential order (*krama*), is also possible: "In some respect the book in fact exists, and in some further respect in fact does not exist" (*syād asti-nāsti eva*). If the speaker wants to express both aspects simultaneously (*yugapat*), he encounters the difficulty imposed by the law of contradiction; thus, rather than saying "in some respect the book in fact both exists and does not exist," one can assert only that "in some respect the (ontological situation of the) book is in fact

13. atha ke 'mī saptabhaṅgāḥ . . . 7 ucyate. ekatra jīvādaḥ vastuni ekaika-sattvādidharmaviśaya-praśnavaśād avirodhena pratyakṣādibādhāparihāreṇa prthagbhūtaḥ samuditayoś ca vidhiniśedhayoḥ paryālocanayā kṛtvā syāc chabdalāñchito saptabhiḥ prakārair vacanavinyāsaḥ saptabhaṅgīti gīyate. tadyathā—(1) syād asty eva sarvaṃ iti vidhikalpanayā prathamā bhaṅgaḥ. (2) syān nāsty eva sarvaṃ iti niśedhakalpanayā dvitīyāḥ. (3) syād asty eva syān nāsty eveti kramato vidhiniśedhakalpanayā tṛtīyāḥ. (4) syād avaktavyam eveti yugapat vidhiniśedhakalpanayā caturthāḥ. (5) syād asty eva syād avaktavyam eveti vidhikalpanayā yugapat vidhiniśedhakalpanayā ca pañca-maḥ. (6) syān nāsty eva syād avaktavyam eveti niśedhakalpanayā yugapat vidhiniśedhakalpanayā ca ṣaṣṭhāḥ. (7) syād asty eva syān nāsty eva syād avaktavyam eveti kramato vidhiniśedhakalpanayā yugapat vidhiniśedhakalpanayā ca saptamāḥ. SM: k 23.

inexpressible" (*syād avaktavyaḥ eva*). A further combination of the fourth statement with each of the first three yields the fifth, sixth, and seventh *nayas*, thereby completing all possible ways in which an object can be described on the "existence" dimension.¹⁴

The *sapta-bhaṅgi* is admittedly a rather cumbersome method of characterizing the existent, and is employed by the Jaina only in philosophical discourse. The spirit of this approach, however, guards him at all times from extreme viewpoints, especially illusionism (*māyāvāda*, the basis of many Hindu sects), determinism (*niyativāda*, in which the Jaina includes all forms of theism), and annihilationism (*ucchedavāda*, best represented by modern notions of materialism). Jainas are encouraged to read extensively in the treatises of other schools—a practice that probably accounts for the richly varied libraries of Jaina monasteries—in order to identify extreme views (and to apply the proper corrections).¹⁵ This practice probably does not really increase tolerance of others' views; nevertheless it has generated a very well-informed (if not always valid) sort of criticism. It also seems likely that the failure of any significant doctrinal heresy to appear during nearly 3,000 years of Jaina tradition can be largely attributed to this highly developed tendency towards critical analysis and partial accommodation of extremes.

In terms of conduct, any doctrine which preaches the unreality of either bondage, the universe, or the self cannot consistently attach importance to worldly behavior; it

14. For illustrations of these combinations, see H. Bhattacharya 1953. On the concept of *avaktavya*, see Tripathi 1968.

15. The following verses demonstrate the spirit of accommodation, generated by the doctrines of *anekāntavāda* and *syādvāda*, through which Jaina teachers sought to integrate different schools of Indian philosophy into their own system: "Bauddhānām rjusūtrato matam abhūd Vedāntinām saṅgrahāt/ Sāṃkhyānām tata eva naigamanayād Yaugaś ca Vaiśeṣikaḥ// Śabdabrahma-vido'pi śabdanayataḥ sarvair nayair gumphitāḥ/ Jainī dṛṣṭir itiha sārataratā pratyakṣam udvīkṣyate// . . . yasya sarvatra samatā nayeṣu tanayeṣv iva/ tasyānekāntavādasya kva nyūnādhikaśemuṣī// tena syādvādam ālambya sarvadarśanatulyatām/ mokṣoddeśāviśeṣeṇa yaḥ paśyati sa śāstravit// SM: intro. 31-32 (quoted from *Adhyātmāsāra*).

mu
into
reli
for
the
div
its
trin
All
is a
pat
con
(al
as
Thi
salv

Ca
Th
(1)
(3)
her
con
sess
cat
ins
spa
the
of

1
darś
vast
kriya
śaṅka
SS: §

must make salvation contingent solely upon insight (jñāna) into this unreality. At the other extreme, we may find total reliance upon the efficacy of action (karma), taking such forms as the Mīmāṃsā performance of Vedic sacrifices or the great faith and devotion shown by theists hoping for divine grace. The Jaina with his teaching of anekānta and its corollaries, nayavāda and syādvāda, escapes the doctrinal necessity of having to follow a single restricted path. All paths can be seen as valid in some respect; thus a Jaina is able to coordinate (*samuccaya*) various methods into his path of purification (*mokṣa-mārga*), which is defined as a combination of insight (*darśana*) into the nature of reality (along with faith in this view), critical knowledge (*jñāna*) as outlined in the scripture, and pure conduct (*cāritra*). This, for the Jaina, is the comprehensively valid path of salvation:

samyag-darśana-jñāna-cāritrāṇi mokṣa-mārgaḥ /¹⁶

Categories of Being

The Jainas divide all existents into three main categories: (1) those which are sentient; (2) those which are material; (3) those which are neither sentient nor material. "Sentient" here refers to the *jīva* or soul, which is characterized by consciousness. "Material" designates atoms (*pudgala*) possessing form/color, taste, smell, and palpability. The third category, called *arūpi-ajīva*, is understood to include four insentient, formless, yet existent substances (*dravyas*): space (*ākāśa*), the principle of motion (*dharma-dravya*), the principle of rest (*adharma-dravya*), and time (*kāla*).

Although "soul" is unquestionably the most important of these categories for the Jaina, our discussion of the

16. TS: i, 1. bhāvānām yāthātmyapratipattiviśayaśraddhānaśaṅgrahārthaṃ darśanasya samyagviśeṣaṇam. yena yena prakāreṇa jīvādayaḥ padārthā vyavasthitāḥ tenevāvagamaḥ samyagjñānam . . . jñānavataḥ karmādānanimittakriyoparamaḥ samyakcāritram. ajñānapūrvakācāranivṛttyarthaṃ samyagviśeṣaṇam . . . ity etat tritayaṃ samuditaṃ mokṣasya sāksān mārgo veditavyaḥ. SS: §5.

existents cannot begin there; we must first understand the context of temporal, spatial, and material factors in which the soul finds itself, the very fabric of bondage from which it strives to escape.

The Nonsentient and Nonmaterial

Space, although fundamentally unitary, is often described in terms of two categories: that which is occupied by other substances and that which is not. These are designated as "space having worlds" (*loka-ākāśa*) and "space without worlds" (*aloka-ākāśa*), respectively. The *loka-ākāśa*, which is equivalent to the manifest universe, has the outline of a man standing with arms akimbo and legs apart.¹⁷ All cases of *jīva*, *pudgala*, *dharma*, *adharma*, and *kāla* are said to occur within, or rather define the limits of, this three-dimensional shape. Unoccupied space, on the other hand, is infinite and totally empty. These "types" of space are of course continuous; the division between them indicates only the finite range of the other existents.¹⁸ The distinguishing quality of space is its ability to provide a locus for such existents; this is true whether it actually does so (as in the case of *loka-ākāśa*) or not (as in the case of *aloka-ākāśa*). Hence there is only one "space"; its extent is infinite. *Ākāśa* is further described as divisible into infinitesimally small "space-points" (*pradeśa*);¹⁹ these units have some dimension and yet cannot be subdivided.²⁰ In such

17. For a diagrammatic sketch, see Ch. IV.

18. *loka ity ucyate. ko lokah? dharmādharmaḍiṇi dravyāṇi yatra lokyante sa loka iti . . . ākāśam dvidhā vibhaktaṃ lokākāśam alokākāśam ceti. loka uktaḥ. sa yatra tal lokākāśam. tato bahiḥ sarvato 'nantaṃ alokākāśam. lokā-lokavibhāgaś ca dharmādharmaḥstikāyasadbhāvād vijñeyaḥ. SS: §549.*

19. *pradīśyanta iti pradeśāḥ . . . paramāṇuḥ . . . yāvati kṣetre vyavati-ṣṭhate sa pradeśa iti vyavahriyate. Ibid.: §541.*

20. Basham's note on *pradeśa*: "The *pradeśa*, though it roughly corresponds to the point in Euclidean geometry, is not quite the same concept. The Euclidean point has no dimension; the *pradeśa* has dimensions but they are infinitesimally small. It is a sort of atom of space, perhaps comparable to the point in the Gaussian system of geometry used by Einstein. The paradoxical 'dimensional point' is perhaps as good a translation of this difficult term as any other." Basham 1958: 77, n. 3. Souls, *dharma*, *adharma*, and the *loka-ākāśa* are said to possess uncountable (*aṣaṃkhyāta*) *pradeśas* and hence are called *asti-kāya* (having a body, i.e., an extension).

term
unc
unoc
tinct
a w
prad
Th
(adh
Cert
thes
flow
dhan
to th
theo
imm
defil
khy
atom
rathe
clear
thes
chan
Th
defil
is sa
thiro
(dha
and
dium
whic
descr
of dh
mov
not r
Simi
pare

terms, occupied space may be said to have a finite (though uncountable [asaṃkhyāta]) number of space-points, while unoccupied space has an infinity thereof. Again, the distinction is a conventional one: the unity of space taken as a whole must of course possess an infinite number of pradeśas.

The principles of motion (dharma-dravya) and rest (adharma-dravya) seem to be unique to Jaina philosophy. Certain scholars have made the reasonable suggestion that these principles are traceable to an ancient notion of fluids flowing through the universe (compare Vedic *rta* and *dharma*).²¹ Others relate dharma and adharma respectively to the *rajas* and *tamas* principles of Sāṃkhya. The latter theory fails to note that none of the four "insentient and immaterial" substances of the Jains undergo the sorts of *defiled* modifications (*vikṛti*) which characterize the Sāṃkhya prakṛti (and, for that matter, the souls and material atoms posited by Jains themselves). These four are said, rather, to remain always in their "pure state"; thus it seems clear that the modal alterations attributed by Jains to these four substances in fact comprise a kind of "undefiled change" (*svabhāva-pariṇāma*).

This sort of change is totally free of contact with, hence defilement by, any other substance. Such a phenomenon is said to be possible because of the special nature of these third-category existents. The principle of movement (dharma-dravya), for example, does not itself set the souls and material atoms in motion; rather it provides the medium, the external efficient cause (*nimitta-kāraṇa*), through which movement can occur. The jīva and pudgala are described as analogous to fish moving through the water of dharma-dravya; they possess by nature the capacity to move (the material cause [*upādāna-kāraṇa*]), and yet cannot realize this potential unless dharma-dravya is present. Similarly, the principle of rest (adharma-dravya) is compared to the shade of a tree, which provides an appropriate

21. See Schubring 1962: § 10.

situation or environment (and efficient cause) for someone to stop and relax. Both dharma-dravya and adharma-dravya are unitary substances which extend (again in terms of "an uncountable but finite number of space-points") throughout occupied space. They themselves undergo neither movement nor rest, "functioning" only insofar as other substances either move through space or come to a stop there.²²

Jaina philosophers have not unanimously accorded the status of "independent substance" to time (kāla). While Digambaras definitely place it in this category, Śvetāmbaras remain divided on whether or not to do so. Like ākāśa, dharma-dravya, and adharma-dravya, kāla is a kind of efficient or instrumental cause. It is seen as necessary for the occurrence of change in all other substances, and yet it in no way either generates these changes or is "touched" by them.²³ Now, if kāla is itself a substance, a logical problem arises, for substances by definition go through constant change. Thus it seems that another kāla would be necessary to make possible the occurrence of this change in the first one, and so forth into an infinite regress.

A further problem is posed by the Jaina notion that each "point" of time, one for every space-point (pradeśa) of the loka-ākāśa, is unable to combine with other time-points (kālāṇu).²⁴ These points are seen as forever sep-

22. gatipariṇāmināṃ jīvapudgalānāṃ gatyupagrahe kartavye dharmāstikāyaḥ sādharmaṇāśrayo jalavan matsyagamane. tathā sthitipariṇāmināṃ . . . adharmāstikāyaḥ sādharmaṇāśrayaḥ prthivīdhātur ivāśvādisthitāḥ iti. SS: §559.

23. dharmādīnāṃ dravyāṇāṃ svaparyāyanirvṛttiṃ prati svātmanaiva vartamānānāṃ bāhyopagrahād vinā tadvṛttyabhāvāt pravartnopalakṣitaḥ kāla itī kṛtvā vartanā kālasyopakārah. Ibid.: §569. A question could be raised concerning the possibility of change in modes on the part of the substance "space," since time units are not present beyond the loka-ākāśa. But if it is recalled that there is really only one continuous body of space, the problem disappears, for the existence of the time substance in any part of the whole is then "in contact," as it were, with any other part. The presence of time in each pradeśa of the loka-ākāśa is only necessary to make change possible for the other substances existing there, substances which are not unified in the way that space is.

24. lokākāśasya yāvantaḥ pradeśās tāvantaḥ kālāṇavo niṣkriyā ekaikākāśapradeśe ekaikavṛtṭyā lokam vyāpya vyavasthitāḥ. Ibid.: §602.

arate, like a heap of unjoined pearls. Hence time cannot have extension in the ordinary sense; that is, it is not a vast unity (*asti-kāya*) like space, but has an uncountable (*asamkhyāta*) number of discreet, dimensionless units. Under such conditons it is hard to imagine the time-continuum implicit in such notions as past-present-future. Because of these difficulties with the idea of "time as substance," some ācāryas have asserted that *kāla* is only a convention (*vyavahāra*) or designation, rather than a separate *dravya*.²⁵ But most Jainas adhere to the "substance" view and tend to ignore the logical questions it entails.

MATTER (PUDGALA)

The Jaina term *pudgala* is traditionally said to be derived from *pum-* (joining) plus *-gala* (breaking). This gives an idea of how Jainas envision the formation and destruction of matter: through atomic aggregation (*saṃghāta*) and disjunction (*bheda*), respectively. Atoms (*paramāṇu*) are indivisible and infinite in number; being, furthermore, without extension, they are invisible and do not fill up even a single space-point of the *loka-ākāśa*. Each atom has the four material qualities noted above—form/color, taste, smell, and palpability (defined in terms of moist versus dry and heavy versus light). These qualities, moreover, undergo constant changes of modes along their respective continua.

Although atoms do not have extension, they are said to be capable of combining with other atoms to form aggregates that do. This process of combination can occur because of palpability differences between various atoms, specifically those along the moisture-dryness dimension (*snigdha-rukṣatva*). Hence atoms that are equally moist cannot be joined together, while one that is very dry will forge a strong bond with one that is very moist. In this way material aggregates (*pudgala-skandha*) are

25. For further details on this controversy, see N. J. Shah 1968.

formed.²⁶ These aggregates are capable of producing the effects (that is, the visible formations) of earth, water, fire, and air, as well as sound, darkness, shade, light, heat, and various shapes.²⁷ Most significantly, they provide the body, speech, mental organ, and vital breath which house the soul in the state of embodiment.²⁸ They also form the generalized karmic matter which, after being defiled in various ways by the force of volitions, constitutes the physical basis (*kārmaṇa-śarīra*)²⁹ of bondage itself.

THE SENTIENTS (JĪVA)

Occupied space (*loka-ākāśa*) contains an infinite number of immaterial souls (*jīva*). Unlike atoms (*pudgala*), these souls do not lack dimension; each has an uncountable (*asaṃkhyāta*) number of space-points (*pradeśa*) and exists within the physical limits of its current corporeal shape, just as a lamp illuminates only the room in which it stands. This adaptation to a particular body's dimensions, however, is said to involve no change in the nature of the soul; whether a given body is as large as the entire *loka-ākāśa* or as small as the tiniest object imaginable, the number of the soul's space-points remains the same.³⁰ As noted earlier, this phenomenon is compared to the case of a cloth, which can be folded into various shapes without any alteration of its mass.

26. *dvayoḥ snigdharukṣayor aṇvoḥ parasparaśleṣalakṣaṇabandhe sati dvyaṇukaskandho bhavati. evaṃ saṃkhyeyāsaṃkhyeyānantapradeśaḥ skandho yojyaḥ. SS: §590.*

27. *sparsarasagandhavarṇavantaḥ pudgalāḥ/ śabdabandhasaukṣmyasthāulyasaṃsthānabhedatamaśchāyātapodyotavantaś ca/ TS: v, 23-24.*

28. *śarīravānmanahprāṇāpānāḥ pudgalānām/ sukhaduḥkhaḥjīvitamaraṇopagrahāś ca/ Ibid.: v, 19-20.*

29. See Ch. IV n. 55.

30. *pradeśasaṃhāraṇavisarpābhyāṃ pradīpavat/ TS: v, 16. amūrtasvabhāvasyātmano'nādibandhaṃ pratyekatvāt kathaṃcin mūrtatāṃ bibhrataḥ kārmaṇaśarīravaśān mahad aṇu ca śarīram adhitiṣṭhatas tadvaśāt pradeśasaṃhāraṇavisarpaṇasvabhāvasya tāvatpramāṇatāyāṃ satyāṃ asaṃkhyeyabhāgādiṣu vṛttir upapadyate, pradīpavat. SS: §557. For a Jaina critique of the Vaiśeṣika views about the size of the soul, see Thomas 1960: 52-56.*

C
scri
(an
abil
sou
dox
ally
Cār
by p
it is
req
con
mar
cha
cat
stat
P
cha
wit
tion
pro
fluc
tya
the
ask
The
star

3
ogan
soḍḍ
"fals
jñān
Cār
pram
trṭva
siddh
than
(quo
3
1549

Orthodox Indian systems (darśanas) have generally described the soul either as omnipresent (vibhu) or as atomic (aṇu); but both descriptions stress the *absolute* unchangeability of this most important of all existents. While Jaina soul-theory per se does not fall easily into a general "heterodox" category (it accepts, for example, the kind of karmically generated retribution and bondage rejected by the Cārvāka materialists and also contradicts Buddhist views by postulating a real substance beyond momentary modes), it is nevertheless true that the Jaina suggestion—indeed requirement—of some form of change in the soul-substance constitutes a unique and significant departure from the mainstream of Indian thought. The sort of dimensional change described above is only one example of the ramifications of this position, as closer examination of Jaina statements about the jīva will show.³¹

First of all, a Jaina regards the existence of a bound and changeable soul as self-evident; such a soul is the reality without which his entire world-view and quest for salvation would be meaningless. External demonstrations or proofs for this reality are considered redundant and superfluous; the simple experience of self-awareness (*ahampratyaya*) is proof enough. Even doubt—for example, "is there really a self here?"—supports this view when one asks the further question, "who is it that has the doubt?" The answer given, of course, is jīva, the basic "I" that stands behind all human actions.³²

31. The following verse enumerates eight characteristics of jīva: jīvo uvaogamao amutti kattā sadehaparimāṇo/ bhottā saṃsārattho siddho so vissa-sodḍhagaī// *Dravyasaṅgraha*: k 2. Each of these is said to refute one of the "false" views held by various Indian schools: "jīvasiddhiḥ Cārvākaṃ prati; jñānadarśanopayogalakṣaṇaṃ Naiyāyikaṃ prati; amūrtajīvasthāpanaṃ Bhaṭṭa-Cārvākadvayaṃ prati; karmakartṛtvasthāpanaṃ Sāṃkhyaṃ prati; svadeha-pramitisthāpanaṃ Naiyāyika-Mīmāṃsaka-Sāṃkhyatrayaṃ prati; karmabhok-tṛtvavyākhyānaṃ Bauddhaṃ prati; saṃsārasya vyākhyānaṃ Sadāśivaṃ prati; siddhatvavyākhyānaṃ Bhaṭṭa-Cārvākadvayaṃ prati; ūrdhvagatisvabhāvaka-thanāṃ Māṇḍalikagranthakāraṃ prati, iti matārtho jñātavyaḥ." SM: 201 (quoted in the notes from the *Dravyasaṅgrahavṛtti*).

32. On the problem of the existence of the soul, see *Gaṇadharavāda*: k 1549-1605 (Solomon 1966: 35-46).

Consciousness.—A soul is said to have three main qualities (*guṇa*) or functional aspects: consciousness (*caitanya*), bliss (*sukha*), and energy (*vīrya*). Of these, consciousness is central, representing what is in effect the distinguishing characteristic of the soul. It is through operation of this quality that a soul can be the knower (*pramātr*), that which illuminates both objects and itself. The application of consciousness is referred to as cognition (*upayoga*), which is twofold: perception (*darśana*), that is, first contact, indistinct awareness, or what might be called pure apprehension; and knowledge (*jñāna*), that is, comprehending the details of what has been perceived.³³ Since in the mundane state *darśana* and *jñāna* invariably operate in sequence, and are affected by different types of karmas, they are generally considered to be two distinct qualities (*guṇas*) of the soul rather than aspects of a single quality. In spite of certain controversies over this distinction, it will hereafter be employed with reference to the soul's cognitive functions.³⁴ That is, reference will be made to both "perception" and "knowledge," rather than simply to "consciousness."

Bliss.—The next important quality of the soul is bliss (*sukha*), which can be experienced by the *jīva* through self-knowledge. This quality is said to be fully manifest only when the soul attains perfect purity; the extent to which it is experienced corresponds directly to the degree of that purity. Strictly speaking, "pure bliss" is simply a label for the perfected, self-contained (*svabhāva-sthita*) state of the soul;³⁵ bliss is impure or defiled (*vibhāva*), on the other hand, when the soul harbors a desire to reflect external

33. *upayogo lakṣaṇam*/ TS: ii, 8. *ubhayanimittavaśād utpadyamānaś caitanyānuvidhāyī pariṇāma upayogaḥ . . . sa upayogo dvividhaḥ, jñānopayogo darśanopayogaś ceti . . . tayorḥ katham bhedaḥ? sākārānākārabhedāt. sākāraṃ jñānam anākāraṃ darśanam iti. tat chadmastheṣu krameṇa vartate, nirāvaraṇeṣu yugapat. pūrvakālabhāvino 'pi darśanāj jñānasya prāg upanyāsaḥ, abhyarhitatvāt.* SS: §271-274.

34. For details on these controversies, see *SJP*: 70-80.

35. For a study of the contrast between the quality of bliss (*sukha*) and the ordinary "feeling of happiness" (*sukhā vedanā*), see P. S. Jaini 1977b.

object
to bl
mutu
the s
(svab
anal
beco
norm
natu
an o
taine
it be
exter

It
of th
into
only
scur
direc
and
refer
bliss

Ener
calle
qual
very
Thu
feste
perc
mon
able
karm
vert
a ce
vibr
the s
whic

objects. Although such desire is described as antithetical to bliss, it must be understood that these two are not mutually opposed entities; they are, rather, two ends of the same continuum, the defiled (*vibhāva*) and purified (*svabhāva*) states of the same quality. This is considered analogous to the case of water, which is cool by nature but becomes hot in the presence of fire. Taking coolness as the normal or "pure" state of water, hotness becomes an unnatural or "defiled" condition, reached in the presence of an outside agent. Similarly, the soul is by nature self-contained (uninterested in external things) and totally blissful; it becomes "desirous" through association with certain external factors called defiling karmas.

It is important to note here that bliss is the only quality of the soul which can truly be defiled, that is, transformed into something of a different nature; other qualities can only be "obscured" or "blocked" (*āvṛta*) by so-called obscuring (*āvaraṇīya*) karmas. (As will be seen below, a direct relation obtains between the degrees of obscuration and defilement.) Hence the expression "defiled soul" really refers specifically to change along the dimension of the bliss-quality.

Energy.—Another significant quality of the soul is that called energy (*vīrya*). This functions as a sort of meta-quality, an abstract force which energizes, as it were, the very operation of the knowledge and perception qualities. Thus it will be said that both forms of cognition are manifested, at a given moment, in exact proportion to whatever percentage of the soul's infinite energy is present at that moment. Limitations are imposed on the amount of available *vīrya* by the condition of embodiment itself. This karmically produced mundane state also channels or "perverts" the direct expression of energy, causing it to generate a certain movement or vibration (*yoga*) of the soul; such vibration draws new karmic matter into association with the soul substance. But *vīrya* is also the efficient cause by which the soul brings about modifications in the functions

of the karmic matter drawn towards the soul.³⁶ Finally, *vīrya* is conventionally understood as the soul's capacity to engage in so-called giving (*dāna*), obtaining (*lābha*), enjoyment (*bhoga*), and repeated enjoyment (*upabhoga*) of worldly objects. A limited ability to take part in these activities during daily life is thought to be due to obstruction of *vīrya* by particular karmas.³⁷

Jainas speak of the "innumerable qualities" of the soul. Nevertheless, it can legitimately be said that the presence of those qualities which have been briefly discussed above—perception, knowledge, bliss, and energy—are sufficient to define the soul as a totally distinct and unique entity, an existent separate from all others.

Thus concludes this introduction to the basic units of the Jaina universe, the living and nonliving factors in terms of which all experience must be analyzed and all religious meaning found. To approach the integrated concept of reality into which the Jaina has molded these factors, we must now begin from the same starting point that he does: the fact of the soul's long and painful entrapment in the chains of bondage, chains forged as much by the soul's own potential for defilement as by the effects of material "karma."

36. For details, see *SJP*: 252–254.

37. *dānalābhabhogopabhogavīryāṇām*/ *TS*: viii, 13.

IV

The Mechanism of Bondage

Samsāra: The Cycle of Transmigration

Jaina thinkers have invested a great deal of energy in describing the precise mechanism of bondage; no other Indian school has been nearly so concerned with the details thereof. This phenomenon perhaps reflects an attempt to lessen the heavy emotional burden which the Jaina's view of bondage places upon him. He envisions his soul's tormented involvement with the material universe on a vast scale; this involvement has had no beginning, and it is likely to continue almost indefinitely.¹ He further believes it incorrect to imagine that the soul was once pure but later became defiled. It has always been impure, just as a seam of gold has "always" been imbedded in the rock where it is found. (This analogy to gold ore is taken one step further: "Absolute purification may be achieved if the proper refining method is applied.")

Speaking in a general way, the Jaina will say that the defiled condition of the soul leads to its continuous rebirth in various states of embodiment. Existence in such states, characterized by desire, involves activities which draw karmic matter; this matter in turn contributes to the soul's further defilement, hence to further embodiment. Thus we have the basic process through which one is held in the cycle of transmigration (samsāra).²

1. saṃtāno'ṇātiḥ paropparam hetuhetubhāvāto/ dehassa ya kammassa ya Maṃḍiyal biyaṃkurāṇaṃ va// *Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya*: k 1813.

2. karmavipākavaśād ātmano bhavāntarāvāptiḥ saṃsāraḥ. SS: §801.

The Four Stages of Birth

The saṃsāric cycle involves an infinity of possible birth-states, from the crudest forms of life to the most exalted and complex heavenly existences. It is not only said that a given soul *can* be born into uncountable states of every type, but that indeed it already *has* done so and will carry on in virtually endless repetition of these experiences. Four main birth categories or destinies (*gati*) are set forth: those of gods (*deva*), humans (*manuṣya*), hell beings (*nāraki*), and animals and plants (*tiryāṇca*).³ These are often indicated by the stylized wheel of life called *svastika* (*su-astika*, well-being), a symbol used thus by Jains from the earliest times and found on nearly all their iconography even today.⁴

Three of the four *gatis* are said to have a corresponding realm or "habitation level" in the vertically-tiered Jaina universe; thus gods, humans and hell beings occupy the higher (heavenly), middle (earthly), and lower (hellish) realms, respectively.⁵ This correspondence is not absolutely fixed; gods may often "leave home" to appear on earth, for example, and a whole class of demigods (for example, the Bhavanavāsi and Vyantara devas, namely spirits, demons, celestial musicians (*gandharvas*), yakṣas, goblins) is said to dwell not in heaven but in the space between hell and earth.⁶ Even so, each of these three higher births is generally to be identified with its particular realm.

But the animal and plant (*tiryāṇca*) category constitutes a special case. It is first of all the lowest of possible destinies, characterized by extremely gross sensory activity and pervasive ignorance. Among the *tiryāṇca* are several sub-groups, distinguished on the basis of sense faculties, that

3. *gatiś caturbhedā, narakagatis tiryaggatir manuṣyagatir devagatir iti. tatra narakagatināmakarmodayān nārako bhāvo bhavatīti narakagatir audayikī.* SS: §265.

4. For the use of this symbol in the Jaina ritual of worship, see Glasenapp 1925: 383. See below, Ch. VII (in discussion of *devapūjā*).

5. See a diagrammatic sketch of the Jaina universe at the end of this chapter.

6. See below, n. 60.

is, the
each g
bottom
life, a
micros
They a
individu
as colo
colonie
in the c
animal
group
very e
their b
kāyika
kāyika
These
do not
may d
The
or ani
realms
(*praty*

7. sā
bādarasu
sāhāraṇa
du mara
tāṇam//
see SM:

8. pr
'syāstīti
gives sev
punarjīva
chede sa
kṣatabhū
āhāropāc
aparapre
mlānyād
see Sikda

9. "P
thought t
forms.

is, the number of modalities through which members of each group are able to experience the world. At the very bottom of this scale, hence comprising the lowest form of life, are the so-called *nigoda*. These creatures are sub-microscopic and possess only one sense, that of touch. They are so tiny and undifferentiated that they lack even individual bodies; large clusters of them are born together as colonies which die a fraction of a second later.⁷ These colonies are said to pervade every corner of the universe; in the earthly realms, they inhabit even the tissues of plant, animal, and human hosts. Just above the *nigoda* is another group of single-sense organisms whose members take the very elements—the subtlest possible units of matter—as their bodies; hence they are called the earth bodies (*prthvī-kāyika*), water bodies (*āpo-kāyika*), fire bodies (*tejo-kāyika*), and air-bodies (*vāyu-kāyika*), respectively.⁸ These too are found throughout occupied space, but they do not permeate the bodies of other beings as the *nigoda* may do.

The remaining *tiryāṇca* are classified either as plants or animals proper; both groups exist only in the earthly realms.⁹ Plant beings (*vanaspati-kāya*) may take individual (*pratyeka*) embodiment, but more commonly they assume

7. *sāhāraṇodayeṇa nigodasarīrā havanti sāmaṇṇā/ te puṇa duvihā jīvā bādarasukumātti viṇṇeyā// sāhāraṇamāhāro sāhāraṇamāṇapāṇagahaṇaṃ ca/ sāhāraṇajīvāṇaṃ sāhāraṇalakkhaṇaṃ bhaṇiyaṃ// jattheḷḷa marai jīvo tattha du maraṇaṃ have aṇaṃtāṇaṃ/ bakkamai jattha ekko bakkamaṇaṃ tattha'ṇaṃtāṇaṃ// Gommaṭasāra-Jīvakāṇḍa*, k 191-193. For further details on the *nigodas*, see SM: k 29; and JY: 110-116.

8. *prthivyaptejovāyuvanaspatayaḥ sthāvarāḥ/ TS: ii, 13. prthivīkāyo 'syāstīti prthivīkāyikaḥ. tatkāyasambandhavaśīkṛta ātmā. SS: §286. Malliṣeṇa gives several reasons for considering these as animate entities: prthivyādināṃ punarjīvatvaṃ itthaṃ sādhanīyam. yathā sātmikā vidrumaśīlādirūpā prthivī, chede samānadhātūtthānād, arśo'ṅkuravat. bhaumam ambho'pi sātmakam, kṣatabhūsaṃjātīyasya svabhāvasya sambhavāt, śālūravat . . . tejo'pi sātmakam, āhāropādānena vṛddhyādivikāropalambhāt, puruṣāṅgavat. vāyur api sātmakaḥ, aparaprēritatve tiryaggaṭimatvād govat. vanaspatir api sātmakaḥ, chedādibhir mlānyādidarśanāt, puruṣāṅgavat. SM: k 29. For Jaina speculations on biology, see Sikdar 1974.*

9. "Plants" and "animals" found in the heavens or the underworld are thought to actually be gods or hell beings who have deliberately assumed such forms.

collective (*sādhāraṇa*) forms; a tree, for example, is said to be comprised of many souls. While plants resemble the lower *tiryāṇca* in that they too possess only the sense of touch, they are distinguished by having a longer life-span and a more complex physical structure. Animals, for their part, possess from two to five senses.¹⁰ Those with all five sensory capacities are further characterized as either totally instinctive (*asaṃjñī/amanaska*, literally, without mind) or able to reason (*saṃjñī/samanaska*).¹¹

Gods and hell beings, although they occupy widely separate worlds, share many characteristics. They are born spontaneously (*aupapādika*), that is, they simply appear, with no need for parents, and can alter the appearance of their physical bodies at will. In addition to possessing the five senses and reasoning powers seen in many earthly creatures, they are naturally endowed with special "super-knowledges" (*avadhijñāna*) such as clairvoyance, memory of prior incarnations, and the ability to see objects at great distances.¹² The real difference between a birth in heaven and one in hell revolves around the effect produced by these special powers; whereas they increase the pleasure of a god's existence (he may remember, for example, his good deeds in a former life), they bring nothing but greater suffering to the hell being (for he will recall only the evil of his actions, the hatred of his enemies, and so on).

This brief description gives some idea of the great range of possible states in which the bound soul can find itself.

10. *kṛmipīlīkābhramaramaṇuṣyādīnām ekaikavṛddhāni/ TS: ii, 23.* "The worm and similar creatures possess the sense of taste in addition to the sense of touch. The ant and similar creatures possess the sense of smell in addition to the senses of touch and taste. The bee and creatures of that class possess the sense of sight in addition to the senses of touch, taste and smell. Man and the beings similar to him possess the sense of hearing in addition to the former four." S. A. Jain 1958: 67.

11. *saṃjñīnaḥ samanaskāḥ/ TS: ii, 24. hitāhitapṛāptiparihāraparīkṣā . . . saṃjñā . . . SS: §301.* It is believed that *saṃjñī* animals are capable of receiving religious instruction. See below, Ch. V n. 17.

12. *bhavapratyayo'vadhīr devanārakāṇām/ TS: i, 21. yathā patatṛiṇo gamanam ākāṣe bhavanimittam, na śikṣāguṇaviśeṣaḥ, tathā devanārakāṇām vrataniyamādyabhāve 'pi jāyata iti bhavapratyayaḥ. SS: §213.*

Jainas
or sim
that de
and so
which
at such
(progr
It shou
necessa
of retr

The lo
For m
tually
numbe
and m
context
concer
"runs"
the car
purific
over,
state o
action
is doc
state o
Let us
forme

Mo
nate c

13. yadyapi
'nāvṛta
manaḥp
namātrā

14. bhūmiṣu
siddhiḥ?

Jainas believe that in every such state, no matter how low or simple, there will always be some residue of qualities that define the soul: perception, knowledge, energy, bliss, and so on.¹³ Thus, even the huge mass of karmic matter which oppresses the very lowest being will not keep its soul at such a level forever; the potential for spiritual growth (progress to higher states) is never eliminated completely. It should be noted, however, that this is not a theory of necessary evolution; the Jaina also accepts the possibility of retrogression, and thus of eternal bondage.

The Idea of Karma

For most souls, then, there is the likely prospect of a virtually endless journey through the cycle of destinies; the number of existences which one has already been through, and must yet experience, are beyond imagining. In such a context it is not difficult to understand why Jainas have concentrated their attention on the karmic mechanism that "runs" this process, for only through accurate analysis of the causes of the soul's defilement will the proper means of purification be made clear. This analysis is centered, moreover, upon the interaction of soul and karma during the state of *human* existence; man's need to feel that his own actions in the present are efficacious, and thus meaningful, is doctrinally justified by the tenet that only in the human state can one finally cut the bonds that imprison his soul.¹⁴ Let us examine the Jaina view of how these bonds are formed and how they are manifested in human experience.

Most Indian systems employ the term karma to designate certain traces (*vāsanā*) or seeds (*bīja*) left behind, as

13. "iha kevalajñānāvaraṇasya svāvāryaḥ kevalajñānalakṣaṇo guṇaḥ, sa ca yadyapi sarvātmanā 'vriyate tathāpi sarvajīvanam kevalajñānasyā 'nantabhāgo 'nāvṛta evāvatīṣṭhate . . . so 'pi cāvaśiṣṭo 'nantabhāgo . . . mati-śrutā-'vadhimanahparyāyajñānāvaraṇair āvriyate, tathāpi kācid nigodāvasthāyām api jñānamātrā 'vatīṣṭhate." *SJP*: 240 (quoted from the *Karmagrantha*).

14. . . . kasmin kṣetre siddhyanti? . . . janma prati pañcadaśasu karma-bhūmiṣu, saṃharaṇam prati mānuṣakṣetre siddhiḥ . . . gatyā kasyām gatau siddhiḥ? . . . manuṣyagatau . . . *SS*: §937.

it were, by one's deeds. These residual factors will someday bear fruit in the sense of generating or conditioning experience; thus it is said: "Every action must eventuate in an appropriate reward or retribution to the performer of that action: this is karma."¹⁵ Jainas adhere to the general outlines of this view; but they stand alone in asserting unequivocally that karma is itself actual *matter*, rather than the sort of quasi-physical or psychological elements envisioned by other schools.

Karmic matter is said to be found "floating free" in every part of occupied space. At this stage it is undifferentiated; various types (*prakṛti*) of karma, classifiable by function, are molded from these simpler forms only after interaction with a given soul has begun.¹⁶ We have already seen that such interaction takes place because of the soul's impure state, a state which has prevailed since beginningless time. The energy quality, "perverted" by this impurity, produces vibrations (*yoga*), which bring about the influx (*āsrava*) of different kinds of material karma.¹⁷ The vibrations referred to here actually denote the volitional activities of the individual. Such activities can be manifested through either body, speech, or mind; hence the soul's vibrations are said to be of three types, each corresponding to one of these modalities.

Vibrations alone, however, do not produce bondage. The karmic "dust" which they draw to the soul would simply fall away were the soul not "moistened," as it were, by its harboring of the passions (*kaṣāyas*): desire (*rāga*) and hatred (*dveṣa*). Karmas can stick to or bind (*bandha*)¹⁸

15. Compare: *kleśamūlaḥ karmāśayo dṛṣṭādrṣṭajanmavedanīyaḥ/ satimūle tadvipāko jātyāyurbhogāḥ/ Patañjali's Yoga-sūtra*: ii, 12-13.

16. *nāmapratyayāḥ sarvato yogaviśeṣāt sūkṣmaikakṣetrāvasthitāḥ sarvātmapradeśeṣv anantānantapradeśāḥ/ TS*: viii, 24.

17. *kāyavānmanahkarma yogaḥ/ sa āsravaḥ/ Ibid.*: vi, 1-2. *ātmapradeśa-parispando yogaḥ. sa nimittabhedāt tridhā bhidyate, kāyayogo vāgyogo manoyoga iti . . . yogaprañālikayā ātmanah karma āsravatīti āsrava iti vyapadeśam arhati. SS*: §610-611.

18. *sakaṣāyatvāj jīvaḥ karmaṇo योग्याn pudgalān ādātte sa bandhaḥ. TS*: viii, 2. *mithyādarśanādyāveśād ādrīkṛtasyātmanah . . . pudgalānām karmabhāvayogyānām avibhāgenopaśleṣo bandha ity ākhyāyate. SS*: §734.

a soul th
one tha
situation
all othe
further
that eng
upon th
carried
the spec
undiffer
knowle
develop
obscure

As fo
given k
what pr
upon it
sions (k
ity.²¹ C
(*nirjarā*),
undiffer
karmic
with the
soul has
of [karm

It sho
volveme
kṣetrāv
is said t

19. *tivr*
vi, 6.

20. *pra*
darśanāvan
nam. cārit
prabhavaty

21. *kaṣ*

22. *pīḍ*
nirjarā. Ibid

23. *uk*
asaim anam

a soul that is thus "moistened" but will have no effect upon one that is "dry" or passion-free (*vītarāga*). The latter situation occurs only in an omniscient being (*kevalin*); for all other souls, each intentional act leads inevitably to further defilement. The precise amount (*pradeśa*) of karma that engulfs the soul after a given activity is said to depend upon the *degree of volition* with which that activity was carried out.¹⁹ The type of activity, moreover, determines the specific nature (*prakṛti*)²⁰ assumed by the theretofore undifferentiated karmic matter. One's attempt to withhold knowledge from another out of jealousy, for example, develops karmas which will at a later time function to obscure one's own knowledge.

As for the duration (*sthiti*) and result (*anubhava*) of given karmas—how long they will cling to the soul and what precise momentary effect they will eventually have upon it—these are fixed by the degree to which such passions (*kaṣāya*) as anger and lust colored the original activity.²¹ Once a karma has given its result, it falls away (*nirjarā*) from the soul "like ripe fruit," returning to the undifferentiated state and thus to the infinite pool of "free" karmic matter;²² eventually it will again become associated with the same or some other unliberated soul. Indeed: "The soul has successively taken in and cast off every particle of [karmic] matter in the universe."²³

It should be made clear that Jainas view the soul's involvement with karma as merely an "association" (*eka-kṣetrāvagāha*, literally, occupying the same locus); there is said to be no actual *contact* between them, since this

19. *tivramandajñātājñātabhāvādhikaraṇavīryaviśeṣebhyas tad viśeṣaḥ/ TS: vi, 6.*

20. *prakṛtiḥ svabhāvaḥ . . . jñānāvaraṇasya kā prakṛtiḥ? arthānavagamah. darśanāvaraṇasya . . . arthānālokanam. darśanamohasya tattvārthāśraddhānam. cāritramohasyāsaṃyamah . . . tad evaṃ lakṣaṇam kāryam prakriyate prabhavaty asyā iti prakṛtiḥ. SS: §736.*

21. *kaṣāyanimittau sthityanubhavau. Ibid.: §736.*

22. *pīḍānugrahāv ātmane pradāya . . . avasthānābhāvād karmaṇo nivṛttir nirjarā. Ibid.: §778.*

23. *uktam ca—"savve vi puggalā khalu kamaso bhuttujjhiyā ya jīveṇa/ asaiṃ aṇaṃtakhutto puggalapariyaṭṭasaṃsāre/" Ibid.: §275.*

would imply a soul which was, like karma, material by nature. Just how a nonmaterial thing can in any way interact with a material one is not well clarified. The texts simply suggest that we can *infer* such an association from our own "experience" of bondage, just as we infer the association of an immaterial consciousness and a material object from the experience of perception.²⁴

The weakness of this explanation points up the formidable nature of the problem, which has vexed thinkers of virtually every Indian system. Jainas themselves are in fact not absolutely rigid in maintaining the immateriality of the soul.²⁵ They admit, for example, that a defiled soul can actually be "stained" by karmas; it is said to take a particular shade (*leśyā*) indicative of its spiritual level.²⁶ Thus, souls in the hellish existences are said to be black (*kṛṣṇa*), blue (*nīla*), or gray (*kāpota*), colors associated with the heavy karmic burden of a sinful nature. Lower *tiryāṅcas*, along with certain demigods of inferior type (those located somewhere between earth and hell), may possess souls of the above colors or of a yellow (*pīta*) hue. Dwellers in the heavenly regions have the yellow (*pīta*), lotus-pink (*padma*), or luminous white (*śukla*) tones characteristic of wholesome karmas. Human souls, as well as those of certain animals with five senses, show a very wide range of variation in moral development; they may evidence any one of the six colors, white (*śukla-leśyā*) being

24. *amūrtasyāpy ātmano bandho bhavatīti siddhāntayati—rūpādikai rahi-
taḥ paśyati jñānī rūpādīni/ dravyāṇi guṇāś ca yathā tathā bandhas tena
jñānī// . . . tathā kilātmano nīrūpatvena sparśaśūnyatvān na karmapudgalaiḥ
sahāsti sambandhaḥ, ekāvagāhabhāvāvasthitakarmapudgalanimittopayogādhi-
rūḍharāgadveśādibhāvasambandhaḥ karmapudgalabandhavyavahārasādha-
kastv asty eva. Pravacanasāra [Tattvadīpikāṭikā]: ii, 82.*

25. *na ca bandhāprasiddhiḥ syān mūrttaiḥ karmabhir ātmanaḥ/ amūrter
ity anekāntāt tasya mūrtitvasiddhitāḥ// anādinityasambandhāt saha karmabhir
ātmanaḥ/ amūrtasyāpi satyaikye mūrtatvam avasīyate// Tattvārthasāra: v,
16-17.*

26. *leśyā kaṣāyodayarañjitā yogapravṛttiḥ. SS: §265.* The notion of several soul-types, each with an identifying color, was also propounded by the Ājīvika sect; this may have been a common belief among various śramaṇa groups in ancient times. See Basham 1951: 245; Zimmer 1951: 229ff.

char
ladd
The
We
karm
whic
way
ghāt
the
bring
ment
ghāt
soul-
ing
nīya
(mo
those
mun
tinies
(āyu
(gotr
Fo
on th
indiv
will g
(body
whol
speak
own
towa
bring
to cor
a tiny
effect
The
appar

characteristic of those on the highest rungs of the spiritual ladder.

The Karmic Types

We have said that the soul's activities transform simple karmic matter into appropriate "specific-function karmas," which then interact with the soul in their characteristic ways. These karmas fall into two broad categories: (1) *ghātiyā*, those which have a directly negative effect upon the qualities of the soul; and (2) *aghātiyā*, those which bring about the state and particular conditions of embodiment. Each category includes karmas of several types. The *ghātiyās* are divided into four groups on the basis of which soul-quality they affect; thus we have perception-obscuring (*darśanāvaraṇīya*), knowledge-obscuring (*jñānāvaraṇīya*), energy-obstructing (*vīryāntarāya*), and bliss-defiling (*mohanīya*) karmas. *Aghātiyās* are also of four types: those pertaining to the pleasure (*sātā*) and pain (*asātā*) of mundane experiences (*vedanīya*), those determining destinies and body types (*nāma*), those determining longevity (*āyu*), and those determining environmental circumstances (*gotra*).

For most Jainas, these distinctions are important mainly on the level of conventional morality. It is thought that an individual's actions, reflecting the vibrations in his soul, will generate consequences specifically related to the mode (body, speech, or mind) and nature (wholesome or unwholesome) of the actions. Causing misery to others by speaking badly of them, for example, will result in one's own name being slandered at a later time. Selfless effort towards the welfare of strangers, on the other hand, will bring one unsolicited aid in the future. Such results are said to come "with interest;" just as a great tree will rise from a tiny seed, so will the scope and magnitude of a karmic effect far exceed those of the act which produced it.

The link between deed and consequence is not always so apparent as in the cases above, particularly with reference

to the determination of one's future destiny. We are told that rebirth in hell, for example, results from ferocious, unrestrained efforts to obtain power and possessions, while the heavens may be attained through zealous performance of penances, charity, and similar wholesome activities. As for those who fall among the *tiryāṅcas*, it is thought that they must have displayed great cowardice or dishonesty in former existences. Finally, future incarnation as a human being appears to depend less upon *what* one does than upon *how* he does it; whereas all other destinies are reached by one or another form of excessive behavior, the key to attaining human state is moderation in all things.²⁷

It may well be said that the connections between action and result which Jains set forth often have a rather arbitrary feeling about them; this is particularly true in their explanations of the structure of human society. Lower-caste status, for example, is said to be the result of having indulged in self-aggrandizement during a former life, while birth in a highly-placed family is seen as the outcome of having praised the virtues of others.²⁸ Such teachings perhaps go beyond a strict system of "exactly appropriate" reward or retribution. Even so, their intention is clear: to foster socially desirable behavior by placing all human actions within a context of understandable and inevitable consequences.

For the philosopher-monks, seeking to comprehend every aspect of bondage, the conventional understanding of karma was not nearly sufficient. Thus they produced a highly sophisticated analysis of the various types of material karmas, noteworthy not only for its coherent systematization of the complex factors involved but also for the deep psychological insight which it reveals.²⁹

27. *bahvārambhaparigrahaṭvaṃ nārakasyāuṣaḥ/ māyā tairyaḡyonasya/ alpārambhaparigrahaṭvaṃ mānuṣasya/ svabhāvamārdavaṃ ca/ TS: vi, 15-18.*

28. *parātmanindāpraśaṃse sadasadguṇodbhāvane ca nīcāir gotraysya/ tadviparyayo nīcāir vṛtṭyanutseko cottarasya/ Ibid.: vi, 25-26.*

29. See the schematic representation of this analysis at the end of this chapter.

THE G
It sho
karma
it may
fect, t
itself
karma
Jaina s
efficie
(upād

We
affect
obstru
manife
tive po
actual
mode,
menta
of win
actual
of the
bonda
of kar
when s
of kar
those v
"produ

Mohan
said th
fused a
fusion
state of
howeve

30. rā
nāmasyai
mako niśc
31. mo

THE GHĀTIYĀ (DESTRUCTIVE) KARMAS

It should be made clear at this point that for the Jaina karmas do not *impose* anything upon the soul. Although it may be said that a certain karma produces a certain effect, this must be understood in the context that a soul is *itself capable* of undergoing the change referred to; the karma's presence simply triggers this change. From the Jaina standpoint then, a karma can never be more than an efficient cause (nimitta); the soul itself is the material cause (upādāna) of whatever "happens to it."³⁰

We have noted earlier that most karmas—those which affect perception, knowledge, and energy—act only to *obstruct* these qualities of the soul, to prevent their full manifestation in the way that dust may obscure the reflective power of a mirror. The bliss quality alone undergoes actual defilement, transformation into an impure state or mode, as the result of association with karmas. Jaina commentators have seen this process as analogous to the effect of wine on the body, in that drunkenness involves an actual alteration of one's internal chemistry. Defilement of the bliss quality, moreover, lies at the very heart of the bondage mechanism; in fact, the "obstructive" varieties of karmic matter can exert their respective influences *only* when such defilement obtains in the soul. Any discussion of karmas must therefore begin with an examination of those which generate this defilement: the mohanīyas or "producers of delusion."

Mohanīya karma.—Speaking in general terms, it can be said that mohanīya karmas cause the soul to become confused and desirous. It is the combined presence of confusion and desire which uniquely characterizes the defiled state of the soul's bliss-quality.³¹ Bliss which is thus defiled, however, can no longer be properly called bliss; it has

30. rāgapariṇāma evātmanah karma, sa eva puṇyapāpadvaitam. rāgādipariṇāmasyaivātmā kartā tasyaivopādātā hātā cety eṣa śuddhadravyanirūpaṇāt-mako niścayanayaḥ. *Pravacanasāra* [Tattvadīpikāṭika]: ii, 97.

31. mohayati muhyate 'neneti vā mohanīyam. SS: §738.

attained a state that requires a separate designation altogether. The particular state attained depends on the kind of mohanīya karmas present. These karmas are basically of two types: insight-deluding (*darśana-mohanīya*) and conduct-deluding (*cāritra-mohanīya*).

Darśana-mohanīya: The *darśana-mohanīya* karmas function to prevent a soul's insight into its own nature; hence they engender the state called *mithyātva*, or having a false view.³² A soul in the state of *mithyātva* is born with a fundamental tendency to see things other than as they really are. This tendency is said to be developed by an individual's worldly experience into five major varieties of erroneous views: (1) Extremism (*ekānta*): taking a one-sided (eternalist or annihilationist) position about the nature of existents; (2) imputing to a thing certain characteristics which are actually contradictory to that thing's nature (*viparīta*), for example, imagining that God punishes or that sacrificing animals leads one to heaven; (3) doubt (*saṃśaya*)—skepticism or lack of conviction about the truths one has learned; (4) indiscriminate open-mindedness (*vainayika*), that is, accepting all religious paths as equally correct when in fact they are not; (5) basic ignorance (*ajñāna*) of what is and is not good for the soul (lack of awareness that one should take up "proper conduct," the Jaina path of purification). Thus we see that a soul in the state of *mithyātva* is not able to make even a start in the direction of conduct leading to salvation.

Cāritra-mohanīya: This problem is further compounded by the presence of the so-called "conduct-deluding karmas;" such karmas generate the various passions (*kaṣāya*)³³ that constitute the "desire" side of the defilement coin.

32. *yasyodayāt sarvajñāpraṇītamārgaparāṇmukhas tattvārthaśraddhānirutsuko hitāhitavicārāsamartho mithyādr̥ṣṭir bhavati tan mithyātvam. Ibid.: §749.*

33. *kaṣāya iva kaṣāyaḥ. kaḥ upamārthaḥ? yathā kaṣāyo naiyagrodhādih śleṣahetus tathā krodhādir apy ātmanaḥ karmaśleṣahetutvāt kaṣāya iva kaṣāya ity ucyate. Ibid.: §616.*

Whil
(dve
vide
into
of th
alon
gros
(ana
trem
mos
junc
stup
acti
incr
way
iabl
one
of t
I
for
par
thr
the
act
tha
tor
ob
ran
on
str
lat
ha

'na

nāv

While the passions are basically of two kinds, aversion (*dveṣa*) and attachment (*rāga*), the former is always divided into anger (*krodha*) and pride (*māna*), and the latter into deceitful manipulation (*māyā*) and greed (*lobha*). Each of these four is itself said to be of four types, arranged along a scale from gross to subtle. Passions of the most gross type are called "pursuers from the limitless past" (*anantānubandhī*);³⁴ they are manifested through the extreme forms of grasping and aggression that characterize most of human behavior. They operate, moreover, in conjunction with *mithyātva* to produce a condition of spiritual stupefaction. The individual, basing his strongly volitional activities upon false notions of reality, develops ever-increasing tendencies to think and behave in destructive ways. *Mithyātva* and the *anantānubandhī* passions invariably function together; any attempt to suppress or destroy one must involve simultaneous suppression or destruction of the other.

Even when one is able to overcome these very gross forms of passions, as well as the false views which accompany them, his spiritual progress is still hampered by the three more subtle types of passions that remain. Two of the types are said to prevent the abandonment of evil actions by rendering a person incapable of taking the vows that would eliminate such actions; they are called obstructors of partial renunciation (*apratyākhyānāvaraṇa*) and obstructors of complete renunciation (*pratyākhyānāvaraṇa*). The former group is the more gross and prevents one from undertaking even the *deśa-virati*, the set of restraints prescribed for a Jaina layperson.³⁵ Passions of the latter type are not antithetical to *partial* abstention from harmful activities (such as the *deśa-virati* requires). But

34. *anantasamsārakāraṇatvān mithyādarśanam anantam. tad anubandhino 'nantānubandhināḥ krodhamānamāyālobhāḥ. Ibid.: §751.*

35. *yad udayād deśaviratim . . . kartum na śaknoti . . . te 'pratyākhyānāvaraṇāḥ. Ibid.: §751.*

their presence effectively blocks an individual from the *total* renunciation of evil demanded of a monk.³⁶

The subtlest forms of the passions are called "the smoldering" (*saṃjvalana*).³⁷ These are not sufficiently strong to prevent one from entering the mendicant's path, but they induce an insidious state of apathy or inertia (*pramāda*), a lack of drive with regard to the actual purificatory practices entailed by that path. It is believed, moreover, that greed of the "smoldering" type generates an unconscious attachment to life itself. This attachment, combined with the sort of apathy mentioned above, constitutes the final and perhaps the most difficult obstacle which the mendicant must overcome.

Jainas also set forth a group of "subsidiary" passions (*no-kaṣāya*),³⁸ said to be present until every trace of the major ones is rooted out. This group comprises nine "every-day" passion-tinged experiences: laughter (*hāsyā*), pleasure in sense activity (*rati*), displeasure in sense activity (*arati*), sorrow (*śoka*), fear (*bhaya*), disgust (*jugupsā*), and sexual cravings for the male, female, and hermaphrodite (*strīveda*, *pumveda*, and *napuṃsakaveda*). The degree to which these no-kaṣāyas are manifest decreases with spiritual advancement; hence a monk is likely to laugh or weep or feel revulsion much less than ordinary people do, while for the kevalin there are no such activities or feelings whatsoever.

We now have some idea of the effects directly produced by deluding karmas: false views on the one hand, destructive passions on the other. But it is essential to understand that the ramifications of a soul's association with such karmas do not end here; in the defiled state that this association entails, the soul becomes a suitable ground for the

36. yad udayād viratiṃ kṛtsnāṃ saṃyamākhyāṃ na śaknoti kartuṃ te . . . pratyākhyānāvaraṇāḥ krodhmānamāyālobhāḥ. Ibid.: §751.

37. saṃyamena sahāvasthānād ekībhūya jvalanti . . . iti saṃjvalanāḥ. Ibid.: §751.

38. īṣadathe nañāḥ prayogād īṣat kaṣāyo 'kaṣāya iti . . . navavidham . . . hāsyādibhedāt. Ibid.: §750.

continuing influence of *other types* of karmas, karmas that not only affect all its remaining qualities but that generate the very state of embodiment. In a beginningless cycle like that of bondage, it cannot be claimed that "the mohanīya karmas came first and all other followed"; even so, it is true that no other karmic influences can ever be eliminated as long as these deluding factors remain. Hence, although the other karmas are said to be materially and operationally independent, they do show an oblique sort of reliance upon the "foundation" of defilement; this relation must be kept in mind during our discussion of their nature and function.

The Āvaraṇīya (Obstructing) Karmas.—The close connection between the qualities of perception and knowledge has been noted above; the karmas which affect each of these qualities are related in a parallel manner and should be considered together. Their operation is categorized basically in terms of the various types of consciousness which living beings may possess. These types are said to be five in number.

1. *Mati*: possessing the use of one or more sense capacities, up to and including a sixth sense called "mind."³⁹ (This last faculty is not to be confused with consciousness; it is simply an integrator of input from the five senses.) Since some portion of the soul's awareness must remain forever free of obscuration, every living being possesses at least a rudimentary form of *mati*.

2. *Śruta*: the ability to use words or reasoning, hence to engage in inference and similar processes.⁴⁰

3. *Avadhi*: a limited ability to become aware of things which lie beyond the normal range of the senses, as in clairvoyance, the "divine ear," and so on.⁴¹ Gods and hell

39. indriyair manasā ca yathāsvam artho manyate anayā manute, mananamātram vā matiḥ. Ibid.: §164. matiḥ smṛtiḥ samjñā cintā 'bhinibodha ity anarthāntaram/ TS: i, 13.

40. matipūrvam śrutam proktam avipaśārthatarkaṇam/ Tattvārthasāra: i, 24.

41. parāpekṣām vinā jñānam rūpiṇām bhaṇito 'vadhiḥ/ Tattvārthasāra: i, 25.

beings are said to be born with this ability; humans can acquire it through yogic practices. Beginning with this level of consciousness, the six sense faculties are no longer employed; the soul's awareness has here gone beyond the limited channels provided by the senses.

4. *Manaḥparyaya*: awareness of the thought-forms of others.⁴² This is a power available only to beings who have overcome all insight-deluding karmas.

5. *Kevala*: absolute, isolated omniscience, involving awareness of every existent in all its qualities and modes.⁴³

For each type of consciousness, there is a corresponding knowledge (*jñāna*) derived thereby; thus we have *mati-jñāna*, *śrutajñāna*, *avadhijñāna*, *manaḥparyayajñāna*, and *kevalajñāna*. Each kind of knowledge is subject to obstruction by a particular *āvaraṇakarma*, named for the knowledge which it affects.

The situation with regard to perception (*darśana*)⁴⁴ is a bit more complicated. First of all, two kinds of perceptual activity are said to operate on both the *mati* and *śruta* levels of consciousness: the *cakṣurdarśana* (visual perception) and *acakṣurdarśana* (perception by means of the other senses, including the integrating "mind" discussed above). On the *avadhi* level, however, we should expect no perception whatsoever, since the sensory functions which this term implies have been transcended by the di-

42. *parakīyamanogato 'rtho mana ity ucyate . . . tasya paryayaṇaṃ parigamaṇaṃ manaḥparyayaḥ*. SS: §164.

43. *asahāyaṃ svarūpotthaṃ nirāvaraṇaṃ akramam// ghātikarmakṣayotpannaṃ kevalaṃ sarvabhāvaḥ* / *Tattvārthasāra*: i, 30-31.

44. Jains originally referred to the process of omniscient cognition, wherein all knowables were effortlessly reflected in the soul, as *pratyakṣa*, direct perception; this was contrasted with *parokṣa*, indirect perception, i.e., any awareness gained through sensory activity, inference, etc. Later, however, they came into contact with the works of certain Indian logicians who employed the term *pratyakṣa* for the concept of "ordinary, sense-mediated perception." Seeing the utility of such a concept, but wishing to retain the supramundane sense of their own notion of *pratyakṣa*, Jaina teachers coined for the former the new technical expression *sāṃvryavahārika-pratyakṣa*. See *SJP*: 27; Kailash-chandra 1966: 131.

rect c
then,
tione
this c
aware
that i
sense
state
other
nitive
respe
obstr

The A
karm
group
soul.
vibra
seen.
gizes
sense
conv
be ef
givin
estat
error
(lābh
desir
enjoy
ing fr
to re
loses
again

45.
dvtay
contro
46.
bhoktu
utsahit

rect cognitive activity of the soul. There is some question, then, about how to understand the *avadhidaśana* mentioned in the texts. Probably we should take *darśana* in this case not as "perception," but as a sort of "indistinct awareness" which precedes the more complete awareness that is *avadhijñāna*. *Darśana* is again employed in a special sense with reference to the omniscient soul. A soul in this state is said to simultaneously cognize both itself and others; these "two directions" of the basically unitary cognitive function are labeled *kevaladarśana* and *kevalajñāna*, respectively.⁴⁵ Thus we have four types of *darśanas*, each obstructed by a corresponding variety of *āvaraṇakarma*.

The *Antarāya-Karma*.—The final category of obstructing karmas is called *antarāya* (hindrance); members of this group function directly to limit the energy (*vīrya*) of the soul. The partial energy which results is manifested through vibrations; these attract new karmic matter, as we have seen. If the *vīrya* quality is understood as that which energizes all others, moreover, then *antarāya-karmas* can in a sense be said to weaken every aspect of the soul. Popular convention also considers certain worldly frustrations to be effects of the *antarāyas*.⁴⁶ These are: (a) hindrance to giving something away (*dāna-antarāya*), as when one's estate does not go to the intended recipient because of an error in the will; (b) hindrance to obtaining something (*lābha-antarāya*), as when one is prevented from getting a desired job by intervention of a rival; (c) hindrance to enjoyment (*bhoga-antarāya*), as when illness prevents giving free reign to a particular sensual impulse; (d) hindrance to repeated enjoyment (*upabhoga-antarāya*), as when one loses a favorite book that he takes pleasure in reading again and again.

45. Compare: *eka evapayogas te sākāretarabhedaḥ/ jñanadarśanarūpeṇa dvitayīm gāhate bhuvam// Laghutattvasphoṭa: k 259*. For details on this controversy, see *SJP*: 70–80.

46. *yad udayād dātukāmo 'pi na prayacchati, labdhukāmo 'pi na labhate, bhoktum icchann api na bhunkte, upabhoktum abhivāñchann api nopabhunkte, utsahitukāmo 'pi notsahate ta ete pañcāntarāyasya bhedaḥ*. *SS*: §759.

AGHĀTIYĀ KARMAS AND THE PROCESS OF EMBODIMENT

Jainas often group the karmas discussed above, mohanīya, jñānāvaraṇa, darśanāvaraṇa, and antarāya, into a general category called ghātiyā, the destroyers. It is held that the defiled and obstructed states which these produce in the soul engender the influx of still another set of karmas, referred to as aghātiyā (those which do not destroy). The distinction between these two groups actually has little to do with destruction or the lack thereof; such terminology is employed mainly to contrast the primary role played by members of the former category with the subsidiary function of those belonging to the latter.

Aghātiyā karmas function to generate embodiment; even so, this function is wholly dependent upon the presence of ghātiyā factors in the soul, and indeed is hardly more than a reflection of the defiled or obstructed states to which these factors have given rise.⁴⁷ Four categories of "nondestroyers" are set forth, each of which must be considered in some detail.

1. Most comprehensive of the aghātiyā categories is that designated by the label nāma-karma. These karmas are "responsible" for numerous aspects of the new incarnation.⁴⁸ Most important of such aspects are the following: (a) destiny (gati), whether one is to be reborn as a god, human, hell being, or tiryāṇca; (b) birth (jāti), "species" within a gati, such as lion or tiger, high or low class of gods (it is significant that Jainas recognize no subdivisions of the human destiny, thereby denying any cosmological basis for the caste system); (c) body (śarīra), such characteristics as size, shape, sex, mobility, birth in an egg or

47. It is true, of course, that embodiment may continue after destruction of all ghātiyā karmas, as in the case of the Jina or arhat. The body in question, however, is to be understood as nothing more than an irrevocable effect of aghātiyās which "acted" just prior to the time of birth; no new body will arise when this effect has run its course.

48. Forty-two such factors are listed: gati-jāti-śarīra-aṅgopāṅga-nirmāṇa-bandhana-saṃghāta-saṃsthāna-saṃphanana . . . tīrthākaratvaṃ ca/ TS: viii, 11. The last, *tīrthakaratva*, refers to such special faculties as the divyadhvani, which a Tīrthankara is said to obtain automatically upon reaching the state of a kevalin. See below, Ch. VIII n. 26.

womb
genera
ical or
mainta
kāma
total o
The co
Jaina t
where
one in
2. 7
family
the pr
be con
enviro
more
(It is in
who t
new g
3. 1
feeling
happi
menta
"make
antnes
which
duced

49.

50.

pūjiteṣu
nīcairgo
rājyādil
kulādyu
dhuṣv a
cāraiḥ
cairgotr
51.
52.
yatphala
son bet
1977b.

womb. Nāma-karmas pertaining to śarīra are also said to generate two subtle bodies underlying the manifest physical one. These are the *taijasa-śarīra*, heat body, which maintains the vital temperature of the organism, and the *kārmaṇa-śarīra*,⁴⁹ the karmic body, constituting the sum total of karmic material present in the soul at a given time. The conception that such bodies exist is important to the Jaina theory of rebirth, since they constitute the "vehicle" whereby a soul moves (albeit under its own power) from one incarnation to the next.

2. The second aghātiyā karma is called gotra, literally, family or lineage.⁵⁰ There has been some disagreement on the precise meaning of this term; for Jainas, it appears to be concerned not simply with mundane aspects of the birth environment, but rather with whether that environment is more or less conducive to the pursuit of the spiritual life. (It is in this sense that śramaṇa traditions describe a person who takes the mendicant vows as having "entered upon a new gotra."⁵¹)

3. Next we have vedanīya, those karmas pertaining to feelings, which produce the ever-changing experiences of happiness (sātā) and unhappiness (asātā) that characterize mental life.⁵² For Jainas, no external object or event "makes" one happy or unhappy; it has no inherent pleasantness or unpleasantness, but serves simply as a prop which reinforces whatever feeling is being karmically produced at that moment.

49. sarvaśarīraprarohaṇabhūtaṃ kārmaṇaṃ śarīram . . . SS: §310.

50. gotraṃ dvividhaṃ uccair gotraṃ nīcāir gotraṃ iti. yasyodayāl loka-pūjiteṣu kuleṣu janma tad uccairgotraṃ. yadudayād garhiteṣu kuleṣu janma tan nīcāirgotraṃ. Ibid.: §757. Compare: "uccairgotrasya kva vyāpārah? na tāvad rājyādilakṣaṇāyāṃ sampadi, tasyāḥ sadvedyataḥ samutpatteḥ . . . nekṣvāku-kulādyutpattau, kālpanikānāṃ teṣāṃ paramārthato 'sattvāt, vidbrāhmaṇasādhūṣv api uccairgotrasyodayadarśanāt . . . dīkṣāyogyasādhvācārāṇāṃ sādhvācārāḥ kṛtasambandhānāṃ . . . santānaḥ uccair gotraṃ . . . tadviparītaṃ nīcāirgotraṃ." Quoted in Phoolchandra 1963: 327 (from *Dhavalāṭīkā*: 136).

51. See Ruegg 1969.

52. yad udayād devādigatiṣu śārīramānasasukhaprāptis tat sadvedyam. yatphalaṃ duḥkham anekavidhaṃ tad asadvedyam. SS: §746. For a comparison between the quality of bliss (sukha) and the sātā vedanīya, see P. S. Jaini 1977b.

4. Finally, Jains postulate the so-called āyu (longevity) karma, which determines the precise duration of the coming existence.⁵³ The characteristics attributed to this karma render it in a sense paramount among the aghātiyās, for it is said that with the fixing of the coming life-span, all the other factors of embodiment "fall into place," as it were, in an appropriate manner. Āyu does not *precisely determine* the effects of nāma, gotra, and vedanīya, but it establishes a framework or set of limitations within which these can operate. The fixing of one's next term of existence at seventy years, for example, means that he is most likely to be born as a human being, since gods live for a much longer period, animals generally for a much shorter one, and so forth. Perhaps even more importantly, āyu is said to differ from other karmas in that it is not at every moment being bound to the soul. We are told, rather, that a person's āyu-karma is fixed or bound *only once* in a given lifetime, that this event takes place sometime during the last third of that lifetime, and that the individual in question is never aware of its occurrence.⁵⁴ The implications of such a doctrine on the level of religious practice are evident; by earnestly adhering to the path of proper conduct, a Jaina can hope, during the latter portion of his life, to greatly influence the determination of his āyu-karma and thus the character of his entire next existence.

At the moment of death, the aghātiyā karmas have pre-programmed, as it were, the particular conditions of the coming embodiment. This information is carried in the karmāṇa-śarīra, which, together with the taijasa-śarīra, houses the soul as it leaves its physical body. A soul is said to be inherently possessed of great motive force; set free of the state of gross embodiment, it flies at incredible speed and in a straight line to the destination which its

53. narakeṣu tīvraśītoṣṇavedaneṣu yannimittam dīrghajīvanam tannārakam āyuh. evaṃ śeṣeṣv api. SS: §753.

54. For details on the operation of the āyu-karma, see JSK: I, 270-274; P. S. Jaini, forthcoming (b).

accom
ment i
above
distan

Th
forth
for ne
aghāti
bodim
mann
may b
p. 128
to rec

It i
has e
the st
Jaina
looke
to a c
by wh

Th
a thre
of thi
those
and r
ākāśa
motio

55.

56.

only b
"turns"
under s
for com

57.

58.

valaya
ātmapr

accompanying karma has deemed appropriate. This movement is called *vigraha-gati*;⁵⁵ it is said to require, as noted above, only a single moment in time, regardless of the distance to be traversed.⁵⁶

Thus the Jainas, unlike certain other Indian schools, set forth no theories of long-term transmigration, "searching" for new parents, and so on.⁵⁷ Under the influence of the *aghātiyā* karmas, the soul moves to its new state of embodiment in a straightforward and virtually instantaneous manner. The particular form and realm thus attained to may be any of those discussed earlier; the "map" (below, p. 128) of the Jaina universe will perhaps help the reader to recall these states and their respective locations.

It is perhaps appropriate that this study of the karmas has ended with a discussion of those which bring about the state of embodiment; for it is this very state which the Jaina mendicant strives ultimately to escape. We have looked at the process which he believes has brought him to a condition of such suffering; let us now turn to the path by which he hopes to break free of that condition forever.

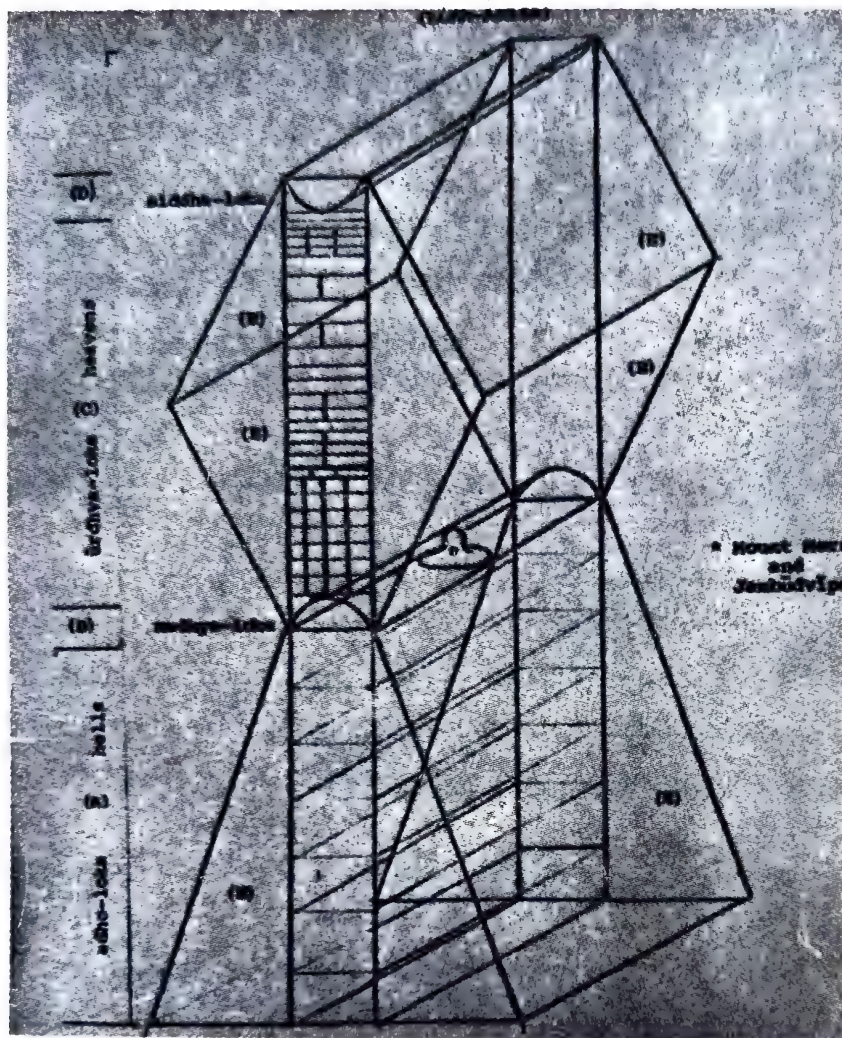
The Jaina universe (*loka* or *loka-ākāśa*) is conceived as a three-dimensional structure. Just beyond the boundaries of this structure are three atmospheric layers (*valaya*), those of humid air (*ghana-ambu*), dense air (*ghana-vāta*), and rarefied air (*tanu-vāta*).⁵⁸ Finally there is the *aloka-ākāśa*, the empty space in which no world, atmosphere, motion, or anything else is to be found. Because this realm

55. *vigrahagatau karmayogaḥ/ ekasamayā 'vigrahā/ TS: ii, 25, 29.*

56. In special cases, e.g., rebirth from the human realm to that occupied only by the *ekendriyas* ([E] in the chart of the *loka-ākāśa*—pl. 14) several "turns" may be necessary due to the three-dimensional structure of the universe; under such circumstances, the *vigraha-gati* may take two or even three moments for completion. See S. A. Jain 1958: 70.

57. For example, the Buddhist *antarā-bhava*. See Ch. VII n. 54.

58. . . . *sarvā etā bhūmayo ghanodadhivalayapraṭiṣṭhāḥ . . . ghanavāta-valayapraṭiṣṭhāḥ . . . tanuvātavalayapraṭiṣṭhāḥ . . . ākāśapraṭiṣṭhāḥ. ākāśam ātmapraṭiṣṭhāḥ, tasyaivādhārādheyatvāt. SS: §148.*



14. Loka-ākāśa, the Jaina universe:
a diagrammatic representation,
based on JSK 3:455. Sketch by
Marilyn Leese.

encompasses the "occupied" universe, it is said to constitute the abode or support thereof.

As for the loka-ākāśa itself, Jains have divided it into five parts, as follows.

- A. The lower world (*adho-loka*) is the home of infernal beings (*nāraki*), as well as of certain demi-gods (demons, titans, and so on). This region consists of seven tiers (*bhūmi*), each darker than the one above:
- (1) *Ratna-prabhā* (having the color of jewels);
 - (2) *Śarkarā-prabhā* (having the color of pebbles);

B. The
o
s
a
H
t

C. In
t
e
t
p
f
e
ś
c
n
h

59.
60.
realm.
yas), a
ten cla
Agniku
Dikkur
level o
between
peripat
dharva
earth, l
tiška (t
and the
by their
center c

- (3) *Vālukā-prabhā* (having the color of sand);
- (4) *Pañka-prabhā* (having the color of mud);
- (5) *Dhūma-prabhā* (having the color of smoke);
- (6) *Tamaḥ-prabhā* (having the color of darkness);
- (7) *Mahātamaḥ-prabhā* (having the color of thick darkness).

B. The middle or terrestrial world (*madhya-loka*) consists of innumerable concentric island-continent (*dvīpa-samudra*), with Jambūdvīpa in the center. This is the abode of humans (*manuṣya*) and animals (*tiryāṇca*). Human beings are not found beyond the middle of the third continent from the center.⁵⁹

C. In the higher or celestial world (*ūrdhva-loka*) are found the abodes of heavenly beings (*Vaimānika-deva*, gods endowed with celestial vehicles).⁶⁰ These gods fall into two categories: those born in kalpa heavens (*kalpopa-panna*), and those born beyond them (*kalpātīta*). The former are ordinary beings who may or may not have entered the holy Jaina path of insight (*samyak-darśana*—see Chapter V); the latter are invariably endowed with this insight and are destined to attain mokṣa within two or three births after returning to human existence. There are sixteen possible abodes,

59. See Ch. I n. 66.

60. It should not be thought that all "gods" (*deva*) dwell in the celestial realm. In addition to the *Vaimānika-devas* there are three lower orders (*nikāyas*), as follows. (1) *Bhavanavāsī* (those who reside in mansions), comprising ten classes: *Asurakumāra*, *Nāgakumāra*, *Vidyutkumāra*, *Suparṇakumāra*, *Agnikumāra*, *Vātakumāra*, *Stanitakumāra*, *Udadhikumāra*, *Dvīpakumāra*, *Dikkumāra*. The mansions of the *Asurakumāras* are said to lie in the upper level of the first hell, while those of the other nine classes appear either between earth and hell or between earth and heaven. (2) *Vyantaravāsī* (the peripatetic), comprising eight classes: *Kinnara*, *Kimpuruṣa*, *Mahoraga*, *Gandharva*, *Yakṣa*, *Rākṣasa*, *Bhūta*, *Piśāca*. These demigods actually dwell on earth, but in continents far beyond those accessible to human beings. (3) *Jyotiṣka* (the stellar), i.e., *devas* residing in the sun, the moon, the constellations and the scattered (*prakīrṇaka*) stars. These luminary beings are characterized by their continuous movement around Mount Meru, which stands at the very center of the *loka-ākāśa*.

situated one above the other, for kalpopapanna beings: (1) Saudharma; (2) Īsāna; (3) Sānatkumāra; (4) Māhendra; (5) Brahma; (6) Brahmottara; (7) Lāntava; (8) Kāpiṣṭha; (9) Śukra; (10) Mahāśukra; (11) Śatāra; (12) Sahasrāra; (13) Ānata; (14) Prāṇata; (15) Āraṇa; (16) Acyuta. The kalpātīta beings on the other hand, have fourteen: (1-9) nine Graiveyakas; (10) Vijaya; (11) Vaijayanta; (12) Jayanta; (13) Aparājita; (14) Sarvārthasiddhi (those born in the latter, the highest heaven, are said to be in their penultimate existence; they will be reborn as human beings and will attain mokṣa in that life).

- D. *Siddha-loka* is the permanent abode of the liberated souls.⁶¹ This crescent-shaped region, lying beyond the celestial realms, constitutes the apex of world-space (*loka-ākāśa*).
- E. Some abodes are restricted to habitation by *ekendriyas* (beings with only one sense faculty). These organisms may occupy all parts of the *loka-ākāśa*, but *trasas* (beings having two or more senses) are restricted to areas (A)-(D), the so-called *trasa-nāḍī*; hence there are only *ekendriyas* in (E).

61. The siddhas abide in the *tanu-vāta*, just at the edge of the *aloka-ākāśa*. This region, also known as *īsat-prāgbhārā-bhūmi* ("slightly bent," like an inverted umbrella), is said to be of the same circumference as the realm of human beings: "edāe bahumajjhe khettaṃ nāmeṇa Īsipabbhāraṃ / . . . uttāṇadhavalachattovamāṇasaṃthāṇasumḍaraṃ edaṃ / . . . aṭṭhamabhūmajjhagado tapparihī maṇuvakhettaparihisamo /" Quoted in JSK: III, 334.

TYPES OF KARMA

Karmic Matter "Bound" with the Soul⁶²

A. Four ghātiyā (destructive karmas):

1. mohanīya:

(a) darśana-mohanīya (insight-deluding), engendering mithyātva (false views)

(b) cāritra-mohanīya (conduct deluding), preventing samyak-cāritra (pure conduct)

(b-1) kaṣāya (passions)—anger (krodha), pride (māna), deceit (māyā), greed (lobha)—of four types:

—anantānubandhī (pursuers through endless times), always operating with darśana-mohanīya

—apratyākhyānāvaraṇa (obstructors of partial renunciation), those which prevent the proper conduct of a man taking the layman's vows

—pratyākhyānāvaraṇa (obstructors of complete renunciation), those which prevent the conduct of a mendicant

—saṃjvalana (smoldering), producing apathy (pramāda) in meditation and causing subtle attachment to life

(b-2) no-kaṣāya (subsidiary passions, or sentiments), of nine kinds: laughter (hāsyā), pleasure (rati), displeasure (arati), sorrow (śoka), fear (bhaya), disgust (jugupsā), sexual cravings for male, female, and hermaphrodite (strīveda, puṃveda, napuṃsakaveda)

2. jñānāvaraṇīya (knowledge-obscuring), of five kinds:

—matijñānāvaraṇīya, obstructing the function of senses and mind

62. For a comprehensive treatment of the doctrines of karma and rebirth, see Guérinot 1926: 186-205; Gläsenapp 1942; *SJP*: 220-260; Kalghatgi 1971.

- śrutajñānāvaraṇīya, obstructing the ability to use reasoning
- avadhijñānāvaraṇīya, obstructing the ability of clairvoyance
- manahparyayañānāvaraṇīya, obstructing the ability to be aware of thought forms of others
- kevalajñānāvaraṇīya, obstructing the ability of omniscience

3. darśanāvaraṇīya (perception-obscuring), of four kinds:

- cakṣurdarśanāvaraṇīya, obstructing perception by means of eyes
- acakṣurdarśanāvaraṇīya, obstructing perception by means of other senses
- avadhidarśanāvaraṇīya, obstructing perception preceding avadhijñāna
- kevaladarśanāvaraṇīya, obstructing perception associated with kevalajñāna

4. antarāya (restrictor), that is, of the quality of energy (vīrya); also, generator of yoga (vibrations) of body, mind, and speech

B. Four aghātiyā (nondestructive, that is, secondary karmas):

1. vedanīya (feeling-producing), twofold:
 - sātāvedanīya, producing pleasant feelings
 - asātāvedanīya, producing unpleasant feelings
2. nāma (name), that by which a soul is identified as being a man, animal, heavenly being, or hell being; this karma determines these births and provides the appropriate body, senses, mind, sex, and color
3. āyu (longevity); this karma determines longevity in a given birth
4. gotra (family); this karma determines environmental circumstances conducive or detrimental to leading a spiritual life.

O
first
moh
The
auto
karm
dea

Of the four ghātiyā karmas, the darśana-mohanīya is first destroyed in the fourth *guṇasthāna* and the cāritra-mohanīya is next destroyed in the twelfth *guṇasthāna*. The remaining three ghātiyā karmas are then destroyed automatically in the thirteenth *guṇasthāna*. The aghātiyā karmas are all simultaneously destroyed at the time of death in the fourteenth *guṇasthāna*. (See Chapter VIII.)

V

Samyak-Darśana: The First Awakening

The Problem

Man's attempts to describe comprehensively the human condition have yielded religious and philosophical systems of incredible diversity. Within a given cultural matrix, however, it is usually possible to discover certain core beliefs, "givens" accepted by nearly all thinkers of that culture, which underlie the multitude of conflicting doctrinal developments. The history of Indian thought provides a clear example of this phenomenon; indeed, we can properly understand the doctrines of virtually all Indian schools (excepting that of the Cārvāka or "materialist" tradition) as efforts to encompass consistently, within a soteriological framework, the implications of two basic assumptions: that man has been forever bound in a state of suffering, and that this bondage is fundamentally due to some kind of spiritual ignorance.

This ignorance receives various names: *avidyā* for the Buddhists, *aviveka* for the Sāṃkhya, *mithyātva* for the Jains.¹ In every case, however, it represents a misunderstanding or lack of awareness of one's "true nature" (however this may be defined by a given school), as well as of the factors which cause that nature to be hidden from view. Thus it follows that elimination of ignorance provides the only key whereby the shackles of bondage, hence of suffering, can be removed.

1. On the problem of *avidyā* in different Indian systems, see *SJP*: 81-219.

Cen
has be
why v
out ur
bring
never
cult q
for ea
If, for
from
presen
seek t
tialiti
any v
cause
ing he
trol b

The
Most
monis
lems
some
hand
tion.
influe
(bhak
neithe
is con
grace
is sai
truth
salva
A
how
2. C
śrutena
Kathop

Certain difficulties come immediately to mind. If one has been in a state of bondage since beginningless time, why will he suddenly turn away from delusion and set out upon a new course? What are the conditions that could bring about this momentous shift, conditions which have never been present before? These are among the most difficult questions that any soteriological system must face, for each possible answer presents its own set of problems. If, for example, the factors required to turn a soul away from delusion and towards salvation have been eternally present in that soul in some potential form, then we must seek the crucial external causes which bring those potentialities into a manifest state. Can the soul, moreover, in any way influence the appearance of such "efficient causes," or does it remain totally at their mercy, languishing helplessly in bondage until some force beyond its control brings them into play?

The Theistic Solution

Most Indian traditions, with the notable exception of the monistic (Advaita) Vedānta, have dealt with these problems by recourse to a theistic doctrine; the intervention of some divine agency is here seen to provide the "helping hand" that lifts human souls from the mire of transmigration. This divine grace is not in any way subject to human influence; even the ability to engage in devotional practices (*bhakti*) is considered a gift from the Lord.² Grace can be neither compelled nor rejected; hence the soul's salvation is completely out of its own hands. While the workings of grace are shrouded in mystery, the result produced thereby is said to be perfectly clear: the soul's eyes are opened, truth is perceived, and one enters upon the path of salvation.

A theistic point of view deals well with the question of how a soul can suddenly turn away from an eternity of

2. Compare: *nāyam ātmā pravacanena labhyo na medhayā na bahunā śrutena / yam evaiṣa vṛṇute tena labhyas tasyaiṣa ātmā vivṛṇute tanūṃ svām* // *Kaṭhopaniṣat*: k 22.

ignorance; the totally external nature of grace seems in some way to "explain" such an apparently arbitrary event. For the non-Vedic śramaṇa traditions of the Ganges Valley, however, the theory of divine intervention generated even more logical problems than it solved. The agent of grace, it was said, would have to be a special sort of being (*puruṣa-viśeṣa*), unlike all other living things in that it has been forever free of bondage (*sadā-mukta*).³ But how could an unbound being ever come into contact with the world of *sāṃsāra*—or influence it—since such actions are by definition limited to the embodied state?⁴ If it is admitted, moreover, that even a single being can exist outside the framework of karmic entrapment, that same possibility must be admitted for any number of other beings as well. Thus one would be driven into the theory that all souls are *in reality* unbound, and that we must understand "bondage" as illusory.⁵ But if this is so, if bondage is unreal, then why is there the experience of suffering?

The Fatalist Solution

A radical alternative to theism was propounded by the śramaṇa school known as Ājīvika, whose most influential teacher was the rather notorious Makkhali Gosāla. The Ājīvikas held that a soul could suddenly escape from bondage because the extent of its time therein was specifically predetermined; it simply passed through a linear series of births whose point of termination was absolutely fixed.

The precise doctrines of this sect have not come down to us; we have only the descriptions provided by rival

3. kleśakarmavipākāśayair aparāmrṣṭaḥ puruṣaviśeṣa īśvaraḥ / avidyādayaḥ kleśāḥ, kuśalākuśalāni karmāṇi, tatphalaṃ vipākaḥ, tadanugūṇā vāsanā āśayāḥ . . . yo hy anena bhogenāparāmrṣṭaḥ sa puruṣaviśeṣa īśvaraḥ . . . sa tu sadiava muktaḥ sadaiveśvaraḥ. *Yoga-sūtra* [Vyāsa-bhāṣya]: i, 24.

4. For a Jaina critique of the Vaiśeṣika doctrine of a world-creator God, see SM: k 6; Thomas 1960: 29–36.

5. Compare: tasmān na badhyate 'ddhā na mucyate nāpi saṃsarati kaścit / saṃsarati badhyate mucyate ca nānāśrayā prakṛtiḥ // *Sāṃkhyakārikā*: k 62.

schools, such as the following passage from the Buddhist Sāmaññaphala-sutta of the *Dīghanikāya*:

There is no cause, either ultimate or remote, for the depravity of beings; they become depraved without reason and without cause. There is no cause, either proximate or remote, for the rectitude of beings; they become pure without reason and without cause. The attainment of any given condition, of any character, does not depend on one's own acts, or on the acts of another, or on human effort. There is no such thing as power, energy, human strength or human vigor. All animals, all creatures (with one, two or more senses), all beings (produced from eggs or in womb), all souls are without force and power and energy of their own. They are bent this way and that by their fate (*niyati*), by the necessary conditions of the classes to which they belong, by their individual natures, and it is according to their positions in one or another of the six classes that they experience ease or pain . . .⁶

Having wandered in transmigration through eighty-four hundred thousand periods [that is, states of existence], both fools and wise alike shall at last make an end of suffering. Though the wise may hope: "By this virtue or this performance of duty, or this penance, or this righteousness will I bring to maturity the (inherited) karma that is not yet mature," and though the fool may hope, by the same means, to get gradually rid of karma that has matured, neither can do it. The measure of ease and pain cannot be altered in the course of transmigration; there can be neither increase nor decrease thereof, neither excess nor deficiency. Just as when a ball of string is cast forth it will spread out only as far as, and no farther than, it is able to unwind, just so shall both fools and

6. n'atthi . . . hetu, n'atthi paccayo sattānaṃ saṃkilesāya, ahetu-apaccayā sattā saṃkilissanti. n'atthi hetu, n'atthi paccayo sattānaṃ visuddhiyā, ahetu-apaccayā sattā visujjhanti. n'atthi atta-kāre, n'atthi para-kāre, n'atthi purisakāre, n'atthi balaṃ, n'atthi viriyaṃ, n'atthi purisathāmo, n'atthi purisaparakkamo. sabbe sattā, sabbe pāṇā, sabbe bhūtā, sabbe jīvā, avasā abalā aviriyā niyati-saṅgati-bhāva-pariṇatā chass'evābhijātisu sukha-dukkhaṃ paṭisaṃvedenti. *Dīghanikāya*: I, 53.

wise alike, having wandered in transmigration . . . make an end of suffering.⁷

The universal process thus described stands in sharp contrast to the beginningless cyclic one perceived by all other Indian schools. More important, however, the Ājīvikas contradicted the most dearly held belief of their śramaṇa counterparts: that all human actions generate appropriate karmic reward or retribution. By postulating real bondage and automatic liberation they overcame several of the philosophical difficulties mentioned above but aroused the vehement antagonism of Buddhists, Jains, and others for whom conduct was directly and intimately related to eventual suffering or salvation.

The Jaina Solution

Perhaps more than any other Indian religious tradition, Jainism is imbued with an emotional commitment to self-reliance. Thus Jains have found both theistic and fatalistic doctrines repugnant, for these doctrines not only negate the efficacy of the Tīrthaṅkaras' path, but they totally deny the soul's ability to influence its own future. Although Jaina philosophers have made much of the burden of karma, this burden is not to be construed as an inescapable, unalterable, externally imposed effect.

We have seen that the soul itself is the material cause (upādāna-kāraṇa) of defilement and obscuration, and that its energy quality (vīrya) actively differentiates the karmic matter into appropriate efficient causes (nimitta-kāraṇa).

7. cuddasa kho paṇ' imāṇi yoni-pamukha-satasahassāni . . . cullāsīti mahā-kappuno sata-sahassāni, yāni bāle ca paṇḍite ca sandhāvitvā saṃsaritvā dukkhass' antaṃ karissanti. tattha n'atthi: "imināhaṃ sīlena vā vatena vā tapena vā brahmacariyena vā aparipakkamā vā kammaṃ paripācessāmi, paripakkamā vā kammaṃ phussa-phussa vyantīkarissāmi" ti. h'evaṃ n'atthi. doṇa-mite sikkha-dukkhe pariyantakāṇe saṃsāre, n'atthi hāyana-vaḍḍhane, n'atthi ukkam-sāvakaṃse. seyyathā pi nāma suttagule khitte nibbēṭhiyamānam eva phaleti, evaṃ eva bāle ca paṇḍite ca sandhāvitvā saṃsaritvā dukkhass' antaṃ karissanti. Ibid.: I, 54. For a discussion on the terms *niyati* and *saṅgati* in the Ājīvika system, see Basham 1951: 225-239.

But the capacities of the soul do not end here. Jainas in fact set forth a total of eight different functions into which the energy quality⁸ can be directed: (1) *bandhana*, energy that brings about karmic influx; (2) *saṃkramaṇa*, energy that contributes to karmic differentiation or transformation; (3) *udvartanā*, energy that delays the time and increases the intensity of karmic fruition; (4) *apavartanā*, energy that hastens the time and decreases the intensity of karmic fruition; (6) *udīraṇā*, energy that makes possible the actual event of premature fruition; (6) *upaśamanā*, energy that temporarily prevents karmas from rising to fruition; (7) *nidhatti*, energy that renders karmas incapable of all processes except change in fruition time and intensity; (8) *nikācanā*, energy that renders karmas incapable of all processes whatsoever. All of this is a far cry from the Ājīvika position that the soul, with every action predetermined and involuntary, can neither prolong nor decrease the karmic influences upon it.⁹

The Idea of Capability

Jainas grant the soul great powers of manipulation with regard to the karmas. But these powers alone are not considered sufficient to effect the incredible shift from ignorance to insight that makes eventual salvation possible. Such an event, we are told, can occur only in the presence of a further element, an extraordinary quality of the soul called *bhavyatva*, capability to become (free). This quality is said to exist within the soul and yet remain totally untouched by the karmas also present there. It is a sort of inert catalyst, awaiting the time when it will be activated and thus trigger an irrevocable redirection of the soul's energy: away from delusion and bondage, towards insight and freedom.

8. See Ch. IV n. 17 for the manifold functions of *vīrya*.

9. For details on the various processes involved in these operations, see *SJP*: 254-255.

The mysterious nature of bhavyatva is compounded by the assertion that not all souls possess it. Those which do not are designated *abhavya*; they can never attain salvation.¹⁰ Why the Jainas should harbor such a theory of absolute, permanent bondage for certain beings is not at all clear; it has been dogmatically accepted on the basis of scripture, and may simply reflect the commonplace observation that some individuals show no interest whatsoever in their salvation. Later Buddhist schools (the Yogācāra-Vijñānavādins, for example) held a similar view, comparing such unfortunate beings to "rotten seeds" forever incapable of spiritual growth.¹¹

The abhavya doctrine appears to be tinged with fatalism. Jainas minimize this tendency by stressing that an abhavya is able to manipulate karmas and may attain births in the higher heavens; only mokṣa is denied to him. It is further said in the same vein that even a *bhavya* soul, which has the potential to reach salvation, will not *necessarily* realize that potential. The bhavyatva can be aroused, thus initiating an irreversible turning of the soul towards mokṣa, only when that soul encounters a particular set of outside conditions while being itself sufficiently "ready" to respond to them; such a confluence of external and internal factors may or may not ever take place.

Thus the Jainas exclude from their doctrine any notion of "automatic" salvation. They must still explain, however, the nature of those conditions the coming together of which does in fact activate the bhavyatva quality. Here the texts are quite vague, suggesting only that at some time when the soul is *relatively* less bound and more oriented towards its own well-being, thanks to fluctuations in the

10. For a discussion of the nature of these two categories of souls, see *Gaṇadharavāda*: k 1820-1836; P. S. Jaini 1977c.

11. Compare: varṣaty api hi parjanye naivābijaṃ prarohati/ samutpāde 'pi buddhānāṃ nābhavyo bhadram aśnute// *Abhisamayālaṅkāra*: viii, 10. Compare: agotrastho pudgalo gotre 'sati cittotpāde 'pi yatnasamāśraye saty abhavyaś cānuttarāyāḥ samyaksaṃbodheḥ paripūraye. *Bodhisattvabhūmi*: 1. See P. S. Jaini 1977c.

ongo
rienc
heari
may
initia
W

know
toll
to co
of bu
its qu
karm
its ov
impre
again
insigh
a mo
with
above
mom
move
ity, th
event
saṃsā

Samy
Jainas
must
and e
dom.
stages
rect v

12.
mādī/ i
13.
kālat k
thah." C
14.

ongoing interaction of *vīrya* and *karma*, certain experiences (especially an encounter with a Jina or his image, hearing the Jaina teachings, or remembering past lives)¹² may bring the *bhavyatva* out of its dormant state and thus initiate the process that leads eventually to *mokṣa*.

We must bear in mind, however, that for a Jaina the knowledge, bliss, and energy of the soul can never be totally extinguished, whereas karmic influence is subject to complete elimination. Hence the soul possesses a sort of built-in advantage, an everpresent tendency to develop its qualities and temporarily reduce the influence of the *karmas*.¹³ When Jainas say that a soul is free to work for its own salvation, it is this inherent tendency towards self-improvement that is referred to. Thus a soul will again and again progress to transitory states of relative purity and insight, only to be driven back by onrushing *karmas*, until a moment when the attainment of such a state coincides with the sort of external "activating" conditions mentioned above. We do not know precisely what happens at that moment; it would appear, however, that the *bhavyatva* is moved to exert its catalytic influence upon the energy quality, thereby redirecting it towards *mokṣa*. This mysterious event completely alters the future of the soul; its bonds of *saṃsāra* begin to unravel, and ultimate salvation is assured.

Samyak-Darśana (Having the Correct View)

Jainas have given us a detailed picture of the ladder one must climb as he progresses from the depths of delusion and entrapment to the pinnacle of omniscience and freedom. This ladder has fourteen rungs, called *guṇasthāna*,¹⁴ stages of purification. The state of *mithyādr̥ṣṭi* (the incorrect view of reality) is designated as the first of these rungs;

12. Compare: "titthayara-kevali-samaṇa-bhavasumaraṇa-satthadevamahi-mādī/ iccevamāi bahugā bāhiraheu muṇeyavvā/" Quoted in *JSK*: IV, 364.

13. The scriptural term for this tendency is *yathā-pravṛtta-karaṇa*: "anādikālāt karmakṣapaṇapravṛtto 'dhyāśayaviśeṣo yathāpravṛttakaraṇam ity arthaḥ." Quoted in *SJP*: 269 (from *Bṛhadvṛtti, Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya*: k 1202).

14. See the list at the end of Ch. VIII.

it is here that every embodied soul must dwell until it undergoes the momentous shift described above. This event is followed very quickly by the experience called *samyak-darśana*, having the correct view, in which the soul for the first time glimpses its true nature.¹⁵ Such an experience is compared to that of a blind man who is suddenly able to see; although the event is momentary, it involves nothing less than an absolutely undistorted view of reality.

THE ATTAINMENTS

Kṣayopāśama-Labdhi.—Certain attainments (*labdhi*), involving increased purity, are said to provide a necessary transition from the moment of turning from bondage to the flash of *samyak-darśana*.¹⁶ First and most important of these is *kṣayopāśama-labdhi*, in which large numbers of obscuring karmas (for example, *vīryāntarāya*, *jñānāvaraṇa*) are forced to dissociate themselves from the soul while others are placed under temporary suppression. The increased energy and knowledge thus made available allows the soul to progress quickly in the search for its own nature. It withdraws attention from the possessions, body, and psychological states with which it had formerly identified itself; gaining thereby a certain distance or detachment from passions, it attains the pure and peaceful state called *viśuddhi*.

Deśanā-labdhi.—This feeling of peace is followed in turn by a longing for instruction concerning the true nature of the soul. Any teachings which the individual may have heard prior to this time were as if meaningless, for he had not then developed sufficient spiritual awareness to comprehend or benefit from them. Now, however, he is ready

15. It is maintained that only souls endowed with five senses and mind are capable of having this experience: *bhavyaḥ pañcendriyaḥ saṃjñī paryāptakaḥ sarvaviśuddhaḥ prathamasaṃyaktvaṃ utpādayati*. SS: §258.

16. Five *labdhis* are mentioned: "*labdhiḥ kālakaraṇopāśamopadeśayogya-tābhedaṭ pañcadhā*." Quoted in JSK: III, 426 (from *Niyamasāra-vṛtti*). For details, see SJP: 269-270.

to re
dica
a br
expe
of e
a pr
Ord
the t
there
it can
sense
Mah
and
whil

Prāy
level
the s
by fu
redu
redu
were
insig
Th
first a
some
shack
the fi
nuba
nīya
eons
identi
forces

17.
prada
kāladila
207-208
18.

to receive properly the words of a Jina, an advanced mendicant, or for that matter anyone who has gained at least a brief insight into reality. Actually a very wide range of experiences, such as the loss of a beloved one, or the sight of extreme suffering, can serve as "instruction," exerting a profoundly awakening effect upon the receptive soul. Ordinarily, however, we imagine a being who longs for the true teachings coming into the presence of a Jina and there attaining his goal. This attainment is *deśanā-labdhi*; it can be experienced by any soul endowed with at least five senses and a mind. Thus Jainas depict animals receiving Mahāvīra's teachings in the holy assembly (*samavasaraṇa*) and even suggest that Mahāvīra himself was awakened while he existed as a lion.¹⁷

Prāyogya-labdhi.—Having been brought to an even higher level of insight and purity by the attainment of instruction, the soul generates an unprecedented surge of energy whereby further masses of accumulated karmas are drastically reduced, melting away like ice before a flame. Such karmic reduction is called *prāyogya-labdhi*; it sets the stage, as it were, for the actual attainment of *samyak-darśana*, true insight.

This attainment is itself divided into several steps. There first arises an extreme manifestation of the urge, present to some extent in even the lowest *nigodas*, to loosen the shackles of desire. This brings the soul face to face, for the first time, with the knot (*granthi*) of the gross (*anantā-nubandhi*) passions and deluding factors (*darśana-mohanīya karmas*), which have clung to it through beginningless eons of existence.¹⁸ The "enemies" of the soul are thus identified; one becomes suddenly aware of the powerful forces that have controlled one's activities for so many

17. Compare: *vidhāya hr̥di yogīndrayugmaṃ bhaktibharāhitāḥ/ muhuḥ pradakṣiṇīkṛtya prapraṇamya mrgādhipaḥ// tattvaśraddhānam āsādyā sadyaḥ kālādilabdhitāḥ/ prañidhāya manāḥ śrāvakavratāni samādade// UP: lxxiv, 207-208.*

18. On the conditions under which this *granthi* is cut, see *SJP*: 270.

lifetimes. The confrontation with one's karmic impediments is technically called *yathā-pravṛtta-karaṇa*, a term normally referring to the soul's ineradicable tendency towards spiritual growth. Its usage here suggests how significant a stage in the development of this tendency is represented by the first awareness of the *granthi*.

Once the oppressive forces have been recognized, there is a further increase in energy aimed at their removal. A higher state of purity is thus obtained, and the duration (*sthiti*) and intensity (*anubhava*) of all bound karmas are reduced; this process is known as *apūrvā-karaṇa*. Finally, the *darśana-mohanīya* karmas are subjected to a brief but total suppression (*upaśama*), by means of *anivṛtti-karaṇa*. All obstructions to insight are thereby prevented from rising (*udaya*), and the soul instantaneously experiences the glorious vision of reality that is *samyak-darśana*.¹⁹

The significance of *samyak-darśana* in the life of the soul is second only to that of attaining Jinahood itself. So great is the purity generated by this flash of insight that enormous numbers of bound karmas are driven out of the soul altogether, while future karmic influx is severely limited in both quantity and intensity. Thus it is said that a soul which retains its *samyak-darśana* at the time of death will not fall into the hells or the lower *tiryāṇa* destiny. Even more important, it will remain in bondage *no longer* than the amount of time required to take in and use up half of the available karmas in the universe (*ardha-pudgala-parāvartana-kāla*).²⁰ While this may seem a tre-

19. Attainment of the "correct view" is thus not an accretion of something external to the soul; rather, it is the unfolding of "true vision" in the soul when the forces of *mithyā-darśana* are prevented from being active: *tatrāyasyodayāt sarvajñapraṇītamārgaparāṇmukhas tattvārthāśraddhānirutsukhitāhitavicārāsamartho mithyādr̥ṣṭir bhavati tan mithyātvam. tad eva samyaktvaṃ śubhapaṇīṇāmaniruddhasvarasam yadaudāsīnyenāvasthitam ātmaṇaśraddhānam na niruṇaddhi, tad vedayamānaḥ puruṣaḥ samyagdr̥ṣṭir it abhidhiyate. SS: §749.*

20. "darśanamohasyāpi sampanno jinendrabimbādi dravyaṃ, samavasaraṇādi kṣetraṃ, kālaś cārdhapudgalaparāvartana viśeṣādir bhāvaś cādhāpravṛttikaraṇādir iti niścīyate. tadabhāve tadupaśamādiratipatteḥ." Quoted in *JSK IV*, 363 (from *Tattvārtha-Śloka-vārttika*).

mend
alread
consti

We
darśa
appea
identi
insigh
depen
which
as we
was n
bring
samy
less, e
versib

Jain
insigh
than e
period
surfac
mithy
bandh
pause
samy
the pa
this st
na. A
marks
up an
currec

21.
attained
availabl
forty-eig

mendous period, it is miniscule by comparison with that already gone through. Moreover, the fact of its finitude constitutes an absolute guarantee of eventual liberation.

We have seen that during the *samyak-darśana* itself, all *darśana-mohanīya* karmas are suppressed. Thus it would appear that the level of insight attained at this time is identical for all souls. But the specific *results* that this insight will generate for a given soul are not fixed; they depend upon the type, number, and intensity of karmas which remained in that soul at the moment of suppression, as well as upon the precise length of time that the insight was maintained.²¹ The first experience of *samyak-darśana* brings the soul to the fourth *guṇasthāna*, the state called *samyak-dṛṣṭi*. This state is itself not permanent; nevertheless, even its temporary attainment heralds the soul's irreversible entry onto the path that leads to *mokṣa*.

Jainas believe that the *first* experience of undeluded insight must be the result of suppression (*upaśama*) rather than elimination (*kṣaya*) of the karmic forces. After a brief period the "suppressed" *darśana-mohanīya* karmas will surface (*udaya*) and the soul will fall back to the state of *mithyātva*, with its accompanying bondage of *anantānubandhi* passions. As this fall occurs, there may be a short pause at the third *guṇasthāna*, an ambiguous stage called *samyak-mithyātva*, in which insight is no longer clear but the passions have not yet reasserted themselves. Just below this stage is another called *sāsvādāna*, the second *guṇasthāna*. Actually no longer than a single instant in duration, it marks the point at which the *anantānubandhi* passions rise up and overpower the soul once more. This having occurred, the return to *mithyātva guṇasthāna* is complete.

21. Jainas suggest that the duration of any such insight, particularly if attained through meditational experience, varies with the amount of energy available to the soul; it may last from a single instant up to a maximum of forty-eight minutes (*antar-muhūrta*). See JSK: I, 30.

It should be stressed that this "return" by no means erases the effects of the samyak-darśana. The deluding karmas still dominate the soul, but they have been so weakened that further true insights can be generated much more easily than the first one was. These will be of greater duration, and will involve not only the keeping down but also the actual removal of certain darśana-mohanīya karmas and the anantānubandhi passions; thus they are characterized as *kṣāyopāśamika* (due to elimination-and-suppression).²² Some darśana-mohanīya karmas remain active (are neither suppressed nor eliminated) during such experiences, but they are unable to overcome the soul's awareness of reality; they function only to produce certain faults or imperfections (doṣa), which make the true perception somewhat unstable.

Imperfect as they may be, insights of the *kṣāyopāśamika* type nevertheless form the basis for the spiritual disciplines of the fifth, sixth, and seventh guṇasthānas. Such insights will eventually lead, moreover, to one so pure that it obliterates (*kṣaya*) the total mass of the darśana-mohanīya karmas as well as the total mass of the anantānubandhi passions, thus making it impossible for the soul to ever again fall below the fourth guṇasthāna. This is the *kṣāyika samyak-darśana*;²³ it will be followed within no more than four lifetimes (and perhaps in that very life, should a Jina then be present) by the attainment of mokṣa. Thus even the most brief initial experience of samyak-darśana is enormously significant in the spiritual progress of the soul; indeed, it is said that only one who has undergone such an experience should be called "Jaina," for only he has truly entered upon the path that the Jinās have followed.

22. This is also known by the name of *vedaka-samyaktva*: 'samyaktva'grahaṇena vedakasamyaktvaṃ grhyate. anantānubandhikaṣāyacatuṣṭayasya mithyātvasamyakmithyātvayoś codayakṣayāt sadupaśamāc ca samyaktvasya deśaghātispardhakodaye tattvārthaśraddhānaṃ kṣāyopāśamikaṃ samyaktvaṃ. SS: §263.

23. "āthocyeta—kṣīṇasaptako gatyantaraṃ saṅkrāman katitame bhava mokṣam upayāti? ucyate—trīye caturthe vā bhava." Quoted in *S/P*: 276, n. 1.

The
Supp
purel
by th
omni
exist
rienc
fruits
attitu
Jaina
forth
ual tr
chara
to th
suppo
itself
said,
insigh

THE A
The f
perso
fied h
states
as ba
the co
karma
on ac
"I am
depend
(kartā
(and f

24.
sarvadel
śārīrāda
malaḥ//

The Signs of Awakening

Suppression or elimination of karmas by the soul are purely internal functions, which cannot be perceived either by the person in whom they occur or by others (save the omniscient Jina). It may well be asked, then, whether there exist any outward signs that identify one who has experienced samyak-darśana. We should perhaps expect certain fruits of this attainment, observable through changes of attitude, thought process, social behavior, and so forth. Jainas have been very concerned with this issue, setting forth in great detail the "new" characteristics of an individual transformed by true insight. Such externally evident characteristics are called *dravya-samyaktva*, as opposed to the internal *bhāva-samyaktva* states which they are supposed to reflect. The fact of their presence does not in itself prove that one has undergone samyak-darśana; it is said, however, that any being who *has* experienced true insight will thereafter be endowed with all of them.

THE ATTITUDES

The first major type of *dravya-samyaktva* pertains to a person's attitude towards himself. Previously he has identified his being with the external signs of life—the body, states, possessions; thus he has been in the state known as *bahirātman*,²⁴ seeing the self in externals dominated by the consciousness which is aware only of the results of karma (*karma-phala-cetanā*). He has also dwelt constantly on activities (*karma-cetanā*), thinking "I have done this," "I am doing this now," "I will do this." This orientation depends on the false notion that one can be the agent (*kartā*) of change in other beings; hence there is constant (and futile) effort to manipulate the thought and behavior

24. Three states of the soul are described: *bahir antaḥ paraś ceti tridhātmā sarvadehiṣu/ upeyāt tatra paramaṃ madhyopāyād bahis tyajet// bahirātma śarīrādaḥ jātātmabhṛāntir, āntaraḥ/ cittadoṣātmavibhṛāntiḥ, paramātmā 'tinirmalaḥ// Samādhiśataka: k 4-5.*

of these others, accompanied by a failure to work towards the only kind of change that is possible: self-transformation.

Consciousness attuned only to actions or the results of actions generates perpetual continuation of the *sāmsāric* cycle. Upon the attainment of *samyak-darśana*, the soul turns away from such concerns; it undergoes a deliberate and mindful reorientation of attention, coming to focus upon nothing but its own nature (*svabhāva*). The body, the possessions, even the ever-changing psychological states (anger, the passions, pride, self-pity, and so forth), are no longer identified with the self. The functioning of consciousness is now characterized as *jñāna-cetanā*; here, the individual dwells only upon the innate and pure qualities of the soul, realizing that he is not *doing* anything in the world beyond simply *knowing* it.²⁵ Finally, his awareness of objects no longer generates a tendency to grasp or manipulate them; he remains in the state called *antarātman*, seeing the self within, thereby greatly increasing his mindfulness and pure awareness. This highly developed *jñāna-cetanā* will enable him to undertake the pure conduct (*samyak-cāritra*) necessary to overcome ingrained negative tendencies, tendencies which have persisted from beginningless time. Thus he will attain eventually to the state of constant self-awareness and purity called *paramātman*, the highest (the liberated) self.²⁶

THE BEHAVIOR

The profound changes in consciousness generated by attainment of *samyak-darśana* are accompanied by equally significant transformations of an individual's behavior

25. *jñānād anyatredam aham iti cetanaṃ ajñānacetanā. sā dvidhā—karmacetanā karmaphalacetanā ca. tatra jñānād anyatredam ahaṃ karomīti cetanaṃ karmacetanā; jñānād anyatredam vedaye 'ham iti cetanaṃ karmaphalacetanā. sā tu samastā 'pi saṃsārabījaṃ, saṃsārabījasyāṣṭavidhakarmaṇo bījatvāt. tato mokṣārthinā puruṣeṇājñānacetanāpralayāya sakalakarmaphalasamnyāsabhāvanāṃ ca nāṭayitvā svabhāvabhūtā bhagavatī jñānacetanaivaikā nityam eva nāṭayitavyā. Samayasāra [Ātmakhyāti-ṭīkā]. k 387-389.*

26. *nirmalaḥ kevalaḥ śuddho viviktaḥ prabhur avyayaḥ/ parameṣṭhī parātmeti paramātmeśvaro jinaḥ// Samādhisataka: k 6.*

patte
hava
kind
of a
body
hard
of su
ange
passi
new
with
relax
fits
othe
illusi
worl
as "a
the f

Th
with
expr
worl
requ
be d
seem
but
soon
eithe
ing t

Th
insig

27.
buddh
ghanā

28.
buddh

... sa
427-43

pattern. Having come to "dwell in himself" (*ātmānubhava*),²⁷ he experiences extraordinary bliss (*sukha*); this kind of bliss, although far removed from the pure *sukha* of a Jina, is not contaminated by dependence upon the body or psychological states and thus reaches a level hardly imaginable to an ordinary person. The experience of such a state, coupled with the fact that gross forms of anger, pride, deceitfulness, and greed (the *anantānubandhi* passions) have been rendered inoperative, gives rise to a new quality called *praśama*, ease.²⁸ One who is endowed with this quality shows great tranquillity; he is invariably relaxed and "at peace" with himself, never subject to the fits of anger, devouring greed, and other torments of others. Thus he becomes able to see behind the veil of illusion that has previously obscured the true nature of worldly objects and events; he no longer perceives things as "attractive" or "desirable," but rather he penetrates to the fact that every aspect of life is transitory and mortal.

This realization has a tremendous impact; it fills him with extreme agitation (*saṃvega*), an inner turmoil that is expressed in the form of strong disenchantment with worldly things. He may at this point still lack the strength required for renunciation; nevertheless, he will never again be drawn to the world as he once was. Thus he leads a seemingly normal life, acting out ordinary societal roles, but is subject to terrific internal conflicts which must sooner or later bring him to some act of renunciation, either partial (taking the layman's vows) or complete (taking the vows of a monk).

The understanding of bondage that comes with true insight is followed by a strong feeling of identification with

27. *ātmānubhūtiṃ iti śuddhanayātmikā yā jñānānubhūtiṃ iyaṃ eva kileti buddhvā/ ātmānam ātmani niveśya suniṣprakampam eko 'sti nityam avabodhaganah samantāt// Samayasāraśāstra: k 13.*

28. *sadyaḥ kṛtāparādheṣu yad vā jīveṣu jātucit/ tadvadhādivikārāya na buddhi-praśamo mataḥ// hetus tatrodāyābhāvaḥ syād anantānubandhinām/ . . . samyaktvenāvinābhūtaḥ praśamaḥ paramo guṇaḥ// Pañcādhyāyī: II, k 427-430.*

all beings, an awareness that they too suffer from such entrapment but remain ignorant of their plight. Further grasped is the essential fact that all diversity among beings, though real, exists simply on the level of modes (*pariyāya*); fundamentally, every living being possesses a soul that may be capable of attaining omniscience. This awareness of the basic worth of all beings, and of one's kinship with them, generates a feeling of great compassion (*anukampā*) for others. Whereas the compassion felt by an ordinary man is tinged with pity or with attachment to its object, *anukampā* is free of such negative aspects; it develops purely from wisdom, from seeing the substance (*dravya*) that underlies visible modes, and it fills the individual with an unselfish desire to help other souls towards *mokṣa*. If this urge to bring all tormented beings out of *saṃsāra* is particularly strong and is cultivated, it may generate those auspicious karmas that later confer the status of *Tīrthaṅkara* upon certain omniscients. When present to a more moderate degree, *anukampā* brings an end to exploitative and destructive behavior, for even the lowest animal is now seen as intrinsically worthwhile and thus inviolable.

While every Indian doctrinal system stresses the importance of perception and reasoning in validating its position on a given issue, it is nevertheless true that certain fundamental problems—for example, the nature of death, the possibility of salvation, the operational laws of the universe—are simply not subject to the direct or rational approach. Speculations concerning these problems must, if they are to be accepted, become objects of faith. According to the Jainas, one who has not attained *samyak-darśana* is likely to fall prey to nihilism or skepticism, refusing to believe in the existence of anything which he has not seen with his own eyes, as it were. If he is prone to the desire for heavens or supernatural boons, on the other hand, he may develop a dogmatic, blind faith in theories propounded by one or another of the "one-sided" (*ekānta-vādin*) religious systems. The experience of true insight is said to save a person from drifting into these wrong views.

Wh
answe
hold t
affirm
cated
posses
of nin
(ajīva)
(pāpa)
stoppa
karma
exister
having
the far
samyak

THE "L
In add
behav
of ma
This f
after s
point
dom f
āstiky
plexity
teachi
glimps
Jina, t
nothin
Jaina c
whats

29.
dharma
paramo

30.
bhedāt.
ātmaviś

31. 1
4-12, 52

While Jainas do not claim that samyak-darśana brings answers to *all* the great mysteries of existence, they do hold that it generates an important quality called *āstikya*, affirmation; this in turn becomes the basis for the "educated faith" (*śraddhā*) of the Jaina.²⁹ Specifically, one who possesses *āstikya* will manifest a firm belief in the reality of nine things (*tattva*): the sentient (*jīva*), the insentient (*ajīva*), karmic influx (*āsrava*), unwholesome karmas (*pāpa*), wholesome karmas (*puṇya*), bondage (*bandha*), stoppage of karmic influx (*saṃvara*), dissociation of bound karmas (*nirjarā*), and liberation (*mokṣa*). Accepting the existence of these nine is the final behavioral "mark" of having attained samyak-darśana; thus we may understand the famous Jaina sūtra which says: *tattvārtha-śraddhānam samyak-darśanam*:³⁰ "True insight is faith in the tattvas."

THE "LIMBS" OF SAMYAK-DARŚANA

In addition to the transformation of consciousness and behavior described above, Jainas set forth a third category of marks following attainment of the fourth *guṇasthāna*. This final group is called *aṣṭāṅga*, "eight limbs" that arise after samyak-darśana and are then to be cultivated to the point of perfection.³¹ The first of these is *niḥśaṅkita*, freedom from doubt. Filled with the affirming tendency of *āstikya*, the individual becomes free of skepticism and perplexity regarding the teachings of the Jina. He accepts these teachings without reservation, partly because of his own glimpse into reality and partly because he realizes that a Jina, totally omniscient and free of all passions, can preach nothing but the absolute truth. Thus he not only affirms Jaina doctrine but is careful to avoid any "extremist" ideas whatsoever.

29. *āstikyam tattvasadbhāve svataḥ siddhe viniścitiḥ/ dharme hetau ca dharmasya phale cāstyādi dharmavit// svātmānubhūtimātram syād āstikyam paramo guṇaḥ/ . . . Pañcādhyāyī: k 452-453.*

30. TS: i, 2. *arthaśraddhānam iti . . . tad dvividham, sarāgavītarāgaviṣaya-bhedāt. praśamasamvegānukampāstikyādyabhivyaktīlakṣaṇam prathamam; ātmaviśuddhimātram itarat.* SS: §12.

31. For narratives illustrating these eight virtues, see *Bṛhatkathakośa*: nos. 4-12, 52-55, 63-71, 111; *Upāsakādhyayana*: 49-103.

The second limb is called *niḥkāmṣita*, freedom from anticipation. This means that one entertains no desire with regard to the future; although he accepts the fact of transmigration, the existence of heavens, and so on, he remains free of any wish to be reborn as a highly placed person or as a god. The tranquil disposition resulting from attainment of *samyak-darśana* has rendered nearly all his activities wholesome (*puṇya*)—capable of bringing him to such desirable rebirths; even so, he must transcend the lure of these happy states lest he become interminably bound up in worldly life. Indeed, the *niḥkāmṣita* quality will eventually carry one beyond desire for any worldly thing.

The ordinary person distinguishes between good and bad, pleasant and unpleasant, and so forth, because he has not yet perceived the true relation between substance (*dravya*) and modes (*paryāya*); thus he retains a deep attachment for things which please the senses and an aversion for those which do not. In one who has gained true insight, however, there arises a quality called *nirvicikitsā*, freedom from disgust, which entails overcoming of such dualities. The individual possessed of *nirvicikitsā* will feel no revulsion at the sight of human sickness, insanity, or ugliness. Having gone beyond a merely physical view of beings, he will not find them "better" or "worse," "delightful" or "disgusting." Rather, he will view as unpleasant anything that furthers the binding tendencies of *saṃsāra*, while all that tends to carry one away from attachment to the world will be seen as pleasant.

The fourth *aṅga* is *amūḍhadṛṣṭi*, freedom from delusive notions, which refers to the abandonment of three particular types of false belief. The first of these is *devamūḍhatā*, delusion pertaining to gods; this indicates the common tendency towards indiscriminate worship of any god claimed to lead human beings to salvation. Faced with the widespread popularity of Vedic and Purāṇic gods, Jaina monks have undertaken to expose the inferior nature of these deities. Pointing out that such beings are still

subject,
bondag
tached
people
prevent
gods by
reached
to the v
knows
path of

A se
insight
ings; th
in ascet
numero
of prac
free fro
by the
exampl
and in
so-calle
powers
But mo
that fro

32. So
"Trinity"
mācittah
kilāptatā/
dharmasth
trayavilop
vṛttasya y
bhavet//
with samy
residence:
svasmād v
pūjyās tv
yatra svai
AP: xxxix
33. Co
kaṃ dṛṣṭv
nāmavinā
III, 326 (fr

subject to the passions and hence themselves not free from bondage, they held that only a Jina, sitting in totally detached meditation, is fit to lead others to mokṣa.³² Many people may see the logic of this claim and yet are still prevented from breaking their attachments to particular gods by fear or simply ingrained habit. For one who has reached samyak-darśana, however, all such commitment to the worship of "inferior" god-figures is abandoned; he knows that salvation can be attained only through the path of the Jina.

A second type of false belief overcome through true insight is that pertaining to teachers (guru) and their teachings; this is called *guru-mūḍhatā*. India has long abounded in ascetics and spiritual preceptors of all sorts, preaching numerous doctrines and engaging in an incredible diversity of practices. Although most such teachers profess to be free from attachment to the world, their activities are said by the Jainas to belie this claim. Tantric practitioners, for example, are widely known to engage in sexual activity and in consumption of meat and alcohol, while many so-called gurus emphasize the development of occult powers that are useful only within the context of saṃsāra.³³ But more important than such considerations is the fact that from the Jaina standpoint the practices of non-Jaina

32. Somadeva criticizes the alleged "divinity" of the popular brahmanical "Trinity" (Brahmā, Viṣṇu, and Śiva) in the following manner: Ajas Tilotta-mācittāḥ śrīrataḥ Śrīpatiḥ smṛtaḥ/ ardhanārīśvaraḥ Śambhus tathāpy eṣāṃ kilāptatā// Vasudevaḥ pitā yasya savitrī Devakī Hareḥ/ svayaṃ ca rāja-dharmasthaś citraṃ devas tathāpi saḥ// . . . bhaikṣanartananagnatvaṃ pura-trayavilopanam/ brahmahatyākapālitvam etāḥ kṛdāḥ kileśvare// gehinā samavṛttasya yater apy adharasthiteḥ/ yadi devasya devatvaṃ na devo durlabho bhavet// *Upāsakādhyayana*: k 62-63, 68, 93. Jinasena stipulates that a person with samyak-darśana should remove images of these "false gods" from his residence: nirdiṣṭasthānalābhasya punar asya gaṇagrahaḥ/ syān mithyādevatāḥ svasmād viniḥsārayato gṛhāt// "iyantaṃ kālam ajñānāt pūjitāḥ sma kṛtādaram/ pūjyās tv idānīm asmābhir asmat samayadevatāḥ// tato 'pamṛṣitenālam anyatra svairam āsyatām"// iti prakāśam evaitān nītvā 'nyatra kvacit tyajet// *AP*: xxxix, 45-47.

33. Compare: "ajñānijanacittacamatkārotpādakam jyotiṣkamantravādādikam drṣṭvā . . . kudevāgamalinginām bhayāśāśnehalobhair dharmārtham praṇamavinayapūjāpuraskārādikaraṇam samayamūḍhatvam iti." Quoted in *JSK*: III, 326 (from *Dravyasaṅgraha-ṭīkā*).

mendicants are simply not effective in bringing spiritual progress. The idea that purity can be gained through bathing in a particular river, by ingesting certain drugs, or by similar activities seems simpleminded to one who has reached the fourth *guṇasthāna*. Having seen the validity of the Jina's path, he will never again be tempted to take anyone but a Jaina mendicant as his teacher.

Finally, true insight brings abandonment of *loka-mūḍhatā*, false notions pertaining to everyday religious practices. This term encompasses a wide range of superstitious behavior indulged in by the Hindu populace, such as making food offerings (*śrāddha*) to the manes, worshipping trees or mountains, or touching the tail of a cow. All these practices are thought to better a person's worldly situation.³⁴ But to one who has truly understood the operation of karma, it is clear that such behavior can neither bring favors nor avert disasters and is thus useless.

Each of the four *aṅgas* discussed above—*niḥsaṅkita*, *niḥkāṃkṣita*, *nirvicikitsā*, and *amūḍhadṛṣṭi*—is formulated in a negative sense, pointing out certain views or tendencies absent from an individual who has penetrated to reality. The remaining four are stated in a positive manner, designating new attributes of a social nature. The first of this group is *upagūhana*, protecting; what is meant here is a tendency to cover up or hide from public view the shortcomings of a fellow Jaina when such shortcomings are observed; thus he may be saved from the sort of shame that could drive him from the order and place him beyond

34. Somadeva lists the following practices under this heading: *sūryārgho grahaṇasnānaṃ saṃkrāntau draviṇavyayaḥ/ saṃdhyā sevāgnisatkāro gehadehārcano vidhiḥ// nadīnadasamudreṣu majjanaṃ dharmacetasā/ tarustūpāgrabhaktānāṃ vandanaṃ bhṛgusaṃśrayaḥ// gopṛsthāntanamaskāraṣ tanmūtrasya niṣevanaṃ/ ratnavāhanabhūyakṣaśastraśailādisevanam// samayāntarapākhaṇḍavedalokasamāśrayam/ evamādivimūḍhānāṃ jñeyam mūḍham anekadhā// varārtham lokavārtārtham uparodhārtham eva vā/ upāsanaṃ amīṣaṃ syāt samyagdarśanahānaye// Upāsakādhyayana: k 136-140.*

the reach of private, "corrective" instruction. This does not mean that faults are to be overlooked, but simply that the order is to be maintained and self-improvement encouraged.

The second "social" aṅga is *sthitikaraṇa*, promoting stability. This involves working to make others more secure in their religious convictions when they are severely shaken; such efforts may take the form of consolation or material aid at a time of calamity, logical persuasion in the face of intellectual doubts, or criticism of the tempting doctrines set forth by other traditions.

Next is *prabhāvanā*,³⁵ illumination, which leads to such positive actions as building temples, erecting Jina images, celebrating holy days (such as anniversaries of the Tīrthaṅkaras' births and nirvāṇas), arranging for the distribution of the sacred texts, undertaking pilgrimages to Jaina holy places, and donating money for hospitals, animal shelters, and the like. All such activities "illuminate" the Jaina religion to the world, as well as doing good for others. Those who show extreme development of this tendency are thought to be destined for an eventual career as a Tīrthaṅkara.

The final aṅga is *vātsalya*, disinterested affection,³⁶ which involves a selfless love for the high ideal of mokṣa and thus for the monks who strive to attain that ideal. Hence one might dedicate his life to the service (*vaiyāvṛtya*) of Jaina ascetics, recognizing their exalted nature and the fact that they have no families who contribute to their support. This service is especially important when monks become ill, for their vows prevent them from entering a hospital. Even more significant is the fact that a monk who receives such devoted assistance is able to undertake the ritual death by fasting (*sallekhanā*), the most holy ending

35. ajñānatimiravyāptim apākṛtya yathāyatham/ jinaśāsanamāhātmyapra-kāśaḥ syāt prabhāvanā// RŚr: i, 18.

36. vātsalyaṃ nāma dāsatvaṃ siddhārhadbimbaveśmasu/ saṃghe catur-vidhe śāstre svāmikārye subhṛtyavat// Pañcādhyāyī: II, k 806.

possible for a mendicant's career.³⁷ Thus the quality of *vātsalya* is held in high regard by the Jaina community.

This concludes the Jaina list of new characteristics evidenced by a person who has reached the fourth *guṇasthāna*, the state of true insight. Although these characteristics indicate a high degree of wisdom, purity, and compassion, they also entail activities which prolong involvement with the mundane world. Further spiritual development, therefore, requires voluntary restriction of such activities; only thus may one progress beyond the fourth *guṇasthāna*. Jains have laid down two specific sets of restraints for this purpose, the lay and the mendicant disciplines. It is to these disciplines, and the states to which they lead, that we must now turn our attention.

37. See Ch. VII.

VI

Vrata and Pratimā: The Path of the Layman

The Fourteen Stages of Spiritual Purification

*mithyādarśana-avirati-pramāda-kaṣāya-yogāḥ
bandhaḥetavaḥ*¹

Perverted views, nonrestraint, carelessness, passions, and activities: the causes of bondage.

With this brief aphorism the great ācārya Umāsvāti has summarized the entire Jaina explanation of the bondage process. We have already seen how "perverted views," false notions pertaining to the nature of the soul, are eliminated with the attainment of samyak-darśana, the fourth guṇasthāna. This is equivalent to saying that the soul has here effectively triumphed over the insight-deluding (darśana-mohanīya) karmas and must now overcome the conduct-deluding (cāritra-mohanīya) forces blocking its way to mokṣa. In fact this battle has already been joined at the fourth guṇasthāna, for true insight renders the gross passions (the anantānubandhis) inoperative and generates sufficient energy in the soul to guarantee rapid progress on the path of conduct.

More specifically, this increased energy allows the individual to overcome for the first time the two subtle forms of passions called apratyākhyānāvaraṇa and pratyākhyānāvaraṇa, passions which have theretofore prevented him

1. TS: viii, 1.

from taking the vows of a layman or of a mendicant, respectively. This inability to refrain voluntarily from "evil" actions (those which harm oneself or others) is thus the nonrestraint (*avirati*) of Umāsvāti's aphorism. A person's adherence to the partial restraint (*deśa-virati*) of the layman (*śrāvaka*) or the total restraint (*sarva-virati*) of the monk (*muni*) therefore reflects his soul's subjugation of the *apratyākhyānāvaraṇa* or the *pratyākhyānāvaraṇa* passions. Thus it is said that *deśa-virati* is the fifth *guṇasthāna* and *sarva-virati* the sixth, and that one who has entered the mendicant order must be considered to have overcome all but the most subtle forms of the passions, those called *saṃjvalana*.

As noted earlier, the *saṃjvalana* (smoldering) passions find expression in a basic attachment to the state of embodiment. They also generate a certain apathy or lack of vigor with regard to strict observance of the vows. This is the carelessness (*pramāda*) to which Umāsvāti refers. By repeated meditative suppression of carelessness, the spiritual aspirant can render this tendency less and less effective, until finally it is overcome altogether; at this point, he is said to have reached the seventh *guṇasthāna*, restraint free of carelessness (*apramatta-virata*).

Thus his purity and energy are increased, enabling him to pursue meditation with constant vigor. He now enters into several highly refined trance states through which the *saṃjvalana* passions themselves, along with the sexual sentiments and other subsidiary passions (*no-kaṣāya*) that they produce, are progressively weakened. Three levels of trance or meditational attainment are set forth: *apūrvakaraṇa*, *anivṛtti-karaṇa*,² and *sūkṣma-sāmparāya*; these constitute the eighth, ninth, and tenth *guṇasthānas*, respectively.

If one passes through these states via mere *suppression* (*upaśama*) of the *saṃjvalana* passions and the sentiments,

2. For a discussion of these two *karaṇas*, see *SJP*: 277-278.

he
upa
cāri
Af
yor
act
the
and
soc
sion
gu
ical
kar
ant
teen
"on
C
onl
bod
effe
con
pri
tho
eml
of u
(ay
of c
last
ver
call
T
yak
clos
of t

he will be able to attain only the temporary level called *upaśānta-moha*, the eleventh *guṇasthāna*, in which all *cāritra-mohanīya* karmas are briefly rendered inoperative. A fall from this level is inevitable. One may progress beyond it only if the subtle passions and their effects are actually *eliminated* (*kṣaya*) during the trances. In that case, the eleventh *guṇasthāna* will be passed over altogether, and the aspirant will reach *kṣīṇa-moha*, permanent dissociation from all *cāritra-mohanīya* karmas and the passions (*kaṣāya*) which they engender. This is the twelfth *guṇasthāna*; its attainment leads instantly and automatically to the elimination of the three remaining *ghātiyā* karmas, the *jñānāvaraṇa*, the *darśanāvaraṇa*, and the *antarāya*. With this elimination one is fixed in the thirteenth *guṇasthāna*, the state of embodied Jinahood or "omniscience with activities" (*sayogā-kevalin*).

Of the five "causes of bondage" set forth by Umāsvāti, only yoga, the activities that necessarily accompany embodiment, now remain. These no longer have any defiling effect upon the soul, for the body of a kevalin does not contribute to future bondage; it is simply the "fruit" of prior *aghātiyā* karmas, destined to pass away forever when those karmas are exhausted. In the last few moments of embodiment, even yoga is brought to cessation; this state of utter immobility is called omniscience without activities (*ayoga-kevalin*), the fourteenth *guṇasthāna*. At the instant of death (*nirvāṇa*) itself, the soul is freed forever from the last vestige of *sāmsāric* influence; thus it reaches in the very next moment the state of infinite bliss and omniscience called *siddha*.³

This is a brief overview of the steps leading from *samyak-darśana* to complete liberation. Let us now look more closely at the actual practices and experiences that certain of these steps involve.

3. For a schematic list of the *guṇasthānas*, see Ch. VIII.

Path of the Layman

THE LAY IDEAL

Books of the Jaina discipline preach the conduct in which a true follower of the Jina should engage. This preaching is of course aimed at those who have already attained the fourth guṇasthāna, for only such individuals can really benefit from religious practice; practice without insight is fruitless. We might expect to find the aspirant directed first to partial renunciation (deśa-virati), assuming that a certain period of lay discipline provides a necessary transition from an unrestrained way of life to one of complete asceticism. But in fact, the books of discipline call for a person of insight to immediately take up the great vows (mahāvratā) of the mendicant's discipline (sarva-virati); life is short, and one should progress as quickly as one is able.

Strictly speaking, then, the vows of the layman are really just a modified, relatively weak version of the *real* Jaina vows; they may curb evil behavior to some extent, but they cannot bring a person to liberation. In practice, however, this point has not been stressed. Jaina teachers have been realistic enough to see that most new converts will be emotionally ready only for the layman's path.⁴ They have correctly perceived, moreover, that no religious institution can survive without the strong involvement of the laity; hence they have not only downplayed the "inferior" nature of the lay path, but have shown their high regard for this path by producing numerous tracts (called śrāvakācāra) on the particulars of lay conduct.⁵ Despite this trend, the ascetic orientation of Jainism has certainly not been lost; not only does the way of the mendicant retain premier status among Jains, but even the lay discipline is far more strict than that of any other Indian religious community.

4. Compare: tyājyān ajasrān viṣayān, paśyato 'pi jinājñayā/ mohāt tyaktum aśaktasya gṛhidharmo 'numanyate// SD: ii, 1.

5. Williams (JY: intro. xxvii-xxx) lists over forty śrāvakācāras, beginning with the *Cāritra-prābhṛta* of Kundakunda (second century) and ending with the *Dharmasaṅgraha-ṭīkā* of Yaśovijaya (seventeenth century).

the
and
the
Set
acc
mig
also
kee
set
rep
rea
lad
pro
itie
is w

Dan
the
hav
are
stat
path
idea
und
imp
basi
com
subs
simp
hou
timā

6.
7.
8.
saccit
nāc c
bhava
9.

In constructing a framework for the conduct of the laity, the authors of the śrāvakācāra texts were very systematic and specific. They defined numerous kinds of evil conduct, then instituted separate vows of renunciation for each. Set forth, in addition, were all the ways in which one might accidentally or intentionally break each vow,⁶ and how he might expiate such infractions. The books of discipline also employ narrative tales that show the great virtue of keeping the vows, even if only temporarily.⁷ Finally, they set up a "ladder," analogous to that of the guṇasthānas,⁸ representing the process whereby a layman can make ready for the mendicant vows. The eleven "steps" of this ladder are called *śrāvaka-pratimā*;⁹ they lead one through progressively greater restrictions upon his worldly activities, until at last the complete renunciation of the ascetic is within his grasp.

Darśana-Pratimā.—The "marks" of one who has attained the insight prerequisite to entry upon the path of the Jina have been discussed earlier. Even these marks, however, are not so apparent as to identify a person's "spiritual status," as it were. The degree of his advancement on the path, indeed the very fact of his commitment to the Jaina ideal, is indicated by the religious practices which he undertakes—particularly those involving various self-imposed restraints. Certain practices of this type are so basic that they functionally define membership in the Jaina community; failure to adhere to these "fundamentals," subsumed under the designation *darśana-pratimā*, means simply that one is not a practicing Jaina. (Children of Jaina households, prior to their initiation into the *darśana-pratimā*, are referred to as nominal (*nāma*) Jainas.)

6. See JY: App.

7. For example, *Bṛhatkathākośa*: nos. 46, 72–79 (Upadhye intro. 83ff.).

8. Compare: *dṛṣṭyā mūlaguṇāṣṭakaṃ vratabharaṃ sāmāyikaṃ proṣadham/ saccittānnadinavyavāyavanitārambhopadhibhyo matāt// uddiṣṭād api bhojanāc ca viratim prāptaḥ kramāt prāgguṇa-/ -prauḍhyā darśanikādayaḥ saha bhavanty ekādaśopāśakāḥ// SD: i, 17.*

9. See the list at the end of this chapter.

The Pañca-Namaskāra-Mantra: Darśana-pratimā consists of two modes of religious observance, one devotional and the other renunciatory. The devotional aspect involves acceptance of the Jina as the ultimate divinity (deva), of the Jina-āgamas as the only valid scriptures (śāstra), and of the Jaina mendicants as the only proper teachers (guru).¹⁰ This taking refuge in the Jina and his path is formalized by initiation into the holy litany (mantra) called pañca-namaskāra, reverent salutation to the five (holy beings). The initiate chants:

*namo arahantāṇaṃ*¹¹

(I bow before the worthy ones [arhat]—the Jinas);

namo siddhāṇaṃ

(I bow before the Perfected beings [siddha]—those who have attained mokṣa);

namo āyariyāṇaṃ

(I bow before the [mendicant] leaders [ācārya] of the Jaina order);

namo uvajjhāyāṇaṃ

(I bow before the [mendicant] preceptors [upādhyāya]);

10. These three are defined as follows: kṣutpipāsājarātāṅkajanmāntakabhayasmayāḥ/ na rāgadveṣamohāś ca yasyāptaḥ sa prakīrtyate// āptopajñam anullanghyam adṛṣṭeṣṭavirodhakam/ tattvopadeśakṛt śārvaṃ śāstraṃ kāpatha-ghaṭṭanam// viśayāśāvaśātīto nirārambho 'parigrahaḥ/ jñānadhyānataporaktas tapasvī sa praśasyate// RŚr: i, 6, 9-10.

11. A variant of arahanta is arihanta; both are Prakrit forms of the Sanskrit arhat or arhaṃ. In the medieval period the term arhaṃ formed the nucleus for a large number of tantric works. Jaina ācāryas sought to explore the mystical attributes of the seed syllables *a* and *h* (the first and last sounds in the Sanskrit syllabary) found in this word. Compare: "akārādi-hakārāntā prasiddhā siddha-mātṛkā/ yugādaḥ yā svayaṃ proktā Rṣabheṇa mahātmanā// . . . akāraḥ prathamam tattvaṃ sarvabhūtābhayapradam/ kaṇṭhadeśam samāśritya vartate sarvadehinām// . . . hakāro hi mahāprāṇaḥ lokaśāstreṣu pūjitaḥ/ vidhinā man-triṇā dhyātaḥ sarvakāryaprasādhakaḥ// . . . trīṇy akṣarāṇi binduś ca yasya devasya nāma vai/ sa sarvajñaḥ samākhyātaḥ arhaṃ tad iti paṇḍitaḥ//"
Dharmopadeśamālā (quoted in *Namaskāra-svādhyāya* [Sanskrit]: 21-24). In his famous lexicon of the twelfth century. Hemacandra praises arhaṃ in exalted terms: "arhaṃ" iti. etad akṣaram paramēśvarasya paramēsthino vācakaṃ, siddhacakrasya dīpījaṃ, sakalāgamopaniṣadbhūtaṃ . . . āśāstrādhyānādhyāpā-nāvadhi prañidheyaṃ . . . ayam eva hi tāttvikō namaskāra iti. *Śabdānuśāsana* [Svopajñā-ṭīkā]: I, i, 1.

nam
(I
w
eso
man
(T
en

T
sidd
wor
the
part
the
not
idea
give
in p
has
Jain
meṣ
Ja
thou
the
gest

12
nama
150 a
saluta
the B
stand
was c
(ausp
III, 25
13
yata
asma
14
āde ta
k 104)

ṇamo loe savva-sāhūṇaṃ

(I bow before all the [Jaina] mendicants [*sādhū*] in the world)

eso paṃca ṇamokkāro savva-pāvappaṇāsaṇo/

*maṃgalāṇaṃ ca savvesiṃ paḍhamam havai maṃgalaṃ//*¹²

(This fivefold salutation, which destroys all sin, is pre-eminent as the most auspicious of all auspicious things).

The fact that first salutations go not to the perfected siddhas, but rather to the Jinas (arhats) who teach in the world, indicates the extent to which Jainas have glorified the virtue of compassion.¹³ It is also significant that no particular being, not even Mahāvīra, receives mention as the object of veneration. Jaina devotionism is oriented not towards a chosen deity (*iṣṭa-devatā*) but toward an ideal, the attainment of kevalajñāna; thus reverence is given to all beings who have been or are actively engaged in pursuit of that ideal. Even so, the Hindu concept of *iṣṭa* has exerted a certain amount of influence, evident in such Jaina practices as referring to their five "holies" as *parameṣṭhin*, the supreme divinities.¹⁴

Jainas sometimes venerate the holy syllable om̐ as well, though their analysis of this utterance differs from that of the brahmanical tradition. Whereas Vedic scripture suggests that the *a*, *u*, and *m* of which om̐ is composed repre-

12. See Glasenapp 1925: 367; and JY: 184-185. The origin of the pañca-namaskāra litany is not known. In the inscription of King Khāravēla (circa 150 B.C.—see p. 278), only the arahanta and the siddha are invoked. A fivefold salutation is attested in the *Bhagavatī-sūtra* (i, 1), but the fifth of these is to the Brāhmī script (ṇamo bambhīe livīe) instead of to the sādhus as in the standard formula. There is a Digambara tradition that the namaskāra-mantra was composed by Puṣpadanta (circa A.D. 157), since it appears as a *maṃgala* (auspicious) verse in the beginning of his *Ṣaṭkhaṇḍāgama*. For details, see JSK: III, 258-259.

13. *vigatāśeṣalepeṣu satsv arhatāṃ salepānām ādau kimiti namskāraḥ kriyata iti cen na doṣaḥ . . . asaty arhaty āptāgamapadārthāvagamo na bhaved asmadādīnām . . . Dhavalāṭikā: 54-55. Compare SM: k 31.*

14. "aruḥā siddhāyariyā ujjhāyā sāhu paṃca parameṣṭhī/ te vi hu ciṭṭhahi āde tamhā ādā hu me saraṇaṃ// Quoted in JSK: III, 23 (from *Mokṣapāhuḍa*: k 104).

sent earth, the atmosphere, and heaven respectively,¹⁵ Jaina texts (probably postcanonical) derive the same sound by connecting the initial syllables of the epithets for each being addressed in the *namaskāra-mantra*: hence *a* (arhat), *a* (*aśarīra* [the siddha]), *ā* (*ācārya*), *u* (*upādhyāya*), *m* (*muni* [*sādhu*]).¹⁶ Repetition of *om* thus becomes a legitimate practice for the Jaina, serving to remind him of the five holy beings of his creed.

The Four Refuges (Catuh-Śaraṇa): Equally popular is *catuh-śaraṇa*, a chant in which the initiate is reminded of the supremacy of the dharma preached by the kevalin. This chant forms an important part of daily prayers and runs as follows:

cattāri saraṇaṃ pavvajjāmi

(I take refuge in the four):

arahaṃte saraṇaṃ pavvajjāmi

(I take refuge in the arhats)

siddhe saraṇaṃ pavvajjāmi

(I take refuge in the siddhas)

sāhū saraṇaṃ pavvajjāmi

(I take refuge in the sādhus)

kevali-pannattaṃ dhammaṃ saraṇaṃ pavvajjāmi

(I take refuge in the dharma [Holy Law] preached by the omniscient Jina).

It should be pointed out that the third refuge, *sāhu* (*sādhu*), is a cover term for *ācāryas*, preceptors, and mendicants,¹⁷ all of whom are saluted in the *pañca-nam-skāra-mantra*; thus the *catuh-śaraṇa* formula is hardly more than a variation on that mantra.

The Hymns of Praise: In addition to these rather brief

15. See *Māṇḍūkyaopaniṣat*: k 8-10. The given combination of letters yields *om* in accord with the rules of euphony that govern the Sanskrit language.

16. "om' ekākṣaraṃ pañcaparameṣṭhinām ādipadam. tat katham iti cet: "arihaṃtā aśarīrā āyariyā taha uvajjhayā muṇiṇā/ paḍhamakkharanippaṇṇo omkāro pañcaparameṣṭhī//9//" iti gāthākathitaprathamākṣarāṇāṃ . . . svara-sandhividhānena om śabdo niṣpadyate." Quoted in *JSK*: I, 500 (from *Dravyasaṅgraha-ṭīkā*).

17. "sādhuśabdenācāryopādhyāyasarvasādhavo labhyante." Quoted in *JSK*: III, 259 (from *Bhāvapāhuḍa-ṭīkā*).

ritual
stava
ward
partic
deser
canon
Śvetā
Śakra
descr

Pra
beg
wh
me
dir
wh
do
edg
hel
lib
tho
[de
and
abl
fea
hav

Th
Jinas
tion o

18.
sayams
ṇaṃ pu
logapañ
yāṇaṃ,
sārahīṇa
dharāṇa
dhāṇaṃ
sivam a
gaināma
āyā sidd
vandām
19. P

ritual utterances, the initiate ordinarily performs several *stavas*, or hymns of praise. These are directed either towards all Jinas or towards the twenty-four Tīrthaṅkaras in particular. Of the several forms a stava may take, three deserve special mention, since they probably date back to canonical times and have been preserved in both the Śvetāmbara and Digambara traditions. The first, called *Śakra-stava* (ostensibly spoken by Śakra, king of the gods), describes the Jinas in the grandest of terms:

Praise to the arhats, the blessed ones, who are the cause of the beginnings [of the Holy Law], who provide the path across, who have themselves attained enlightenment, the best among men . . . the lights of the world, those who give the right direction, who give refuge, who give enlightenment (*bodhi*), who give the sacred doctrine . . . the monarchs of the sacred doctrine, those who are endowed with unobstructed knowledge and insight . . . the Jinas, who have crossed over, who help others to cross, the enlightened and the enlighteners, the liberated and the liberators, the omniscient, the all-seeing, those who have reached the place that is called *siddha-gati* [destiny of the siddha], that from which there is no return, and which is bliss immutable, inviolable, endless, imperishable, and undisturbed; praise to the Jinas who have overcome fear. In the threefold way I worship all the siddhas, those who have been, and those who in future time will be.¹⁸

The second, *Nāma-Jina-stava*, praises the twenty-four Jinas by invoking their names individually.¹⁹ Daily recitation of the names has contributed to their memorization

18. "namo 'tthu arihantāṇaṃ bhagavantāṇaṃ āigarāṇaṃ titthayarāṇaṃ sayamsambuddhāṇaṃ, purisuttamāṇaṃ purisasihāṇaṃ purisavarapundariyāṇaṃ purisavaragandhahatthiṇaṃ, loguttamāṇaṃ loganāhāṇaṃ logahiyāṇaṃ logapaivāṇaṃ logapajjoyagarāṇaṃ, abhayadayāṇaṃ saraṇadayāṇaṃ bohidayāṇaṃ, dhammadayāṇaṃ dhammadesayāṇaṃ dhammanāyagāṇaṃ dhammasārahīṇaṃ dhammavaracāurantacakkavaṭṭiṇaṃ, appaḍihayavaranaṇadamsaṇadharāṇaṃ viyaṭṭachaumāṇaṃ, jīṇāṇaṃ jāvayāṇaṃ tiṇṇāṇaṃ tārayāṇaṃ budhāṇaṃ bohayāṇaṃ muttāṇaṃ moyagāṇaṃ, savvannūṇaṃ savvadarisīṇaṃ sivaṃ ayalam aruyam aṇantam akkhayam avvābāham apunarāvattisiddhi-gaināmadheyam ṭhāṇaṃ sampattāṇaṃ namo jīṇāṇaṃ jiyabhayāṇaṃ. je ya āiṇyā siddhā je ya bhavissanti 'nāgate kāle/ sampai ya vaṭṭamāṇā savve tivihēṇa vandāmi/" Quoted in JY: 193. Compare KS: §16.

19. Following is a list of the twenty-four Tīrthaṅkaras of the present half-

by the community and thus has helped to preserve the "historical" character of even the most ancient teacher-Jinas. They are glorified as those who have "illuminated the world" (*logassa-ujjoyagare*) and who have "laid out the sacred ford of doctrine as a way across" (*dhamma-titthayare*). The hymn closes with the words:

May the siddhas, purer than the moons, more radiant than the suns, and profound as the oceans, give me protection.²⁰

The third, *Śruta-stava*, praises the sacred canon (*śruta*), as well as the Tīrthaṅkaras who are even now living in the continents of Videha. A typical invocation runs as follows:

O siddhas . . . may the eternal sacred doctrine bring prosperity . . . may it be victorious and may it enhance the primacy of the dharma.²¹

The "Basic Restraints" (Mūlaguṇa): The renunciatory aspect of darśana-pratimā is eightfold, comprising the so-called basic restraints (*mūlaguṇa*), which are observed

cycle. The symbols by which their iconographic representations can be identified are given in parentheses; these symbols usually appear on the pedestal of a given sculpture. 1) Rṣabha (bull), 2) Ajita (elephant), 3) Sambhava (horse), 4) Abhinandana (ape), 5) Sumati (partridge), 6) Padmaprabha (lotus), 7) Supārśva (*nandyāvarta* figure), 8) Candraprabha (moon), 9) Suvidhi/Puṣpadanta (crocodile), 10) Śītala (svastika), 11) Śreyāṃsa (rhinoceros), 12) Vāsupūjya (male buffalo), 13) Vimāla (boar), 14) Ananta (hawk/bear), 15) Dharma (thunderbolt), 16) Śānti (deer), 17) Kunthu (goat), 18) Ara (fish), 19) Malli (water jar), 20) Munisuvrata (tortoise), 21) Nami (blue lotus), 22) Nemi (conch shell), 23) Pārśva (snake), 24) Vardhamāna/Mahāvīra (lion). For detailed information on these Tīrthaṅkaras (names of their parents, geographical data, physical descriptions, identity of attendant demi-gods (*yakṣas*), nature of their congregations) see JSK: II, 376-391. See also Jā Burgess 1903 and Stevenson 1915: 312-314. For a similar discussion on the Tīrthaṅkaras of the past and future half-cycles, as well as of the twenty Tīrthaṅkaras who are now alive in the Videha "continent" (Ch. I n. 70), see JSK: II, 376ff.

20. *logass' ujjoyagare dhamma-titthayare jīṇe/ arihaṃte kittaiṣaṃ cauvi-
saṃ pi kevalī// . . . kittiya-vaṃdiya-mahiyā je e logassa uttamā siddhā/
āroga-bohi-lābhaṃ samāhivaram uttamam dentu// cadesu nimmalayarā
āiccesu ahiyaṃ pabhāsayarā/ sāgaravaragambhīrā siddhā siddhiṃ mama di-
santu// Suttāgame, II, Āvassaya-sutta: §2. See JY: 195. For a Digambara version
of this stava, see NNP: 8.*

21. JY: 196.

almo
ity.²²
Jaina
ya),
bara
parti
man

To
stand
of p
Jaina
injur
by e
extre
amo
elabo

H
done
injur
abili
exam
duce
inter
bind
conc
tions
such
spir

22.
madhū
mūlag
not ur
ladder

23.
bara,
lensis;
Roxb.

24.
evotpa

almost automatically by members of the Jaina community.²² All of these restraints are dietary in nature; the Jaina must never partake of meat (*māṃsa*), alcohol (*madya*), honey (*madhu*), or any of five kinds of figs (*udumbara*).²³ The Jaina will of course be asked why these particular substances came to be considered unfit for human consumption.

To answer this question, as well as to properly understand the restraints applied at later stages of the Jaina path of purification, we must be aware of one basic fact: the Jaina preoccupation with *ahiṃsā*, the avoidance of giving injury. Great importance has been attached to this concept by every Indian school, but none has carried it to the extreme of the Jainas. For them it is not simply the first among virtues but *the* virtue; all other restraints are simply elaborations of this central one.

Himṣā has ordinarily been understood in India as harm done to others; for Jainas, however, it refers primarily to injuring *oneself*—to behavior which inhibits the soul's ability to attain mokṣa.²⁴ Thus the killing of animals, for example, is reprehensible not only for the suffering produced in the victims, but even more so because it involves intense passions on the part of the killer, passions which bind him more firmly in the grip of saṃsāra. The Jaina concept of *hiṃsā*, then, is very broad in terms of the actions to which it refers; and the need for abandonment of such actions becomes of paramount importance to the spiritual aspirant.

22. tatrādaṁ śraddadhaj jainīm ājñāṁ hiṃsām apāsitum/ madya-māṃsa-madhūny ujjet, pañca kṣīriphalāni ca// SD: ii, 2. For the variations of the mūlaguṇas, see JY: 51. Williams is of the opinion that the mūlaguṇas, although not unknown to the Śvetāmbaras, were probably integrated into the pratimā ladder only by Digambara writers.

23. "The *udumbaras* are the fruits of five trees of the genus *Ficus*: (i) *umbara*, *udumbara*—*Ficus glomerata* Roxb.; (ii) *vaṭa*, *nyagrodha*—*Ficus bengalensis*; (iii) *pippala*, *aśvattha*—*Ficus religiosa* Linn.; (iv) *plakṣa*—*Ficus infectoria* Roxb.; (v) *kakombari*, *guphala*—*Ficus oppositifolia* Willd." JY: 53.

24. Compare: aprādurbhāvaḥ khalu rāgādīnāṁ bhavaty ahiṃseti/ teṣāṁ evotpattir hiṃseti jināgamasya saṃkṣepaḥ// *Puruṣārthasiddhyupāya*: k 44.

Seen within this context, the forbidden substances mentioned above begin to show certain features in common. Most important is the fact that, in the Jaina view, partaking of any of these necessarily involves killing and so must be avoided. This fact is of course most obvious with regard to meat; thus it is not surprising that the taboo against eating animal flesh is enforced more strongly in the Jaina community than in any other. To perceive the violence supposedly inherent in partaking of the other prohibited foods, we must recall the Jaina belief in nigoda, the myriad single-sense creatures which inhabit almost every corner of the universe.²⁵ Such creatures are said to be especially prevalent in substances where fermentation or sweetness is present; hence the consumption of liquor or honey brings untold millions of these organisms to an untimely and violent end. The tissues of certain plants, especially those of a sweet, fleshy, or seed-filled nature, are also thought to serve as hosts for the nigoda; plants of this type are termed *sādhāraṇa*, "those which share their bodies." The avoidance of figs as part of the *mūlaguṇa* practice seems to represent a symbolic renunciation of all nigoda-ridden vegetable substances; indeed, later stages of the path involve the abandonment of any such food whatsoever.²⁶

While Jainas take very seriously the destruction of nigoda, it should be noted that violence against these creatures is considered far less terrible than that against higher animals. Thus a Jaina layman may on rare occasions consume medicinal preparations made with honey or wine, but under no circumstances may he take meat. If there is a single practice which can be called the hallmark of the Jaina, it must be this strict adherence to vegetarianism; his refusal to eat meat constitutes the most basic expression of his commitment to *ahiṃsā*.

25. See Ch. IV n. 7.

26. For a long list of plants and substances forbidden to a devout Jaina, see JY: 110-116.

Ce
guṇa
Vedi
ism h
Vedi
only
on s
attac
tions
stan
in ce
nect
Jaina
with
the t
uniqu
soul
W
with
thro
cam
The
able
that
able
well
so s
cert
vege
Vra

27
28
Hindu
has a
Hindu
29
tatrāp
k 66,

Certain modern scholars have suggested that the *mūla-guṇa* restraints actually represent a reaction to ancient Vedic sacrificial practices.²⁷ Such a view implies that Jainism began as an *ahiṃsā*-oriented protestant sect within the Vedic tradition, becoming defined as a separate religion only after developing this orientation into an all-out ban on sacrifice and killing of every sort. It is true that Jaina attacks on Vedic ritual have at times reached the proportions of a crusade, and also that the specific food substances forbidden to Jainas were all commonly employed in ceremonial offerings to the manes. Such apparent connections, however, must be weighed against the fact that Jainas themselves have no memory of a time when they fell within the Vedic fold.²⁸ Any theory which attempts to link the two traditions, moreover, fails to appreciate the rather unique and very anti-Vedic character of Jaina cosmology, soul theory, karmic doctrine, and atheism.

Whatever may be the origin of the great Jaina concern with nonviolence, or of the expression of this concern through dietary restrictions, we *do* know that Jainas became the primary exponents of vegetarianism in India. They rejected even the Buddhist notion that meat is acceptable if an animal has died of natural causes, contending that the dead flesh itself is a breeding ground for innumerable *nigodas* and hence must not be consumed.²⁹ It may well be that Jainism was the first Indian tradition to preach so strongly against the taking of meat; in any case, it certainly contributed much to the eventual triumph of vegetarianism throughout the subcontinent.

Vrata-Pratimā (Stage of Restraints).—Once a person has

27. JY: 52–53. See also Schmidt 1968.

28. "As to Jainas being Hindu dissenters, and, therefore governable by Hindu Law, we are not told the date of this secession . . . Jainism certainly has a longer history than is consistent with its being a creed of dissenters from Hinduism." J. L. Jaini 1916a: 12–13. See below, Ch. IX n. 30.

29. *yad api kila bhavati māṃsaṃ svayam eva mṛtasya mahiṣavṛṣabhādeḥ/ tatrāpi bhavati hiṃsā tadāśritanigodanirmathanāt// Puruṣārthasiddhyupāya:* k 66.

taken refuge in the five kinds of holy beings and has become fixed in the eight mūlaguṇas, he is considered able to appreciate the value of restraints (*vrata*). Vratas (from the Sanskrit *vr*, to fence in) provide the means whereby karmic influx can be placed within certain limits, thereby ensuring that the worldly activities inevitable for the householder do not lead to passions which deepen his involvement in saṃsāra. Jains set forth twelve "partial" vratas (those appropriate for the layman); vows of adherence to these constitute the second or *vrata-pratimā*. The twelve partial vratas are in three categories: five *aṇuvratas*, three *guṇavratas*, and four *śikṣāvratas*. Of these, the *aṇuvratas* are basic.³⁰ Restraints of the second category are elaborations of those included in the first, while those of the third are actually spiritual exercises of a ritual sort. Let us now examine each category in some detail.

The First Aṇuvrata: Ahimsā—The first *aṇuvrata* is called *ahimsā*. One here vows to undertake a set of restraints which further deepen his commitment to this most central concept of Jaina ethics. As we have seen, *himsā* refers to any action accompanied by the giving of pain or the rise of passions. Recognizing that total avoidance of such actions would be impossible for a householder, Jaina teachers have drawn a distinction between injurious activities which are totally forbidden and those which may be tolerated within strict guidelines. The first of these categories is designated as *saṃkalpajā-himsā*, and includes all deeds involving intentional, premeditated violence.³¹ Such deeds are contrasted with those of the *ārambhajā-himsā*

30. While all Jaina sects agree on the identity and nature of the *aṇuvratas*, there has been some argument as to precisely which restraints make up the *guṇavratas* and *śikṣāvratas*, respectively. Here I have followed the most widely accepted tradition; for variant lists, see JY: 56ff. See the list of vratas at the end of this chapter.

31. *pramattayogāt prānavyaparopanaṃ himsā*/ TS: vii, 13. *pramādaḥ sakaṣāyatvaṃ tadvān ātmapariṇāmaḥ pramattaḥ . . . tasya yogaḥ pramattayogaḥ. tasmāt pramattayogāt indriyādayo daśapraṇās teṣāṃ yathāsambhavaṃ vyaparopanaṃ viyogakaraṇaṃ himsety abhidhīyate . . . 'pramattayogāt' iti viśeṣaṇaṃ kevalaṃ prānavyaparopanaṃ nādharmāyeti jñāpanārtham.* SS: §687.

variety, which either occur accidentally or may result from the performance of an "acceptable" occupation. A murderer, for example, clearly sets out to end the life of his victim, hence commits *saṃkalpajā-hiṃsā*. Surgeons, on the other hand, may cause pain or even death during a delicate operation, but are guilty only of the much less serious *ārambhajā-hiṃsā*. As for occupations, Jainas should not choose one involving intentional destruction, such as that of a hunter or a fisherman. Though even a farmer may destroy insects during the course of his work, such harm is done unwittingly and so does not render this means of livelihood unacceptable.

During the performance of any task, one who has taken the vow of noninjury must exercise a high degree of care in order to minimize even *ārambhajā-hiṃsā*. This becomes especially important when caste duties demand violent action, as in the case of a *kṣatriya* (warrior) whose country becomes involved in warfare. Jainas have not been blind to the importance of resisting injustice and aggression. Hence they have considered even killing, when done in self-defense or during a purely defensive war, to involve not *saṃkalpajā-hiṃsā* but a less serious variety called *virodhī-hiṃsā* (injury generated by standing in opposition).³² Under more ordinary circumstances, however, the lay Jaina would not have found himself confronted by the necessity for such drastic behavior.

Six modes of livelihood—government (*asi*), writing

32. "daṇḍo hi kevalo lokam imaṃ cāmuṃ ca rakṣati/ rājñā śatrau ca putre ca yathā doṣasamaṃ dhṛtaḥ//". Quoted in *JSK*: IV, 537 (from *Sāgāradharmāmṛta-ṭīkā* iv, 5). The concept of *virodhī-hiṃsā* appears to be a noncanonical one, as the word is not attested in any ancient works. It does not appear even in the *Nītivākyāmṛta* of Somadevasūri (tenth century), the only book on polity by a Jaina author. In this avowedly nonsectarian work, Somadeva holds that kings should regard warfare as a "last resort," but he does not go so far as to specify that it may be undertaken only on a defensive basis: *buddhiyuddhena paraṃ jetum aśaktaḥ śastryayuddham upakramet/4/ praharato 'pasarato vā same vināśe varam prahāro yatra naikāntiko vināśaḥ/12/ sa dharmavijayo rājā yo vidheyamātreṇaiva santuṣṭaḥ prāṇārthamāneṣu na vyabhicarati/70/ Nītivākyāmṛta: xxx (yuddhasamuddeśa). For a discussion on the Jaina attitude towards the concept of *kṣatriya-dharma*, see below, Ch. IX n. 62.*

(*maṣi*), farming (*kṛṣi*), the arts (*vidyā*), commerce (*vāṇijya*), and various crafts (*śilpa*)—have been designated as “respectable” by Jaina teachers.³³ In practice, however, followers of the Jina have been strongly encouraged to enter those professions which have the least potential for violence; hence statecraft and agriculture have come to be considered somewhat less desirable occupations, while the career of a merchant is seen as most appropriate. Even within the context of commercial activity, certain varieties of trade have been specifically prohibited for one who has entered upon the path of restraint.³⁴ These include dealing in charcoal; selling timber; selling or driving ox carts; charging fees for transport by ox cart; excavation, plowing, and quarrying; dealing in animal by-products, for example, ivory; trading in lac; manufacturing or selling alcohol or other substances prohibited under the *mūlaguṇa*; trading in slaves or livestock; dealing in poisons or weapons; operating mills or oil presses; gelding and branding animals; burning fields to encourage subsequent agricultural production; draining water so that crops can be planted; breeding destructive animals.

Acceptance of the first *vrata* entails much more than simply an expansion of the basic commitment to *ahiṃsā*. Once a layman has taken this vow, he must scrupulously avoid all practices in violation thereof. Whereas the restrictions of the first *pratimā* operate mainly on the level of attitude—generating a *tendency* to avoid certain activities—those of the *vrata-pratimā* constitute a lifelong code of conduct to which one must pay meticulous attention at every moment. With full awareness of the obligation involved, the aspirant approaches a Jaina mendicant and begs to be given the vow. In the presence of the holy person he repeats the ancient formula:

33. *asir maṣiḥ kṛṣir vidyā vāṇijyam śilpam eva ca/ karmāṇīmāni śoḍhā syuḥ prajājīvanahetavaḥ*// *AP*: xvi, 179.

34. Fifteen trades forbidden to a Jaina are listed in *JY*: 117–123; and *SD*: v, 21–23.

I will desist from the knowing or intentional destruction of all great lives [trasa, souls embodied with two or more senses]. As long as I live, I will neither kill nor cause others to kill. I shall strive to refrain from all such activities, whether of body, speech, or mind.³⁵

Vows for each of the other lay or partial vratas, whenever these are undertaken, involve a similar declaration. Immediately after administering the vow, the teacher instructs the aspirant concerning related infractions which he must be careful to avoid, as well as on the proper means of expiation should such transgressions occur. A further distinction is made, in terms of seriousness and expiatory procedure, between infractions committed intentionally (*bhaṅga*) and those which take place by accident (*aticāra*).³⁶ Five infractions are listed with regard to the ahiṃsā-vrata; these pertain mainly to the treatment of humans and animals in one's care and include holding beings in captivity, beating, mutilating or branding, loading an excessive weight on the back or head, and providing insufficient food or water. The great Jaina concern with protection of animals is seen clearly in these prohibitions. Indeed, one who has taken the first vrata asserts the inviolability of *all* life, aligning himself with this principle to an extent probably unmatched by laymen of any other religious tradition.

The Second Aṇuvrata: Satya—The second aṇuvrata is that of *satya*, truth; it involves the vow to abstain from lying (*asatya*) of any sort. Jains see a close connection between *asatya* and *hiṃsā*, since all lying is volitional and tainted by some operation of the passions; thus the soul

35. This declaration is modeled on the words used by certain of Mahāvīra's outstanding lay disciples (Ānanda, e.g.; see below, Ch. VII): Ānande gāhāvāi samaṇassa bhagavaṃ Mahāvīrassa aṃtiṃ . . . thūlagaṃ pāṇāivāyaṃ paccakkhāi, "jāvajjīvāe duvihaṃ tiviheṇaṃ na karemi na kāravemi maṇasā vayasā kāyasā." *Upāsakadaśāḥ*: i, § 4.

36. For a chart listing five infractions pertaining to each vrata, see JY: 58–62.

is injured by such activity.³⁷ In its broader sense, the satyavrata requires great care with regard to *all* acts of speech, lest they have destructive consequences; thus even a truthful statement cannot be uttered if it will lead to the destruction of a living being. This requirement would seem to create the possibility of a double-bind situation for one who has undertaken the satya restraint. When, for example, he is asked the direction that a deer has gone by someone hunting the creature, pointing out the proper path endangers the life of the deer; pointing elsewhere, on the other hand, involves a deliberate untruth.

Once again, the Jaina teachers have taken the exigencies of worldly existence into account, functionally defining asatya for the layman as a lie *for one's own sake*. The hypothetical situation described above, therefore, should ordinarily be resolved by misleading the hunter; since the untruth has been spoken purely for the sake of the deer, injury to the soul of the speaker will be minimal.³⁸ In the case of a monk, however, the vow applies in its "complete" form; hence no such expedient solution is available. Faced by a choice between lying and abetting the destruction of another being, he must simply maintain silence, even if this behavior brings the wrath of the questioner down upon him.

The honesty of the Jaina businessman has long been proverbial in India; that this should be so reflects not only the pervasive effect of the satyavrata spirit on the worldview of the Jainas, but also the fact that their teachers have emphasized application of this spirit to the activities of the merchant class.³⁹ Thus a layman who undertakes the satya

37. sarvasminn apy asmin, pramattayogaikahetukathanam yat/ anṛtavacane 'pi tasmān niyataṃ hiṃsā samavasaratī// *Puruṣārthasiddhyupāya*: k 68.

38. "saṃkaṭākīrṇajīvanām uddhāraṇecchayā/ kathitā sādhubhir jātu mṛṣoktir amṛṣaiva sā// " Quoted in JSK: II, 273 (from *Ārādhanaśāra*).

39. "The honesty of the Jain trader was famous. Their wealth was also famous: formerly it has been maintained that more than half the trade of India passed through their hands." Weber 1958: 200. "Not all Jainas are merchants but many merchants happen to be Jainas because the qualities highlighted in the ideal layman are also those which generally contribute to success in business, and so a creed of complete otherworldliness has offered a background

restra
ing t
of de
more
rumo
so on
satya
the "
vain
respe
alike
stren

Th
vrata
defin
thing
here
"rece
brace
which
must
emph
stolen
secret
ones
payin
said t
presen
allow
terials
these
sities
him as

for the s
the Jaina
40. r
yan na c
41. S

restraint is specifically cautioned against untruths pertaining to ownership, the quality of goods, or the repayment of debts. Avoidance of such infractions plus those of a more general sort (bearing false witness, spreading unkind rumors, divulging confidences, using harsh language, and so on) comprises the everyday discipline entailed by the satya vow. Whether one who has taken this vow is indeed the "truly honest man" for whom Diogenes searched in vain may be open to question; even so, the high degree of respect accorded such a person by Jainas and non-Jainas alike bears adequate witness to the great dedication and strength of character which his discipline requires.

The Third Aṇuvrata: Asteya—The third of the aṇuvratas is *asteya*, not stealing; this has been more broadly defined as *adattādāna-virati*, refraining from taking anything that is not given. "Given" is generally understood here to mean "acquired in a legitimate transaction" or "received through inheritance." Thus, for one who embraces this restraint, it is not allowed even to pick up goods which have been lost or forgotten.⁴⁰ More important, he must not indulge in such immoral or illegal practices as employing thieves to obtain things for him, receiving stolen merchandise, using false weights and measures, secretly adulterating commodities or substituting inferior ones for the original, or gaining or storing goods without paying the required taxes. All such acts of "stealing" are said to involve *himsā*, since they necessarily reflect the presence of greed (*lobha*). In its partial form this vow does allow the collection of water, firewood, and similar materials from public lands. For a mendicant, however, even these activities are forbidden; he may obtain such necessities only if they are gathered by others and presented to him as a gift.⁴¹

for the successfully worldly." Williams in *JY*: intro. xxii. For a comparison of the Jainas with the Quakers in this context, see Nevaskar 1971.

40. *nihitam vā patitam vā suvisṃṣṭam vā parasvam avisṛṣṭam/ na harati yan na ca datte tad akṛśacauryyād upāramaṇam// RŚr: iii, 11.*

41. See the story of Ammaḍa's mendicant disciples in Ch. II.

The Fourth Aṇuvrata: Brahma—Fourth is the *brahma-vrata*, in accord with which an aspirant refrains from all “illicit” sexual activities (those which occur outside of marriage). The specific prohibitions set forth under this restraint speak directly to men, who are clearly considered much more prone to sexual license than are women. Thus we read that one who undertakes the brahma vow should “avoid the wives of others” and be “content with his own wife.”⁴² (The use of the singular here does not imply prohibition of polygamy; Jainas have traditionally accepted this practice, but consider monogamous marriage as the ideal.) Further, he must not take a woman as his wife only temporarily, purely to legitimize a short-term sexual involvement. He must view all women other than his wife as he would his mother or sister, thus overcoming sexual desire for them. Beyond the duty of finding suitable mates for his own children, he should not engage in matchmaking of any sort, as this would necessitate excessive contact with women. Finally, even with his wife he must eschew all “deviations,” as well as any tendency towards over-indulgence in carnal pleasures. The sexual code of the Jaina laity, then, focuses upon “marriage and moderation.” The importance of loyalty to one’s spouse is strongly emphasized, as is the need to provide an outstanding moral example for children.

As seen earlier, sexuality has no place in the life of a Jaina mendicant. This prohibition on the expression of so basic a human urge again connects to the problem of avoiding *hiṃsā*. The fact that sexual activity involves passion, hence from the Jaina perspective injures the soul, is of course obvious. It is further held, however, that the very act of intercourse slaughters great numbers of single-sense creatures, thought to dwell in the generative organs of the female and the ejaculate of the male.⁴³ Thus, while various

42. na tu paradārān gacchati, na parān gamayati ca pāpabhīter yat/ sā paradāranivṛttiḥ svadārasantoṣanāmāpi// RŚr: iii, 13.

43. yad vedarāgayogān maithunam abhidhīyate tad abrahma/ avatarati tatra hiṃsā vadhasya sarvatra sadbhāvāt// hiṃsyante tilanālyāṃ taptāyasi

Indian re
grounds r
this pract
implemen

The Fi
aṇuvrata
tachment
the delusi
such false
imagining
“has.”⁴⁴ T
four pass
discussed
and their
generate t
vrata.

But suc
detached
land, hou
manservan
and so on
than the D
these thin
pressed by
Having on
quantity o
exceed the
devious m
around” s
tion,” (ex
haven’t ac
ty line”);

vinihite tilā y
sārthasiddhyu

44. mūrcc
lādinām ca
saṃskārādilak
SS: §695.

Indian religious sects have praised sexual restraint on grounds ranging from the social to the mystical, Jains see this practice as simply one more facet in the universal implementation of ahimsā.

The Fifth Aṇuvrata: Aparigraha—The fifth and final aṇuvrata is that of aparigraha, nonpossession or nonattachment. The Jaina scriptures often define *parigraha* as the delusion (*mūrcchā*) of possession—that is, harboring such false notions as “this is mine” or “I made that” and imagining that one can hold on forever to what he now “has.”⁴⁴ The term is further made synonymous with the four passions (*kaṣāya*) and nine sentiments (*no-kaṣāya*) discussed earlier; these are called the “internal possessions,” and their renunciation (the avoidance of activities which generate them) constitutes the essence of the aparigraha-vrata.

But such renunciation is not possible until a person has detached himself from the ten “external possessions,”—land, houses, silver, gold, livestock, grain, maidservants, manservants, clothing, and miscellaneous goods (furniture, and so on). With the exception of clothing in sects other than the Digambara, Jaina mendicants must give up all of these things entirely. For the layman, aparigraha is expressed by the setting of limits upon what he may own. Having once established reasonable upper bounds on the quantity of goods in each of the ten categories, he must not exceed these at any time. The śrāvakācāra texts list five devious means by which certain people may try to “get around” such limits: (1) gaining new land by “incorporation,” (extending one’s boundaries and then saying “I haven’t acquired anything beyond the limits of my property line”); (2) disguising an excess accumulation of gold or

vinihite tilā yadvat/ bahavo jīvā yonau himsyante maithune tadvat// *Puruṣārthasiddhyupāya*: k 107–108. See also *SM*: k 23.

44. *mūrcchā parigrahaḥ*/ *TS*: vii, 17. *bāhyānām gomahiṣamaṇimuktāphalādīnām ca . . . ābhyantarānām ca rāgādīnām upadhīnām saṃrakṣaṇārjana-saṃskārādilakṣaṇāvyāvṛttir mūrcchā . . . teṣu saṃkalpaḥ parigraha iti yujyate. SS: §695.*

silver by "donating" it to one's wife; (3) going beyond the volume limit on grain and foodstuffs by repackaging these commodities in more compact containers; (4) not counting the newborn offspring of one's livestock as an increase in overall holdings, since they were "not purchased"; (5) "diminishing" the amount of household goods by combining them, welding plates together, for example. Such practices are of course to be avoided, as are the four infractions set forth under aparigraha: driving cattle over excessive distances or with too heavy a load in order to increase profits, hoarding grain to drive up the price, hoping for greater than reasonable profit in any transaction, and falling into dejection after having sold something at a low price.

All of these prohibitions are clearly oriented towards the situation of a merchant community, where greed and attachment to goods are likely to become major problems. By undertaking the aparigrahavrata, a Jaina layman systematically reduces his tendencies to fall into such passions; thus he protects his soul from increased karmic entanglement and lays the groundwork for complete non-attachment, the path of the mendicant.

The Guṇavratas—The five aṇuvratas discussed above are expanded by the so-called guṇavratas,⁴⁵ which aim to limit the area of a person's activities and the number of beings and objects with which he comes into contact. Jaina teachers have likened a layman to a heated iron ball, "burning" (injuring) everything it touches. Hence it becomes important to restrict the sphere of his activities as well as the activities themselves; only thus can karmic influx be reduced to a minimum. The first such restriction is called *digvrata*, by which an individual voluntarily curtails the distance he will travel in any given direction. He sets definite boundaries, marked by the position of well-known rivers, seas, mountains, or he simply limits the

45. yad guṇāyopakārāyāṇuvratānām vratāni tat/ guṇavratāni trīṇy āhur digviratyādikāny api// SD: v, 1.

radius of
spending
least p
areas b

Seco
isolates
of certa
ample,
partaki
rot—th
But the
eating
practic
set has
larly c
readily
insects
a cook
and oth
food ta
ly held
tends t
be avo
drinking
creatur
dining

Thir
vrata,
types
oneself
trees o
facilita
weapo
warfar

46. S

47. a
pradīpe b

radius of his movements to a specific number of miles. By spending his lifetime within such boundaries, one can at least prevent himself from perpetrating violence in the areas beyond them.

Second is the *bhogopabhoga-parimāṇavrata*, which legislates against the use of certain items or the performance of certain tasks. The fifteen undesirable professions, for example, are specifically forbidden by this restraint; so is partaking of numerous foods (turmeric, ginger, garlic, carrot—thirty-two are listed) normally allowed the layman.⁴⁶ But the most important aspect of this vrata is its ban on eating (or cooking) at night (*rātri-bhojana*). Indeed, the practice of preparing and consuming food only before sunset has become so widespread among Jains that it is popularly considered one of the *mūlaguṇas*. This rule can be readily understood if one recalls the large numbers of flying insects which populate the Indian household after dark; a cooking fire will certainly draw many to their deaths, and others may be inadvertantly consumed along with any food taken at that time.⁴⁷ Jains also subscribe to the widely held folk belief that going to bed with a full stomach tends to increase the level of one's passions, hence should be avoided. Finally, the second *guṇavrata* prohibits the drinking of unfiltered water (which may contain small creatures); this rule, like the one pertaining to nighttime dining, is almost universally followed in Jaina households.

Third of the *guṇavratas* is that called *anarthadandavrata*, which comprises injunctions against five "minor" types of evil activity: brooding (contemplating harm to oneself or others), purposeless mischief (gambling, cutting trees or digging in the ground just for fun, and so forth), facilitation of destruction (keeping or distributing poisons, weapons, and so on), giving harmful advice (encouraging warfare, helping hunters to find animals, or in any way

46. See JY: 110–123.

47. *arkālokena vinā bhuñjāṇaḥ pariharet katham hiṃsām/ api bodhitāḥ pradīpe bhojyajuṣaṃ sūkṣmajantūnām/ / Puruṣārthasiddhyupāya: k 133.*

offering counsel which leads others to commit *hiṃsā*), and "purposeless listening" (such as to the *Kāma-sūtra*, public shows, or other things which can only increase one's tendencies towards lust and violence).

Lists of infractions are also set forth for each *guṇavṛata*. Those for the first two generally admonish the aspirant to keep the appropriate "limits" always in mind, lest he inadvertently exceed them, while those for the third warn against various kinds of immoderate activity: libidinous speech, buffoonery, living in great luxury, and so forth.

The Śikṣāvratas—The final set of restraints, called *śikṣāvṛata*, contains four varieties of ritual activity.⁴⁸ In undertaking any one of them, the layman vows to engage therein on a regular basis. The specific frequency may vary, but whether it be daily, weekly, or otherwise, the point is the same: practice is now *required* rather than optional. First of the four is *deśāvakāśika*, in which one elects to remain within an area even narrower than that called for by the *digvṛata*. This restraint is necessarily temporary, lasting no more than a day or two. During that time the aspirant does not go beyond his "normal surroundings,"—his dwelling place, the temple, the fasting hall, or the confines of the village. He is also encouraged (though not required) to cut down on as many worldly activities as possible, particularly those that originate beyond the spatial and temporal limits of the *vṛata*.

The second *śikṣāvṛata* is *sāmāyika*; literally meaning equanimity, or (the process of) coming to oneness, it refers here to brief periods spent in meditation. Third is *poṣadhōpavāsa*, which mainly entails fasting on the four *parvan* (holy) days, the eighth and fourteenth days of the moon's waxing and waning periods. (For a Jaina, fasting ordinarily means total abstention from food and water; this is usually done in a special fasting hall or some other place of seclusion.) Both *sāmāyika* and *poṣadhōpavāsa* are

48. For details of the rituals involved, see Ch. VII.

very
Pārś
L
to g
peo
awa
striv
min
Fina
and
and
scri

F
tice
pro
und
one
by
of e
kha
van
vow
actu
emo
exp

T
to l
the
thes

49
ity ac
prepa
furthe
a sens

very ancient practices, perhaps dating back to the time of Pārsva.

Last of these vratas is dāna. Here the aspirant pledges to give alms to mendicants or to spiritually advanced lay-people. In order to perform this activity, one must become aware of the qualities which mark a proper donor, then strive to embody those qualities. He must be able to determine which individuals are worthy to receive his gifts. Finally, he must be careful to offer only those kinds of food and other requisites which are suitable for the recipient, and to do so in strict accordance with the methods prescribed by ritual.

For the individual who has trained himself in these practices, the śrāvakācāras recommend a supplementary vrata, probably the most sacred ritual act that a layman can undertake. This is *sallekhanāvrata*, the decision to meet one's natural death in a controlled and peaceful manner by recourse to fasting and meditation during the last days of earthly existence. Since the precise moment when *sallekhanā* will become appropriate cannot be known in advance, it is customary for the aspirant to take an "informal" vow of adherence to this vrata, resolving to undertake its actual practice at some future time. In this way he becomes emotionally prepared, over the years, for the profound experience that such a holy death entails.⁴⁹

The four śikṣāvratas and *sallekhanā* have been referred to here as "rituals." This designation actually describes the activities involved, but it must be kept in mind that these five are practices of an exalted nature, not to be

49. Compare: *sallekhanāṃ kariṣye 'haṃ vidhinā māraṇāntikīm/ avaśyam ity adaḥ śīlaṃ sannidadhyāt sadā hr̥di// SD: vii, 57*. The individual may also prepare himself for *sallekhanā* by vowing each night, e.g., that he will take no further food until morning. Should death thus come during sleep, it will be in a sense sanctified by this sincere, albeit temporary, form of restraint.

categorized with such rituals as marriage or birth ceremonies, funerals, and so on. (These will be discussed in the last chapter.) Indeed, the śikṣāvratas are seen by Jains as the holiest of lay activities. For the mendicant, too, rigorous performance of these vratas constitute the most significant aspect of his spiritual life. He will engage in sāmāyika at least three times each day, fast regularly, and prepare himself at all times for the sacred practice of sallekhanā. (Deśāvakāśika and dāna of course do not apply to a monk, since he has no fixed place of residence and is, moreover, possessionless, hence unable to engage in donation.)

The Remaining Pratimās.—This completes the list of twelve vratas. Having undertaken all of these in their prescribed form, one becomes fully established in Jaina lay discipline at the level of the second (namely the vrata) pratimā. Progress through the higher pratimās, ending just short of actual mendicancy, basically involves increased rigor in the performance of the vows already taken at this level. By resolving to practice sāmāyika three times each day, for example (thereby equaling the minimum amount of meditation required for a monk), one attains the third or sāmāyika-pratimā. This stage also entails daily performance of pūjā (Jina-worship and similar temple rituals) prior to the morning meal. Similarly, vowing to fast on every parvan day (as well as abandoning business, domestic, and social activities during these periods) constitutes establishment in the poṣadha-pratimā, fourth stage on the ladder of progressive renunciation.

The fifth stage, called sacittatyāga-pratimā, involves giving up all forms of green leaves and shoots, as well as roots and tubers, and certain other edibles normally allowed the layman. The use of unboiled water, moreover, is now forbidden. Having thus extended the bhogopabhoga restraint, the aspirant lives mainly on lentils and similar dried foodstuffs.

Th
com
sexua
prati
night
the s
conti
varja
repre
one
the
com
tact
may
garn
He f
one
H
stag
mitr
Wha
perf
sper
prac
han
holo
wor
hat
mat
men
dire
"ad
S
man
athā
sākṣ
śram

The sixth and seventh pratimās represent an increasing commitment to the spirit of the brahmavrata (vow of sexual restraint). In the first of these, called the *rātribhaktapratimā*, one resolves to limit one's sexual activity to the nighttime hours. He thus becomes gradually prepared for the seventh or *brahmacarya-pratimā*, in which absolute continence is observed. Also referred to as *abrahma-varjana* (abandonment of [all] incontinence), this stage represents near-total renunciation of the household life; one who has attained so high a level of restraint receives the title *brahmacāri* and commands great respect in his community. In addition to ceasing from all physical contact with members of the opposite sex, the brahmacāri may no longer wear tailored clothing; he dons only simple garments consisting of two or three long pieces of cloth. He further abandons all devices ordinarily used to increase one's attractiveness: soap, oil, jewelry, and the like.

Having functionally ended his marital life in the seventh stage, the aspirant withdraws from all professional commitments in the eighth (called *ārambhatyāga-pratimā*). Whatever his job has been, he ceases entirely from its performance; receiving support from his children, he spends the major portion of each day engaged in spiritual practices and reading of the scriptures. Eventually he may hand over all his property to other members of the household (children, brothers), thereby abandoning the cares of worldly possession and arriving at the ninth or *parigrahatyāga-pratimā*.⁵⁰ At this stage he still participates in matters of family business, but he gains increasing detachment from such affairs since they no longer concern him directly. In the tenth of *anumatityāga-pratimā*, even this "advisory" role is abandoned; though still living in the

50. This stage is followed by a ceremony called *sakala-datti*, in which a man's property is transferred to his son in the presence of community leaders: *athāhūya sutam yogyam, gotrajam vā tathāvidham/ brūyād idam praśān sākṣāj jātijyeṣṭhasadharmanām// tātādya yāvad asmābhiḥ pālito 'yam grhāśramah/ virajyainam jihāsūnām tvam adyārhasi naḥ padam// SD: vii, 24-25.*

household, the layman remains totally uninvolved with its activities. Thus he becomes ready for the final (eleventh) stage, called *uddiṣṭatyāga-pratimā*, in which there is renunciation of all food and lodging specifically prepared (*uddiṣṭa*) for him. At this point he turns away from the world, leaves home forever, and goes to live in a temple or a public hall for renunciants.⁵¹

Within the Śvetāmbara tradition, one who has thus reached the eleventh pratimā is called *śramaṇabhūta* (about to become a mendicant).⁵² He carries the requisites of the monk, begging bowl and whisk broom, and may even go so far as to shave his head and don monk's clothing. Thus he lives almost exactly as would a Śvetāmbara mendicant, but remains technically a layman in that he has not yet taken the mahāvratas.

Among Digambaras, the aspirant who has reached this level repairs to an ascetic retreat and subsists on alms. Initially he will wear three "garments": a loin cover, a sarong-like waist wrap, and a large piece of cloth thrown about the shoulders. Although carrying no begging bowl, he does not eat from his bare hands as monks do; rather, he is allowed to partake from a plate (which belongs to the householder who gives him the alms). One who has reached this stage is called *kṣullaka* (minor, junior), and is considered almost ready to undertake the mendicant vows.⁵³ First, however, he must pass through the stage known as *ailaka*,⁵⁴ wherein he reduces his possessions to a single piece of cloth (the loin cover) and thus prepares for total ascetic nudity, the defining practice of the Digambara monk.⁵⁵

51. *uddiṣṭam piṇḍam apy ujhed utkrṣṭaḥ śrāvako 'ntimaḥ*/ Ibid.: vii, 37.

52. See JY: 178. See the story of Ānanda below, Ch. VII.

53. For the variant practices prescribed for a *kṣullaka*, see JY: 178-181.

54. See Ch. I n. 45.

55. Actually, Digambara monks and eleventh-pratimā laypersons carry a peacock-feather whisk broom (called *piñchī*), used to clear their sitting place lest small creatures be harmed; since this broom is necessary to the observance of *ahiṃsā*, it is not considered a "possession." The same exemption applies to a gourd pot used to carry water for toilet purposes. See pl. 24.

It
eleve
mon
one
yika
mon
sion
wou
after
cide
no l
part
B
a lay
khy
guṇ
the
soul

It seems that in ancient times the vows for each of the eleven pratimās were initially undertaken for a period of months equal to the "step number" of that pratimā; hence one would practice the vratas for two months, then sāmāyika for three, fasting for four, and so on up to eleven months as a kṣullaka or śramaṇabhūta.⁵⁶ Such a progression, with each stage including those already undertaken, would require five-and-a-half years for completion; thereafter, the aspirant would usually (but not necessarily) decide to take the vows permanently. Today this practice is no longer observed; once accepted, the restraints of a particular pratimā are binding for life.

By passing through all eleven of the pratimā "ladder," a layman shows that he has totally overcome the apratyā-khyānāvaraṇa passions and is fully established in the fifth guṇasthāna. Thus he is ready for the exalted practices of the mendicant path, a path which may at last carry his soul to the brink of liberation.

56. See the story of Ānanda, Ch. VII.

THE PRATIMĀS

THE ELEVEN STAGES OF SPIRITUAL PROGRESS PRESCRIBED FOR A LAYMAN⁵⁷

1. Darśana-pratimā
The stage of right views
2. Vrata-pratimā
The stage of taking the vows (see chart on vratas)
3. Sāmāyika-pratimā
The stage of practicing the sāmāyika
4. Poṣadha-pratimā
The stage of fasting on certain holy days
5. Sacittatyāga-pratimā
The stage of purity of nourishment
6. Rātribhakta-pratimā
The stage of continence by day
7. Brahmacarya-pratimā
The stage of absolute continence
8. Ārambhatyāga-pratimā
The stage of abandonment of household activity
9. Parigrahatyāga-pratimā
The stage of abandonment of acquisitiveness (by formally disposing of one's property)
10. Anumatityāga-pratimā
The stage of abandonment of approval for activities connected with household life
11. Uddiṣṭatyāga-pratimā
The stage of renunciation of specially prepared food or lodging (the stage of renouncing all connections with one's family). In the Śvetāmbara tradition this is known as the stage of the śramaṇabhūta. In the Digambara tradition this stage is divided into two steps: (1) kṣullaka (the junior, one with three pieces of cloth), (2) ailaka (one with only the loincloth).

57. For variations in the Śvetāmbara and the Digambara lists, see JY: 172-178.

THE

THE V

a. Th

Re

an

b. Th

1.

i

2.

3.

4.

5.

c. Th

vra

1.

i

2.

e

3.

s

d. Th

1.

r

2.

c

3.

e

4.

r

c

e. A

"en

tice

THE ŚRĀVAKA-VRATAS

THE VOWS PRESCRIBED FOR A LAYMAN

- a. The eight mūlaguṇas (basic restraints)
Refraining from partaking of meat, alcohol, honey, and five kinds of figs
- b. The five ānuvratas (limited or restricted vows)
 1. Ahimsāvrata: refraining from causing injury to beings with more than one sense faculty
 2. Satyavrata: refraining from false speech
 3. Asteyavrata: refraining from theft
 4. Brahmavrata: refraining from illicit sexual activities
 5. Aparigrahavrata: limiting one's possessions
- c. The three guṇavratas (vows that strengthen the ānuvratas)
 1. Digvrata: restricting one's activities to a specific area in any given direction
 2. Bhogopabhogavrata: restricting the objects of one's enjoyment (items of food, clothing, and so forth)
 3. Anarthadaṇḍavrata: refraining from all "unwholesome" activities (hunting, gambling, and so forth)
- d. The four śikṣāvratas (vows of spiritual discipline)
 1. Sāmāyikavrata: attainment of equanimity through meditation
 2. Deśāvakāśikavrata: further restrictions on the area defined by digvrata
 3. Poṣadhōpavāsavrata: fasting on certain holy days each month
 4. Dānavrata: performing "charity"—offering food, residence, medicine and books to mendicants and others
- e. A supplementary vrata, sallekhanāvrata
"emaciating the body by fasting," a nonobligatory practice highly recommended for a layman on his deathbed.

VII

Jaina Rituals and Ceremonies

The Practices of the Jaina Laity

The rules of lay conduct discussed in the previous chapter are severe; indeed, even the clerics of many religions do not live so strict a life as these rules demand. One would expect, under such conditions, that the number of persons able to adhere to such conduct would be small. Observation of a typical Jaina community bears out this expectation; the partial *vratas* and the *pratimās*, while theoretically set down for all laymen, tend to constitute an ideal path followed only by a highly select few. Certainly the ethical codes which underlie these disciplines strongly influence the outlook of the community at large, but it is a rare individual who actually *vows* to accept the restraints or perform the holy activities described here. Even the widespread practice of the *namaskāra-mantra* and the *mūla-guṇas* is due more to the weight of social convention than to that of spiritual obligations formally undertaken.

If we wish, therefore, to comprehend the religious life of the Jaina laity in real terms, we must look beyond the paradigmatic statements of the *śrāvakācāra* texts. For most Jainas, practice of their faith centers upon a diverse group of daily rituals and periodic ceremonies. Many of these may be equivalent in substance to aspects of the "ideal" lay path, but they differ significantly in that no compulsion attaches to them; unbound by any vow, the layman performs such activities only if and when he desires to. These rituals serve not merely to bring members of a family or

comm
mean
that is
a give
Hindu

In v
the de
for ex
Digan
the Ś
these
tarian
of the
mony
of the
the sa
during
The D
ancien
or cer
posed
which
proces
Hindu
face d
of the
not, h
a give
of exp
way o
any pr

The S
The ca
(*āvaśy*
are re

1. In
which ha

community together in a context imbued with religious meaning, but they also provide a sense of group identity—that is, the particular ritual forms adopted by members of a given community clearly distinguish them from their Hindu neighbors and from rival Jaina sects as well.

In view of this latter function, we must bear in mind that the designation applied to a given practice by Śvetāmbaras, for example, may refer to something very different among Digambaras or even among the “protestant” offshoots of the Śvetāmbara tradition. (The history and doctrine of these subsects will be discussed in Chapter IX.) Such sectarian differences are evident both in terms of litany and of the nonverbal actions which constitute a particular ceremony. The Śvetāmbaras, having managed to preserve most of their original Prakrit scriptures, still employ virtually the same liturgical formulas and practices that were in use during the time of the Valabhi council (fifth century A.D.). The Digambaras, on the other hand, possessed almost no ancient canonical materials upon which their recitations or ceremonial procedures could be based. Hence they composed new litanies in Sanskrit and developed ritual forms which were sometimes borrowed, through an ongoing process of “Jaina-ization,” from those of the surrounding Hindu majority.¹ In this way there arose many of the surface differences now observable between the lay activities of the two great Jaina traditions. Such differences should not, however, blind us to the common spirit which informs a given ritual regardless of its particular sectarian mode of expression. Thus it is often possible to speak in a general way of “the practices of the Jaina laity” without falling into any profound inaccuracy.

The Six Obligatory Duties

The canonical texts set forth six so-called obligatory duties (*āvaśyakas*) for members of the mendicant order. These are *recommended* to the laity as well, and although no

1. In his *Ādipurāṇa*, for example, Jinasena introduces several mantras which have no parallel in the Jaina canon. See AP: xl, 1-77.

actual obligation applies in the case of a nonascetic, the āvaśyakas in modified form are performed regularly in many Jaina households.² These are, in brief: (1) *sāmāyika*, the practice of equanimity (meditation); (2) *caturviṃśati-stava*, praise of the twenty-four Tīrthaṅkaras; (3) *vandana*, veneration (of the mendicant teachers); (4) *pratikramaṇa*, expiation (for transgressions); (5) *kāyotsarga*, abandonment of the body (standing or sitting motionless for various lengths of time); (6) *pratyākhyāna*, renunciation (of certain foods, indulgences, or activities, for a specified period). In medieval times the concept of *sāmāyika* seems to have broadened to include worship of Jina images at various shrines.³ This sort of "meditation by worship (*pūjā*)" led to similar notions—meditation by fasting, meditation by expiation, and so on—until at last *sāmāyika* became, for many Jainas, a cover term for *all* types of spiritual activity.

Digambaras developed a list of practices quite similar to those of the canonical āvaśyaka scheme, but moved towards a greater emphasis upon the popular or secular aspects of ritual. Mainly responsible for this trend were the great teachers Jinasena (circa A.D. 840) and Somadeva (tenth century), both of whom laid down sixfold sets of practices which laymen were to perform as regularly as possible. Somadeva's list became the standard one, including: (1) *devapūjā*, worship of the Tīrthankaras; (2) *guru-upāsti*, venerating and listening to the teachers; (3) *svādhyāya*, study (of the scriptures); (4) *saṃyama*, restraint (including observance of the mūlaguṇas, the aṇuvratas, the guṇa-vratas, and the first śikṣāvrata, *sāmāyika*); (5) *tapas*, austerities (especially fasting on holy days, as in the second śikṣāvrata); (6) *dāna*, charity (giving alms to mendicants).⁴

2. "sāmāyikaṃ stavah prājñair vandanaṃ sapratikramā/ pratyākhyānaṃ tanūtsargaḥ śodhāvaśyakam īritam/" Quoted in JSK: IV, 51 (from *Amitagati-śrāvakācāra*: viii, 29). For details on the āvaśyakas, see Schubring 1962: §151; and JY: 184.

3. In his discussion on the *sāmāyikavrata*, Somadeva deals at length with the worship of the parameṣṭhins. See *Upāsakādhyayana*: k 459-565; Handiqui 1949: 269-282; JY: 137-138.

4. Jinasena's list is very similar, except that it has *vārtā* (an acceptable profession) rather than *guru-upāsti*: *ijyāṃ vārtāṃ ca dattim ca svādhyāyaṃ*

It ca
mende
particu
unders
These p
of reli
examin

Worsh
Fore
ship of
fore an
of the
are mo
Since t
ence to
must a
from th
Sthāna
basis th

Con
omnisc
begun
time at
followe
oldest
of the
This in
Kalinga
king en
ta Jina
ried off
known

saṃyama
24.

5. For
6. "Na
Sahu 1964

It can readily be seen that the ritual practices recommended here come very close to those in canonical sources, particularly when the *sāmāyika* of the *āvaśyaka* list is understood to include *pūjā*, and so on, as noted above. These practices therefore constitute the fundamental modes of religious expression for the Jaina laity and must be examined in greater detail.

Worship of the Tīrthaṅkaras (Devapūjā)

Foremost among the six lay rituals is *devapūjā*, worship of the Tīrthaṅkaras. This normally takes place before an image of one of these omniscient teachers (any of the twenty-four is considered suitable); such images are most often (but not always) located within a temple. Since the most ancient Jaina texts seem to make no reference to Jina-images (or to temples, for that matter), we must assume that the practice of erecting these icons dates from the postcanonical period. (Indeed one Jaina sect, the *Sthānakavāsi*, condemns image-worship altogether on the basis that it is extracanonical and thus heterodox.⁵)

Construction of images and active veneration of the omniscient teachers whom they represented may well have begun during the Mauryan period (circa 300 B.C.), sometime after Mahāvīra had been elevated by many of his followers to the status of a quasi-divine cult figure. But the oldest known Jaina stone inscription suggests that images of the Jinas may have been worshiped at an earlier date. This inscription, commissioned by one King Khāravela of Kalinga (modern Orissa) around 150 B.C., tells how that king engaged in warfare to regain a famous image of Ananta Jina (the fourteenth Tīrthaṅkara), which had been carried off by agents of the Nanda dynasty.⁶ The Nandas are known to have ruled in Bihar around 400 B.C.; crediting

saṃyamam tapah/ śrutopāsakasūtratvāt sa tebhyaḥ saṃupādiśat// AP: xxxviii, 24.

5. For a brief history of the *Sthānakavāsi* sect, see Ch. IX.

6. "Naṃdarājanītaṃ Kāliṃgajinaṃ saṃnivesaṃ . . . ca nayati." Quoted in Sahu 1964: I, 402. See Ch. IX n. 8.

the veracity of Khāravela's inscription, therefore, would mean that a full-blown cult of image-worship existed among Jainas even in Mahāvīra's time.⁷

Further evidence concerning the history of devapūjā in Jainism is provided by various stone remains unearthed at Mathura. These cover perhaps a thousand years of Jaina history; a few may date back to the second century B.C. The most significant items in the Mathura collection are certain votive slabs (*āyāga-paṭa*) of the type usually donated to a temple by a group of several lay-devotees.⁸ Some of these depict Jinas seated in meditation, surrounded by various auspicious signs—svastikas, fish, trees—as well as by gods, men, and animals. This scene, of course, is the *samavasaraṇa* so often described in Jaina literature. It is especially noteworthy for the lotus (meditative) posture of its central figure, which conforms strictly to the Jaina doctrine that an omniscient being no longer sleeps (as Buddha, for example, is often shown doing), and certainly does not engage in passionate worldly activities. (Compare the dancing, warring, or sportive poses used by Hindus in depicting their various gods.) Even the well-known statues of Jaina saints standing erect, arms and hands pointed downward, illustrate a form of deepest meditation (in this case conjoined with the practice of *kāyotsarga*). Indeed no Jina-image has ever been found which shows the great being in any but one of these two "orthodox" positions, positions suggesting omniscient awareness and complete nonvolition.

7. There is an ancient legend among the Śvetāmbara Jainas that a sandal-wood image of Mahāvīra prior to his renunciation was carved during the Jina's lifetime (hence it became known as *Jīvantasvāmī*). For literary evidence in support of this tradition, as well as a discussion of a certain bronze figure (circa sixth century) considered a replica of the original *Jīvantasvāmī* image, see U. P. Shah 1951-52a, b. For a more general history of Jaina iconography and architecture, see Fergusson 1891: 207-278; Smith 1901; Sankalia 1939; Lohuizen-de Leeuw 1949; U. P. Shah 1955; Dhaky 1968; Nigam 1968; Prasad 1968; Bruhn 1969; Ghosh 1974-1976; Fischer 1975.

8. See Smith 1901: pl. VII-XIII. For a full discussion of the inscriptions on these tablets, see Lohuizen-de Leeuw 1949: 65-72; U. P. Shah 1955: 77-94. See pl. 16.

Another depicts w... this is par... nor the c... that a cul... dition.⁹ M... have yet... ever, are... survive a... that Jaina... their effo... straightfo... some var... popular t... footprints... artifacts.

Whate... practices... images of... religious... practices... Jainas exp... worshiped... are forev... words, th... temple; a... and the o...

9. Smith 1901: 157) refers to... designation... erected sever... as ancient as... century) narr... now it is cal... prathate. Up... bara version... (fourteenth ce...

10. The se... clearly of a co... rakas, Jaina c... figure.

Another group of votive slabs taken from Mathura depicts what appear to be Jaina *stūpas* (reliquary mounds); this is particularly interesting since neither the śrāvakācāras nor the current practices of Jainism give any indication that a cult of relic-worship once flourished within the tradition.⁹ No *stūpas* housing the remains of Jaina teachers have yet been discovered;¹⁰ those shown on slabs, however, are very similar in design to the Buddhist ones which survive at Sanchi and elsewhere. In any case, we know that Jainas never carried the *stūpa* cult to a great extreme; their efforts seem to have been directed more towards the straightforward construction and veneration of images (or some variation thereof); for a time it seems to have been popular to commemorate the great teachers by placing footprints (*pādukā*) in stone and paying homage to these artifacts.

Whatever the particulars of the development of these practices, building, consecrating, and regularly venerating images of the Tīrthaṅkaras today constitute the primary religious activities of lay Jainas. The popularity of these practices should not, however, be construed to mean that Jainas expect worldly help of any sort from the Jinas thus worshiped; they know full well that these perfected beings are forever beyond the pale of human affairs. In other words, there is basically no "deity" present in a Jaina temple; a one-way relation obtains between the devotee and the object of his devotion. Hence we must understand

9. Smith 1901: pl. XII, XV. One of the Mathura inscriptions (circa A.D. 157) refers to a *stūpa* "built by gods" (*thūpe devanirmite*). Commenting on this designation, Smith has suggested that the structure referred to "was probably erected several centuries before the Christian era, and may have been at least as ancient as the oldest Buddhist *stūpa*." Smith 1901: 12. Somadeva (tenth century) narrates a story concerning a *stūpa* at Mathura and says that "even now it is called Devanirmita": āta evādyāpi tat tīrthaṃ Devanirmitākhyayā prathate. *Upāsakādhyayana*: 92-93. See Handiqui (1949: 432) for a Śvetāmbara version of the *stūpa* legend, as preserved in Jinaprabhasūri's *Tīrthakalpa* (fourteenth century).

10. The so-called tombs of priests at Mudbidri (Fergusson 1891: 275), while clearly of a commemorative nature, were most likely dedicated to local *bhaṭṭārakas*, Jaina clerics (see below, Ch. IX n. 56) rather than to any more exalted figure.

Jaina image-worship as being of a meditational nature; the Jina is seen merely as an ideal, a certain mode of the soul, a state attainable by all embodied beings.¹¹ Through personification of that ideal state in stone, the Jaina creates a meditative support, as it were, a reminder of his lofty goal and the possibility of its attainment.

Even Jainas, however, have not been totally immune to the lure of "divine powers." Under the influence of Hindu devotionism, there appeared certain god-images in Jaina temples during the medieval period. The divinities chosen were those associated in a benevolent manner with the careers of various Jinas—for example, the snake god Dharaṇendra and his consort Padmāvatī, who protected Pārśva from several extraordinary calamities which threatened him.¹² Such beings, referred to as *śāsana-devatā*, guardian spirits, are considered able to fulfill mundane wishes; they may often be appealed to on this level by "weaker" segments of the Jaina community.¹³ Even so, they have never been allowed to usurp the primary position occupied by the Jina himself, despite the fact that Jina-worship promises no reward whatsoever save the turning of one's mind towards the goal of mokṣa.¹⁴

11. Excepting, of course, the abhavyas (see P. S. Jaini 1977c). It should be mentioned here that the abhavya doctrine has no real bearing upon the religious practices of a Jaina, since it is not possible to know whether one falls into this category.

12. See Zimmer 1951: 198.

13. On the iconographic representation of the *śāsana-devatās*, see Jas Burgess 1903. Each Tīrthaṅkara is said to be attended by two such demi-gods, but of the forty-eight figures thus enumerated only a few have gained prominence in the popular imagination: Cakreśvarī (belonging to Rṣabha), Jvālāmālīnī (belonging to Candraprabha), Ambikā or Kūṣmāṇḍinī (belonging to Nemi), Padmāvatī (belonging to Pārśva), and finally Brahmadeva (belonging to Śīṭala). In addition to their place in the main temple itself, these famous *devatās* may sometimes have small adjoining shrines dedicated exclusively to them (see pl. 22). It is interesting to note that of the five figures listed here, all but the last are female; and also that neither of the attendants of Mahāvīra has managed to attain to such great popular esteem.

14. Somadeva, cognizant of the possibility that these *devatās* might tend to replace rather than merely complement the Jinas as objects of worship, cautions that anyone who considers them equal to a Jina is "heading downwards": *devaṃ jagatrayīnetraṃ vyantarādyās ca devatāḥ/ samaṃ pūjāvidhāneṣu paśyan dūraṃ vrajed adhaḥ// tāḥ śāsanādhikārārthaṃ kalpitāḥ paramāgame/*

The
of any
finds in
vine into
Hence
develop
brahma
out ritu
a group

Śvet
the per
speciali
regular
and de
means
situatio
oped a
this gro
lands,
ance o
of Jain
with w
(demig
religion
special
sacred
accord
laypers
mūlagu
perform
Jaina-b

ato yajñā
Āśadhara
yakṣas ev
minded a
tan nivṛt
api . . .

15. F
munity, s

The "unreachable" nature of a Jina renders the presence of any priest or other intermediary, such as one normally finds in traditions more oriented towards the hope of divine intervention, virtually unnecessary in a Jaina temple. Hence the Jaina community has for the most part never developed a special priestly caste analogous to that of the brahmans in Hinduism. Laymen are encouraged to carry out ritual services on their own, either individually or in a group.

Śvetāmbaras in particular have been loath to give over the performance of ceremonial functions to a caste of specialists; they may delegate to certain individuals the regular responsibility for cleaning the temple and washing and decorating the images, but such people are by no means priests. Among Digambaras in the north, a similar situation has prevailed. But those in the south have developed a class of so-called "Jaina-brahmans"; members of this group were permanently attached to temples or temple lands, and were usually entrusted with the actual performance of rituals held within their domain.¹⁵ The presence of Jaina-brahmans was of course intimately connected with worship of the "guardian spirits" and various yakṣas (demigods) who could be "reached" by means of complex religious procedures. But even where such ceremonial specialists did exist within Jainism, they never assumed the sacred status or exclusive sway over religious functions accorded brahmans in the Hindu community. An ordinary layperson was always free, provided he had taken the mūlaguṇas and sanctified himself with a ritual bath, to perform pūjā in any Jaina temple; this held true even if a Jaina-brahman was "in charge" there.

ato yajñāṃśadānena mānanīyāḥ sudṛṣṭibhiḥ// *Upāsakādhyayana*: k 697-698. Āśādhara proclaims that a person with "true insight" would never worship yakṣas even when beset with great calamities, thus suggesting that only weak-minded and ignorant people fall into such worship: "āpādākulito 'pi dārśanikaḥ tan nivṛttyartham śāsanadevatādīn kadācid api na bhajate, pākṣikas tu bhajaty api . . ." Quoted in *Upāsakādhyayana*: intro. 58.

15. For a discussion of the possible origin of this group in the Jaina community, see below, Ch. IX. See also Sangave 1959: 109ff.

The Jaina temple is perhaps most accurately viewed as a replica of the samavasaraṇa (holy assembly of the Tīrthaṅkara).¹⁶ The layman comes near as though he were actually approaching the spot where a living Jina sits immobile, bathed in omniscient glory, "preaching" by means of the miraculous sound emanating from his body. The Jina-image itself is used as a tangible aid to visualization of such a sacred being; thereby one can hope to awaken his soul's potential for samyak-darśana, as so often supposedly happened to those fortunate enough to have encountered a real Jina in ancient times.¹⁷

The Great Ceremony of the Five Auspicious Occasions

The visualization rationale discussed above is carried still further by the important temple ritual which, using an image as its "central character," re-enacts the five auspicious events (*pañca-kalyāṇa*) in the life of a Tīrthaṅkara (conception, birth, renunciation, attainment of omniscience, and nirvāṇa).¹⁸ This ceremony is not a daily or regularly scheduled one; it is ordinarily performed only when a new image or set of images is to be installed. Thus it not only provides a "vision of the Jina" (the kind of symbolic "encounter" discussed above) for the lay participants, but it also serves to sanctify the new icons. Jains believe that erecting a Jina-image is the noblest of worldly activities; one who commissions the building of such an image, as well as its

16. For literary and iconographic sources providing a description of samavasaraṇa, as well as for a discussion of the role of this image in the Jaina temple architecture, see U. P. Shah 1955: 85-95. See pl. 10.

17. As he approaches the image of the Jina, a worshiper recites the following verses: *adya me saphalaṃ janma, netre ca saphale mama/ tvām adrākṣaṃ yato deva, hetum akṣayasampadaḥ// adya karmāṣṭakajvālaṃ vidhūtaṃ sakāṣāyakam/ durgater vinivṛtto 'haṃ jinendra tava darśanāt// JP: 11 (Adyāṣṭaka-stotra).*

18. *yo garbhāvatarotsavo bhagavatām janmābhiṣekotsavo/ yo jātaḥ pariniṣkramenaṃ vibhavo yaḥ kevalajñānabhāk// yaḥ kaivalyapurapraveśamahimā sambhāvitaḥ svargibhiḥ/ kalyāṇāni ca tāni pañca satataṃ kurvantu te maṅgalam// Ibid.: 5 (Maṅglāṣṭaka).*

proper
mony
mahots
blessed

The
stylized
quested
(Indra)
role of
to earth
bers of
The "n
images
artistic
display
(janma-
five-tie
Mount
en close
then ga
waters
scribed
with th
certain
person
a kṣulla
seventh
in their

A pañ
Its third
full-grow
clothing
Laukānt
commun
is at har

proper consecration by performance of the "great ceremony of the five auspicious occasions" (*pañca-kalyāṇa-mahotsava*), is considered very likely to be born in a world blessed with a living Tīrthaṅkara.

The ceremony itself strikes the outsider as a sort of stylized dramatic production. The person who has requested (and financed) this event takes the part of Śakra (Indra), king of gods; he is accompanied by his wife in the role of Indrāṇī, Śakra's consort, who is thought to come to earth to greet the birth of each Jina-to-be. Certain members of his family play the parents of the illustrious baby. The "mother" witnesses the sixteen auspicious dream-images which portend so extraordinary a conception; artistic representations of these images (see Chapter I) are displayed within the temple. During the "birth" phase (*janma-kalyāṇa*), "Śakra" places the Jina-image atop a five-tiered pedestal, silver in color, which symbolizes Mount Meru, the center of the Jaina universe. Local women close to the family that commissioned the ceremony then gather water from four different wells, signifying the waters drawn by the gods from the various oceans described in Jaina cosmology; the "baby Jina" is sprinkled with this holy liquid. The sequence of actions in this and certain other stages of the ritual is fairly complex; thus a person of advanced religious standing (a Jaina-brahman, a kṣullaka, or a layman who has reached at least the seventh pratimā) "officiates," instructing the participants in their roles as the ceremony proceeds.

A *pañca-kalyāṇa-mahotsava* continues for several days. Its third phase begins when the Jina-image, now seen as a full-grown "prince," is adorned with jewelry and silken clothing. Various "kings" come to pay him tribute, and the *Laukāntika-devas*¹⁹ (played by certain young people of the community) remind him that the time for his renunciation is at hand. The image is then decorated still further and

19. See Ch. I n. 21.

carried in grand procession to a park outside the town. If the image, or images, being sanctified is too large to be moved easily, a smaller one represents it in this procession. In the park the ornaments are removed and further consecration procedures (sprinkling with more holy water and sandalwood paste, for example) are carried out. Soon thereafter, the renunciant is considered to attain omniscience; this event is celebrated with great pomp, for it marks the point at which a Jina-image becomes worthy of worship. The fifth kalyāṇa, attainment of nirvāṇa, is of course duly celebrated, but not until after the image has been formally installed. As noted above, the Jina within a temple is considered to be still alive, seated in the sama-vasaraṇa; hence, the marking of his departure from the worldly realm has little relevance to the religious practice of the layperson.

The ritual actions of the pañca-kalyāṇa-mahotsava are accompanied by great festivity and merrymaking, especially at the time of the birth ceremony. Music, temple dancing, and feasts are provided by the person installing the image; thus only a rich man can hope to undertake this meritorious activity. If he carries out the entire event in a grand fashion, such a man will receive the title of *saṃgha-pati* (leader of the community) and will command great respect from his fellows.

When the new image is finally placed upon its pedestal, perhaps flanked by various guardian deities, it obtains the very exalted status of a real Tīrthaṅkara. In a Digambara temple it will of course be devoid of all clothing and decoration. Śvetāmbaras, on the other hand, will have carved it in such a way as to suggest certain garments and will provide ornamentation by, for example, using crystal for the eyes. In either case, the image now becomes the object of regular worship by members of the community.

The importance of the occasional pañca-kalyāṇa-mahotsava, and of the temple images consecrated thereby,

should n
tice occu
have the
so it is
devout
to awak
salutatio
der his n
to what
eventua
and don
his hou
by perfe
larly ca
the relig
tant, is

The De
Specific
it is pra
even fr
This is
majorit
ritual.
role pla
increas
their pr

But
forman
temple,
clothing
phor, u
main sh

20. br
dharmah
ekāyano

should not blind us to the fact that much of Jaina lay practice occurs beyond the confines of the temple. Many homes have their own shrines, complete with small Jina-images; so it is within the household that the daily rituals of the devout layperson are often carried out. A Jaina is advised to awaken before dawn and immediately recite the five salutations of the namaskāra-mantra. He should then ponder his religious duties, reminding himself to adhere closely to whatever vratas he has taken and to strive towards the eventual taking of those which he has not. Having bathed and donned newly washed clothing, he is likely to sit in his household shrine and begin the day in a holy manner by performing devapūjā.²⁰ Other rituals may also be regularly carried out at home; hence the role of the temple in the religious life of a Jaina community, while very important, is by no means exclusive.

The Devapūjā Ritual

Specific customs pertaining to devapūjā, especially when it is practiced within a temple, vary among Jaina sects and even from one locality to another within the same sect. This is especially true for the Digambaras, whose southern majority has developed a relatively elaborate form of the ritual. Such elaboration is to be expected in view of the role played by Jaina-brahmans within this group, since increased complexity of any ceremony can only render their presence more essential.

But certain fundamental features characterize the performance of devapūjā for all sects. As a Jaina enters the temple, he typically wears only three simple pieces of clothing and carries a plate filled with flowers, fruit, camphor, uncooked rice, and incense. Having approached the main shrine, he will bow down, utter the namaskāra litany,

20. brāhme muhūrta utthāya, vṛtta-pañca-namaskṛtiḥ/ ko 'haṃ, ko mama dharmah, kiṃ vrataṃ ceti parāmrśet// . . . ity āsthāyotthitas talpāc chucir ekāyano 'rhatāḥ/ nirmāyāśṭatayīm iṣṭiṃ, kṛtikarma samācāret// SD: vi, 1-3.

and circumambulate the image three times (keeping the Tīrthaṅkara always to his right). He then sits on a mat before the image and, using rice grains, forms a svastika on a plate or wooden plank. (This ancient symbol, as we have seen, signifies the four possible saṃsāric destinies.) Above it he places three dots, standing for the "three jewels" (*ratnatraya*): true insight (*samyak-darśana*), right knowledge (*samyak-jñāna*), and proper conduct (*samyak-cāritra*). These three provide the means of escape from the cycle of bondage represented by the svastika. Finally, at the very top, he makes a small crescent with a dot mounted upon it; thus is suggested the uppermost portion of the universe, with the liberated soul resting just within its edge. The completed figure appears below. (See also, pl. 17.)



By forming these symbols prior to actual worship of the Tīrthaṅkara, one shows that his pūjā has as its ultimate purpose the attainment of liberation. Such preliminaries completed, he performs the *snāpana* or *abhiṣeka* ceremony, in which holy water is sprinkled over a small image placed near the foot of the main one for this purpose. The water thus used for "bathing" the Jina must first have been strained and made pure, either by boiling or by the use of a "sterilizing" substance such as cloves. (It is thought that nonsterile water still harbors water bodies; its use would therefore entail violence, making it unfit for a sacred act.) While engaging in *abhiṣeka*, the devotee visualizes himself as Śakra (a sandalwood paste mark on his forehead signifies this role); thus his action becomes, as in the pañca-kalyāṇa ceremony, a re-enactment of the baby Jina's ritual bath atop Mount Meru.²¹ After the holy water, he pours

21. śrīmanmandarasundare śucijalair dhaute sadarbhākṣate/ pīṭhe mukti-varam nidhāya racitaṃ tvatpādapadmasrajā// indro'haṃ nijabhūṣaṇārthakam idaṃ yajñopavītaṃ dadhe/ mudrā-kaṅkaṇa-śekharaṇy api tathā jainābhiṣe-kotsave// JP: 13 (*Laghu-abhiṣeka-pāṭha*).

sanda
stance
suffus
The a
er of
Th
gins t
Invok
sente
(1) w
dalw
unco
(4) flo
sion;
(6) a
of on
great
the f
eight
gestu
the p
Th
garla
twen
ment
prior
A
porti
this
trika
retur
Se
repe
22
23
dhas
carur
cārgy

sandalwood paste and milk over the image; the latter substance reminds him of the pure, milky-white color which suffuses the Jina's body as he sits in the samavasaraṇa.²² The abhiṣeka is concluded with purified water and a shower of blossoms.

Thereafter, the worshiper wipes the image dry and begins the second phase of devapūjā, a ritual called *arcana*. Invoking the name of the particular Tīrthaṅkara represented, he pays homage by offering up eight substances: (1) water (*jala*), for the attainment of cleanliness; (2) sandalwood paste (*candana*), for the attainment of purity; (3) uncooked rice (*akṣatā*), for the attainment of immortality; (4) flowers (*puṣpa*), for the attainment of freedom from passion; (5) sweets (*caru*), for the attainment of contentment; (6) a lamp or camphor light (*dīpa*), for the attainment of omniscience; (7) incense (*dhūpa*), for the attainment of great fame; and (8) fruits (*phala*), for the attainment of the fruit of liberation, mokṣa. Next, small amounts of all eight substances are offered together on a single plate; this gesture, called *arghya*, completes the second portion of the pūjā.²³

The third involves a recitation known as *jayamālā*, the garland of victory. Here, one repeats the names of all twenty-four Tīrthaṅkaras, sits in silence for a few moments, and then chants the namaskāra litany as he did prior to beginning the entire ceremony.

At last the worshiper moves to the fourth and final portion of devapūjā, a waving of lamps before the image; this process is designated by the term *ārati* (Sanskrit *ārātrika*). Having thus completed his worship, the lay devotee returns home and takes his first food of the day.

Services similar to those just described are sometimes repeated just before the evening meal, but on a much

22. See Ch. I n. 79.

23. vārdhārā rajasah śamāya padayoh samyak prayuktā 'rhataḥ/ sadgandhas tanusaurabhāya vibhavācchedāya santy akṣatāḥ// yaṣṭuḥ srgdivijasraje carur umāsvāmyāya dīpas tvīṣe/ dhūpo viśvadr̥gutsavāya phalam iṣṭārthāya cārgyāya saḥ// SD: ii, 30.

smaller scale; they are normally restricted to an āraṭi ceremony performed to the tune of temple music. This combination of regular morning and occasional evening worship comprises the usual pattern of devapūjā for the Jaina layperson.

It should be noted that for women the overall procedure is greatly simplified. They seldom touch the Jina-image, engaging in abhiṣeka only on such special occasions like the pañca-kalyāṇakas. In general, female devotees express their veneration mainly through the offering of the eight substances.

In performing devapūjā, both Śvetāmbaras and Digambaras add certain characteristic practices to the basic ones discussed above. For Śvetāmbaras, the most important of these involves showing respect by covering the mouth with a piece of cloth when approaching the image. They may also ask a temple attendant to adorn the Jina with various ornaments (gold or jeweled necklaces or a crown, for example) normally kept in storage; this will be done for a small fee which is then applied to upkeep of the temple. The act of thus decorating a Tīrthaṅkara is called *aṅgapūjā*, veneration of the limbs (of the Lord). The omniscient being is of course not considered to have any attachment to such ornaments; Śvetāmbaras may thus have begun *aṅgapūjā* in imitation of rituals popular among the Gujarati Kṛṣṇa cults, with which they have had extensive contact since the seventh century. In any case, they consider this practice to be a form of prabhāvanā (illumination).

Digambaras have no such practice; it would violate the ascetic nudity of their images. They do, however, complement their worship of the Tīrthaṅkara by ornamenting the various guardian deities which surround him; these figures, being "laity," are considered proper recipients of such gifts. We have already seen, moreover, the important role which guardian spirits and demi-gods often play in Digambara religious life. Lavish expenditure on their beautification therefore has a dual function, symbolically honoring the

Jina
in the

Jain
Wor
scale
On t
June
amp
men
curr
cour
that
his r
prec
don
coul
had
prev
by
suga
betw
men
ther
cele
gain
of th
C
ann
deat
Oct
ally
(Jun
is sa

Jina whose teachings they "protect," and placing the donor in the good graces of the deities.

Jaina Holy Days

Worship of the omniscient beings sometimes assumes a scale much larger than that of the services so far described. On the third day of the waxing moon of Vaiśākha (May/June) (called Akṣaya-tṛtīyā, the immortal third), for example, Jains everywhere engage in extensive pūjā, commemorating the first giving of alms to a mendicant in the current avasarpinī. The mendicant in question was of course Rṣabha, founder of asceticism for our age. It is said that he went totally without food for six months following his renunciation. Members of the community, lacking any precedent, were not aware either of their proper role as donors or of the ritually acceptable means by which alms could be given. At last a prince by the name of Śreyāṃsa had a dream in which he witnessed himself, during a previous lifetime, offering food to a Jaina monk. Inspired by this example, he later presented a small quantity of sugar cane juice to Rṣabha; thus was initiated the relation between layman and mendicant which is still so fundamental to Jaina life. Observance of the Akṣaya-tṛtīyā,²⁴ then, does not simply memorialize a single event; it also celebrates the great spiritual benefits which the laity can gain through free and proper donation of alms to members of the ascetic order.

Other annual holy days marked widely by pūjā are the anniversaries of Mahāvīra's birth (Mahāvīra-jayantī) and death (Vīra-nirvāṇa), observed during April/May and October/November, respectively. Digambaras additionally set apart the fifth day of the waxing moon of Jyeṣṭhā (June), thus commemorating the day in A.D. 150 when, it is said, Bhūtabali and Puṣpadanta first put the scriptures of

24. rādhaśuklatṛtīyāyām dānam āsīt tad akṣayam/ parvākṣayatṛtīyeti tato 'dyāpi pravartate// TSPC: I, iii, 301. Compare AP: ii, 89-120.

their sect into written form. On that date (called Śrutapañcamī, the scripture-fifth), image worship is supplemented by the donation of ancient manuscripts and other forms of scriptural material to the temples. These texts become objects of veneration, symbolizing as they do the sacred teachings of the Jinas.

Mastakābhiṣeka: The Head-Anointing Ceremony

Perhaps the most famous example of pūjā performed on a grand scale in Jainism is the *mastakābhiṣeka* (head-anointing) ceremony held every twelfth year in Shravanabelgola. This honors the spiritual hero Bāhubali, who is represented by a colossal fifty-seven-foot image carved from the living rock nearly a thousand years ago. Digambaras claim that Bāhubali, the son of Rṣabha, was the first individual to attain siddhahood in the present time cycle. Śvetāmbaras deny this, suggesting that Bāhubali's paternal grandmother, Marudevī, actually attained the exalted state before he did; hence the veneration of his image is less important to them than to their Digambara counterparts.²⁵ Even so, thousands of Jains of both traditions come to pay homage during the several weeks that the ceremony goes on; Bāhubali thus receives the kind of adoration otherwise reserved exclusively for Tīrthaṅkaras.²⁶

25. While Rṣabha was of course the first to have reached kevalajñāna, he is thought to have outlived both his son and his mother: thus neither sect regards him as the first in our age to go to the siddha-loka. As for Marudevī, she is said by Śvetāmbaras to have attained mokṣa upon catching sight of the holy assembly of Rṣabha from her chair on the back of the royal elephant: sā 'paśyat tīrthakṛllakṣmīm sūnor atīśayānvitām/ tasyās tad darśanānandāt tanmayatvam ajāyata// sārūhya kṣapakaśreṇim apūrvakaraṇakramāt/ kṣīṇāṣṭakarmā yugapat kevalajñānam āsadāt// kariskandhādhirūḍhaiva svāminī Marudevī atha/ antakṛtkevalitvēna prapede padam avyayam// etasyām avasarpīṇyām siddho 'sau prathamas tataḥ/ TSPC: I, iii, 529-532. This version is unacceptable to Digambaras not only because it depicts a woman becoming an arhat, but also because it suggests that such a state is possible for one who had not left the household life.

26. Although only an arhat, Bāhubali can in many ways be said to occupy a prime position in the Digambara mind. The Jaina purāṇas devote a great deal of attention to his exploits, particularly those concerning the dispensation of Rṣabha's kingdom after the latter had taken to mendicancy. It seems that Bharata, unwilling to share the wealth with his younger brothers, set out to

The image depicts Bāhubali as standing erect, free of clothing and immersed in deepest meditation. For the period of the mastakābhiṣeka a temporary scaffolding is built behind the huge statue, terminating in a platform just atop the head; thus the faithful can anoint Bāhubali in the proper manner, pouring various sacred substances (such as purified water and sandalwood paste) over him from above. (See pl. 20.) The festivities associated with this ceremony can continue for several weeks; participation in them is felt to engender great merit and perhaps to make possible the experience of samyak-darśana itself.

Pilgrimage to Holy Places

It should be noted that numerous devotees worship at the site of Bāhubali's image, and at other famous holy places, even when no ceremony is being held there. Jains place great value upon pilgrimage to such shrines; indeed, the layman considers it an important goal of his life to make at least one visit, with his family if possible, to one or more of the several areas that his faith holds sacred. Such exalted sites fall into three categories: *nirvāṇa-bhūmi* (where certain Tīrthaṅkaras left the embodied state forever), *tīrtha-kṣetra* (where countless arhats—liberated non-Tīrthaṅkaras—attained a similar glorious end), and *atīśaya-kṣetra*

consolidate all the family lands under his personal control. But Bāhubali held fast to his own legitimate claim, until war between the two factions became imminent. Rather than sacrifice the lives of soldiers, the two brothers undertook personal contests of strength and skill, with Bāhubali emerging the clear victor. Suddenly realizing that lust for wealth and power had led him to badly humiliate his elder brother, Bāhubali became filled with remorse and renounced all his possessions, entering immediately into the houseless life. Many months later, perceiving Bharata approaching with the aim of effecting a reconciliation, the young mendicant was able to root out the last vestiges of pride and anger from his heart, thus attaining to kevalajñāna on the spot.

Accounts of the battle between the brothers, and of the incredible austerities which Bāhubali performed as an ascetic, occur again and again in Jaina literature (AP: xxxvi; TSPC: I, iv–v; *Bharateśavaibhavasamgraha*: xlii–xlix). Iconographic representation of Bāhubali in standing meditation, moreover, is not limited to the great image at Shravanabelgola; similar statues, albeit of somewhat smaller dimensions, are common in Digambara communities; they invariably depict the mediator as so unshakable in his practice that creepers have grown about his arms and legs. (See Frontispiece.)

(where miraculous events associated with the lives of great monks are said to have occurred).²⁷ Most famous of the nirvāṇa-bhūmis is Sammedaśikhara, the Parasnath Hills region of Bihar, where Pārśva and nineteen other Jinas passed away. Four other such bhūmis are recognized; Mt. Kailāsa in the Himalayas, Campāpuri in Bihar, Gīrnār in Saurashtra, and Pāvāpuri near modern Patna. These sites saw the attainment of nirvāṇa by Rṣabha, Vāsupūjya (the twelfth Tīrthaṅkara), Nemi (the twenty-second), and Mahāvīra, respectively. Important tīrtha-kṣetras are Śatruṅjaya²⁸ in Gujarat and Mount Abu in Rajasthan, while the best-known atīśaya-kṣetra is at Shravanabelgola in Karnataka State. The fame of the latter derives from its having been, according to legend, the place where the Digambara pontiff Bhadrabāhu reached a holy death in sallekhanā; perhaps even more significant, from the pilgrim's point of view, is the fact that the great image of Bāhubali is located there.

For Jaiṇas living at great distances from such sacred areas, the cost of traveling to one of them may well be prohibitive. Thus has developed the institution of the *yātrā*, a large-scale pilgrimage organized and paid for by some wealthy member of a community. In ancient times this took the form of a caravan; today, several specially commissioned trains may carry the lay devotees to their destination. (Monks and nuns, of course, cannot employ such modern conveyances; they ordinarily undertake extended walks to the holy sites, stopping to perform pūjā at various minor shrines along the way.) The individual who finances a *yātrā* is accorded great reverence by other Jaina laypeople; like one who has initiated a pañca-kalyāṇa celebration, he earns the extensive merit attached to large-scale

27. Two texts, the *Vividhatīrthakalpa* of Jinaprabhasūri and the anonymous *Nirvāṇabhakti*, enumerate the holy places of the Śvetāmbara and Digambara sects, respectively. For details on these sites, see Premi 1956: 422-477. For a state-by-state regional history of tīrtha-kṣetras of the Digambara sect, see B. Jain 1974.

28. On the temples of Śatruṅjaya, see Burgess 1869.

acts o
sidered
may b
sacred
for ma
a loca

This
upon
public
goods
of Jain
have s
object
by gre
Jina-id
must c
ful. Th
in the
tolerat
hāvan
well-re
which
and th
as a r
world
presen
devoti
it is th

Vener
The se
guru-u
An un
ascetic

29. T
up by de
initiated v

acts of illumination (*prabhāvanā*) and is therefore considered a *saṃgha-pati* by all who know him. His status may be enhanced still further if he erects an image upon the sacred spot, thereby making a "vision of the Jina" possible for many more people than could benefit from an icon in a local temple.²⁹

This account of *devapūjā* in Jainism has thus far focused upon the external aspects of the practice, emphasizing public activities and the expenditure of large amounts of goods and money. To take this as a comprehensive picture of Jaina worship would be misleading. The Jaina teachers have stressed time and again that such *pūjā* with external objects (*dravya-pūjā*) is not efficacious unless accompanied by great peace of mind and devotion to the virtues of the Jina-ideal; these internal states, referred to as *bhāva-pūjā*, must obtain if other devotional practices are to be meaningful. The various forms of ostentation sometimes displayed in the *pañca-kalyāṇa* and other ceremonies, moreover, are tolerated only on the grounds that they contribute to *prabhāvanā*; their lack of significance to the ritual per se is well-recognized. We have already seen the social benefits which follow from making offerings, erecting Jina-images, and the like; but such practices are fundamentally intended as a means whereby the layperson can withdraw from worldly occupations and dwell for a time in the peaceful presence of the holies. *Bhāva-pūjā*, therefore, is the real devotional activity of the Jaina laity, while for the ascetic it is the *only* acceptable form of worship.

Veneration of the Teachers

The second important ritual duty of a Jaina layperson is *guru-upāsti*, visiting and venerating the mendicant teachers. An unusually close relation has always obtained between ascetic and householder in the Jaina tradition; monks and

29. This rationale explains the seemingly "excessive" number of images set up by devotees in Jaina holy places, a phenomenon often remarked by uninitiated visitors.

nuns have acted as the spiritual teachers of the lay followers and have in turn been revered, often to the point of adoration, as the only "true propagators" of the Jina's message. This honored status has carried with it the expectation of a very high standard of conduct; every layman is well-informed on the sorts of behavior appropriate to a mendicant, and constant vigilance by the lay community has usually enforced strict adherence to this code. Unlike their counterparts in certain other religious groups, moreover, Jaina clerics have scrupulously avoided involvement in the social activities of the laity; the image of the "nagging preacher," questioning his parishioners about the conduct of their daily lives, is totally foreign to Jainism. The monks' involvement has been of a nonmanipulative sort, concerning itself only with the spiritual well-being of the people. Hence the relation between these two groups has never been tinged with fear or guilt; to the contrary, a very real feeling of mutual respect and affection has prevailed.

It should be noted that members of the Digambara laity have had far less exposure to bona fide "ascetic" teachers than have those of the Śvetāmbara. The extreme severity of restraints incumbent upon a Digambara monk, especially as regards clothing, has tended to keep the number of individuals who undertake this path to a select minimum. Hence the teaching function has fallen mainly upon the shoulders of eleventh-pratimā laymen—kṣullakas, ailakas, and the female *āryikās*; in terms of guru-upāsti such preceptors typically receive the same treatment accorded an actual (naked) monk.

The ritual of teacher veneration shows some sectarian variation. For Digambaras it involves bowing, and beseeching the teacher to utter the formula blessing "may your righteousness increase."³⁰ The layman may also take this opportunity to confess any vrata-infractions of which he is guilty, or perhaps to assume still further restraints. Śvetāmbaras have retained a very ancient and rather more

30. "saddharma-vṛddhir astu" or "dharma-lābha."

complex
this cen
proache
greet
with equ
Prakrit,
memory
ture of
and lay

I desi
conce
whole
are m
You a
I ask
(The g
[confe
of resp
body,
behav
ever c
monk
my pa

The An
The van
fession

31. In
bookstand
is repeated
See JY: 202
32. "ice
deṇa) aṇu
kāya-samp
divaso vai
javanijjam
kamaṇ (th
nāṇaṇ dev
dāe vāya-d
savva-micc
samaṇo pa
199-200. Se

complex procedure. Called vandana (reverent salutation), this ceremony begins when a lay man or woman approaches a mendicant (preferably of the same sex) and greets him or her as *kṣamāśramaṇa*, ascetic who suffers with equanimity. There follows a ritual exchange in ancient Prakrit, with both individuals reciting their parts from memory.³¹ The content of this exchange gives a clear picture of the sort of relation obtaining between Jaina monk and layperson:

I desire to worship you, *kṣamāśramaṇa*, with very intense concentration. (The guru: so be it.) You will have spent the whole day, fortunately, little disturbed. (The guru: yes.) You are making spiritual progress. (The guru: yes, and so are you.) You are unperturbed by your sense organs? (The guru: yes.) I ask pardon, *kṣamāśramaṇa*, for my daily transgressions. (The guru: I too ask pardon.) I must engage in pratikramaṇa [confession] to you, *kṣamāśramaṇa*, for any day-by-day lack of respect . . . anything done amiss through mind, speech, or body, through anger, pride, deceit, or greed, through false behavior and neglect of the sacred doctrine at any time; whatever offence may have been committed by me, forbearing monk, I confess and reprehend and repent of it and cast aside my past self.³²

The Annual Rite of Confession

The vandanaka also includes certain forms of further confession (pratikramaṇa) and renunciation (pratyākhyāna),

31. In the absence of a teacher the layman may use a sacred book or small bookstand as a substitute, referred to as *sthāpanācārya*. The vandanaka formula is repeated in full before this object, just as it would be before the teacher. See JY: 202.

32. "icchāmi khamāśamaṇo vandium jāvaṇijjāe nisīhiyāe (*the guru*: chandēṇa) aṇujāṇaha me miy'-oggahaṇ (*the guru*: aṇujāṇāmi) nisīhi aho kāyaṇ kāya-saṃphāsaṇ khamañijjo bhe kilāmo appa-kilantāṇaṇ bahu-subheṇa bhe divaso vaikkanto (*the guru*: taha tti) jattā bhe (*the guru*: tubbhaṇ pi vaṭṭai) javaṇijjaṇ ca bhe (*the guru*: evaṇ) khāmemi khamāsamaṇo devasiyaṇ vaikkamaṇ (*the guru*: ahaṇ avi khāmemi) āvassiyāe paḍikkamāmi khamāsamaṇaṇaṇ devasiyāe āsāyaṇaē tettis' annayarāe jaṇ kiṃci micchāe maṇa-dukkadāe vāya-dukkadāe kāya-dukkadāe kohāe māṇaē māyāe lobhāe savva-kāliyaē savva-micchovayārāe savva-dhammāikkamaṇaē jo me aiyāro kao tassa khamāsamaṇo paḍikkamāmi nindāmi garihāmi appāṇaṇ vosirāmi." Quoted in JY: 199-200. See Leumann 1934: 7-10.

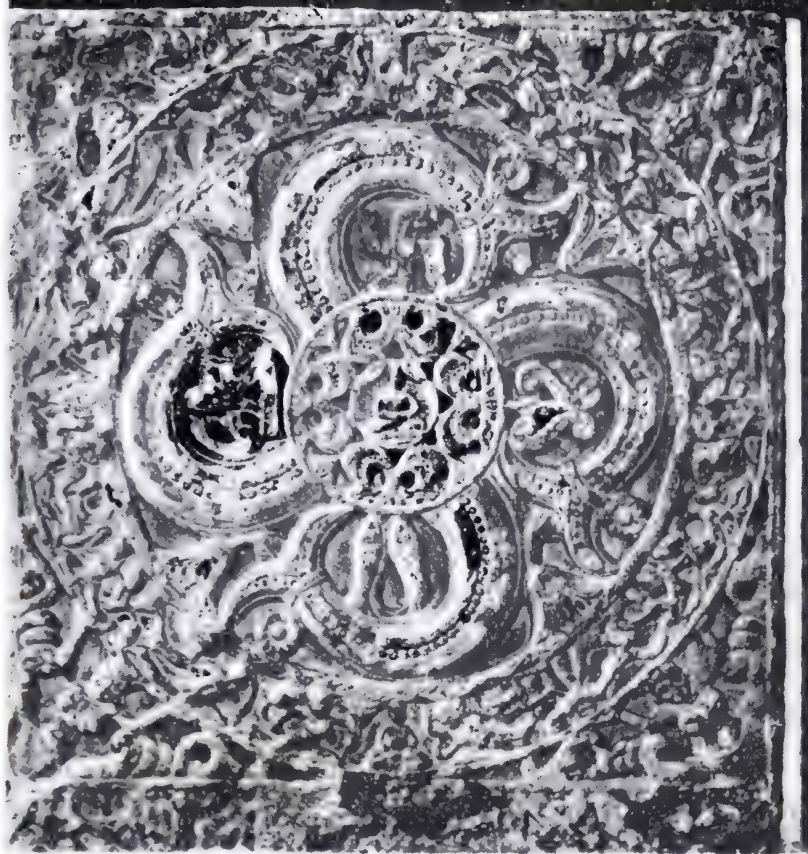
as we have seen in the case of the Digambaras. The confessional aspect of guru-upāsti is very important to the conscientious layman who has taken one or more of the pratimās; he is likely to approach the teacher nearly every day in order to ritually clear his conscience and strengthen his spiritual resolve. In addition to the twenty or more formulas used for this regular practice, there are others to be employed on a fortnightly (*pākṣika*) basis and some intended especially for the great annual rite known as *saṃvatsarī*.

The latter ceremony is observed on a large scale by Jainas of all sects. It takes place during the rainy season, since monks are at that time required to maintain a fixed abode for several months; thus an extended ritual involving their continuous presence is possible during that time.



The Twenty-four Tirthankaras

15. The twenty-four symbols associated, respectively, with each of the twenty-four Tirthankaras (see p. 165n).



16. Āyāga-paṭa with fish-tailed svastika motif, Mathura. Lucknow Museum. Courtesy of American Institute of Indian Studies, Varanasi (see p. 192).

17. Use of the svastika diagram in pūjā (see p. 200). Courtesy of Gary Tartakov.





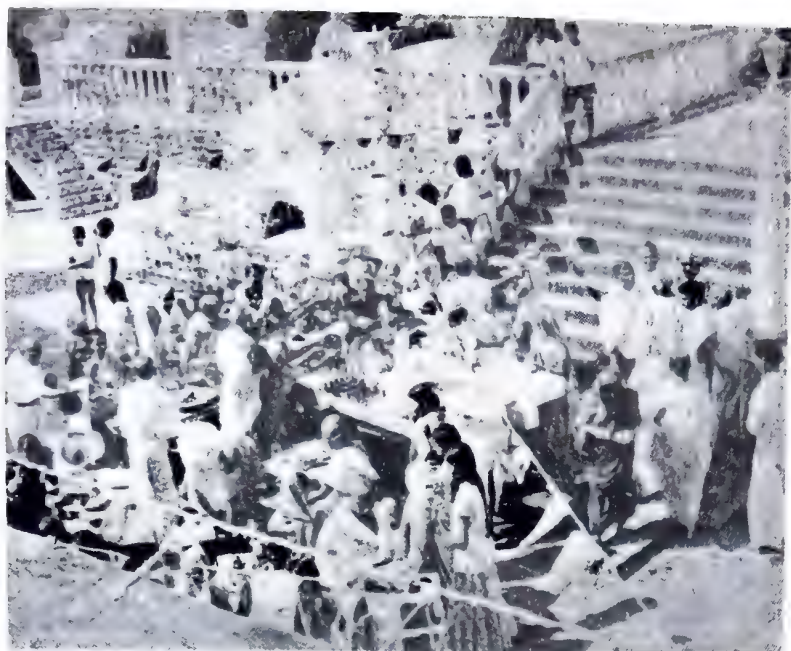
18. Inner shrine of the Lūṇa-vasahī [Śvetāmbara] temple, Abu (13th century). Courtesy of Jagan Mehta.



19. Tribhuvana-tilaka-cūḍāmaṇi ("The Crest-jewel of the Three Worlds"), a 15th-century [Digambara] temple, Mudbidre, South Kanara. Courtesy of Robert J. Del Bonta.



20. Mastakābhiṣeka (head-anointing ceremony) of Bāhubali (see p. 205). Courtesy of C. B. M. Chandriah.



21. Digambara ceremony of setting up a new image of the Jina (see p. 196).



22. Five-pillared "yakṣa-residence" (Brahmadeva at top, Kṣetrapāla at bottom) adjoining a Digambara Jaina temple (see p. 194n13) at Guruvayanakere, South Kanara. Courtesy of Martha Ashton.



23. Mānastambha, the characteristic Jain pillar (see p. 35n81), Mulki, South Kanara. Courtesy of Martha Ashton.

For an eight- to ten-day period, known as *paryūṣaṇa-parva*, the laypeople take various temporary restraints from food, fasting altogether, eating only one meal a day, and so on; towards the end of this period they go through confession. The admissions of sins, and accompanying pleas for forgiveness (*kṣamā*), are directed not only to a teacher but to all of one's family and friends, irrespective of age or sex. Letters are written to those relatives and acquaintances not in attendance, repeating the same acknowledgements of wrongdoing and solicitations of pardon. Finally, the participant in a *saṃvatsarī* extends his own forgiveness to all beings and asks that they grant the same favor to him; this is done by repetition of a famous verse which points up the real spirit of *pratikramaṇa*—the establishment of universal friendship and goodwill:

khāmemi savvajīve savve jīvā khamantu me/ metti me savva-
bhūesu veraṃ majjha na keṇavi//³³

I ask pardon of all living creatures; may all of them pardon me. May I have a friendly relationship with all beings and unfriendly with none.

The *pratyākhyāna* aspect of visiting one's teacher never developed into any rituals so elaborate as the *saṃvatsarī*; even so, it is considered a highly important practice. In accordance with the great Jaina emphasis on fasting, the layman typically performs *pratyākhyāna* by renouncing certain kinds of food. This usually involves only temporary abstention, but in some cases it can be undertaken for life. It is accomplished by utterance of a formula similar to the following:

When the sun is risen I renounce for the duration of a day (or certain portion thereof, as the case may be) the fourfold aliments (cooked food, water, snacks, and pastes) and except for cases of unawareness or of force majeure . . . or of in-

33. Quoted in JY: 207 (from *Pratikramaṇa-sūtra*).

str
tra

Fasti
Ritua
parv
poṣa
on t
even
prac
singl
man
exan
thirt
in st
nigh
tures
and
wask
perf
men
ing
retur
at hi
then
V
direc
atta
bene
one'
the
with

34
pāṇa
vaya
35
the di

structions from a monk or except in order to attain full tranquillity of mind, I abandon them.³⁴

Fasting and Presentation of Alms

Ritual fasting is also associated with lay observance of the parvan days, referred to earlier in connection with the poṣadhavrata. The virtue of going without food or drink on these days has long been stressed by Jaina teachers; even the early Buddhist texts refer to it as a characteristic practice of the Nigaṇṭhas. Fasting actually begins after a single meal on the day prior to the parvan period. The layman takes breakfast on the morning of the seventh, for example, then retires to a temple or fasting hall for some thirty-five to fifty hours. During this interval he remains in strict seclusion from his family. Sleeping very little at night, he may chant the namaskāra litany or read the scriptures; for the most part, however, he will observe silence and meditate upon the virtues of the Jina. Bathing, or even washing of the mouth, is not allowed unless one plans to perform dravya-pūjā. (Bhāva-pūjā is more strongly recommended while fasting, but the "external" ceremony, requiring prior purification by bathing, is not proscribed.) He returns home on the morning of the ninth, does devapūjā at his home shrine, gives alms to begging mendicants, and then breaks his fast.³⁵

Voluntary abstinence from food and water contributes directly to a person's spiritual progress by reducing his attachment to the body. Less direct but equally important benefits result from the widespread practice of *sharing* one's food with others. This activity, closely connected to the dāna śikṣāvrata, is called *atithi-samvibhāga*, sharing with guests. The term *atithi* literally means "no date"; such

34. "porisīyaṃ paccakkhāmi uggae sūre cauvvihaṃ pi āhāraṃ asanaṃ pāṇaṃ khāimaṃ sāimaṃ annatth' aṇābhogeṇaṃ sahasāgāreṇaṃ . . . sāhuvayaṇeṇaṃ savva-samāhi-vattiy'-āgāreṇaṃ vosirāmi." Quoted in *ibid.*: 209.

35. For details and variations in the observance of this kind of fasting in the different Jaina sects, see *ibid.*: 142-149.

a "guest," therefore, is one who arrives without invitation, who is simply passing by the door in search of alms.³⁶ In Indian society only those who are brahmacārins (celibate students) or who have renounced the world altogether are allowed to beg food. A normal householder must never do so; his position is to give, not take. In those cases where extreme poverty drives ordinary people into a beggar's role despite this cultural restriction, it is understood that alms will be offered them only out of compassion on the part of the donor; no great spiritual merit accrues to such charity, since householders are not considered "worthy recipients." Presenting alms to an ascetic, on the other hand, is thought to bring one closer to salvation. Thus can be understood the fact that, while most beggars thank the person who gives them food, in the case of feeding holy men it is the *donor* who expresses his gratitude. For a Jaina, the inherent benefits of charity to a monk are increased by the holy man's conferring a blessing upon him each time a gift is received. (This blessing involves the same "may your righteousness increase" formula noted earlier with regard to guru-upāsti.)

Hence the act of sharing food with a worthy "guest" has assumed the form of an important ritual among Jaina laity. Only those who observe at least the mūlaguṇas are "qualified" to engage in this ritual. The Jaina mendicant must therefore avoid begging at any household, whether Jaina or Hindu, not confirmed in the basic practices of the Jina's path (not observing strict vegetarianism). Although atithi can refer to any mendicant, it is ordinarily understood by the Jaina laity to indicate only those of their own faith, who are held to be the holiest of ascetics and therefore most worthy to receive gifts. Whereas non-Jaina mendicants may accept invitations, ask for specific foods, or eat that which has been prepared especially for them, the Jaina monk or nun must eschew all such "lax" practices, arriving

36. Compare: jñānādisiddhyarthatanuṣṭhityarthānnāya yaḥ svayam/ yatne nātati gehaṃ vā, na tithir yasya so 'tithiḥ// SD: v, 42.

only
claim
of t
Jain
alm
kno
doo
part
T
Śve
cha
of t
bro
suit
toge
afte
inva
to th
are
mon
no b
ther
mer
stan
dire
stop
mon
ofte
priv
mak
ging
also
thei
volv
the f
dres
mon

only "by surprise" and taking only "surplus" food. Jainas claim superior status for their ascetics partly on the basis of these differences; even so, there is no doubt that many Jaina households do in fact set food aside to be given as alms. This is justified by saying that the layman cannot know in advance *which* monk or nun will come to his door; hence the food has not been made for anyone in particular, and the mendicant's vows are not violated.

The actual presentation of alms is a rather simple matter. Śvetāmbara mendicants, as we have seen in an earlier chapter, carry begging bowls and may not eat in the home of the donor. They are received at the door with respect, brought into the house (but not the kitchen), and offered suitable food and water by the householder and his wife together. The couple makes obeisance both before and after the actual offering is given. Finally the monks, who invariably go on their begging rounds in pairs, are escorted to the door. They proceed to other houses until their bowls are filled, then return to the monastery to eat. Digambara monks, kṣullakas, and ailakas, on the other hand, carry no bowls and visit only a single house each day. As one of them approaches, the householder (who knows that the mendicants in his neighborhood will pass by his residence) stands outside his door, takes a few steps in the holy man's direction, bows, and says: "Salutations to you, sir. Please stop." This offer may or may not be accepted, since Jaina monks make it a point to avoid visiting the same house too often (which would deprive other families of the great privilege of alms-giving). It is also common for them to make some arbitrary decision, prior to setting out on begging rounds, that aims not only to ensure impartiality but also to maintain the "surprise" or "uninvited" element in their appearance at a particular layman's door. This involves such resolutions (*abhigraha*) as "I will stop only at the fifth house I pass" or "I will stop only for a householder dressed in red"; hence it is not at all unusual for one or more invitations to be refused.

In any case, when a Digambara mendicant does respond affirmatively to someone's performance of *sthāpana* (the ritual greeting quoted above), indicating his assent by silence, that person proceeds to the second phase of the food-sharing ceremony. This is called *śuddhi*, purity, and entails the declaration that the layman's mind, speech, and body are pure (in other words, that he is a proper donor) and that the food being offered is similarly "faultless." The mendicant is then invited into the house, where he is revered by a ritual foot-bathing (*pāda-udaka*) and by having flowers placed before him (*arcana*).³⁷ Kṣullakas or ailakas may next be seated on a low wooden stool and given food on a plate belonging to the householder. A monk, however, must remain standing and take the offering in his palms, fingers interlaced. Upon finishing, he will be given additional water with which to wash his hands; thereafter, he may sit for a few moments before departing in order to deliver a short religious discourse and to confer a blessing upon the family. (Prior to this time he has uttered no sound whatsoever.)

While atithi-saṃvibhāga is the most important form of *dāna*, members of the laity are encouraged to perform other acts of charity as well. These should involve the "proper items, proper time, proper recipient(s), and proper cause"; in other words, contributions should go towards one of the seven *punya-kṣetras*³⁸ (fields of merit) designated by Jaina teachers. These fields, some of which we have seen earlier, are: (1) *Jina-bimba*, setting up Jina-images; (2) *Jina-bhavana*, building a temple or hall to house an image; (3) *Jina-āgama*, causing the Jaina scriptures to be copied and circulated; (4) giving alms to monks; (5) giving alms to nuns; (6) providing spiritual assistance to male members of the lay community—for example, offering alms to those advanced on the pratimā ladder,

37. pratigrahoḥcasthānāṅghrikṣālanārcānatir viduḥ/ yogānnaśuddhīmś ca vidhīn navādaraviśeṣataḥ// Ibid.: v, 45.

38. See JY: 165.

enco
and
tical
ing
purs
rebi
non-
but

Sām
The
the
serv
wha
is b
earl
prac
acti
asce
text
Mal
not
For
sho
exer
Pro
stoc
the
awa
equ
scio
bar
with

encouraging various religious activities, building schools and fasting halls, distributing clothes to the poor; (7) identical to the sixth, but with reference to women. By donating his wealth and energy to as many of these meritorious pursuits as possible, the Jaina layman may hope to gain rebirth in a heaven or a bhoga-bhūmi. As for charity to non-Jainas, such practice is considered somewhat beneficial but not really conducive to meaningful spiritual progress.

Sāmāyika: The Attainment of Equanimity

The actions associated with guru-upāsti and dāna bring the layman into continuous contact with a teacher, who serves as both example and counselor. But performance of what is perhaps the most highly regarded of Jaina rituals is by nature rather more solitary. This is sāmāyika (seen earlier as the first śikṣāvratā and the fourth pratimā), a practice of great antiquity wherein the layman's religious activities are integrated with the yogic methods of the ascetic path. The term sāmāyika was first used in canonical texts with reference to a restraint (saṃyama) undertaken by Mahāvīra when he renounced the world; there it involved nothing less than the lifetime abandonment of all evil acts. For ordinary laymen, however, it indicates a restraint of short duration and functions mainly as a meditational exercise. The derivation of the term is not completely clear. Proceeding from the root *i, aya* to go, it has been understood both as "attaining equanimity" and as "fusion with the true self" (becoming fixed in jñāna-cetanā, pure self-awareness). Both of these definitions render sāmāyika equivalent to the progressive detachment of one's consciousness from all external objects. The famous Digambara ācārya Jaṭasiṃhanandi supports this interpretation with the following verse:

Equanimity towards all beings;
self-control and pure aspirations;
abandonment of every thought

which is tainted by desire or aversion;
that, truly, is considered sāmāyika.³⁹

Śvetāmbaras have preserved a certain ritual formula through which a layman begins sāmāyika in the presence of a teacher. This is ordinarily done at sunset, when the day's activities are over and one is well-composed and ready to pull himself away from worldly preoccupations.⁴⁰ Approaching a monk (and perhaps carrying a whisk broom [*rajoḥaraṇa*] to symbolize his temporary "ascetic" status), he makes obeisance and says:

I undertake, venerable one, the sāmāyika, renouncing for as long as I worship the mendicants (that is, remain in your company) all harmful activities, both those which might be done by myself or which I might cause to be done by others. I will not engage in such activities with either mind, speech, or body, nor will I cause others to engage in them (in those ways.) I confess, sir, all my blameworthy acts; I accept censure and truly repent for every one of them, and I cast aside my former self (which committed these deeds).⁴¹

Having made the resolve, the layman sits in a yogic posture and begins his meditation.

Digambaras retain this ancient formula only for the use of monks and advanced laypeople; hence they have composed a number of recitations suitable for the ordinary householder. These may include confession of past misdeeds, the pledge to undertake further restraints, or hymns in praise of the Jinas; in every case, the point of such recitations is the "dwelling in one's self" towards which the overall ritual is aimed.

39. samatā sarvabhūteṣu saṃnyame śubhabhāvanāḥ/ ārtaraudraparityāgas taddhi sāmāyikaṃ matam// *Varāṅgacaritra*: xv, 122. Compare: tyaktārtaraudradhyānasya tyaktasāvadhyakarmaṇaḥ/ muhūrtaṃ samatā yā tām viduḥ sāmāyikavratam// *Yogaśāstra*: iii, 82.

40. A person who has undertaken the sāmāyikavrata will, of course, engage in this practice more frequently: at dawn and noon as well as sunset.

41. "karemi bhante sāmāyikaṃ savvaṃ sāvajjaṃ jogam paccakkhāmi jāva sāhu pajjuvāsāmi duvhaṃ tivaheṇaṃ maṇeṇaṃ vāyāe kāyeṇaṃ na karemi karāvēmi tassa bhante paḍikkamāmi nindāmi appāṇaṃ vosirāmi." Quoted in JY: 132

The
yika m
referre
ence is

The
day
spea
not
thus
and
ciat

Rep
sāmāy
cerem
layma
renou
taste
a Dig
house
arran
sects,
goods
distr
of the
forgiv
obser
great
forgiv
and e
and si
ever b

42.
sāvaka
evaṃ v
kassaci
yeva pa
Nigaṇṭh

The temporary renunciation that constitutes lay *sāmāyika* must be a very ancient practice in Jainism, since it is referred to in the Buddhist scripture. The Buddhist reference is a derisive one, stating that:

The Nigaṇṭhas call their laypeople on the uposatha (fasting) days, saying "Come here, sir. Abandoning all your clothes, speak thus: 'I belong to no one; I am nothing to anyone. I own nothing; nothing owns me.'" Having spoken thus, and having thus renounced all his possessions, (the layman) later returns and reclaims all that he has "given away." This kind of renunciation is nothing but a sham!⁴²

Representing a hostile point of view, this account of *sāmāyika* ignores, or is unaware of, the true spirit of the ceremony. By undertaking such a temporary practice the layman ritually expresses his determination to ultimately renounce everything forever; he gains, moreover, a real taste (however brief) of the ascetic experience. Even today a Digambara performing *sāmāyika* in the privacy of his household takes off most or all of his clothes prior to arranging his limbs in the meditative posture. Jainas of all sects, having once assumed this posture, repudiate all goods and relations and resolve to sit, unmoving and undistracted, for up to forty-eight minutes. The tranquillity of the mind is at first increased by forgiving, and begging forgiveness of, the entire world of beings. We have already observed, with reference to the *saṃvatsarī* festival, the great importance which Jainas attach to such pleas for forgiveness. Even in the absence of the beings addressed and even though most of those beings (the lower animals and single-sense life forms) remain unaware that they have ever been harmed, these pleas are believed to remove from

42. atthi, Visākhe, Nigaṇṭhā nāma samaṇajātikā, te . . . tadah' uposathe sāvakaṃ evaṃ samādapenti: ehi tvaṃ, ambho purisa, sabbacelāni nikkhipitvā evaṃ vadehi, 'nāhaṃ kvaci kassaci kiñcanaṭasmim, na ca mama kvacani kassaci kiñcanaṃ n'atthi 'ti . . . so tasmā rattiya accayena bhoge adinnaṃ yeva paribhuñjati. idaṃ tassa adinnādānaṃ vadāmi. evaṃ kho, Visākhe, Nigaṇṭhuposatho na mahapphalo . . . *Anguttaranikāya*: I, 206.

one's heart all anger and resentment caused by or directed towards others.

Having thus put his mind at ease, the aspirant further expresses his feelings for others by saying:

Friendship towards all beings,
Delight in the qualities of virtuous ones,
Utmost compassion for afflicted beings,
Equanimity towards those who are not
well-disposed towards me.
May my soul have such dispositions as these
forever.⁴³

Finally, he carries his mind to a deep level of meditation on the self by inwardly repeating one of the many recitations (sāmāyika-pāṭha) intended for this purpose, such as the one that follows.⁴⁴

As long as I am seated in this meditation,
I shall patiently suffer all calamities
that may befall me, be they caused
by an animal, a human being, or a god.
I renounce, for the duration (of this meditation),
my body, all food, and all passions.⁴⁵
Attachment, aversion, fear, sorrow, joy,
anxiety, self-pity . . . all these
I abandon with body, mind, and speech.
I further renounce all delight and all repulsion
of a sexual nature.⁴⁶
Whether it is life or death, whether gain or loss,
Whether defeat or victory, whether meeting
or separation,

43. sattveṣu maitrīm guṇiṣu pramodaṃ, kliṣṭeṣu jīveṣu kṛpāparatvam/
mādhyasthabhāvaṃ viparītavṛttau, sadā mamātmā vidadhātu deva// Amita-
gati's *Dvātriṃśatikā*: k 1. See NNP: 21.

44. These verses are quoted from NNP: 21-24.

45. tairaścaṃ mānavaṃ daivam upasargaṃ sahe 'dhunā/ kāyāhārakaṣāyā-
dīn pratyākhyāmi trisuddhitāḥ// k 9.

46. rāgaṃ dveṣaṃ bhayaṃ śokaṃ praharṣautsukyadīnatāḥ/ vyutsrjāmi
tridhā sarvām aratiṃ ratim eva ca// k 10.

Wh
I ha
In (
a
(t
m
(Sin
th
One
Cha
All
fo
Bec
My
The
al
Thu
an
May
un

Ext
this m
all res
fective
porary
is repu
sāmāy
as the
comm

47. j
sarvadā
48. ā
maiva ta
49 /e
sarve/sar
50. s
bandha
51. e
māninyā

Whether friend or enemy, whether pleasure or pain,
I have equanimity towards all.⁴⁷

In (the attainment of) knowledge, insight,
and proper conduct,
(the cause) is invariably nothing but
my own soul;

(Similarly), my soul (is the primary cause) for both
the influx (of karmas) and the stopping⁴⁸ (of that influx).

One and eternal is my soul,
Characterized by intuition and knowledge;
All other states that I undergo are external to me,
for they are formed by associations.⁴⁹

Because of these associations
My soul has suffered the chains of misery;
Therefore I renounce with body, mind, and speech,
all relationships based on such associations.⁵⁰

Thus have I attained to equanimity
and to my own self-nature.
May this state of equanimity be with me
until I attain to salvation.⁵¹

Extensive practice enables the meditator to enter, by this means, states in which his mind is withdrawn from all results of karmas and from any belief in the self as effective agency ("I caused this," "I did that"). Such a temporary experience of abandoning the body (kāyotsarga) is reputed to be quite common among lay practitioners of sāmāyika. Jaina lawbooks repeatedly commend this ritual as the highest form of spiritual discipline. One ancient commentary goes so far as to claim that "during the time

47. jīvite maraṇe lābhe 'lābhe yoge viparyaye/ bandhāvarau sukhe duḥkhe sarvadā samatā mama// k 11.

48. ātmaiva me sadā jñāne darśane caraṇe tathā/ pratyākhyāne mamātmaiva tathā saṃvarayogayoh// k 12.

49. /eko me śāśvataś cātmā jñānadarśanalakṣaṇaḥ/ śeṣā bahirbhavā bhāvāḥ sarve/saṃyogalakṣaṇāḥ// k 13.

50. saṃyogamūlaṃ jīvena prāptā duḥkhaparamparā/ tasmāt saṃyogasambandhaṃ tridhā sarvaṃ tyajāmy aham// k 14.

51. evaṃ sāmāyikāt samyak sāmāyikam akhaṇḍitam/ vartatām muktimāninyā vaśīcūrṇāyitaṃ mama// k 15.

of *sāmāyika*, a layman indeed becomes an ascetic." Or again: "He who practices *sāmāyika* is like a monk over whom clothes have been draped."⁵² This is high praise indeed for one who has not actually taken the *mahāvratas*. And yet it is warranted, from the Jaina perspective, for such an individual has had at least some taste of the tranquillity and bliss which prevail once the *pratyākhyānā-varaṇa* passions (those which prevent an aspirant from taking the great vows) have been overcome. This sublime experience will sustain him even when he returns to his family and to the bustle of everyday life, drawing him again and again to the inner refuge he has discovered. Thus the very austerity which makes the mendicant path seem so difficult initially tends at last to become its primary attraction; by moving towards full-time practice of *sāmāyika*, the layman may find peace in the midst of whatever worldly problems surround him. Clearly, then, the purpose of this ritual goes beyond mere temporary attainment of equanimity; it aims, finally, at leading the layman voluntarily and irrevocably into the vows and life of an ascetic.

The *sāmāyika* is concluded with the universal prayer of the Jainas:

*Dukkhakkhavo kammakkhavo
samāhimaraṇaṃ ya bohilāho ya/
mama hou jagadabandhava
jīṇavara tava caraṇasaraṇena//*⁵³

Cessation of sorrow,
Cessation of karmas,
Death while in meditation,
The attainment of enlightenment;

52. "sāmāiyammi u kae samaṇo iva sāvaḥ havai jamhā/ eṇa kārāṇaṃ bahuso sāmāiyaṃ kujjā." Quoted in JY: 133 (from *Āvaśyaka-niryukti*). Compare: sāmāyike sārāmbhāḥ parigrahā naiva santi sarve 'pi/ celopasṛṣṭamunir iva grhī tadā yāti yatibhāvam// RŚr: iv, 12.

53. NNP: 89.

Sallek
The th
medita
ordina
by eve
last m
in dete
Many
a state
of deat
divinit
these b
or her
rebirth
which
destiny
death,
bar-do
body a
approa
interve

For
control
other I
the asp
choose
to meet
ly, in a
infracti
If, for e

54. Se
85-196.

O holy Jina! friend of the entire universe,
let these be mine,
For I have taken refuge at your feet.

Sallekhanā: The Holy Death

The third line of the prayer just quoted, "Death while in meditation" (*samādhi-marāṇa*), expresses a rather extraordinary aspiration which may truly be said to be held by every Jaina. Indeed, all Indian religions consider the last moments of a person's life to be of utmost importance in determining the condition of his subsequent incarnation. Many Hindus, for example, believe that one is reborn in a state reflecting his strongest attachment at the moment of death. Hence they may name their children after certain divinities, hoping that, should one's last thoughts fall upon these beloved family members, the names will remind him or her to concentrate instead upon the gods and thus gain rebirth in heaven. Buddhists have developed several rituals which aim to give a certain amount of influence over one's destiny; these pertain not only to the time just prior to death, but also to the so-called *antarā-bhava* (Tibetan *bar-do*),⁵⁴ or "intermediate state" between leaving one body and assuming another. Both Hindu and Buddhist approaches to this problem involve "outside help"—divine intervention or the efforts of a tantric master, respectively.

For Jainas, who have emphasized the importance of control over the life-to-life transition far more than any other Indian school, the process depends completely upon the aspirant himself. By dying in meditation he is able to choose the precise circumstances of his end. The point is to meet death with all of one's faculties functioning properly, in a state of complete awareness and freedom from infractions against whatever *vratas* have been undertaken. If, for example, a person allows his vows to fall into disuse

54. See *Abhidharmakośa-bhāṣya*: 120-127 (III, k 10-16); Evans-Wentz 1971: 85-196.

due to the onset of infirmity or senility, he will pass his final hours in *asamyama*, nonrestraint; such an unfortunate circumstance, it is believed, will adversely affect his next birth.

Having spent a lifetime in pursuit of proper conduct (*cāritra*), it behooves a Jaina to prevent the process of aging from undermining his practice. Thus he may seek death in the holy manner called *sallekhanā*; following this procedure is strongly recommended for mendicants and forms an important goal among numerous laymen as well.⁵⁵ (The latter may often choose to take the *mahāvratas* during performance of this final ritual.) In every case, Jaina teachers are careful to stress the need for "pure means" in undertaking a "controlled" death. They object strenuously, for example, to the sort of practice described in certain Hindu scriptures wherein yogins of young age and good health are voluntarily entombed while in meditation, hoping to please their gods and attain endless bliss by this "self-offering." Jumping from holy peaks or disappearing into the sea while in deep trance are similarly decried. Though Jainas are willing to ascribe good (spiritual) *motives* to individuals who commit such acts, they nevertheless consider these forms of suicide to be absolutely improper and to lead one only to rebirth in hell. Jaina tradition is adamant on this point; even the famous King Śreṇika,⁵⁶ a contemporary of Mahāvīra and a great patron of Jainism, is said to have fallen into a hellish destiny when, after having been imprisoned by his son, he took his own life in an "impure" manner.

There is only one way, then, that a Jaina can legitimately attain *samādhi-maraṇa*: by gradual fasting, carried out in strict accord with ritual prescription and in most cases under the close supervision of his mendicant teachers. The

55. Āśādhara goes so far as to declare that even lay discipline is fully completed only by *sallekhanā*: *samyktvam amalāṃ amalāṇy aṇugūṇaśikṣāvratāni maraṇānte/ sallekhanā ca vidhinā pūrṇaḥ sāgāradharmo 'yam// SD: I, 12.*

56. See Seniya in Mehta 1970-1972: II, 856-857; UP: lxxiv, 388-452.

term sal
ning ou
list four
(1) *upa*
tivity b
sible; (2
no way
the prop
of such
help, or
from hi
from w

Any
for und
the thir
sacred
"pure"
involve
holy de
actively
he merc
food, d
his inne
not this
over the
fasted t
was a m
over In

57. *up*
syāt samā

58. *up*
mocanam

59. *syā*
naiṣa doṣa
uktam. na
viṣṭasya h
bhavati. na
SS: §705. C

60. For
67, 118, 25

term *sallekhanā* applies here in the sense of "properly thinning out (the passions and the body)." ⁵⁷ Jaina lawbooks list four situations in which *sallekhanā* can be performed: (1) *upasarga*, an unavoidable calamity (for example, captivity by an enemy) that makes keeping one's vows impossible; (2) *durbhikṣā*, a great famine, during which there is no way to obtain acceptable food, much less to do so in the proper manner; (3) *jarā*, old age, defined by the onset of such problems as blindness, inability to walk without help, or senility, any of which make one likely to fall away from his *vratas*; (4) *niḥpratīkāṛā rujā*, a terminal illness from which death is imminent. ⁵⁸

Any one of these situations can be considered grounds for undertaking a fast unto death, but it is almost always the third or fourth that lead an aspirant to perform this sacred ritual. For Jains the essential difference between a "pure" and an "impure" suicide is that the latter always involves an *increase* in the passions, hence it cannot be a holy death. But in *sallekhanā*, it is said that one does not actively engage in any destructive, passion-tinged activity; he merely withdraws conscientiously from the taking of food, doing so in a gradual manner which never disrupts his inner peace or dispassionate mindfulness. ⁵⁹ Whether or not this distinction can be justified, there is no doubt that over the centuries many Jains of both sexes have in fact fasted to death, invariably secure in the belief that theirs was a noble and sacred act; hundreds of inscriptions all over India record and glorify such cases. ⁶⁰

57. *upavāsādibhiḥ kāyaṃ kaṣāyaṃ ca śrutāmṛtaiḥ/ saṃlikhya gaṇamādhye syāt samādhimaraṇodyamī// SD: viii, 15.*

58. *upasarge durbhikṣe jarasi rujāyāṃ ca niḥpratīkāre/ dharmāya tanuvinimocanam āhuḥ sallekhanāṃ āryāḥ// RŚr: v, 1.*

59. *syān matam ātmavadhaḥ prāpnoti, svābhisandhipūrvakāyurādinivṛtteḥ. naiṣa doṣaḥ, apramattatvāt. "pramattayogāt prāṇavyaparopanaṃ himsā" ity uktam. na cāsyā pramādayogo 'sti. kutaḥ? rāgādyabhāvāt. rāgadveṣamohāviṣṭasya hi viśaśāstrādyupakaraṇaprayogavaśād ātmānaṃ ghnataḥ svaghāto bhavati. na sallekhanāṃ pratipannasya rāgādayaḥ santi tato nātmavadhadoṣaḥ. SS: §705. On the legal aspects of *sallekhanā*, see Tukul 1976.*

60. For a few records of *sallekhanā* at Shravanabelgola, see inscription nos. 67, 118, 258, 389 in Narasimhachar 1923.

It has been seen that *sallekhanā* is most often undertaken by mendicants; even so, it has been common enough among laymen to be properly regarded as a significant aspect of lay ritual. Any Jaina facing death or an unavoidable falling away from his vows can approach a teacher and express the wish to embark upon this sacred path by saying:

Please instruct me, sir. I have come forward to seek . . . *sallekhanā*, (the vow of) which will remain in force as long as I live. I am free of all doubts and anxieties in this matter. I renounce, from now until the moment of my last breath, food and drink of all kinds.⁶¹

If the teacher agrees to administer the vow of *sallekhanā*, he first informs the aspirant that the vow will not be properly kept if it is tainted by any desires pertaining to rebirth (wishing to go to heaven, and so on), to the extension of the current life-span, to a rapid death (if the aspirant is unhappy or in pain), or to the prospect of sensual pleasures in the future which were not attained in this life.⁶² Such bartering of penances for worldly gain or pleasure (known as *nidāna*) is viewed with the greatest repugnance. Although mundane benefits are said to accrue automatically to the performance of virtuous deeds, performing such deeds *in order to obtain* these benefits can only be counter-productive; Jains at all levels of spiritual development are warned against doing so. Even the wish to be reborn as a Tirthankara would be, strictly speaking, a form of *nidāna*.

The Jaina must turn away from the results of his deeds, renouncing these "fruits" as he does everything else. Having understood this admonition, the aspirant receives the

61. ahaṃ bhaṃte, apacchimamāraṇaṃtiyaśaṃlehaṇājhūsaṇā-ārāhaṇāsamae . . . ṇissallo hoṇa . . . jāvajjivāe . . . savvaṃ asaṇaṃ pāṇaṃ khāimaṃ sāimaṃ cauvvihaṃ pi āhāraṃ paccakkhāmi . . . carimehiṃ ussāsaṇissāsehiṃ vosirāmi . . . *Suttāgame*: II, App. III.

62. jīvitamaraṇāśaṃse bhayamitraśmṛtinidānanāmānaḥ/ *sallekhanāticārāḥ* pañca jinendriyaḥ samādiṣṭāḥ// *RSr*: v, 8.

vrata
maṇa)
and as
upon
eating
and th
to be
which
intake
subsist
for ex
It is a
that h
above

In a
Jaina
practi
superv
mendi
must
of the
or fan
move,
Jainas
a prac
son te

Occ
illness
course
have
contin
allotm
the us
until s

A p
food r
It mus

vrata and then proceeds to engage in confession (*pratikramāṇa*), self-censure (*ālocanā*), and the ritual of forgiving and asking forgiveness discussed earlier. He next embarks upon a program of gradual renunciation with regard to eating. The teacher, judging his ability to withstand hunger and thirst, stipulates a certain amount of food and water to be allowed at the outset, then sets down the extent to which this should be decreased each day. Eventually the intake of solid food is reduced to nothing; the aspirant then subsists on liquids of a progressively less sustaining nature, for example, from milk to fruit juice to plain boiled water. It is at the "water only" stage that a layman, perceiving that his death is near, often takes the mahāvratas as noted above.

In ancient times it may well have been permitted for any Jaina to initiate the *sallekhanā* fast on his own, but the practice seems to have come under greater ecclesiastical supervision in the postcanonical period. Today only a mendicant is normally given this freedom; lay aspirants must first receive the vow of *sallekhanā* from a member of the clergy (except in the rare circumstances of calamity or famine referred to earlier). If the layperson is too ill to move, a monk comes to his bedside to administer the vow. Jainas are quick to point out the difference between such a practice and that of the common suicide, wherein a person tells no one of his deed and commits it in secret.

Occasionally, it may happen that a supposedly "fatal" illness undergoes remission or complete cure during the course of progressive fasting. In such cases the vows which have been taken cannot be rescinded; the aspirant must continue to take no more food per day than his current allotment for as long as he lives. This possibility explains the usual practice of refraining from a vow of *total* fasting until such time as death is clearly at hand.

A prolonged and eventually terminal withdrawal from food may strike the reader as a very unpleasant process. It must be borne in mind, however, that those who follow

such a course will have already gained extensive experience of fasting during their prior religious practice, hence will be able to tolerate the rigors of *sallekhanā* with their contentment and mindfulness undisturbed. Indeed, a request to undertake this holy fast is not granted lightly; part of the teacher's role is to determine whether a given individual has in fact attained the level of discipline and spiritual development required.⁶³

The fasting is done either at one's home or in a special fasting hall where certain mendicants reside. In either case, though the aspirant remains in virtual seclusion, his act is in a real sense a public one; the family has given its consent, and every person in the local community is aware of what is happening. In conjunction with *sallekhanā*, there is renunciation of all possessions and associations; thus one is left totally free of worldly concerns and spends his final hours silently repeating the *namaskāra* mantra or perhaps listening to it being chanted by others. In this way, it is hoped, he will draw his last breath fully conscious and uttering the names of the holy beings in whom he has taken refuge since the day of his first awakening (*samyak-darśana*),

Jainas believe that the entire spiritual life of a layman (and, to an even greater extent, of a mendicant) is in fact preparation for such a sacred death. Any person who might waver on this occasion and revert at the very last to a state of nonrestraint (desire) is compared to a warrior who, after years of practicing for battle, flees at the moment when he must actually face it.⁶⁴ Those who do pass away in the proper manner are considered to be close to salvation. It is said that their next birth will be in a heaven

63. "It is not unusual to see one of them (as I have) freely choose to die in the way characteristic of the Jainas, ending a life of austerities by abstaining from food altogether. Nevertheless, it is a way of life that many aspire after eagerly; postulants beseech the Master to admit them to it; relations and friends add their entreaties on the applicant's behalf." Renou 1953: 124.

64. *nṛpasyeva yater dharmo ciram abhyastino 'stravat/ yudhīva skhalato mṛtyau svārthabhraṃśo 'yaśaḥ kaṭuḥ// SD: viii, 17.*

or sin
times
thank
they

It i
invol
the c
ācāry
haps
one s
first
Laym
aṅga
a lay
and f
been
men;
Jina's
muni
to ill
settlin
provi
tradit
it serv
lay ri

The S
a Lay
Durin
capita
called
wealt
forty
other
of equ

or similarly exalted abode, and that within a very few life-times they will gain incarnation in the presence of a Tīrthankara, thus being enabled to complete the path which they have so bravely followed.

It is possible to recount any number of well-known cases involving Jainas who crowned a highly spiritual life with the consecrated act of *sallekhanā*; indeed the death of ācārya Śāntisāgara, with which this book begins, is perhaps the most celebrated modern example. But there is one story that stands apart from all others. This forms the first of the *Ten Lectures on the Religious Profession of a Layman (Upāsaka-dāśāḥ)*,⁶⁵ which comprise the seventh aṅga of the Jaina canon; it recounts the career of Ānanda, a lay disciple of Mahāvīra who attained all eleven pratimās and finally undertook *sallekhanā*. Ānanda's life has long been regarded as a model to be emulated by all Jaina laymen; the fact that he renounced great wealth to follow the Jina's path has an especially strong impact upon a community whose members are so often affluent. In addition to illustrating the proper approach to lay practice and setting forth the benefits which result therefrom, this story provides a great insight into the kind of relation that has traditionally existed between layman and mendicant. Thus it serves as an appropriate conclusion to this discussion of lay ritual in Jainism.

The Story of Ānanda, a Lay Disciple of Mahāvīra

During the time of Mahāvīra, in a city called Vāṇijagrāma, capital of the Licchavi nation, there lived a householder called Ānanda. He was a very prosperous man, with wealth unequalled by any person in that city. He possessed forty million measures of gold buried in a safe place, another forty million put out at interest, a well-stocked estate of equivalent value, and forty thousand cattle divided into

65. Text and tr. Hoernle 1888.

four herds. Ānanda was consulted by numerous kings and merchants with regard to every sort of business. He was the pillar of his family, ministering to them and guiding them in all matters. His wife was called Śivānandā—a woman dear to her husband, devoted, attached, and loving. The two of them lived together very happily as householders. Their respective families too, being large and well-established, lived in pleasure and contentment.

At that time the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra visited Vāṇijagrāma and took up residence in a park outside the city. Large numbers of people, together with their king, went to pay their respects and listen to his sermons. The householder Ānanda, having heard this news, reflected thus: "Truly the venerable one is staying here on a visit. This is a most auspicious event. Let me go to pay my respects."

Having made this decision he bathed, adorned himself with his finest clothing, and went out on foot, surrounded by a great retinue and protected by an umbrella held over his head. Walking all the way through the city, he arrived at the park; there, Mahāvīra was residing in a *caitya* (temple) called Dvipalāsa. Approaching this spot, Ānanda circumambulated the sage three times and, having thus expressed his veneration, sat down to listen to the sermon. Then the venerable Mahāvīra expounded the law to the householder Ānanda, and to the large company of people present on that occasion. When the congregation had departed, Ānanda, pleased and elated, spoke thus:

Venerable sir, I believe in the doctrine of the Nigaṇṭhas; I am convinced of the Nigaṇṭha doctrine; I am delighted with it. It is so, sir, it is exactly so. It is true. It is what I accept. Indeed, sir, it is really so, just as you have declared it. Venerable sir, although many nobles, bankers, and merchants have, upon hearing your sermon, renounced the household life and entered the monastic state, I, sir, cannot do the same. But I will, in your presence, take upon myself the twelve-fold restraint of a householder, consisting of the five *aṇuvratas*, three

guṇa
vene

The
venera
injury
Chapt
either

Nex
taking
tentm
pledgi
Simila
with h
vīra a
now h
must
twelv

Th
the v
vener
thus:

Tru
for
mu
con
of
dri
by
it h
the
fo
ke

66.
pañcā
vajjai
vā an
ālavitt

guṇavratas, and the four śikṣāvratas. May it so please you, venerable sir, not to deny me this honor.

Then the householder Ānanda, in the presence of the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra, renounced all gross forms of injury to living beings, saying: "As long as I live . . . [see Chapter VI, n. 35] I will not do it, nor cause it to be done, either in thought, word, or deed."

Next he renounced all grossly lying speech and all gross taking of things not given; he also limited himself to contentment with his wife and restricted his possessions by pledging not to accumulate further wealth in any form. Similarly, he renounced the various kinds of activities dealt with by the other vratas. At this point the venerable Mahāvīra addressed Ānanda, saying: "Truly, Ānanda, you have now become a disciple of the ascetic [śramaṇopāsaka]; you must now be aware of the transgressions pertaining to all twelve vratas, and must avoid them."

Then the householder Ānanda, having formally taken the vows administered to him, praised and worshiped the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra and solemnly spoke to him thus:

Truly, venerable sir, it does not befit me, from this day forward, to praise or worship any man of a heterodox community, or any of the objects of reverence of a heterodox community. Neither should I address nor converse with one of their teachers unless he first addresses me, nor give food or drink to such teachers, except if it be required by the king, or by the elders, or by the exigencies of life. On the other hand, it behooves me, venerable sir, to devote myself to providing the ascetics of the Nigaṇṭha faith with pure and acceptable food and other provisions permitted to them: clothes, blankets, alms bowls, medicines, and the like.⁶⁶

66. tae ṇaṃ se Āṇande gāhavaī samaṇassa bhagavao Mahāvīrassa antie pañcāṇuvvaiyaṃ sattaśikkhāvaiyaṃ duvālasavihaṃ sāvayadhammaṃ paḍivajjai . . . evaṃ vayāsī: "no khalu me, bhante, kappai ajjappabhiṃ annautthie vā annautthiyadevayāṇi vā vandittae vā namaṃsittae vā, puṇṇiṃ aṇālatteṇaṃ ālavittae vā saṃplavittae vā, tesiṃ asaṇaṃ vā pāṇaṃ vā khāimaṃ vā sāimaṃ

Having thus promised and having engaged in religious discourse with his teacher, Ānanda respectfully took leave of the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra and returned from the park to his home. Calling his wife to him, he said:

Truly, beloved of the gods, I have listened to the law in the presence of the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra, and that dharma is what I desire, what I accept, what I am pleased by. So now, beloved of the gods, go and praise the venerable ascetic and listen to his sermon, and take upon thyself in his presence the twelve-fold restraint of the householder.

Then Śivānandā did as he said, receiving the same vratas in a similar manner as had her husband. After some time, the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra went away to a different part of the country. Ānanda and Śivānandā, having become his disciples, devoted themselves to mindfully keeping their vows and honoring the Nigaṇṭha mendicants with due charity. Fourteen years passed thus, during which time the śramaṇopāsaka Ānanda trained himself with constant exercise in the moral restraints imposed by his vows, as well as in those called for under the various seasonal abstentions. Then, during one night in the fifteenth year of his discipline, as he reflected upon his progress, it occurred to him:

Truly I am the support of numerous families in this city; I have many responsibilities. But because of this situation I have been hindered from living in complete conformity with the teachings and restraints received in the presence of the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra. It is better, indeed, that after sunrise tomorrow I should place my eldest son in charge of my household; then I may repair to the fasting hall of my community and live there, leading a life in which I fully observe the vratas of a householder.

vā dāṃ vā aṇuppadāṃ vā, nannattha rāyābhiogeṇaṃ gaṇābhiogeṇaṃ
balābhiogeṇaṃ devayābhiogeṇaṃ gurūniggahenaṃ vittikantāreṇaṃ. kappai
me samaṇe nigganthe phāsuṇeṇaṃ esaṇijjeṇaṃ asaṇapāṇakhāimasāimeṇaṃ
vatthapaḍiggahakambalapāyapumphaṇeṇaṃ . . . paḍilābhemaṇassa viharittae"
tti kaṭṭu eyārūvaṃ abhiggahaṃ abhigīṇhai . . . uvāgacchai. *Upāsakadaśāḥ*:
i, §6.

Acco
and r
meal
famil
belov
this c
the m
Nor s

Th
went
in wh
comm
bed c
live t
of th
year
(mai
refle

T
to
en
de
re
en

The
did
reso
him
yoja
as v
the

62
fastin
assur
68
dham
seyar
bhatt
sakae

Accordingly, on the next morning he invited all his friends and relatives to his home and fed them abundantly. The meal completed, he appointed his son the head of the family, and addressed them all, saying: "Do not thou, my beloved son, nor you, my dear friends, any of you, from this day onwards, ask me or consult me regarding any of the manifold affairs with which I was hitherto connected. Nor should you cook or prepare any food for my sake."

Then Ānanda took leave of his friends and kinsmen, went out of the house, and walked to a suburb of the city in which was located the fasting hall belonging to his own community.⁶⁷ He swept the grounds of the hall, spread a bed of grass, and placed himself upon it. He continued to live there, in accord with the rules, taking one after another of the eleven pratimās for a full period of five-and-a-half years; he persevered in the performance of ascetic practices (mainly fasting), and became extremely thin. Then Ānanda reflected as follows:

Truly, through these ascetic exercises, I have become reduced to a skeleton. While there is still within me the vigor and energy of faith, therefore, I should, after sunrise tomorrow, devote myself to a determined sallekhanā that ends in death, renouncing all food and drink and patiently awaiting my end.⁶⁸

Then the śramaṇopāsaka Ānanda, by reason of his splendid transformation and the purity of his extraordinary resolution, gained a supernatural vision which enabled him to see, from where he sat, an area of five-hundred *yojanas* (a *yojana* is eight or nine miles) across the earth, as well as upwards to the first heaven and downwards to the first hell.

67. It is evident that Śivānandā did not accompany her husband to the fasting hall. She apparently led the life of a widow keeping the vows she has assumed earlier.

68. *taṃ jāva me atthi utthāṇe saddhādhiisaṃvege jāva ya me dhammāyariē dhammovadesae samaṇe bhagavaṃ Mahāvīre jiṇe suhatthī viharai tāva tā me seyaṃ kallaṃ jāva jalante apacchimamāraṇantiyaṣaṃlehaṇājhūsaṇājhūsiyassa bhattapāṇapaḍiyāikkhiyassa kālaṃ aṇavakaṃkhamāṇassa viharittae . . . Upāsakadaśāḥ: i, §12.*

Now it happened that at that very time the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra again arrived in Vāṇijagrāma for a visit, accompanied by his gaṇadhara, the venerable Indrabhūti Gautama. This Gautama was given to the habit of taking food only once every six days. On one such day he went around the city with his begging bowl, moving from house to house collecting alms. There he heard from various people of the great austerities of the householder Ānanda and about his vow of sallekhanā. The venerable Gautama decided to go and see him, and so proceeded to the place where Ānanda was residing in seclusion. When Ānanda saw the venerable Gautama approaching, his heart was filled with happiness and he spoke to him thus:

Truly, venerable sir, I have now become, through my vratas, reduced to a skeleton. I am therefore unable to come forward into your presence in order to salute you and bow my head to your feet. So please, venerable sir, graciously take the trouble to come near me so that I may do so.

And when the venerable Gautama had approached, Ānanda respectfully saluted him and asked: "Is it so, venerable sir, that a householder, one who has not become a monk, can indeed win the power of supernatural sight?"

And Gautama answered, "Yes, it is so."

Then Ānanda continued: "If that is so, venerable sir, I would like to inform you that I can see an area of five-hundred yojanas across the earth, and upwards to the first heaven, and downwards to the first hell."

Then the venerable Gautama said to Ānanda, the disciple of the ascetic: "I do maintain, Ānanda, that a householder can indeed possess supernatural sight, but not to such an extent as you claim. Therefore, Ānanda, it is only fitting that you should acknowledge your infraction in this matter [exaggeration, a violation of the satya-vrata] and perform a penance in expiation."

Then the householder Ānanda answered: "Is it required by the law of the Jina, sir, that one should take upon one-

self a p
actual?

Gaut

And

then yo
edge an
in expi

Then

thus by
with de
the Dv
vīra wa
asked:

discipl
and to
to do s

Then

tama, s
who sh
take a
rudene
saying
venera
edged
and fo

Mal

another
having
ascetic
vratas
course
one m

69. T

view on
manner,

70. s

mā, tum
samanov

self a penance for speaking of things which are real and actual?"

Gautama replied, "No, it is not so required."

And Ānanda said: "If, sir, what you have said is true, then you, venerable one, should indeed yourself acknowledge an infraction in this matter and undertake a penance in expiation thereof."⁶⁹

Then the venerable Gautama, having been spoken to thus by Ānanda the householder, was unsettled and filled with doubt. He departed from that place and returned to the Dvipalāsa caitya, where the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra was residing. Having reported the entire incident, he asked: "Venerable sir, tell me, is it for Ānanda, your lay disciple, to acknowledge his transgression in this matter and to take a penance upon himself, or is it for me to do so?"

Then the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra, turning to Gautama, said without hesitation: "Indeed Gautama, it is you who should acknowledge transgression in this matter and take a penance upon yourself. And you should forgive his rudeness in contradicting you."⁷⁰ The venerable Gautama, saying "so be it," humbly accepted the decision of the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra. Having done so, he acknowledged his transgression, took an expiation upon himself, and forgave Ānanda.

Mahāvīra and his gaṇadharas then went away to live in another place. At that time the śramaṇopāsaka Ānanda, having persevered for twenty years as a lay servant of the ascetic and having conscientiously observed the twelve vratas and eleven pratimās of a layman, undertook the course of sallekhanā, which ends in death, for a period of one month. During this period he consumed only water.

69. That is, Gautama showed carelessness of the truth by expressing his view on the possible extent of a layman's supernatural vision in a most positive manner, when in fact he was incorrect. He should have said: "I do not know."

70. samaṇe bhagavaṃ Mahāvīre bhagavaṃ Goyamaṃ evaṃ vayāsi: "Goyamā, tumhaṃ ceva ṇaṃ tassa thāṇassa āloehi jāva paḍivajjāhi, Ānandaṃ ca samaṇovāsayaṃ eyamaṭṭhaṃ khāmehi." *Upāsakadaśāḥ*: i, §15.

At the end of the month, having confessed his transgressions and begged forgiveness of all beings, he sank into deep meditation and thus attained his mortal end. He was reborn as a celestial being in the first heaven.

When the venerable Gautama came to know of this, he inquired of the venerable ascetic Mahāvīra: "Venerable sir, Ānanda the heavenly being, upon making his descent from the world of the gods, after the termination of his life in heaven, will be reborn in what realm?"

And Mahāvīra replied: "Gautama, he will take human form in the great Videha country, and there he will attain to arhatship."⁷¹

71. Ānande ṇaṃ bhante, deve tāo devalogāo . . . caittā kaḥiṃ . . . uva-vajjihii? Goyamā, Mahāvīdehe vāse sijjhii. Ibid.: i, §15.

VIII

The Mendicant Path and the Attainment of the Goal

The Meaning of Total Renunciation

The rigorous and extensive restraints undertaken by an advanced Jaina layperson may well seem virtually identical to those of the bona fide mendicant. On what basis, then, are the latter described as sarva-virati, "total" renunciation, in contradistinction to the "partial" renunciation of the laity? It was seen in an earlier chapter that only the actual taking of the mendicant vows can indicate "internal attainment of the state of proper conduct," the overcoming of the pratyākhyānāvaraṇa passions. Even an eleventh-pratimā layman, therefore, cannot claim to have reached this state.

In terms of daily practice, moreover, the mendicant is set apart mainly by the manner of his observance of ahimsā. Whereas this vrata in its partial form applies only to beings with two or more senses (traśa) it is extended for the monk or nun to include the infinitely larger group of single-sense beings (ekendriya) and element bodies (sthāvara). The importance of recognizing the inviolability of even such subtle creatures is stressed, for example, in the opening portions of the Ācārāṅga-sūtra, where it is said:

Take note—there are innumerable tiny beings individually embodied in earth. Take note—there are some men who truly control themselves, safeguarding even these beings, while

others, (such as the monks of other sects) fail to do so and thus are only pretending to be renunciants.¹

The *Ācārāṅga-sūtra* goes on to state that the element bodies suffer as do all other living things; their torment is compared to that of a blind and mute person, who can neither see who it is that hurts him nor express his pain. One who injures these minute creatures, therefore, has failed to fully renounce sinful activities; the wise man will neither indulge in nor countenance such behavior.

It has sometimes been suggested that Jaina holy men are overly preoccupied with beings of a lower order, to the detriment of their concern for higher animals or with humankind. But this criticism fails to take into account the fact that a mendicant has *already*, as part of his lay vows, established a pattern of absolutely nonharmful behavior towards the more highly evolved creatures; his attention to the well-being of the ekendriya and element bodies by no means excludes this prior commitment, but rather carries it to the widest possible extent. Indeed, Jainas consider their practice of *ahiṃsā* unique in the universality of its application.

Bearing these factors in mind, the following rules to which a monk is subject can be properly understood: (1) He must refrain from all acts of digging in the earth, in order to avoid the destruction of earth bodies; (2) he must refrain from all forms of bathing, swimming, wading, or walking in the rain, thus showing proper concern for water bodies; (3) he must protect fire bodies by never extinguishing fires; nor may he light a match or kindle any flame, for such is the evanescent nature of the fire bodies that the very act of producing them is virtually equivalent to causing their destruction; (4) he must refrain from fanning himself, lest he injure air bodies by creating a sudden change of temperature in the air; (5) he must avoid walking on

1. santi pāṇā puḍho siyā, lajjamāṇā puḍho pāsa; aṇagārā 'motti ege pavayamāṇā, jaṃ iṇaṃ virūvarūvehiṃ satthehiṃ puḍhavikammasamārambheṇaṃ . . . aṇegarūve pāṇe vihiṃsai. AS: §11-12.

greenery
might inj
Perhap

with rega
domestic
ever, pro
sideration
mendican
ness, con
havior fo
him. Und
him to b
ways on
infractor
the rewa
aspirant
conduct,
ness whic
(carelessn

The qu
cants and
reference
of applic
avoid tra
closely th
of the Jain

Initiation
Formal a
mony cal

2. For a
Caillat 1975;

3. In a fa
is said to ha
specific prac
nānadamsaṇ
vayāiṃ sabhā
tasakāe// pa
yaṃ se suhu

greenery or touching a living plant, since either action might injure certain vegetable bodies.²

Perhaps every culture teaches its children to behave with regard for the well-being of other persons and of domestic animals. The normal socialization process, however, provides little or no basis for extending this consideration to the single-sense creatures. Hence the Jaina mendicant must put forth a tremendous effort of mindfulness, consciously establishing a totally new pattern of behavior for which his prior training has in no way prepared him. Undertaking *ahiṃsā* and the other great vows forces him to become constantly aware of his every action, always on guard against the possibility of committing an infraction. But if the obstacles to such a discipline are great, the rewards are no less so; not only does the spiritual aspirant become established in the holy pattern of proper conduct, but he learns a technique of perpetual attentiveness which will ultimately help him to overcome *pramāda* (carelessness), the third great cause of bondage.

The question concerning the distinction between mendicants and advanced laypeople, then, can be answered with reference to several criteria: the internal state, the range of applicability of vows, the degree of effort required to avoid transgressions. We are now ready to examine more closely the actual process through which the unique path of the Jaina monk or nun is entered upon.

Initiation into Mendicancy

Formal assumption of the *mahāvratas*³ occurs in a ceremony called *dīkṣā* (initiation) or *pravrajyā* (renunciation).

2. For a comprehensive treatment of Jaina monastic law, see Deo 1956; Caillat 1975; Dixit 1976; and above, Ch. II n. 54.

3. In a famous section of the *Ācārāṅga-sūtra* known as *Bhāvanā*, Mahāvīra is said to have laid down five great vows (*mahāvratas*) together with their specific practices (*bhāvanā*): *tao ṇaṃ samaṇe bhagavaṃ Mahāvīre uppaṇṇa-ṇāṇadaṃsaṇadhare Goyamāṇaṃ samaṇāṇaṃ ṇiggamthāṇaṃ paṃca mahāvayāiṃ sabhāvaṇāiṃ chajjīvanikāyāiṃ āikkhai . . . taṃ jahā—puḍhayikāe jāva tasakāe// paḍhamam bhamte mahavvayam: paccakkhāmi savvam pāṇāivāyam se suhumam vā bāyaram vā . . . tasam vā thāvaram vā neva sayam*

This ritual constitutes the symbolic rebirth of the individual; in addition to casting off all lay possessions, he forever abandons the name by which he has theretofore been known. (Ordinarily, the new mendicant will take on the lineage name of his teacher, for example, -nandi, -kīrti, -sena, -candra, -sāgara, -vijaya.)⁴ Among the Śvetāmbara, *dīkṣā* is normally barred to those who are physically or mentally incapacitated, who lack the consent of their parents, who are exconvicts, or who are under eight years old.⁵ Similar guidelines determine fitness for admission to the Digambara monkhood; in practice, however, these are supplemented by general understanding among members of this sect that only those of rather advanced age should leave the household life altogether.

Every *dīkṣā* ceremony is accompanied by great pomp and by the performance of various religious acts in the lay community: Jina-worship, charity in honor of the new initiate, and so forth. Particulars of the ceremony itself vary somewhat among sects. An aspiring Digambara monk, for example, will stand before the teacher and renounce every possession, even his loincloth. (It will be recalled that only thus may the Digambara definition of *aparigraha* be fulfilled.) He further declares his lifelong acceptance of the *mahāvratas*, and is given a small whisk

pāṇāvāyam karejja . . . jāvajjivāe tiyiham tiyihena manasā yayasā kāyasā, tassa bhamte paḍikkamāmi nimdāmi garahāmi appaṇaṃ voṣirāmi// . . . aha-varam doccam mahavvayam, paccakkhāmi savvam musāvāyam . . . taccam mahavvayam, paccakkhāmi savvam adinnādānam . . . cauttam mahavvayam, paccakkhāmi savvam mehuṇam . . . paṇcamam mahavvayam, savvam pariga-ham paccakkhāmi . . . jāva voṣirāmi// iccehim . . . sampamme anagamāne ārahje yāvi bhavai// AS: § 1024-1074. (See Jacobi 1884: 202-210. For a discussion on the tradition of the five great vows, see above, Ch. I nn. 32-42.)

4. Members of the Sthānakavāsi sect (see Ch. IX) are exceptions to this rule; they retain their household names even as ascetics—a practice which may have originally served to distinguish them from the Śvetāmbaras.

5. In the ancient scriptures, only those who have attained to at least young adulthood appear as members of the monastic order; the practice of admitting eight- or nine-year-old children seems to have first gained legitimacy during medieval times. There have recently been numerous attempts among the Śvetāmbara Jains to curb this practice. For the monastic rules governing the admission of a layman to the community of monks and nuns, see Deo 1956: 139-142.

broom (with which sleeping by those companions may also bhakti (In praise of proper and their and of the state).⁶

Among pieces of also receive bowl a Sthānak new monk a small over his to protect peded ru whisk b as much mahāvra One a totally u of India have bee painfully In this m successfu We ha tion pro works, a is and This it For the canon

broom (rajoharaṇa) made of peacock feathers (*piñchī*), with which to gently remove insects from his sitting or sleeping place. Lengthy chanting of the namaskāra-mantra by those in attendance, both monks and laypeople, accompanies the entire procedure. Certain devotional texts may also be recited at this time, especially the *Siddhabhakti* (In praise of the perfected ones), *Śrutajñānabhakti* (In praise of scriptural knowledge), *Cāritrabhakti* (In praise of proper conduct), *Ācāryabhakti* (In praise of the teachers and their qualities), and *Nirvānabhakti* (In praise of mokṣa and of the places where various saints have achieved this state).⁶

Among Śvetāmbaras, the aspirant is given three large pieces of cloth, which constitute his new wardrobe. He also receives a rajoharaṇa made of woolen tufts, a begging bowl, a blanket, a staff, and some volumes of scripture. Sthānakavāsi custom is virtually identical, except that the new monk is given, in addition to the articles noted above, a small strip of cloth called *muh-patti*, this is tied in place over his mouth at all times save during meals, and serves to protect air bodies which might be injured by an unimpeded rush of warm breath. All such "marks" of a monk—whisk broom, face-mask, or whatever—function perhaps as much to identify his sect as to aid him in keeping the mahāvratas.

One aspect of *dikṣā* is of special interest in that it is totally unique to Jainism among the mendicant traditions of India. This is *keśa-loca*, the ancient practice (said to have been performed by Mahāvīra himself) of slowly and painfully pulling the hair from one's head in five handfuls. In this manner an aspirant signifies his determination to successfully meet the severe demands of the ascetic life.

We have already noted lay involvement in the ordination process through chanting, devotional and charitable works, and so forth. Much excitement is also generated

⁶ For the texts of these various *bhaktis*, see NNP: 1-28.

among members of a Jaina village on the day following the *dīkṣā*, for at that time the new monk completes his obligatory initiation-day fast and goes abroad in search of alms for the first time. The householder who provides these alms is considered to earn great merit; indeed, his action not only affirms the traditional bond of interdependence between monk and layman, but symbolically recapitulates the profound moment when Rṣabha first received offerings proper to a Jaina holy man.

After taking the *mahāvratas*, a monk must become totally obedient to his *upādhyāya* (preceptor) and to his *ācārya* (the head of his order). He may neither live alone nor seek alms on his own, but should join with two other ascetics to form a *gaṇa*, or residence unit.⁷ These three will remain together at all times, staying in a temple, fasting hall, or other suitable quarters and going on their begging rounds as a group. Digambara mendicants, being so few in number, are permitted to live with *kṣullakas*, *ailakas*, or *brahmacārins*. A monk must not share his residence with a nun, nor should he be alone with a nun on any occasion; indeed, all interaction with women is to be kept to a minimum. As for the nuns, they are governed by a kind of "mother superior" who is in turn ultimately responsible to a male *ācārya*. It will be remembered in this connection that Digambara "nuns" are technically of a lower status than monks in the mendicant order, since they cannot enter a state of ascetic nudity. Śvetāmbara and Sthānakavāsi nuns, however, take the same vows as do their male counterparts and are considered their spiritual equals.⁸

7. The community of monks is divided into various kinds of groups such as *gaṇa*, *gaccha*, *gumma*, *phaddaga*, *kula*. For details, see Deo 1956: 337ff.

8. It should be noted that brahmanical society has never approved of mendicancy for women; even a widow is required by law to stay in the household under the protection of her son (cf. *Manusmṛti*: ix, 3). As for the Buddhists, it is well known that Śākyamuni agreed only reluctantly to the establishment of a *bhikṣuṇī-saṃgha*; this *saṃgha* lasted but a few centuries within India and is now practically defunct in the Buddhist countries of Southeast Asia. Thus it appears that Jainism alone favored the idea of an order of nuns. The canon

The B
The p
minim
otherv
fresh
vara,⁹
involv
treme
three
taken
of do
pare a
which
Th
activi
under
hours
the in
(1) ca
ther
turne
creat
samit

speaks
vīra (se
Śvetām
recent
and 3,4
where
count a
(āryikā
from D
and Te
ponder
has yet

9. a
tatra s
karmay
10.
tayah/
khamti

The Eight Matrices of Doctrine

The purpose of assuming the mahāvratas is to reduce to a minimum the sphere and frequency of activities that would otherwise generate the influx of karmas and the rise of fresh passions. The stopping of karmic influx, called *saṃvara*,⁹ is achieved by various methods; these basically involve control of the senses and the development of extreme mindfulness. More specifically, the Jāinas set forth three restraints (*gupti*) and five rules of conduct (*saṃmiti*); taken together these comprise the so-called eight matrices of doctrine (*aṣṭa-pravacana-mātrkā*),¹⁰ exercises that prepare a monk for the advanced meditational states through which karmic matter is finally eliminated from the soul.

The term *gupti* refers to a progressive curbing of the activities of mind, body, and speech; hence the monk undertakes long periods of silence, remains motionless for hours on end, strives for the one-pointedness that stills the intellectual process, and so forth. The *saṃmitis* include: (1) care in walking (*īryā-saṃmiti*)—a mendicant must neither run nor jump, but should move ahead slowly, gaze turned downwards, so that he will avoid stepping on any creature no matter how small; (2) care in speaking (*bhāṣā-saṃmiti*)—in addition to observing the vow of truthfulness,

speaks of a large number of female mendicants (*sādhvī*) in the order of Mahāvīra (see above, Ch. I), and even today nuns constitute a majority in both the Śvetāmbara and Sthānakavāsī sects. (See pls. 28 and 30.) According to the most recent census, taken in 1977, the Śvetāmbaras had approximately 1,200 monks and 3,400 nuns, the Sthānakavāsīs 325 monks and 522 nuns. Among Digambaras, where the number of mendicants has always been small, there were at last count about 65 monks (*munis*), and sixty *kṣullakas* and *ailakas*, and fifty nuns (*āryikās* and *kṣullikās*). [These figures are based upon personal communication from Dr. Nagin J. Shah (Śvetāmbaras), Mr. Kantilal D. Kora (Sthānakavāsīs and Terāpanthis), and Pandit Narendra J. Bhisikar (Digambaras).] The preponderance of women (most of whom are widows) in the Jaina mendicant order has yet to be examined from a sociological perspective.

9. *abhinavakarmādānāhetur āsraṇaḥ. tasya nirodhaḥ saṃvara ity ucyate. tatra saṃsāranimittakriyānivṛttir bhāvasaṃvaraḥ. tan nirodhe tatpūrvakakarmapudgalādānavicchedo dravyasaṃvaraḥ. SS: §785.*

10. *samyagyoganigraho guptiḥ/ īryābhāṣaiṣaṇādānanikṣepotsargāḥ saṃmitayaḥ/ TS: ix, 4-5. "edāo aṭṭhapavayaṇamādāo ṇāṇadaṃsaṇacarittam/ rakhaṃti sadā muṇio mātā puttam va payadāo/" Quoted in JSK: III, 149.*

he should speak only when absolutely necessary and then in as few words as possible; (3) care in accepting alms (*esanā-samiti*)—only appropriate food may be taken, and it should be consumed as if it were unpleasant medicine, that is, with no sense of gratification involved; (4) care in picking up things and putting them down (*ādāna-niksepana-samiti*)—whether moving a whisk broom, bowl, book, or any other object, the utmost caution must be observed lest some form of life be disturbed or crushed; (5) care in performing the excretory functions (*utsarga-samiti*)—the place chosen must be entirely free of living things.

The Cultivation of Righteousness and Reflection

A mendicant is encouraged to reinforce his practice of the *guptis* and *samitis* by constantly manifesting ten forms of righteousness (*daśa-dharma*):¹¹ perfect forbearance, perfect modesty, perfect uprightness, perfect truthfulness, perfect purity, perfect restraint, perfect austerity, perfect renunciation, perfect nonattachment, and perfect continence. Each of these is of course already included in some aspect of the *mahāvratas*; the purpose of their restatement is to remind the aspirant at every moment of the necessity to remain fixed in proper conduct. He must also engage repeatedly in twelve mental reflections (*anupreksā*)¹² upon certain conditions of the universe, of human existence, and so forth; contemplation of such things will ostensibly increase his detachment from the world, protect him from any tendencies toward heretical views, and spur his efforts towards final enlightenment.

The twelve *anupreksā* are: (1) The transitoriness of everything that surrounds one; (2) the utter helplessness of beings in the face of death; (3) the relentless cycle of rebirth, with its attendant suffering; (4) the absolute aloneness of

11. *uttamaksamāmārdavāriavāsaucasatyasamyamatapastyāgākincanya-brahmacāryāni dharmāḥ*, TS, p. 6.

12. *Ibid.*: ix, 7. See *Kārttikeyānupreksā* (Uḥadhye intro.)

each in
that s
other;
a seen
which
be sto
can be
verse,
operat
respon
that m
durlab
have
ment,
attain
Jinas
menta
how t

Victo
His re
new J
dure
More
for sy
jaya,
that h
that h
his m
which
foreve
face g
Digar
ty, T
vllsio
gatrmas
tical

wrong beliefs that his practices are not efficacious, that

Victory over the Afflictions

process. Twelve such practices are considered especially

śaṭṭamśaḥ śaṭṭakāṅghyāraṭṭakāryaṭṭadyāsaṭṭakāśaṭṭavāṭṭavācāṇāḥ 1820

many small pleasures to which he was once accustomed. Further, the sight of a lovely woman must leave him totally unmoved. The pain produced by the constant walking and difficult meditative postures required of a monk must be ignored.

And so the list of discomforts and difficulties to be patiently borne goes on: a hard wooden bed; the scolding, injury, or indignity often visited upon beggars; the disappointment of receiving no alms; the pains of illness, of thorns, of dirt which gathers for want of a bath; the failure of certain persons to approve or praise what he has undertaken or to show the reverence ordinarily due a holy man. One must abandon, moreover, any conceit which might arise from knowing that he has greater spiritual insight than most people; conversely, he should not feel despair because he understands less than a Jina or ācārya. Finally, the monk may never allow himself to succumb, even in the face of great frustration, to the most pernicious of wrong beliefs: that his practices are not efficacious, that austerities bring no spiritual benefit, that he is in fact making a monumental error by following the ascetic path.

Ordering the difficult aspects of monkish existence into a list for contemplation by the beginning ascetic has a dual function. He becomes better able to deal with the reality of these discomforts by virtue of having coped so often with the images thereof. Perhaps even more important, he is reminded by the very existence of such a list that he is not alone in his quest; countless others have undergone similar trials, and have emerged victorious.

Austerities: Internal and External

In addition to observing the restrictions called for by the mahāvratas, Jaina monks ordinarily perform certain voluntary austerities (tapas) intended to aid their spiritual progress. Twelve such practices are considered especially useful; of these, six are "external" and six "internal." The former group involves the deliberate generation of physical

afflic
exter
little
to fo
ging
likel
refus
yāga
com
to sl
He i
sana
avoi
othe
the
to o
mid
peri
T
ta)
elde
they
ya);
the
is by
are
tatic
also
high

Dhy
Jain
deta

14
nakā
15
Ibid.

afflictions.¹⁴ Hence the aspirant may fast (*anaśana*) for extended periods, or perhaps reduce his food intake to as little as one morsel a day (*avamaudarya*). He may limit to four or five the number of houses to be visited on begging rounds (*vṛtti-parisaṃkhyāna*), thereby making it unlikely that he will receive his normal daily ration. He may refuse to accept stimulating or delicious food (*rasa-parityāga*); thus taking only dry and tasteless fare, he overcomes any undue interest in eating and curbs the tendency to sleep during daylight hours (to nap after a heavy meal). He is encouraged to stay in lonely places (*vivikta-śayyāsana*)—caves, abandoned houses, forests—in order to avoid becoming dependent upon the companionship of others. Finally, he may engage in various mortifications of the body (*kāya-kleśa*); these must be in no way injurious to other beings, so they take such forms as standing in the mid-day sun, maintaining difficult postures for very long periods, or sitting outside during cold weather.

The internal austerities include¹⁵: repentence (*prāyaścitta*) of transgressions due to negligence; reverence to the elders (*vinaya*); service to other monks, especially when they are ill (*vaiyāvṛtṭya*); study of the scriptures (*svādhyāya*); renunciation of all egoistic thoughts (*vyutsarga*); and the cultivation of trance states (*dhyāna*). Of these, *dhyāna* is by far the most significant. The long hours of the night are often passed by the mendicant in a state of deep meditation; thus he not only attains great peace of mind but also develops the internal control so necessary to reach the higher *guṇasthānas*.

Dhyāna: Jaina Meditational Practices

Jaina texts provide surprisingly little information on the details of *dhyāna* practice. In part this is due to the *ācāryas*

14. *anaśanāvamaudaryavṛttiparisaṃkhyānarasaparityāgaviviktaśayyāsana-kāyakleśāḥ bāhyaṃ tapaḥ* / Ibid.: ix, 19.

15. *prāyaścittavinayavaiyāvṛtṭyasvādhyāyavyutsargadhyānāny* uttaram / Ibid.: ix, 20.

traditional emphasis upon those austerities which lie within the reach of a majority of aspirants; the more refined trance states are normally attainable only by a select group of skilled contemplatives. The very nature of meditation itself, moreover, tends to discourage written exposition; so esoteric a teaching is best conveyed on a personal basis.

What few references to the subject that do exist classify dhyāna into four types.¹⁶ Two of these are cases of one-pointed concentration which may occur spontaneously and which focus upon objects unsuitable for spiritual progress; they are, therefore, to be eliminated. The first, *ārtadhyāna*, involves preoccupation with something unpleasant or sorrowful—the necessity of contact with that which is disagreeable, the loss of loved ones or valued possessions, physical or psychic pain, the desire for theretofore unattained pleasures. The second, *raudradhyāna*, is a sort of “cruel concentration,” wherein the individual may dwell upon the perverse pleasures of causing injury to others. It is said that these negative mental states may persist even into the sixth *gunasthāna*; they are best avoided by careful practice of the *guptis*.

The two remaining forms of dhyāna require continuous cultivation and contribute directly to the soul's quest for liberation; they are designated as *dharmadhyāna* (virtuous concentration) and *śukladhyāna* (pure concentration). *Dharmadhyāna* entails the intense contemplation, for a short period (up to forty-eight minutes) of one of several objects:¹⁷ (1) the teachings of the Jina on the nine *tattvas* (see Chapter V, n. 30) and how these teachings can best be communicated to others (*ājñāvicaya*); (2) the great misery suffered by other beings (whose minds are impelled by passions and blinded by ignorance) and the means by which these beings can be saved (*apāvavicaya*); (3) the mysterious mechanisms of karmic influx, binding, duration, and outcome and the fact that the soul is funda-

16. *Ārtaraudradharmyasūktānt*, *pare mokṣahem*, *Ibid.*, ix, 28-29.

17. *ājñāpāvavicayasamsthānavicaya* *dharmyam* / *Ibid.*: ix, 36.

mentally independent of these processes and thus able to disengage itself therefrom (*vipākāvicaya*); (4) the structure of the universe and the interplay of causes that brings souls to their particular destinies (*samsthānavicaya*).

Diligent practice of these dharmadhyānas leads one to seek more and more the states of omniscience and perfect purity which characterize a Jina; thus he will eventually begin to cultivate the *śukladhyānas*, through which such states become accessible. Before describing these higher forms of meditation, the relation of dharmadhyāna to the overall scheme of spiritual development must be considered.

It will be recalled that acceptance of the mahāvratas automatically places an aspirant in the sixth *guṇasthāna*. This stage is called *pramatta-virata*, indicative of the fact that the bond of carelessness (*pramāda*), as well as the passions (*kaṣāya*) which produce it, have not yet been overcome. During the short periods when one of the dharmadhyānas is achieved, *pramāda* is suppressed and the meditator dwells temporarily in the seventh *guṇasthāna* (called *apramatta-virata*, restraint free of carelessness); hence the dedicated practitioner of these dhyānas will be constantly moving back and forth between the sixth and seventh *guṇasthāna* stages. Such experiences of trances free from *pramāda* are considered by Jainas to be preparatory to salvation, but are not in themselves sufficient to overcome the subtle passions which constitute the most tenacious forms of *cāritra-mohaniya karma*. Thus it is only with attainment of the eighth *guṇasthāna* (called *apūrya-karaṇa*, unprecedented spiritual progress) that one actually mounts the *śreṇi* or ladder leading inevitably to *mokṣa*.¹⁸ Attainment of *apūrya-karaṇa* cannot occur except through the practice of *śukladhyāna*.

It is interesting to note that, although Jainas have developed such meditative exercises as *sāmāyika* and the aforementioned types of dharmadhyāna, they have traditionally

18. For details on the various processes involved in climbing the *śreṇi*, see *SJP*: 275-280.

paid scant attention to the more magical paths of awakening so heavily favored by other Indian schools. Thus we find in their ancient texts no mention of yogic control over respiration (*prāṇāyāma*), or of the mystical centers of psychic energy (the *kuṇḍalinī* or the *cakras*, for example). Jaina teachers seem to have felt a pronounced repugnance for occult powers and the practices which aimed specifically to generate them; such techniques are considered suitable mainly for destructive purposes, hence to be avoided.¹⁹ Perhaps this attitude can be traced back to Makkhali Gosāla's attempt to kill Mahāvīra with yogic heat; in any case, Jainism has remained for the most part untouched by the sort of tantric practices which typified many Śaivite cults and eventually permeated the Buddhist community as well.²⁰

Indeed, we might have remained unaware that the Jainas had been exposed to any tantric influences whatsoever were it not for the fact that four mystical trances, somewhat parallel to those of the dharma type, are recommended by certain authors of medieval times as useful preliminaries to higher (*śukla*) forms of meditation. These trances, which can be cultivated either by monks or laypeople, are as follows: (1) *piṇḍastha-dhyāna*, concentra-

19. We should not infer that Jainas have been altogether unfamiliar with supernatural abilities. Texts from the earliest times ascribe seemingly magical powers (especially moving without touching the ground) to eminent monks; but these powers are said to be the by-products of meditation and superior insight, rather than a result of "occult" practices.

20. In the medieval period the Jainas did develop a large number of mystical diagrams (*yantras*), as well as rituals (*vidhāna*) associated with them. The *yantras*, inscribed on metal, contained the names of Tīrthāṅkaras, the syllables of the *namaskāra*-mantra, and various "seed" syllables sacred to the manifold *śāsana-devatās* (see Ch. VII n. 13) of the Jaina pantheon. Over forty such *yantras* are known to exist (see *JSK*: IV, 354–383), although only a few, notably the *Rṣimaṇḍala*, *Kalikūṇḍadaṇḍa*, *Gaṇadharavalaya* (see pl. 11), and *Siddha-cakra* are still in use for rituals of propitiation. These rituals were supervised by advanced laymen (*yatis*, *kṣullakas*, *bhaṭṭārakas*, etc.) and were kept strictly within the discipline enjoined by the *śrāvakācāras*. Mendicants could not take part in the ceremonies, but they could chant the mantras. Lacking the basic ingredient of the tantric cult—fusion of the mundane and the supermundane—such practices seem to have had little effect upon the development of Jainism.

tion u
conce
conce
dhyā
the n

Pin
ficati
visua
from
air, a
the g
in ev
elem
man
an as
petal
imag
and

St
by c
envi
lable
ano
four
hear
burn
next
thes
two
whi
this

2
bara
text
piṇḍ
sūtra
in the

tion upon certain imaginary objects; (2) *padastha-dhyāna*, concentration upon holy chants; (3) *rūpastha-dhyāna*, concentration upon the form of the Jina; (4) *rūpātīta-dhyāna*, concentration upon that which transcends form—the nature of the siddha.²¹

Pinḍastha-dhyāna basically involves the mystical purification of the physical self. This is accomplished through visualization of certain scenes constructed in the mind from “material” of the four physical elements, earth, fire, air, and water. (The elements must be understood here as the gross types of earth, water, fire, and air encountered in everyday experience, rather than the subtle, invisible elements of all worldly objects postulated by certain brahmanical schools.) Using the earth element, for example, an aspirant mentally creates a vast ocean with a thousand-petalled lotus at its center; he then “enters” this picture, imagining himself seated on a white throne atop the lotus and fully prepared to eliminate all karmas.

Such an exercise (called *pārthivī-dhāraṇā*) is followed by one employing the element of fire. Here the meditator envisions a lotus in his navel, inscribed with sacred syllables from the namaskāra-mantra. He further imagines another lotus possessed of eight petals, representing the four ghātiyā and four aghātiyā karmas, situated in his heart. Flames rise from the navel-lotus to the heart-lotus, burning the eight karma-petals of the latter to ashes. The next step is, of course, to visualize the elimination of even these “ashes” or symbolic residual karmas. This is done in two phases. First the practitioner creates the image of a whirlwind from the element of air; concentrating upon this wind, he causes it to blow into his heart and carry off

21. For a detailed description of these four dhyānas, taken from the Digambara text *Jñānārṇava* (by Śubhacandra, eleventh century) and the Śvetāmbara text *Yogaśāstra* (by Hemacandra, twelfth century), see *SJP*: 285–290. The terms pinḍastha, padastha, rūpastha, and rūpātīta are not attested in the *Tattvārtha-sūtra* of Umāsvāti, and in the opinion of Tatia are not to be found “anywhere in the Jaina works earlier than the *Jñānārṇava*.” *Ibid.*: 288.

most of the ashes. (The few that remain are then washed away completely by a great internal rainstorm generated from the water element by the process called *varuṇa-dhāraṇā*. Finally, the yogin completes his practice of *pin-dastha-dhyāna* by engaging in *tattva-rūpaṇī*, wherein the body is envisioned as totally pure, devoid of all "unclean" substances (phlegm, pus, blood, and so on) and possessing a luster like that of the Jina.

In *padastha-dhyāna*, the syllables of the *namaskāra* mantra are rearranged into various mystical formulas, which the aspirant chants continuously; this procedure is said to confer extraordinary powers, corresponding to the *siddhis* described in yogic texts of other schools. Such powers generally involve control of the physical world—the ability to fly, to produce fire at will, and so forth.

The *rūpastha-dhyāna* is generated by picturing a Jina in the holy assembly (*samavasaraṇa*), with particular attention to his overwhelming majesty and splendor. Intensive contemplation of this inspiring image will move the earnest seeker to ever higher levels of spiritual endeavor.

Finally, in *rūpātīta-dhyāna*, one concentrates upon the various abstract qualities—omniscience, perfect bliss, infinite energy—which constitute the "body" of the *siddha* or totally liberated being. The visualization skills developed through the previous exercises are here employed to give the meditator a kind of experiential contact with the "ultimate self" (*paramātmā*), that is, he perceives a soul in that formless, unfettered state to which he too may someday attain. This experience is of course not equivalent to that of *siddhahood*, actual perfection of the *siddha* qualities can come about only by mounting the *śreṇī* ladder and climbing upwards through rigorous cultivation of the

pure trances. The *sukladhyānas* mentioned above. Let us turn now to this final and all-important phase of the Jina's path, for which all the devotions, restraints, and austerities described thus far have been nothing more than preparation.

ŚUKLADHYĀNA
Four types of these, the
tions of
during
suppress
passions
scribed
IV). Spe
in the ei
lana pas
cesses o
the aspi
stage ca
will fall
face," as
energy t
of the p
eleventh
the two
karmas

The t
made p
nature o
scriptur
(accomp
nas will
the med
that ex
known
labeled
concept
ond form

22. tat
ñjane kāya
śamayan k
punaḥ sam

ŚUKLADHYĀNA: THE "PURE TRANCES"

Four types of śukladhyāna are described in Jaina texts. Of these, the first two are said to operate in the "lower" portions of the śreṇi, the eighth through tenth guṇasthānas, during which there is progressive overcoming (either by suppression or outright elimination) of both the subsidiary passions (no-kaṣāyas) and those very subtle passions described as "smoldering" (saṃjvalana-kaṣāya; see Chapter IV). Specifically, the no-kaṣāyas are rendered inoperative in the eighth and ninth guṇasthāna stages and the saṃjvalana passions in the tenth. As noted earlier, if these processes occur via the mechanism of suppression (upaśama), the aspirant will subsequently reach only the temporary stage called upaśānta-moha, the eleventh guṇasthāna, and will fall again to a lower stage when the passions "resurface," as it were. But eventually his soul will gain sufficient energy to mount the śreṇi with actual *elimination* (kṣaya) of the passions at each stage; thus he will pass over the eleventh guṇasthāna altogether and become established in the twelfth, called kṣīṇa-moha, wherein all mohanīya-karmas will have forever ceased to afflict him.

The two dhyānas through which these attainments are made possible involve discursive concentration upon the nature of the tattvas (existents) as set forth in the Jaina scriptures; thus both are described by the term *savitarka* (accompanied by conceptual thinking). Each of these dhyānas will focus upon a single existent. In the first, however, the meditator's attention continually shifts from one of that existent's countless modes to another, a process known as *vicāra*. Hence this form of concentration is labeled *prthaktva-savitarka-savicāra*: accompanied by conceptual thinking applied to various aspects.²² The second form, by contrast, attests only to a single mode of the

22. tatra dravyaparamāṇuṃ bhāvaparamāṇuṃ vā dhyāyan . . . arthavya-
ñjane kāyavacaśi ca prthaktvena saṃkramatā manasā . . . mohaprakṛtīr upa-
śamayan kṣapayaṃś ca prthaktvavitarkavīcāradhyānabhāg bhavati. sa eva
punaḥ samūlatūlaṃ mohanīyaṃ nirdidhākṣann anantaḡuṇaviśuddhiyogaviśe-

existent under examination, thus it is called *ekatva-savitarka-avicāra*: accompanied by conceptual thinking applied to one aspect. The correlation between these two types of śukladhyāna and the spiritual processes of the eighth, ninth, and tenth guṇasthānas, especially regarding the precise mechanism whereby the passions are negated, is not fully explained by the Jaina texts. There is no doubt, however, that without cultivating such trances the attainment of the twelfth guṇasthāna would not be possible.

The State of Arhat

Upon entering this twelfth stage, an aspirant reaches the upper portion of the śreṇī; here, his spiritual career is nearly at an end. Having destroyed the mohanīya karmas, which had afflicted him from beginningless time, he realizes the state of perfect purity called *yathākhyāta-cāritra* (conduct exactly conforming to that which has been stated). With the falling away of all factors which prevent proper conduct, moreover, there is a simultaneous end to those which block omniscience, total bliss, and unlimited energy, for all of these varieties of karmic matter have existed in a state of complete interdependence.

Thus the individual now rises spontaneously to the thirteenth guṇasthāna, called sayoga-kevali (possessing omniscience while in the state of embodiment and activity). Characterized by the "four infinities" (knowledge, perception, bliss, energy), this level is in effect the highest possible as long as the state of embodiment persists, and it is one that can be reached only from the human destiny (that is, gods cannot achieve it). A being in the thirteenth guṇasthāna is referred to as arhat, he who is worthy of worship, and kevalin, alone, since he has become fully isolated from the ghātiyā karmas; similarly, the omniscient cognition with which he is endowed is called kevalajñāna.

— sam āśritya . . . śrutajñānopayogo nivṛttārthavyaṅjanayogasamkrāntiḥ avicalitamanāḥ kṣīnakaṣāyo vaidūryamanir iva nirupalepo dhyātvā punar na nivartata ity uktam ekatvavitarkam. SS: §906.

Attainment
If one who
viously ac
(śubha) nā
maker" (tī
of the Jaina
of his half-
of arhats a
it is tempti
have consi
ferentiating
status poss

Such a
Buddhist s
Buddha as
with the e
that only t
world-peri
omniscience
ried this di
ing that th
at all.²⁵ Ne

23. This p
is *siddhi* open
a chosen few
they were orig
to radical diffe
qualitative per
soul there are
unique." SJP: 1

24. Compa
ca bhagavato
punar anutpa
pratyekabuddh
tyantavigamāt
deśakāleṣu, ar
dharmakośabh

25. Compa
evaṃ mayā pr
naitan nirvāṇa
tam//64// ma
mūḍho 'si mā
cijñāḥ sarvajñō

Attainment of the Tīrthaṅkara Status

If one who attains to the thirteenth guṇasthāna has previously acquired "the ability to teach"—those wholesome (śubha) nāma-karmas which confer the "nature of a ford-maker" (*tīrthaṅkara-prakṛti*), he will become a propagator of the Jaina tradition, one of the twenty-four Tīrthaṅkaras of his half-cycle. The notion that only so limited a number of arhats achieve Tīrthaṅkarahood seems rather arbitrary; it is tempting to suggest, therefore, that the Jaina teachers have considered certain souls to possess some innate differentiating factor that has made their attainment of this status possible.²³

Such a distinction *was* well-developed among certain Buddhist sects. The Vaibhāṣikas, for example, defined a Buddha as an enlightened *teacher*, by way of contrast with the enlightened *disciples* or arhats; they further held that only twenty-five Buddhas could appear during a given world-period, and that these beings possessed a quality of omniscience which the arhats lacked.²⁴ Mahāyānists carried this dichotomy to its logical extreme, eventually denying that the arhat could be called enlightened or liberated at all.²⁵ Nevertheless, there is no textual evidence that the

23. This possibility has been suggested by Dr. Gopinath Kaviraj: ". . . so is *siddhi* open to all, though the status of Īśvara or tīrthaṅkara is reserved for a chosen few only. What the special qualifications of these few are and how they were originally acquired we do not know. The Jaina view seems to point to radical differences inherent in the souls in spite of their essential sameness of qualitative perfection. Apart from the basic difference due to *bhavyatā* in a soul there are other differences as well, which in fact tend to make each soul unique." *SJP*: foreword, xxi.

24. Compare: ajñānaṃ hi bhūtārthadarśanapratibandhād andhakāram. tac ca bhagavato Buddhasya pratipakṣalābhenātyantaṃ sarvathā sarvatra jñeye punar anutpattidharmatvād hatam. ato 'sau sarvathā sarvathātāndhakārāḥ. pratyekabuddhaśrāvakā api kāmāṃ sarvatra hatāndhakārāḥ, kliṣṭasaṃmohātyantavigamāt? na tu sarvathā. tathā hy eṣāṃ buddhadharmeṣv ativiprakṛ, 'a-deśakāleṣu, artheṣu cānantaprabhedeṣu bhavaty evākliṣṭam ajñānam. *Abhidharmakośabhāṣya*: 1.

25. Compare: traidhātukān niḥśṛtasya śrāvakasya vijānataḥ/ bhavaty evaṃ mayā prāptaṃ nirvāṇam amalāṃ śivam//63// tām eva tatra prakāśemi naitan nirvāṇam ucyate/ sarvadharmāvabodhāt tu nirvāṇam prāpyate 'mṛtam//64// maharṣayo yathā tasmai karuṇāṃ saṃniveśya vai/ kathayanti ca mūḍho 'si mā te 'bhūd jñānavān aham//65// . . . tvaṃ mohād apy akim-cijñāḥ sarvajño 'smīti bhāṣase//71// *Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra*: v, 63-71.

Jainas ever tried to set the Tīrthaṅkaras apart in such a manner. Indeed, absolute omniscience is in their tradition the fundamental criterion for liberation; thus it would have made no sense for the ācāryas to have spoken of an arhat who was "not omniscient" or who was somehow "less omniscient" than the teacher-Jina. The only differences between arhats and Tīrthaṅkaras, therefore, were of a worldly (hence not ultimately significant) nature; although the teacher possessed certain miraculous powers, especially the divyadhvani, the quality of his enlightenment was in no way superior. As for these powers themselves, we have seen that they follow karmically from particular modes of conduct cultivated in past lifetimes.

Specifically, Jaina texts set forth sixteen forms of action conducive to the production of tīrthaṅkara-prakṛti-karmas:²⁶ (1) purity of right faith; (2) reverence to elders; (3) proper observance of vows; (4) ceaseless pursuit of knowledge; (5) intense desire of emancipation; (6) charity; (7) practicing austerities to the best of one's ability; (8) removal of obstacles that threaten the equanimity of ascetics; (9) serving the meritorious ones (monks and nuns) in their times of illness with one's whole heart and body; (10) devotion to the arhats; (11) devotion to the ācāryas; (12) devotion to the learned monks; (13) devotion to the scriptures; (14) practicing the six essential daily duties (āvaśyakas); (15) illumination of the teachings of the Jina; (16) fervent affection for brothers in faith (those following the same spiritual path).²⁷ Of the sixteen, three are considered especially significant in fostering tīrthaṅkara-nature: charity, service to sick mendicants, and illumination of the teachings.

26. darśanaviśuddhir vinayasampannatā śīlavrateṣv anaticāro 'bhīkṣajñānopayogasamvegau śaktitas tyāgatapaśī sādhusamādhīr vaiyāvṛtṭyakaraṇam arhadācāryabahuśrutapravacanabhaktir āvaśyakāparihāṇir mārgaprabhāvanā pravacanavatsalatvam iti tīrthakaratvasya/ TS: vi, 24.

27. Compare the list of six perfections (*pāramitā*) considered as prerequisites to Buddhahood in Mahāyāna texts: 1) charity (*dāna*); 2) moral conduct (*śīla*); 3) forbearance (*kṣānti*); 4) effort (*vīrya*); 5) meditation (*dhyāna*); 6) wisdom (*prajñā*).





24. Ācārya Śāntisāgara (top row, center; see p. 1) surrounded by mendicant and ailaka disciples (circa 1934). Note the peacock feather whisk brooms and water gourds, the sole possessions of Digambara monks.



25. A Digambara muni in meditation.



26. A group of Śvetāmbara monks (1934). Courtesy of the Mahāvīra Jaina Vidyālaya, Bombay.



27. Initiation of a Śvetāmbara nun. Courtesy of Kantiroy Photo Studio, Bombay.



28. Svetāmbara nuns attending to a sermon. Courtesy of Kantiroy Photo Studio, Bombay.

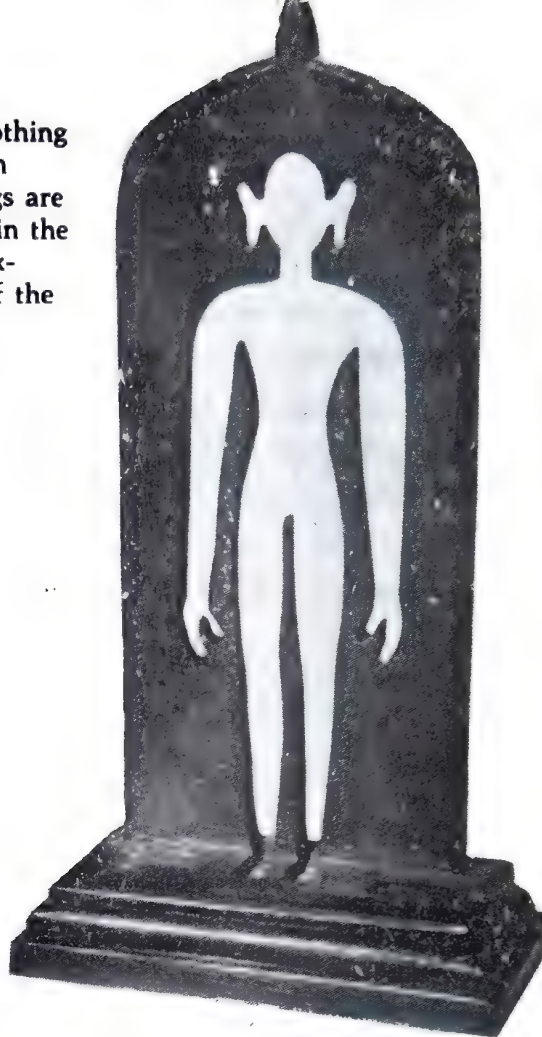


29. Sthānakavāsi monks. Note the use of muh-pattis (see p. 245).



30. Terāpantha nuns. Courtesy of
The Times of India, Bombay.

31. A siddha, represented as nothing more than an external outline in order to suggest that such beings are without material forms yet retain the shape of their final embodied existence (see p. 270). Courtesy of the Horniman Museum, London.



32. Raychandbhai Mehta with Mahatma Gandhi (right; see p. 315). Courtesy of the Bombay Jain Yuvak Sangh, Bombay.

It is important to remember that no Jaina should pursue these meritorious activities with the aim of becoming a Tīrthaṅkara; to do so would, strictly speaking, constitute a nidāna or forbidden wish (that is, desiring worldly gain in return for one's deeds).²⁸ It is assumed, therefore, that one becomes a Tīrthaṅkara all unawares, as it were; this destiny has ordinarily not been predicted for him, and he has directed neither his attention nor his energy towards it.

The Nature of Omniscience (Kevalajñāna)

We have said that any arhat, whether destined to be a Tīrthaṅkara or not, is endowed with the quality of omniscience. What, precisely, does this quality entail? The actual term used is kevalajñāna, 'knowledge isolated from karmic interference'; occasionally we find *anantajñāna*, "infinite knowledge." Such knowledge is compared to a mirror in which every one of the innumerable existents (*dravyas*), in all its qualities (*guṇas*) and modes (*paryāyas*), is simultaneously reflected.²⁹ These "knowables" are cognized without any volition whatsoever on the part of the arhat. Furthermore, no activity of senses or mind is involved; there is only direct perception by the soul.³⁰

Omniscience as defined by the Jainas, then, is clearly in the realm of the supermundane; indeed, one finds similar qualities ascribed to God by the theistic schools. Virtually no tradition other than Jainism has dared to attach so cosmic an attribute to a human being. (Later Buddhist

28. This is in strong contrast to the *bodhisattva* path in Buddhism, wherein the aspirant resolves over and over again to achieve Buddhahood and even dedicates the karmic fruits of all his good deeds to that end.

29. *yadiye caitanye mukura iva bhāvās cidacitaḥ/ samam bhānti dhrauvyavyayajanilasanto 'ntarahitāḥ// jagatsākṣī mārgaprakāṣanaparo bhānūr iva yo/ Mahāvīrasvāmī nayanapathagāmī bhavatu naḥ// NNP: 17 (Mahāvīrāṣṭakastotra).*

30. The sense organs and the physical basis of mind (called *dravya-mana*), which form part of the human body, must continue to exist as long as the kevalin remains alive; but they are rendered inoperative as soon as the soul is able to cognize objects directly: "samanaskatvāt sayogakevalino 'pi samjñina iti cet, na. teṣāṃ kṣīṇāvaraṇānāṃ mano'vaṣṭambhabalena bāhyārthagrahaṇā-bhāvatas tad asattvāt." Quoted in *JSK: I, 163 (from Dhavalāṭīkā).*

school
rivals,
every
a-time
ing th
could
attent
thing
trine,
necess

cess,
Jainas
this d
trayed
trary,
for M
exalte

In
overe
once.
porta
the Ji
of kar
above
these
insign
which
any o
one.³³

31.
perman
yady ev
vā yat
bhāṣya
Buddha

32.
omnisci
vārttika
on this
and Sin
33.

schools, perhaps in an attempt to compete with their Jaina rivals, did refer to the Buddha as *sarvajña*, "he who knows everything." But this term implies a sequential, or one-at-a-time knowledge of existents, rather than the feat of grasping them all simultaneously. A Buddha, in other words, *could* know about any given thing simply by turning his attention towards it, but he would not be aware of that thing otherwise. The denial of the soul in Buddhist doctrine, moreover, meant that a *sarvajña*'s knowledge was necessarily a function of his ever-fluctuating mental process, rather than of some permanent or essential self.)³¹ Jains have never felt compelled to produce apologetics for this doctrine, despite the fact that others have often portrayed it as extreme or even preposterous.³² To the contrary, they cite the very uniqueness of the claims made for Mahāvīra and the other arhats as evidence for the exalted nature of their path.

In examining these claims, we must be careful not to overemphasize the aspect of "knowing all existents at once." Jains themselves have generally placed little importance upon this ability; they have stressed, rather, that the Jina's soul in fact *perceives only itself*. But the absence of karmic obstructions in such a soul means that, as noted above, all external objects will be reflected therein; hence these objects become "known" in an indirect, and relatively insignificant, sense. It is complete *self*-knowledge, then, which constitutes the defining mark of the omniscient being; any other description is simply a worldly or "conventional" one.³³

31. The difficulties raised by postulating omniscience in the absence of a permanent soul were recognized even by certain Buddhists (the Pudgalavādins): *yady evaṃ tarhi na Buddhaḥ sarvajñaḥ prāpnoti. na hi kiñcic cittaṃ asti caittā vā yat sarvaṃ jānīyāt, kṣaṇikatvāt. pudgalas tu jānīyāt. Abhidharmakośa-bhāṣya: 467.* For a comparison of the omniscience of Mahāvīra and that of the Buddha, see P. S. Jaini 1974.

32. Kumārila mounts a vigorous attack on the Jaina claims regarding omniscience in his *Śloka-vārttika*; Buddhist critiques appear in the *Pramāṇa-vārttika* of Dharmakīrti and the *Tattvasaṅgraha* of Śāntarakṣita. For full details on this controversy, see *Pramāṇamīmāṃsā* (Sanghavi's comments on pp. 27-33); and Singh 1974.

33. *jāṇadi passadi savaṃ vavaḥāraṇaṇa kevali bhagavaṃ/ kevalaṇaṇi*

Samudghāta: The Yogic "Thinning" of Karmic Matter

Endowed with such knowledge and pure bliss (*ananta-sukha*), the arhat will remain in the thirteenth *guṇasthāna* until the time for his death is at hand. The two major Jaina traditions are at odds concerning his mode of existence during this period. Doctrinal conflicts over the post-enlightenment career of a Tīrthaṅkara have already been discussed in some detail (see Chapter I, n. 78); not surprisingly, a parallel divergence characterizes the sectarian descriptions on nonteaching arhats. Digambaras hold that these beings dwell in isolated glory, requiring no food or drink, totally free from impurities of any sort. Śvetāmbaras, however, see the arhat as one who still needs food and who continues to lead the normal life of a mendicant, except of course that he generates no karmic influx in doing so.

Both traditions agree that no arhat, whether a Tīrthaṅkara or not, need resort to *sallekhanā*, since he is already free of passions and will not be reborn.³⁴ Only one kind of bondage remains for him: that produced by the fourfold *aghātiyā* karmas (see Chapter IV, n. 47), which necessitates the continuing state of embodiment and its resultant activities of body, speech, and mind. (Hence the kevalin is said to be *sayoga*, with activities.) Of these karmas, three types (*nāma*, *gotra*, and *āyu*) are thought to be of equal duration; they will all be "used up" at precisely the same time, namely, the last moment of embodied existence. *Vedanīya* ("pertaining to pleasure and pain"), however, may have been accumulated in such vast quantities as to now be "in excess," sufficient to last through several more lifetimes.

jānadi passadi ṇiyameṇa appāṇaṃ// *Niyamasāra*: k 159. paśyaty ātmā saha-japaramātmānam ekam viśuddhaṃ/ svāntaḥ śuddhyāvasathamahimādhāram atyantadhīram// svātmany uccair avicalatayā sarvadāntarnimagnaṃ/ tasmin naiva prakṛtimahati vyāvahāraprapaṇcaḥ// *Niyamasāra*[tīkā]: k 282.

34. The Śvetāmbara description of the *gaṇadharas* fasting during their final month (see Ch. II) should not be taken to mean that these enlightened beings practiced *sallekhanā*. The proper interpretation is, rather, that any kevalin, knowing the time of his death in advance, will cease to take food when the maintenance of his body is no longer necessary.

Be
cord
the k
ing
amo
that
thro
ing f
very
conn
for e
prev
sion
cloth
cloth
make
to in

O
to co
that
such
cases
abun
soul
(yog
bodil
types
few
sūkṣ
gross
the g
Ther
ing,
cessa

35.
kṛtvā p
sūkṣma
36.
the asp

Because karmic matter cannot fall away of its own accord until it has yielded its fruits or appropriate results, the kevalin (who will of course have no further births during which such fruition might occur) must reduce the amount of the vedanīya factors, bringing it "into line" with that of the other aghātiyā karmas. This is accomplished through a process called *samudghāta*, which means "bursting forth," in which the soul is yogically expanded to the very limits of the universe (*loka-ākāśa*) while retaining its connection with the physical body. *Samudghāta* lasts only for eight instants, after which there is "contraction" to the previous size and shape.³⁵ Jains hold that such an expansion of the soul is analogous to the spreading out of a wet cloth; just as increasing the exposed surface area of the cloth promotes more rapid drying, so will *samudghāta* make it possible for karmas to be "thinned out," or brought to instant fruition.

One might expect this unique moment of omnipresence to correspond to final liberation. But Jaina doctrine denies that this is the case, since not every arhat must go through such an experience; *samudghāta* is called for only in those cases where, as we have seen, vedanīya karmas are overly abundant. It is from the human form, therefore, that the soul undertakes its final task: elimination of those activities (*yoga*) which necessarily accrue to the condition of embodiment. Here at last are employed the third and fourth types of *śukladhyāna*, to which the kevalin resorts just a few moments before physical death.³⁶ In the trance called *sūkṣmakriyā-anivartin* (the state of subtle movement), all gross and subtle activities of mind and speech, as well as the gross activities of the body, are absolutely stopped. There now remain only the autonomic processes: breathing, heartbeat, and the like. Even these are brought to cessation by attainment of the highest meditational state,

35. Compare: . . . *daṇḍakapāṭapratāralokapūraṇāni caturbhiḥ samayaiḥ kṛtvā punar api tāvadbhir eva samayaiḥ . . . pūrvaśarīrapramāṇo bhūtvā . . . sūkṣmakriyāpratipātidhyānaṃ dhyāyati*. SS: §906.

36. It will be recalled that the first two forms of the *śukladhyāna* brought the aspirant to the thirteenth *guṇasthāna*.

vyuparatakriyā-anivartin (absolute nonmotion). Both of these *dhyānas* are designated as *anivartin*, meaning "that from which there can be no falling back."

Thus the soul *must* proceed from the state of subtle movement into that of nonmovement, the latter being identical with the fourteenth *gunasthāna* (*ayoga-kevali*—isolated from all *ghātiyā* karmas and free of all activities). This *gunasthāna* lasts only for an instant; suddenly, as the *āyu* karmas are exhausted and death occurs, the soul leaves the body, darting upward by its very nature to the highest point of the universe (*loka-ākāśa*).³⁷ There it will reside, totally free of either bondage or movement, for all eternity.

The Siddha: The Liberated Soul

Souls in this final abode (referred to as *īṣat-prāgbhārā-bhūmi*,³⁸ "the slightly bending place," because of its dome-like appearance) are thought by Jains to possess a definite shape. (See pl. 31.) This shape is identical to that of the last incarnation, though on a slightly reduced scale (the empty spaces found in an earthly body are no longer present). No clear explanation is offered for this seeming association of the totally liberated soul with its former condition.³⁹ We can only surmise that, in addition to preserving the individuality of *siddhas* in the state of *mokṣa*

37. This rather dramatic departure from the realm of embodiment is sometimes explained as due to an "inherent tendency" of the soul to "break away from" or "rise above" all karmas. Alternatively, its arrow-like flight to the summit of the universe is ascribed to "momentum" originally set up by the bodily activities; a similar phenomenon occurs, we are told, when the potter's wheel continues to rotate long after the potter has ceased to turn it: *kulālaprayogāpāditahastadaṇḍacakrasaṃyogapūrvakam bhramaṇam. uparate 'pi tasmin pūrvaprayogād ā saṃskāraśayād bhramati . . . kiñca tathāgatipariṇāmāt. yathā . . . pradīpaśikhā svabhāvād utpatati tathā muktātmāpi nānāgatīvikāra-kāraṇakarmanirvāraṇe saty ūrdhvagatisvabhāvād ūrdhvam evābhirohati. SS: §933.*

38. See Ch. IV n. 61.

39. The technical discussion of this phenomenon suggests that contraction and expansion of a soul's *pradeśas* are due to the presence of the *nāma-karma*; the latter having been destroyed at the time of death, the liberated soul remains forever in the "shape" of its last body: *syān matam, yadi śarīrānuvidhāyī jīvaḥ,*

where
conce
previo
aspira
tion e
even t
just a
that a
finite
conve
beyon
scious
repor

All
doe
sm
...
fem
the
libe
diti

tadabh
notīti.
ṇavisar
See pl.
40.
experie
of mod
41.
oe app
cauram
ṇa itth
apayass

where all souls are otherwise of identical nature, such a concept serves to emphasize the fact that every siddha was previously an ordinary human being; hence the Jaina aspirant will be encouraged to pursue the path of purification ever more rigorously, for he will be reminded that even the most exalted souls were once trapped in bondage just as he is now.⁴⁰ But again, it must be borne in mind that any description of the perfected being, or of the infinite cognition and bliss which characterize him, is purely conventional. In reality such things, lying as they do beyond the space-time limitations of ordinary human consciousness, cannot be described at all. As Mahāvīra is reported to have said:

All sounds recoil thence, where speculation has no room, nor does the mind penetrate there. The liberated is not long or small or round or triangular . . . he is not black . . . or white . . . he is without body, without contact (of matter), he is not feminine or masculine or neuter; he perceives, he knows, but there is no analogy (whereby to know the nature of the liberated soul); its essence is without form; there is no condition of the unconditioned.⁴¹

tadabhāvāt svābhāvikalokākāśapradeśaparimāṇatvāt tāvad visarpaṇaṃ prāpnotīti. naiṣa doṣaḥ. kutaḥ? kāraṇābhāvāt. nāmakarmasambandho hi saṃharaṇavisarpaṇakāraṇam. tadabhāvāt punaḥ saṃharaṇavisarpaṇābhāvaḥ. SS: §928. See pl. 31.

40. Compare the Sāṃkhya-Yoga notion of *Īśvara*, a soul which has never experienced any form of bondage (see above, Ch. V n. 3) and yet serves as a kind of model for the spiritual efforts of those who are themselves bound.

41. *savve sarā niyattamti, takkā jattha ṇa vijjai/ māi tattha ṇa gāhiyā, oe appatitthānassa kheyanne// se ṇa dīhe ṇa hasse ṇa vaṭṭe ṇa tamse na cauraṃse ṇa parimaṃḍale, ṇa kinhe na nīle ṇa lohie ṇa halidde ṇa sukkille . . . ṇa itthi ṇa purise ṇa annahā. pariṇṇe saṇṇe uvamā ṇa vijjai, arūvī sattā, apayassa payaṃ ṇatthi.* AS: §330-332.

THE FOURTEEN GUṆASTHĀNAS

1. Mithyādr̥ṣṭi: The lowest state, in which the soul suffers from "wrong views" (mithyā-darśana) because of the presence of darśana-mohanīya karmas and the anantā-nubandhī type of passions (kaṣāya).
 2. Sāsavadana: The state of "mixed taste," reached only during a fall to the first guṇasthāna from one of the higher states.
 3. Samyak-mithyātva: The state of transition from the first to the fourth guṇasthāna and vice versa.
 4. Samyak-dr̥ṣṭi: The first rung in the ladder to salvation, the state of true vision (samyak-darśana). This is attained by overcoming both the darśana-mohanīya and the anantānubandhī passions. Mithyā-darśana, the first cause of bondage, is also overcome at this stage.
 5. Deśa-virata: The state attained by receiving the vratas prescribed for a layman. Here avirati (non-restraint) is partially overcome by rendering the apratyākhyānā-varaṇa passions inoperative.
 6. Sarva-virata: The state attained by receiving the mahāvratas (total restraint) of the mendicant. Here avirati is fully overcome by bringing an end to the function of the pratyākhyānā-varaṇa passions. Due to the presence of "carelessness," this stage is also known as pramatta-virata.
 7. Apramatta-virata: The state in which pramāda (carelessness), the third cause of bondage, is overcome by means of dharmadhyāna.
 8. Apūrvā-karaṇa
 9. Anivṛtti-karaṇa
 10. Sūkṣma-sāmparāya
- } These three comprise the śreṇi (ladder), in which the aspirant may either suppress (upaśama) or eliminate (kṣapaṇa) the no-kaṣāyas (secondary passions) and the subtle forms of the saṃjvalana passions.

11. Upaśānta-moha: The state attained through the *suppression* of the saṃjvalana passions; from here a fall to the lower states is inevitable. Progress is possible only for those who are able to *eliminate* the passions, a process which must begin at the eighth guṇasthāna.
12. Kṣīṇa-moha: The state in which even the subtle forms of saṃjvalana passions (that is, the remaining portion of mohaniya karma) are completely eliminated. Thus kaṣāya, the fourth cause of bondage, is overcome. The soul must now inevitably proceed to the higher stages.
13. Sayoga-kevalin: The state of omniscience (kevalajñāna), wherein the remaining three ghātiyā (knowledge-obscuring, perception-obscuring, and energy-restricting) karmas are eliminated. This is the state of an arhat, kevalin, Jina, or Tīrthaṅkara.
14. Ayoga-kevalin: The state attained by an arhat in the instant prior to his death. Here yoga (activity), the last cause of bondage, comes to an end. Death itself is accompanied by elimination of the four aghātiyā (feeling-producing, body-producing, longevity-determining, and environment-determining) karmas.

MOKṢA: This state, characteristic of the siddha (perfected being), involves total freedom from embodiment and thus is not included among the guṇasthānas.

IX

Jaina Society through the Ages: Growth and Survival

Causes for the Survival of Jaina Society

In charting the Jaina path of purification, from its philosophical basis to the particulars of its actual practice, we have dealt with the very core of Jaina religious experience. The circumstances of Jainism as a social institution, functioning for over two millennia within the great cultural mosaic of Indian life, have remained largely unexamined; indeed, such an examination would require a book in itself and lies mainly beyond the purview of this work. Nevertheless, there are certain sociohistorical issues which are too significant to be passed over completely here. These issues revolve around the basic question of just how Jainism, alone among the non-Vedic śramaṇa traditions, has been able to survive and prosper in India up to the present day.

Most of the antibrahmanical sects died out soon after the passing of their respective founders; even Buddhism, with its centers of learning in ruins and the Buddha himself being described by brahmanical writers as simply an avatar of Viṣṇu, disappeared from the subcontinent by perhaps the fourteenth century.¹ But the Jainas somehow managed

1. Of the six *titthiyas* (Pali for *Tīrthāṅkara*) mentioned in the *Sāmaññaphalasutta* of the *Dīghanikāya* (Pūraṇa Kassapa, Makkhali Gosāla, Ajita Kesakambalī, Pakudha Kaccāyana, Nigaṇṭha Nātaputta, Saṇjaya Belaṭṭhiputta), only the Ājīvikas and the Nigaṇṭhas seem to have survived the deaths of their masters. On the disappearance of the Ājīvika sect, see Basham 1951: 187ff. On the decline of Buddhism in India, see Mitra 1954. For a contrast of the fortunes of Buddhism and Jainism, see P. S. Jaini, forthcoming (a).

to keep both their tradition and their community intact, despite the myriad forces operating against the continued existence of so tiny a heterodox minority. Let us now consider certain of the factors underlying this rather puzzling phenomenon; whether or not we are able to come to some "explanation," it may at least be possible to gain a better understanding of how Jainas, struggling as much for institutional survival as for the attainment of the noble spiritual goals set forth by the Tīrthaṅkaras, have in fact lived and applied (or failed to apply) their religious principles in the realm of everyday worldly experience.

Royal Patronage

A cardinal feature of the śramaṇa movements which arose in India circa 550 B.C. was their emphasis upon the superiority of the princely class (kṣatriya), whether in a spiritual context or a secular one.² Hence these movements tended to find common cause with local kings, who were themselves engaged in a constant fight against the claims to supremacy of the brahman class; while custom demanded that a king always be of kṣatriya origin, he might all too easily find himself reduced to little more than a figurehead for his brahman ministers. Furthermore, by opening their ranks to members of any age group or caste (and, in the case of the Jainas, even to women), the śramaṇa groups in fact created an entire separate society, parallel to the Vedic one. They were able to recruit large numbers of mendicant and lay followers and thus constituted a significant force—social, political, and economic, as well as spiritual—within the large cities where they were concentrated.

It is not surprising, therefore, to find that Indian kings commonly formed alliances (in the form of generous patronage or even outright conversion to the faith) with one or another of these groups. Such rulers may sometimes have acted out of genuine religious conviction, but often

2. Recall the story of Mahāvīra's "change of womb," and the prediction that Gautama would become either a saint or a great king (these two possibilities in fact represent two sides of the same kṣatriya coin).

they simply aimed to strengthen their position against the powerful brahmanic elements with which they had to contend. Whatever motives might have been involved, it is clear that the granting or withholding of royal support often effectively determined a sect's ability to survive in a given region. The Jaina movement was by no means an exception to this pattern; indeed, its development was from the beginning tied to the fortunes of various ruling houses, and it is in the rather remarkable ability of the Jainas to have repeatedly won kingly favor that we find the first important key to their long and relatively prosperous existence.³

Whether or not one credits the suggestion that Mahāvīra himself was of royal blood, it does seem certain that even during his time the Nigaṇṭhas were actively cultivating local monarchs, particularly King Śreṇika of Magadha. Though not a Jaina by birth, this king seems to have been converted by his wife Celanā (perhaps an aunt of Mahāvīra), and his capital at Rājagṛha became the major center of Mahāvīra's assembly. When Śreṇika's throne was usurped by his son Ajātaśatru, however, Jaina influence

³ Several regional histories of the Jainas have appeared, each drawing upon the literary and inscriptional evidence of specific periods and locations. For the ancient era, beginning with Mahāvīra and ending with the Valabhi council, one finds useful information in Smith's work (1901) on the Jaina antiquities at Mathura and in B. L. Rice's collection (1909) of epigraphic materials from Mysore and Coorg. J. C. Jain (1947) presents a clear idea of the Jaina community as depicted in the canon; and J. P. Jain (1964) attempts a chronological survey of the main events preceding the onset of the medieval period. For this period itself, the best resources are C. J. Shah (1932) on Jainism in North India, and Saletore (1938) on developments in the south, especially during the Vijayanagara epoch. These are supplemented by Desai's new collections of South Indian epigraphy (1957) and K. C. Jain's study of Jainism in Rajasthan (1963). Handiqui's critique of the *Yaśastilaka-campū* (1949) offers new material concerning the interrelation of Jainas and Śaivites around the tenth century.

On the modern period, Stevenson's *Heart of Jainism* (1915), despite the numerous defects arising from her Christian missionary zeal, is still the only study based on actual field work, in this case among the Śvetāmbara Jaina community of Gujarat. Sangave (1959) has collected a great deal of useful data pertaining to the kinds of social divisions typically found among both Śvetāmbaras and Digambaras. Finally, Sharma has contributed an article (1976) on the Jainas as a minority in Indian society; and Nevaskar (1971) attempts to compare the Jaina role in India with that of the Quakers in the West.

suffered
rather p
bound t
particula
in that s
only of
but also
a particu
a mendic
to the m

Ajātaś
Nanda d
when the
pire of C
become
and to h
described
support
dancy w
to be occ
India's g
Buddhism

4. Malal

5. *Parīśi*

Trautman 1

6. In lig
vanabelgola
certain criti
B. L. Rice, h
area in ques
did extend t
Hence, the p
out of hand.

7. Śvetār
succeeded to
particularly
of the Andh
api sādhuṇā
ācāryaiḥ ke
Parīśiṣṭaparv
claim; even
historical bas

suffered a temporary decline in the area; Ajātaśatru was rather pro-Buddhist,⁴ and though Indian kings were duty-bound to support all religions, their active patronage of a particular sect invariably brought a tremendous increase in that sect's power and prestige. This took the form not only of greater popularity among the common people, but also of material benefits (the king's annual taxes from a particular village, for example, might be turned over to a mendicant community) and of access to the court, hence to the machinery of political power.

Ajātaśatru's line was soon replaced by the pro-Jaina Nanda dynasty;⁵ the Nandas reigned until around 324 B.C., when they were swallowed up by the newly emerging empire of Candragupta Maurya. Candragupta is said to have become a disciple of the famous Jaina pontiff Bhadrabāhu, and to have accompanied him on the southward migration described in Chapter I. Certain inscriptional evidence may support this claim;⁶ in any case, the period of Jaina ascendancy was fast drawing to a close, for the throne was soon to be occupied by Candragupta's grandson Aśoka, perhaps India's greatest ancient king and an ardent patron of Buddhism.⁷

4. Malalasekera 1937: I, 35. See above, Ch. VII n. 56.

5. *Parīṣiṣṭaparva*: viii, 240. For a critical evaluation of this version, see Trautman 1971: 21-30.

6. In light of the great distance separating the Mauryan capital from Shravanabelgola, where Bhadrabāhu is claimed to have met his end (see Ch. I n. 6), certain critics have tended to discount the authenticity of this entire story. B. L. Rice, however, has discovered Aśokan edicts in Mysore very close to the area in question, and he takes them as an indication that the Mauryan empire did extend this far south even in such ancient times. (B. L. Rice 1909: 1-16.) Hence, the possibility of Candragupta's visit there cannot simply be rejected out of hand.

7. Śvetāmbara tradition holds that one Samprati, a grandson of Aśoka, succeeded to the throne and became an important benefactor of the Jains, particularly in terms of increasing their influence among the Dravidian peoples of the Andhra region: Sampratiś cintayāmāsa niśīthsamaye 'nyadā/ anāryeṣv api sādḥūnām vihāraṃ vartayāmy aham//89// . . . evaṃ rājño 'tinirbandhād ācāryaiḥ ke 'pi sādḥavaḥ/ vihartum ādidiśire tato 'ndhradamilādiṣu//99// *Parīṣiṣṭaparva*: xi, 89-99. There is no inscriptional evidence to support this claim; even so, there is no reason to doubt that it rests upon at least some historical basis.

Thus the Jainas began slowly to move away from Magadha, becoming established in various cities along the two great caravan routes; one of these led northwest, towards Delhi and Mathura, thence south and west through Saurashtra and into Gujarat, while the other followed the east coast southward into Kalinga (modern Orissa), finally reaching even to the Dravidian lands around Madras and Mysore. Migration along these routes increased greatly around 150 B.C. with the advent of the Śunga dynasty, which brought with it a brahmanical resurgence and hard times for all non-Vedic groups in and around Magadha. The Kalinga area was more hospitable, at least initially; inscriptional evidence suggests that the installation of large Jina-images, patronage to Jaina monks, and other such works were known there as early as the second century B.C., especially in connection with a certain King Khāravēla (see Chapter VII, n. 6). This king ostensibly took the vows of a layman, and described himself in terms that would become the ideal for many Jaina rulers in the future:

Thus reigned that king of bliss . . . of prosperity . . . of dharma . . . worshipper of all religious orders, champion of shrines to all gods, possessor of invincible armies, administrator of the rule of law, guardian of the law, executor of the law . . . having seen, heard, experienced, and done that which is good.⁸

But in Kalinga too the Jainas eventually lost ground as they had in Magadha and were forced once again to seek the favor of other kings in distant regions.

As for the northwest, a major śramaṇa center seems to have developed in Mathura between 100 B.C. and A.D. 100;

8. The inscription of King Khāravēla begins with salutations to the arhats and siddhas, the two most auspicious figures for Jainas: "namo arahantānam/ namo savasiddhānam/ Aireṇa mahārājena Mahāmeghavāhanena . . . Kalim-gādhipatinā siri Khāravēlenā . . . / . . . khemarājā sa baḍharājā sa bhikhurājā dhamarājā pasam¹ sunamto anubhabamto kalāṇāni gunavisesakusalo savapā-samḍapūjako savaḍevāyatana samkārakārako . . . mahāvijayo rājā Khāravēlasiri." Sahu 1964: I, 398-404.

the Ś
time
were
grou
tendi
in Sa
into

Va
from
the c
tuall
large
their
into
vana
years
in th
had
—Ka
berel
comm
geog
hara
(Guj
tratio
certa
part
one
inall

Jaina
Whil
hous
taini
State
gamb
trived

the Śakas and Scythians who ruled the area around that time produced at least one Buddhist king (Kaniṣka), and were in general favorably disposed to nonbrahmanical groups. Many Jaina migrants continued on past Mathura, tending especially to settle in or around the city of Valabhi in Saurashtra; it was here that their canon was first put into written form.

Valabhi served for many years as the primary location from which Jaina teachings were disseminated. Though the city housed many members of both Jaina sects, it eventually became the main stronghold of the Śvetāmbaras; large members of Digambara adherents, perhaps following their monks, moved to the coast of the Arabian Sea, thence into the Deccan, and finally even further south to Shravanabelgola (where Bhadrabāhu had arrived so many years before). Others came to the same locale from Kalinga in the east. Thus by the fifth or sixth century a situation had developed in which the ancient centers of Jaina power—Kalinga and the Ganges Valley—were almost totally bereft of Jaina elements, while at the same time the Jaina community itself had become irrevocably divided along geographical lines, Digambaras in the south (modern Maharashtra and Karnataka) and Śvetāmbaras in the west (Gujarat, Rajasthan, and Punjab). These regional concentrations prevail, for the most part, even today; although a certain number of Jaina communities can be found in every part of India, most members of the faith still live in or near one of the two “home areas” in which the migrants originally settled.

Jaina Royal Houses in Karnataka

While numerous examples of Jaina involvement with ruling houses may be cited, perhaps the most striking is that pertaining to the Ganga dynasty in what is now Karnataka State. This dynasty was apparently established by a Digambara monk called Siṃhanandi, who somehow contrived to set up one Mādhava Konguṇivarma as the local

ruler in A.D. 265.⁹ Various fantastic legends surround the circumstances of this event, some suggesting that it involved the use of great occult powers by the monk. Whatever actually transpired, it does seem clear that Siṃhanandi commanded sufficient political influence to effectively function as a king-maker, and further that the subsequent Ganga rulers were all staunch Jains. The fact that Jaina inscriptions simply report and do not condemn the monk's activities—despite their obvious unsuitability for one who has taken the mahāvratas—points out the moral ambivalence created by the need for royal support on the one hand and the demands of the spiritual life on the other. Whatever spiritually negative results Siṃhanandi may have brought upon himself by his behavior, there can be no doubt that he greatly benefited the Digambara community as a whole. The Ganga dynasty, centered in the city of Gangavādī, provided almost seven centuries of uninterrupted pro-Jaina rule.

With the need for repeated migration thus eliminated, Digambara life attained a degree of stability unprecedented in its history. Some of the Ganga kings went so far as to take the vratas and to meet their deaths in *sallekhanā*; most engaged in extensive temple building and generally attempted to follow the rules of kingship which Siṃhanandi himself had laid down for his protege:

If you fail in what you have promised
 If you do not approve of the Jaina teachings
 If you seize the wife of another
 If you eat honey or flesh
 If you form relationships with low people
 If you do not give your wealth to the needy
 If you flee from the battlefield
 Then your race will go to ruin.¹⁰

9. "Gaṅgarājyamaṃ māḍida Siṃhanandiācāryar," quoted (from the *Epigraphica Carnatica*: vii, no. 46, 139) in Saletore 1938: 11.

10. *Ibid.*: 12.

It
 mot
 rule
 term
 men
 were
 sion
 gene
 gain
 "oce
 grea

T
 Jaina
 kūṭa
 dom
 king
 arou
 ciple
 othe
 at th
 kūṭa
 num
 in th
 side
 Hinc

Th
 succ
 com
 lishm
 tells
 pany

11.
 vairik
 bhujav
 Paraśu
 12.

It is interesting to note that, while this formula promotes *ahiṃsā* in the form of vegetarianism, it does not rule out warfare: another example of doctrine coming to terms with social and political reality. Indeed, military men were often strong supporters of the Jaina faith and were by no means excoriated for practicing their profession. Most famous of such individuals was the Ganga general Cāmuṇḍarāya, a successful field commander who gained the Jaina epithet *samyaktvaratnākara*, meaning "ocean of true insight," for commissioning erection of the great Bāhubali image at Shravanabelgola in 948.¹¹

Two other dynasties deserve mention in the context of Jaina history in South India. The first, that of the Rāṣṭrakūṭas, ruled in the Deccan (just north of the Ganga kingdom) from the eighth until the twelfth century. One of its kings, known as Amoghavarṣa, abdicated the throne around the year 800 in order to become a mendicant disciple of the famous ācārya Jinasena (circa 770–850); another, called Indra IV, is said to have performed *sallekhanā* at the Shravanabelgola shrine in 982.¹² During the Rāṣṭrakūṭa period, Jaina adherents were able to establish a large number of cave temples dedicated to their Jinas; located in the Ellora hills near Ajanata, these can still be seen today, side by side with others sacred to the Buddhists and the Hindus.

The second important dynasty arose in Karnataka as the successor to the Gangas. Once again the Jaina mendicant community seems to have been instrumental in its establishment. A well-known legend, often represented in art, tells how at one time the monk Sudatta was in the company of a local tribal chieftain called Sala, when suddenly

11. Cāmuṇḍarāya was also a very able general and had won such titles as *vairikulakāladanda* (the club which brings death to the host of enemies), *bhujavikrama* (valliant in arms), and *śamara-Paraśurāma* (the incarnation of Paraśurāma on the battlefield). Ibid.: 107ff.

12. Ibid.: 105.

they were confronted by a raging tiger. Sudatta immediately handed over his staff and shouted "poy [smite him], Sala!" whereupon the animal was struck down and killed. This event apparently proved to be a great inspiration to the chieftain, who soon thereafter founded a Jaina kingdom and named it Poyasala (later Hoysala).¹³ The story is especially interesting because it depicts a monk not only participating in worldly affairs, but even going so far as to encourage himsā. We may assume that with Ganga power in a state of decline, it behooved the Jaina elders to do whatever was necessary to ensure the continuation of a government sympathetic to their cause; whether or not the tale of Sudatta has any basis in fact, the theme of doctrinally improper monkish involvement in the political fortunes of the nation certainly rings true.

The Hoysalas held sway in Karnataka until the fourteenth century, at which time they were absorbed into the brahmanical Vijayanagara empire.¹⁴ Thus the Jainas were forced out of whatever seats of power they had gained; even so, hundreds of years of uninterrupted royal patronage had left them with sufficient wealth (particularly in the form of numerous well-endowed temples) to permit their continued prosperous existence, albeit on the fringes rather than at the heart of prevailing society.

Śvetāmbara Jaina Rulers of Gujarat

Members of the Śvetāmbara community seem to have been less aggressive initially in seeking influence within the court than were their Digambara brethren; nevertheless, several incidents illustrate the fact that even in early times they were able to marshal strong political support when the need arose. A particularly famous story describes the response of the Śvetāmbara ācārya Kālaka (first century B.C.) to the unpardonable behavior of a certain King Gar-

13. Ibid.: 58-86.

14. On the Jaina celebrities in the Vijayanagara empire, see *ibid.*: 366-387.

dabhila of Ujjain.¹⁵ This king, whose name suggests that he may have been of Indo-Greek origin, apparently displayed sexual interest in Kālaka's sister, a Jaina nun. Ignoring the ācārya's remonstrations, Gardabhila ordered the woman brought to his harem and proceeded to have his way with her. Kālaka, outraged, went immediately to the neighboring Sāhi kings (probably Scythians or Persians) and incited them to invade Ujjain, hoping to punish Gardabhila and to obtain the release of his sister. This chain of events led to the establishment of Sāhi rule in Ujjain, a situation which continued until the triumph there of Vikramāditya (said to be a Jaina) in A.D. 57.¹⁶

Perhaps inspired by Kālaka's example (but more likely through having realized the tenuous sociopolitical position of so small a minority group as their own), Śvetāmbaras began to actively pursue royal favor around the beginning of the Christian era. But it was not until the eighth century that a Jaina ruler came to power in West India. This was made possible when the orphan of a displaced Śaivite royal lineage in Gujarat was found and raised by a Śvetāmbara monk called Śīlaguṇasūri. Upon reaching adulthood this orphan managed to regain his throne, taking the name Vanarāja and establishing a Jaina kingdom centered in Anahilanagara.¹⁷ During his long reign (746–806), the Jains moved into positions of great influence as ministers and financiers; thus they were able to establish a power base which remained relatively effective for many years, despite the fact that Vanarāja's successors soon reverted to Śaivism.

At one point (mid-twelfth century) the Śvetāmbaras even brought about a brief "golden age" of their own in the Saurashtra area. It seems that the Śaivite king Jayasimha-Siddharāja died without an heir; after various ma-

15. For a critical study of the Kālaka story, see Brown 1933.

16. For evidence in support of this claim, see C. J. Shah 1932: 190ff.

17. Account based on Hemacandra's *Kumārapālacarita*, first reported by Colonel James Tod in 1839 (see Tod, repr. 1971: 149–155); Premi 1956: 481.

neuverings, the throne passed to a distant cousin called Kumārapāla. This accession was engineered largely through the combined efforts of a certain Jaina minister and the great ācārya Hemacandra.¹⁸ Kumārapāla was at that time already deeply in Hemacandra's debt, for the latter had once saved him from execution at the hands of Jayasīṃha-Siddharāja's minions by hiding him in the monastery (supposedly beneath a pile of holy manuscripts). Thus we cannot be absolutely sure whether his actions as king sprang mainly from a sense of obligation or reflected a sincere commitment to the Jaina world-view. In any case, Kumārapāla took the aṇuvratas of a layman, forbade the sacrifice of animals in his kingdom, and built a large number of temples in honor of the Jinas. His rule ended with the Muslim invasions of 1165; though the dynasty was eventually restored, it once again became firmly Śaivite in its sympathies, and no other Jaina king ever arose. The Śvetāmbara community did retain a certain measure of political and economic influence in the kingdom, but for the most part its members contented themselves with local affairs, religious activities centering around their many wealthy temples, and the promotion of *amāri* (prohibition of animal sacrifice) in the Muslim kingdoms of the north.¹⁹

18. For a biography of Hemacandra, see Buhler 1889 (tr. Patel 1936); for a complete bibliography, see Sharma 1975. On Kumārapāla, see Alsdorf 1928; and Satyaprakash 1972.

19. Jains have taken great pride in the degree to which they have been able to gain political support for the practice of ahiṃsā, even among non-Indian kings whose own religions were in no way opposed to the killing of animals. The most striking example of this phenomenon took place in the late sixteenth century, when the Mughal potentate Akbar (1556-1605) became closely involved with a famous Śvetāmbara monk called Hīravijaya-Sūri. According to the historian Vincent Smith, the Sūri "persuaded the Emperor to release prisoners and caged birds, and to prohibit the killing of animals on certain days. In the following year (1583) those orders were extended, and disobedience to them was made a capital offence. Akbar renounced his much-loved hunting and restricted the practice of fishing." Smith adds that "Akbar's action in abstaining almost wholly from eating meat and in issuing stringent prohibitions, resembling those of Aśoka, restricting to the narrowest limits the destruction of animal life, certainly was taken in obedience to the doctrine of his Jain teachers." Smith 1917: 119-120.

Preoccupation of the Jains with efforts of this sort was not restricted to the

Jainas and the Class/Caste System (Varṇa/Jāti Vyavasthā)

The Jainas were by no means alone in their ability to gain royal patronage; Buddhists, in particular, often received lavish support for extended periods, perhaps to an even greater degree than did their Nigaṇṭha rivals. And yet, as we have noted, Buddhism as a social institution could not withstand the combined onslaught of Muslim invasion and Hindu devotional fervor in the twelfth century; its development thereafter was limited to the Himalayan states, Southeast Asia, and the Far East. Thus, while the support of ruling houses was extremely important, it was not in itself sufficient to ensure a sect's long-term survival. Clearly, one must look further to discover the factors that enabled Jainism to endure while its closest counterparts disappeared from the scene.

A comparative examination of the great bodies of Buddhist and Jaina literature initially gives a rather striking impression of similarity. In particular, both traditions produced numerous works presenting the teachings of their respective founders and elucidating the complex systems which developed therefrom. For the Buddhists, however, dealing with philosophical issues seems to have become the chief preoccupation of the learned ācāryas. Jaina teachers, while also deeply interested in such questions, nevertheless showed equal or perhaps even greater concern with the creation of works intended for the ordinary layperson. We have already seen, for example, the kind of systematic instructions for lay conduct set forth in the śrāvakācāra texts. Virtually nothing of similar nature and scope was produced by Buddhist authors.²⁰

Mughal court. (See Majmudar 1969.) They have brought similar pressures to bear whenever and wherever it has been possible for them to do so; the most recent example is their successful drive, during the 2,500th anniversary of Mahāvīra's nirvāṇa, to ban animal sacrifice in nearly every Indian state.

20. Williams (1963) lists more than forty Jaina texts on lay discipline. Theravāda Buddhists apparently came up with only one such work, the *Upāsakajanālaṃkāra* of Ānanda (twelfth century); the concern of the Mahāyāna tradition

On the social level, an analogous distinction prevailed. Whereas Buddhist monks congregated in great scholastic enclaves (Nālandā and Vikramaśīla, for example), Jaina holy men remained relatively dispersed in their temples, constantly in close touch with the many laymen who worshipped there. Indeed, the very term "Buddhist" originally referred only to those who had donned the yellow robes; the rich merchants and others who supported these monks and nuns were said to gain merit through generosity, but they probably never participated fully in either the organization or the religious practice of the Buddhist community. Such a situation never prevailed in Jainism; from earliest times the complete integration of lay followers into the religious life was strongly emphasized. As Weber has accurately observed, the Jainas were

. . . perhaps the first, certainly . . . among the older confessions of cultured intellectuals who were . . . successful in carrying out the typical dualistic organization . . . : the community of monks as the nucleus, the laity (upāsaka, adorers) as a community under the religious rule of the monks.²¹

There can be little doubt that this high degree of lay involvement was significant in enabling Jainism to persevere amidst a veritable sea of Hindu influence. Furthermore, as observed in the tale of Ānanda, a Jaina's identification with his community could often be carried to extraordinary lengths; for example, Ānanda's pledge not only to refuse alms to non-Jaina mendicants, but even to avoid, whenever possible, any teachers, practitioners, or places of worship associated with other traditions.

But such behavior could not have been the general rule; we can assume that this "exclusivist" trend was ordinarily tempered by the necessity of dealing with the larger society outside. Whether involved in a government career (politics, the military), influence-gathering in the court, or simply

with lay matters found literary expression only in a small portion of Śāntideva's *Śikṣāsamuccaya* (ninth century).

21. Weber 1958: 196.

the purs
forced to
front sys
their ow
a reason
one han
achieved
for fruit
have ha
compro
striving
own tra
vious a
heavy i
Jaina so
baras as

Cons
that eld
with the
by ado
preting
could b
neighb
tices, ca
of secul
towards
encoun
tion is v
ly prac
the Jain
nor vio
in gene
area—s
the lang

22. d
bhaved ā
naṃ lauk
sakādhya

the pursuit of business or pleasure, Jainas were constantly forced to mingle with non-Jaina elements, hence to confront systems of custom and belief which invariably called their own into question. It fell to the Jaina ācāryas to strike a reasonable balance between these two priorities—on the one hand, the perpetuation of orthodoxy, perhaps best achieved through enforced isolation; on the other, the need for fruitful intercourse with Hindu society. They appear to have handled the task with considerable skill and wisdom, compromising often with heretical practices but always striving (and usually managing) to retain the spirit of their own tradition. This phenomenon was perhaps most obvious among Digambaras in the south, owing to their heavy involvement, both social and political, with non-Jaina society; but it sometimes occurred among Śvetāmbaras as well.

Considering the Digambara case as an example, we find that elders of the community allowed cautious "integration" with the surrounding Hindu populace in three main ways: by adopting certain local customs outright, by reinterpreting the doctrine of the caste system so that Jaina society could be organized along the lines similar to those of its neighbors, and by instituting new sets of ceremonial practices, called *kriyās*, which pertained to the changing phases of secular life. As for the first of these, the Jaina attitude towards the incredible diversity of social forms which they encountered during their years of migration and colonization is well expressed by the following dictum: "All worldly practices [those not related to salvation] are valid for the Jainas, as long as there is neither loss of pure insight nor violation of the vratas."²² Thus a Jaina layman could, in general, adopt the day-to-day patterns of life in a given area—staple foods, gift-giving customs, holidays, clothing, the language—with a clear conscience.

22. dvau hi dharmau grhasthānām laukikāḥ pāralaukikāḥ/ lokāśrayo bhaved ādyaḥ paraḥ syād āgamāśrayaḥ// . . . sarva eva hi Jainānām pramāṇam laukiko vidhiḥ/ yatra samyaktvāhānir na yatra na vratadūṣaṇam// *Upāsakādhyayana*: k 477-480.

One such pattern, however, presented special problems to the ācāryas; while its observance was universal among Hindu communities, thus putting strong pressure upon other groups to conform thereto, the doctrine upon which it was based stood in sharp contradiction to Jaina scripture. This was of course the caste system, which in Hindu terms placed all persons into one of four fixed social classes (brahman, kṣatriya, vaiśya, or śūdra), classes determined by birth and said to have originated as part of the divine creation of the world.

The traditional Jaina denial of a theistic creation, as well as of brahmanic supremacy in either the spiritual or the secular realm, has already been noted. Jaina teachers had to develop a system that would not violate these basic tenets. This feat was accomplished largely through the ingenuity and literary skill of the ācārya Jinasena, whose massive *Ādipurāṇa* was nothing less than a Jaina version of the history of the world. Exploiting the rich potentialities in the tale of Rṣabha, the first king and the first Tīrthaṅkara, Jinasena made of this figure a virtual "Jaina Brahmā," one who pronounced a set of "Jaina Vedas" and, most germane to the present discussion, *instituted the division of the castes*. Rṣabha's status, reflected in such epithets as *prajāpati* (lord of creatures) and *ādi-deva* (first lord), became that of "creator" in a sense acceptable to Jaina tradition; he was not held to have made the world, but he did supposedly create the organization of human society.²³

As for the castes, these are depicted not as part of the cosmic order but as a system politically imposed upon the single jāti (birth or destiny) to which all human beings belong.²⁴ Jinasena tells us that Rṣabha, while still a layman, responded to the excessive lawlessness and disorder

23. On the Vaiṣṇava attempts to integrate Rṣabha into the Bhāgavata cult, see *Śrīmad Bhāgavata*: V, i-v; and P. S. Jaini 1977a.

24. manuṣyajātir ekaiva jātīnāmodayodbhavā/ vṛttibhedāhitād bhedāc cāturvidhyam ihāśnute// AP: xxxviii, 45.

prevalen
ing up a
establish
śūdra (c
king inv
were tra
Jainas p
tainmen
and con

The p
establish
that this
Bharata
father h
tīrtha, t
determi
among
this patl
Bharata
flowers
for a fe
the obse
disregar
who we
they sho
of ahim

The l
able pa
them to
ing clos
their ne
this was

25. asi
syuḥ prajā
upādikṣat
tenādivedh
179 183

prevalent among the people of those ancient times by taking up arms and assuming the powers of a king; thus was established the kṣatriya caste. The vaiśya (merchant) and śūdra (craftsman) castes arose subsequently as the new king invented different means of livelihood and as people were trained in various arts and crafts. It is significant that Jains place these events prior to the time of Rṣabha's attainment of Jinahood, thereby emphasizing the mundane and conventional nature of caste distinctions.²⁵

The point is made especially clear with regard to the establishment of the priestly class; all Jaina sources agree that this was done not by Rṣabha at all, but by his son Bharata. Bharata became the first cakravartin after his father had reached enlightenment and had established the tīrtha, the path of Jaina practice, for our age. In order to determine the level of religious devotion and diligence among those who had taken the lay vows prescribed by this path, the young king arranged a kind of "ahiṃsā-test." Bharata had the courtyard of his palace strewn with fresh flowers and sprouting grain; then he invited the citizens for a feast on a sacred day. Those who were careless in the observance of their vows walked across the courtyard, disregarding the vegetable life beneath their feet. Those who were most virtuous refused to enter the palace lest they should harm the growing things and violate the vow of ahiṃsā.

The latter group Bharata then invited to enter by a suitable path; honoring each of its members, he encouraged them to accept one or more of the pratimās (thereby coming closer to the discipline of a monk). In recognition of their new status he gave them the title dvija, twice-born; this was confirmed by a ceremonial investiture with sacred

25. asir maṣiḥ kṣīr vidyā vāṇijyaṃ śilpam eva ca/ karmāṇīmāni śoḍhā syuḥ prajājīvanahetavaḥ// tatra vṛttim prajānāṃ hi sa bhagavān matikauśalāt/ upādikṣat sarāgo hi sa tadāsi jagadguruḥ// . . . utpādītās trayo varṇās tadā tenādivedhasā/ kṣatriyā vāṇijāḥ śūdrāḥ kṣatratrāṇādibhir guṇaiḥ// Ibid.: xvi, 179 183

threads, indicating the number of pratimās that each had assumed.²⁶ Speaking of such dvijas, Jinasena states that *these* are indeed the true children of the Jina and thus deserve to be called *deva-brāhmaṇa*, divine brahmans worthy of worship. Perhaps anticipating a hostile reaction to this notion of "Jaina-brahmans" from members of the traditional brahman caste, he adds:

Now should a so-called brahman through his vanity of birth confront him [a Jaina-brahman] and say: Well, sir, did you suddenly become a god [deva] today? Are you not the son of so-and-so, is not your mother daughter of so-and-so, that you should put your nose in the air and dare to walk about ignoring a person like me? What great miracle happened to you by your initiation into the Jaina order?—you still walk on earth and not in the sky! Let him be told: Please listen, you so-called brahman, to our divine origin. Lord Jina is our father, and his pure knowledge is our womb. We are therefore truly born as gods, but if you find others of similar description, be free to call them also by the same title.²⁷

26. ye 'ṇuvratadharā dhīrā dhaureyā gṛhamedhinām/ tarpaṇīyā hi te 'smābhīr Ipsitair vasuvāhanaiḥ// iti nīcitya rājendraḥ satkartum ucitān imān/ parīkṣiṣur āhvāsta tadā sarvān mahībhujāḥ// sadācārair nijair iṣṭair anuṇivībhīr anvitāḥ/ adyāsmat utsave yūyam āyātetī prthak prthak// haritair aṅkuraiḥ puṣpaiḥ phalaiś cākīrṇam aṅgaṇam/ saṃrād acīkarat teṣāṃ parīkṣāyai svaveśmani// teṣv avratā vinā saṃgāt prāvīkṣan nṛpamandiram/ tān ekataḥ samut-sārya śeṣān āhvayayat prabhūḥ// te tu svavratasiddhyartham ihamānā mahān-vayāḥ/ naiṣuḥ praveśanam tāvad yāvad ārdṛāṅkurāḥ pathi// . . . santi evānantaśo jīvā hariteṣv aṅkurādiṣu/ nigotā iti sārvañam devāsmābhīḥ śrutam vacaḥ// . . . iti tadvacanāt sarvān so 'bhinandya dṛḍhavrātān/ . . . teṣāṃ kṛtāni cihnāni sūtraiḥ padmāhvayān nidheḥ/ upāttair brahmasūtrāhvair ekādyekādaśāntakaiḥ// guṇabhūmikṛtād bhedāt klṛptayajñopavītinām/ satkāraḥ kriyate smaiṣām avratāś ca bahiḥ kṛtāḥ// Ibid.: xxxviii, 8–22.

27. atha jātimadāveśāt kaścīd enaṃ dvijabruvaḥ/ brūyād evaṃ kim adyaiva devabhūyaṃ gato bhavān// tvam āmuṣyāyaṇaḥ kin na kiṃ te 'mbā 'muṣya putrikā/ yenaivam unnaso bhūtvā yāsy asatkṛtya madvidhān// jātiḥ saiva kulaṃ tac ca so 'si yo 'si praṅgataṇaḥ/ tathāpi devatātmānam ātmānam manyate bhavān// devatātithipitragnikāryeṣvaprayato bhavān/ gurudvijātidevānām praṇāmāc ca parāṇmukhaḥ// dīkṣāṃ jainīm prapannasya jātaḥ ko 'tiśayaś tava/ yato 'dyāpi manuṣyas tvam pādacārī mahīm spṛśan// ity upārūḍhasaṃram-bham upālabdhaḥ sa kenacit/ dadāty uttāram ity asmai vacobhir yuktipēśa-laiḥ// śrūyatāṃ bho dvijammanya tvayā 'smad divyasambhavaḥ/ jino janayitā 'smākaṃ jñānam garbho 'tinirmalaḥ// tatrārhatīm tridhā bhinnāṃ śaktīm traiguṇyasamśrītām/ svasātkṛtya samudbhūtā vyaṃ saṃskārajanmanā// ayonisambhavās tena devā eva na mānuṣāḥ/ vyaṃ, vyaṃ ivānye 'pi santi cet brūhi tadvidhān// Ibid.: xxxix, 108–116.

The rise a
mans," indiv
the perform
in Chapter V
suggests, wi
the basis of g
to such posi
brahmans w
sure. It is cl
tually devel
counterpart;
the range of
these "specia
baras in the
descendants
of human c
labeled "ren
"fallen away

Thus the
was for then
tion was elim
itually super
was justified
irrevocable
was perhaps
to have its
supposed su

Jaina Integr
Jinasena's ef
norms were
also address
events of eve
to the appea

28. This was
pataḥ/ bhraṣṭāci
viṣṭā vyaṃ lok
Ibid.: xli, 47–48.

The rise among Digambaras of a class of "Jaina brahmans," individuals entrusted with care of the temples and the performance of elaborate rituals, was noted earlier, in Chapter VII. Whether this class originated, as Jinasena suggests, with a group of ordinary laymen who were on the basis of great merit or spiritual advancement appointed to such positions—or perhaps with a group of traditional brahmans who were converted to Jainism—we cannot be sure. It is clear, however, that the Jaina-brahmans eventually developed into a caste nearly as rigid as its Hindu counterpart; membership became strictly hereditary, and the range of rituals requiring the "supervision" of one of these "specialists" was greatly expanded. Faithful Digambaras in the south even today regard Jaina-brahmans as descendants of those honored by Bharata at the beginning of human civilization; Hindu brahmans are of course labeled "renegades" or "apostates," brahmans who have "fallen away from the true path."²⁸

Thus the Jainas converted the varṇa system into what was for them an acceptable form. The role of theistic creation was eliminated, and the existence of a class of "spiritually superior laymen" analogous to the Hindu brahmans was justified on the basis of *conduct*, rather than of some irrevocable cosmic order. This second accomplishment was perhaps most important, for it allowed the community to have its own secular "priests" while still rejecting the supposed supremacy of the traditional brahman caste.

Jaina Integration of the Hindu Saṃskāras

Jinasena's efforts to "Jaina-ize" certain pan-Indian social norms were by no means confined to the area of varṇa. He also addressed himself to rituals celebrating the important events of everyday life: birth, marriage, and so forth. Prior to the appearance of the *Ādipurāṇa*, Jaina writings on lay

28. This was prophesied by Rṣabha: tataḥ kaliyuge 'bhyarṇe jātivādāvale-pataḥ/ bhraṣṭācārāḥ prapatsyante sanmārgapratyanīkatām// te 'mī jātimadā-viṣṭā vayan lokādhikā iti/ purā durāgamair lokam mohayanti dhanāśayā// Ibid.: xli, 47-48.

conduct dealt only with the *vratas* and *pratimās*, in other words, with matters of a specifically spiritual nature.²⁹ Hence it seems likely that until Jinasena's time, important secular ceremonies among Jains of both sects were simply taken directly from the traditional Hindu *saṃskāras* (rites); indeed, Hindu brahmins may often have been called upon to perform such ceremonies, especially those pertaining to marriage. Jinasena must have perceived the dangers inherent in this tendency, for such blatant penetration of Hindu practices into those activities which formed the very heart of secular existence could only contain the seeds of Jainism's eventual and irrevocable absorption by the Hindu community.

We have already seen how the Jaina ācāryas had to walk a thin line between the need for social intercourse with non-Jains and the dangers that invariably accompanied such contact. This problem was further complicated by the fact that brahmanical society, while traditionally tolerant of *doctrinal* heterodoxy, has often shown marked hostility towards deviation from accepted patterns of *social* behavior. So it was that those Jains who held positions of power in the larger non-Jaina society must have found it to their advantage to encourage at least a surface similarity between the everyday conduct of their own community and that of the Hindu majority. Such similarity would have served not only to reduce intercommunity friction, but also to raise the status of the politically or financially prominent Jaina in the eyes of his brahmanical counterparts. The work of Jinasena, therefore, can perhaps be best understood as an attempt to deal with this situation, to devise a system whereby Jains would evidence apparent conformity with Hindu practices and yet somehow remain uniquely Jaina. It seems, moreover, that he was eminently successful in this endeavor; whereas scholars from outside

29. "It is in the *Ādi-purāṇa* that the first description of these is to be found . . . For the first time in Jaina history the *rites de passage* are incorporated in the religious framework instead of being thrust aside as proper only for the *deśācāra* . . ." Williams in *JY*: 274-275.

the Jaina
"indistin
sidered
have ada
again tha
meaning

The re
be soug
life pres
that a Ja
Bharata
a brahm
śūdra va
practices
lowed th
a lower
ments of
a priest
or mantr
were all
the sixte
their ent
kriyās (a
life.³¹ It

30. The
it becomes
"Hindu poe
Indians sav
roots in for
who are th
these senses
religious co
traditions v
into the bra
religions or
these criteri
must be un
15; J. L. Jain
1959: 267-2
31. On
The standa
(quickeni

the Jaina community have often observed that Jainas are "indistinguishable from Hindus" and should not be considered an independent group at all, Jainas themselves have adamantly denied any such claim, insisting again and again that they are not and never have been Hindus in any meaningful sense of the term.³⁰

The reality beneath these divergent views is perhaps to be sought in an examination of the actual rules for secular life prescribed by Jinasena. We have seen, for example, that a Jaina varṇa system was developed on the R̥ṣabha-Bharata legend; Jinasena even went so far as to incorporate a brahmanical prejudice by asserting that members of the śūdra varṇa were excluded from certain higher religious practices. With regard to marriage customs, he again followed the Hindu model, allowing men to marry women of a lower caste, but not vice versa. The five essential elements of Hindu ritual—presence of a deity, availability of a priest capable of invoking that deity, use of a holy chant or mantra, ritual offering, and most important, holy fire—were all made a part of Jaina ceremonies as well. Finally, the sixteen Hindu saṃskāras were incorporated almost in their entirety, becoming part of a larger list of fifty-three kriyās (actions) which marked all the important events of life.³¹ It is true that these practices are clearly brahmanical

30. The term "Hindu" is employed in several ways. As a cultural designation, it becomes almost synonymous with "Indian"; thus we have "Hindu drama," "Hindu poetry," and the like. From the constitutional standpoint, it includes all Indians save those belonging to the several religious minorities which have their roots in foreign traditions—Muslims, Christians, and Zoroastrians (Parsis)—and who are thus eligible for special privileges under the law. It is clear that in both these senses even Jainas must be classified as Hindus. Speaking within a purely religious context, however, the term denotes only those theistic movements or traditions which are either of Vedic origin or have long since been incorporated into the brahmanical fold. Jainism, as the sole surviving example of the śramaṇa religions once prevalent in the Ganges Valley (see Ch. I n. 2), meets neither of these criteria. It is in this context, then, that the Jaina claim to non-Hindu status must be understood. For more light on this controversy, see V. R. Gandhi 1893: 15; J. L. Jaini 1916a; C. R. Jain 1926; Chopade 1946; R. N. Shah 1950; Sangave 1959: 267–270.

31. On the variant enumerations of these saṃskāras, see Pandey 1969: 23. The standard list is as follows: 1) *garbhādhāna* (conception); 2) *pūṃsavana* (quickenings of a male child); 3) *sīmantonayana* (hair-parting); 4) *jātakarma*

in appearance; the meaning-scheme which underlies their performance, however, is one which no Hindu could even begin to accept.

Consider for example, the meaning of the term *dvija*. Among Hindus this denotes a status which is available only to members of the three higher *varṇas*, and which may be attained simply by undergoing a ceremony of initiation (*upanayana*); *dvijahood* is, in other words, here seen as a rather automatic perquisite of the higher castes. For Jains, however, becoming a *dvija* requires the taking of certain lay vows (at least the eight *mūlaguṇas*) in addition to mere initiation; hence there must be a more radical transformation of conduct than that entailed by the brahmanical *upanayana*.

As stated earlier, moreover, Jinasena took up the Hindu bias against *śūdras*. This is true to the extent that he denied the possibility of their becoming mendicants, as well as withholding from them the right to receive the sacred threads indicative of a *dvijahood*.³² Even so, a sharp distinction remained between the Jaina *śūdra* and his Hindu counterpart. Whereas the latter was given no *saṃskāras* whatsoever, the former typically performed nearly all the lay ceremonies and could even attain the quasi-mendicant

(birth ceremony); 5) *nāmakaraṇa* (name-giving); 6) *niṣkramaṇa* (first outing); 7) *annaprāśana* (first feeding); 8) *cūḍākaraṇa* (tonsure); 9) *karmaṇvedha* (boring the ears); 10) *vidyārambha* (learning the alphabet); 11) *upanayana* (initiation); 12) *vedārambha* (beginning of Vedic study); 13) *keśānta* (shaving the beard); 14) *samāvartana* (end of studentship); 15) *vivāha* (marriage ceremony); 16) *antyeṣṭi* (funeral ceremony). For the Jaina lists, see below, n. 40.

32. *adīkṣārhe kule jātā vidyāśilpopajīvinah/ eteṣām upanītyādisaṃskāro nābhisammataḥ/ teṣām syād ucitaṃ liṅgaṃ svayogyavratadhāriṇām/ ekaśāṭakadhāritvaṃ saṃnyāsamarāṇāvadhi// AP: xl, 170-171.* Recent research by the Digambara scholar Phoolchandra (1963) has led to the conclusion that this view originated with Jinasena; it does not appear to have been held by previous *ācāryas*, and it was certainly never preached by Mahāvīra. It is thus non-canonical, and not to be considered binding upon modern Jains. Similarly, the idea of class (*varṇa*) in general, and of the caste (*jāti*) of Jaina-brahmans in particular, should not be understood as fundamental Jaina doctrine. These class distinctions were, as we have seen (n. 25 above), established by Rṣabha and Bharata when they were still worldly kings and not yet spiritual leaders; such distinctions are thus of a sociopolitical nature and cannot be taken as valid on the religious level.

status
ited a
did n
aspec

Ne
Jaina

1.
ter V
figure
does
the p
the J
high
deva

an in
to as
in ot

2.
origi
Prajā
whic
of th
relati

a ritu
The
no su
(albe
in th
indee
Hind

3.

33.
view,
34.
vāiśya
his cla
viśudd
mānyā

status of an ailaka. Thus, although Jinasena's rules prohibited a śūdra from becoming either a dvija or a monk, they did not prevent him from taking an active role in most aspects of the religious life of the community.

Next it must be understood clearly what is meant by the Jainas' use of the five ritual elements referred to above.

1. *The deity*: As noted with reference to pūjā (see Chapter VII), the worship of an image or "invoking" of a holy figure by the Jaina has a far different signification than does a similar act carried out by a Hindu. The Jinas take the *place* of Hindu gods, but do not play a similar *role* in the Jaina ritual; they are seen as noble examples of the highest state to which man can aspire, and never as iṣṭa-devatā, the personal deity with whom one can enter into an intimate relationship. Although a Jina may be referred to as deva, this is never construed as an avatar; for Jainas, in other words, no deity is ever *present* in a real sense.³³

2. *The priest*: The Hindu creation myth describes the origin of the four varṇas from various parts of the body of Prajāpati, the Creator. It is on the basis of this myth, in which their own lineage is said to proceed from the mouth of the Lord, that brahmins have claimed a special status relative to the gods: *only they* are fit to communicate, in a ritual context, with the powers of the nonhuman realm. The position of a Jaina-brahmin, however, carries with it no such status; it is, as we have seen, a purely occupational (albeit hereditary) role.³⁴ A "brahmanical" caste conceived in this way, then, does not constitute true Hinduization; indeed, it undercuts the very assumptions upon which the Hindu conception of brahminhood is based.

3. *The offering*: Jinasena reduced the hiṃsā inherent in

33. For the role of the śāsana-devatās, which may seem to contradict this view, see Ch. VII nn. 13-14.

34. brāhmaṇo 'sya mūkham āsīd bāhū rājanīaḥ kṛtāḥ/ ūrū tād asya yād vāisyaḥ padbhyāṃ śūdrō ajāyata// *Rgveda*: x, 90, 12. Jinasena is emphatic in his claim that the Jaina "dvijas" are not part of the Vedic "varṇa" system: viśuddhavarṇas tasmā jainā varṇottamā dvijāḥ/ varṇāntahpātino naite jagan-mānyā iti sthitam// *AP*: xli, 142.

Vedic sacrifice simply by stipulating that for Jainas only plants or milk products could be "offered" to the Jinas. And again, the whole relation of the "offering" to the "deity" is changed. Nothing is "received," no one is "propitiated"; the flowers or fruit laid upon the altar serve simply to honor the memory of the Jina, to reaffirm his exalted status as a model for human behavior.

4. *The mantra*: Jinasena provides a set of seven holy chants,³⁵ any of which is (with minor changes) applicable to nearly all ritual occasions. These chants are for the most part simply variations on the pañca-namaskāras or the catuḥ-śaraṇas and thus do not even make the pretence of "invoking" any of the "deities" associated with Hindu rites. The *jāti-mantra*, for example, is typically recited during the celebration of a Jaina birth-ceremony:

I take refuge in one who is born [has realized] the truth
I take refuge in the mother [the enlightenment] of the
arhats

I take refuge in the sons [the disciples] of the arhats

I take refuge in those whose knowledge is infinite

I take refuge in those who have reached the incomparable
birth [who have attained the state of a kevalin, and
will thus become siddhas after death]

I take refuge in the three "jewels"

○ Sarasvatī [the goddess of knowledge—that is, a personified way of referring to kevalajñāna], you who are embodiment of knowledge, the embodiment of true insight, may this ritual redound to the service of those who have attained the high status [the siddhas, arhats, and so on], may it eliminate [the possibility of] premature death [may he live long].³⁶

35. See Ibid.: xl, 1-77.

36. satyajānmanah śaraṇaṃ prapadyāmi, arhajjanmanah śaraṇaṃ prapadyāmi, arhanmātuḥ śaraṇaṃ prapadyāmi, arhatsutasya śaraṇaṃ prapadyāmi, anādigamanasya śaraṇaṃ prapadyāmi, anupamajanmanah śaraṇaṃ prapadyāmi, ratnatrayasya śaraṇaṃ prapadyāmi, he samyagdr̥ṣṭe, he samyagdr̥ṣṭe, he jñānamūrte, he jñānamūrte, he sarasvati, he sarasvati, svāhā, sevāphalaṃ śaṭparamasthānaṃ bhavatu, apamṛtyuvinaśanaṃ bhavatu. jātimantro 'yam āmnāto jātiśaṃskārakāraṇaṃ/ Ibid.: xl, 31.

The
namask
mantri
5. T
garded
as sacr
their ri
śramar
rationa
be con
Speaki

Fire
of its
his c
amon
fire,
attain
the t
wors
Jaina

Jinas
least in
fires of
Jaina-b
pandin
these fl
played
Rṣabha
finally

37. na
mūrtījyāsa
dvijottama
pekṣā tasy
manaḥ//

38. trā
saṃkalpāc
mahotsave
netavyās
yaḥ// asm
nityejyā y

The dependence of this formula upon that of the *pañca-namaskāra* is very clear; moreover, Vedic or brahmanical mantric elements are conspicuously absent.

5. *The holy fire (agni)*: No ancient śramaṇa sect regarded any of the material elements (earth, water, air, fire) as sacred; hence they gave no great importance to fire in their ritual activities. Jinasena seems to have been the first śramaṇa ācārya to elevate fire to a "holy" status; but his rationale for doing so, as we might expect, could easily be considered blasphemy from the Hindu point of view. Speaking on this question, he says:

Fire has no inherent sacredness, and no divinity. But because of its contact with the divine body of the arhat [at the time of his cremation], it can be considered pure. Therefore, the best among the dvijas make offerings into it. Such worship of the fire, like the worship of places made sacred by a saint's having attained nirvāṇa there, is not in any way blameworthy. By the twice-born, however, fire is to be considered suitable for worship only on a conventional level. It is in this wise that Jainas worship fire as part of their worship of the Jinas.³⁷

Jinasena also asserts that three fires (corresponding, at least in name, to the *gārhapatya*, *āhavanīya*, and *dākṣiṇa* fires of the Hindu *śrauta* ritual) should be set up by the Jaina-brahmans at the beginning of any ceremony. Expanding the idea stated above, he suggests that each of these flames derive a certain holiness as a result of the role played by fire in three great events: the cremations of Rṣabha and other Tīrthaṅkaras, of the gaṇadharas, and finally of all other kevalins of our age.³⁸ By lighting three

37. na svato 'gneḥ pavitratvaṃ devatārūpam eva vā/ kintv arhaddivya-mūrtīyāsambandhāt pāvano 'nalaḥ// tataḥ pūjāṅgatām asya matvā 'rcanti dvijottamāḥ/ nirvāṇakṣetrapūjāvat tatpūjā 'to na duṣyati// vyavahāranayāpekṣā tasyeṣṭā pūjyātā dvijaiḥ/ Jainair adhyavahāryo 'yaṃ nayo 'dyatve 'grajan-manah// Ibid.: xl, 88-90.

38. trāyo 'gnayaḥ praṇeyāḥ syuḥ karmārambhe dvijottamaiḥ/ ratnatritaya-saṃkalpād agnīndramukūṭodbhavāḥ// tīrthakṛt-gaṇabhṛc-cheṣakevaly-antamahotsave/ pūjāṅgatvaṃ samāsādyā pavitratvaṃ upāgatāḥ// kuṇḍatraye praṇetavyās traya ete mahāgnayaḥ/ gārhapaty-āhavanīya-dākṣiṇāgni-prasiddhayaḥ// asminn agnitraye pūjāṃ mantraiḥ kurvan dvijottamaḥ/ āhitāgnir iti jñeyo nityeijyā yasya sadmani// Ibid.: xl, 82-85. The Śvetāmbara tradition agrees

fires, then, a Jaina pays homage to the memory of these departed ones who reached the highest goal. Two things must be noted here: First, it is not the fire qua fire that becomes the object of worship, but rather those beings of whom one is reminded by association therewith. Second, the source of whatever holiness fire does "possess" is based upon its function in a funereal context; although it has become "pure" by contact with holy beings, the point is nevertheless made that this contact took place only with the dead bodies of those beings. Thus we find Jinasena not only denying the divinity of *agni*, but even linking any religious significance attributed to fire with something that is for Hindus ritually impure in the extreme: the funeral pyre.³⁹

As for the specific *kriyās* to be performed in the course of a lifetime, Jinasena was not content to simply take over the Hindu *saṃskāras*. He supplemented them with almost forty additional events worthy of being marked by a ceremony.⁴⁰ Certain of these differ in important ways not only

substantially with the above belief as can be seen from Hemacandra's account of Rṣabha's funeral ceremony: *prācīnabarhiḥ prācīnacitāyāṃ svāminas tanum/ śanakaiḥ sthāpayāmāsa svaputra iva kṛtyavit// citāyāṃ dākṣiṇātyāyāṃ ikṣvā-kukulajanmanām/ vapūṃṣi sthāpayanti sma śanābhaya ivāmarāḥ// anyeṣāṃ anagārāṇāṃ śarīrāṇy apare surāḥ/ prācīnacitāyāṃ tu samīcīnavīdo nyadhuḥ// atra gotrabhidādeśān nākono 'gnikumārikāḥ/ citāsu tāsu tatkālam agnikāyān vicakrire// . . . mārgantaḥ śrāvakā devair dattakuṇḍatrayāgnayaḥ/ tataḥ prabhṛty abhūvāṃs te brāhmaṇā agnihotriṇaḥ// TSPC: I, vi, 546-556.*

39. Related to the Jaina notion that the arhat's funeral pyre is sacred was their practice of *stūpa* worship, a common phenomenon among śramaṇas. Although this practice has died out in India, it is still found elsewhere among Buddhists, who were its main proponents even in ancient times. Worship of relics, however, has remained unknown within the brahmanical tradition. Regarding *stūpa* worship among the Jains, see above, Ch. VII n. 9.

40. Jinasena enumerates fifty-three *kriyās*, as follows: *ādhānaṃ prīti-suprīti dhṛtir modah priyodbhavaḥ/ nāmakarma-bahiryāna-niṣadyāḥ prāśanaṃ tathā// vyuṣṭiś ca keśavāpaś ca lipisaṃkhyānaśaṅgrahaḥ/ upanītir vrataṃcaryā vratāvataranaṃ tatnā// vivāho varṇalābhaś ca kulacaryā gṛhīṣitā/ praśāntiś ca gṛhatyāgo dīkṣādyam jinarūpatā// māunādhyayanavṛttatvaṃ tīrthakṛtvasya bhāvanā/ gurusthānābhyupagamo gaṇopagrahanaṃ tathā// svagurusthānaśaṃkrāntir nissāṅgatvātmabhāvanā/ yoganirvāṇasaṃprāptir yoganirvāṇasādhanam// indropapādābhiṣekau vidhidānaṃ sukhodayaḥ/ indratyāgāvātārau ca hiraṇyotkṛṣṭajanmatā// mandarendrābhiṣekaś ca gurupūjopalambhanaṃ/ yauvarājyaṃ svarājyaṃ ca cakralābho diśāṃ jayaḥ// cakrābhiṣekasāmrajye niṣkrāntir yogasaṃmahāḥ/ ārhantyaṃ tadvihāraś ca yogatyāgo 'granir-*

from
The
son's
sepa
com
(Ma
fami
certa
Mor
ing
post
due
secu
towa

It
pres
sacra
The
brah
adul
mate
indio

vṛtiḥ/
vānap
For
eviden
occasi
merely
(aband
releva
work,
the fir
Ācāra
for a
brahm
list, se
their re

41.
tyartha
guror
anujñā
nāptir

from the letter, but also from the spirit, of Hindu custom. The *varṇalābha* ritual, for example, celebrates a married son's establishment of his own household and business, separate from those of his father.⁴¹ For the brahmanical community, which followed the traditional Dharmaśāstras (*Manusmṛti* and others), such a breaking away from the family might well have been frowned upon and would certainly not have provided occasion for a ceremony. Moreover, by listing among *kriyās* such things as the taking of lay vows (*vratas* and *pratimās*), and even certain posthumous events (for example, the attainment of heaven due to prior right conduct), Jinasena integrated his entire secular system into the larger context of a soul's progress towards *mokṣa*.

It is interesting to note that among the fifty-three rituals prescribed in the *Ādipurāṇa*, two—investiture with the sacred thread and marriage—receive particular emphasis. The first of these, called *upanīti* (corresponding to the brahmanical *upanayana* ceremony), is initiation into the adult religious community. The male child, at approximately eight years of age, is furnished with three threads indicative of *ratnatraya* (three jewels: right faith, right

vṛtiḥ// trayāḥ pañcāśad etā hi matā garbhānvayakriyāḥ/ garbhādhānādinirvāṇaparyantāḥ paramāgame// AP: xxxviii, 55-63.

For a complete description of these *kriyās*, see Sangave 1959: 259-262. It is evident that only the first eighteen, ending with *varṇalābha*, mark particular occasions in the life of a householder. Numbers nineteen through twenty-one are merely extensions of the eighteenth, while those beginning with *gṛhatyāga* (abandoning the household) and ending with *nirvāṇa* (fifty-three) have no direct relevance to lay existence. It is therefore not surprising that a later Digambara work, the *Traivarnikācāra* of Somasena (seventeenth century) enumerates only the first twenty-three of Jinasena's *kriyās*—or that Śvetāmbara texts like the *Ācāradīnakara* of Vardhamāna (circa 1411) ignore them altogether and provide for a new set of eighteen *saṃskāras* almost indistinguishable from that of the brahmanical tradition (see above, n. 31). For further details on the Śvetāmbara list, see Glasenapp 1925: 408-416; for a critical evaluation of all three lists and their relation to brahmanical rites, see JY: 274-287.

41. evaṃ kṛtavivāhasya gārhaṣṭhyam anuṣṭhataḥ/ svadharmānativṛtyartham varṇalābham atho bruve// ūḍhabhāryo 'py ayaṃ tāvad asvatantro guror gṛhe/ tataḥ svāntaryasiddhyartham varṇalābho 'sya varṇitaḥ// guror anujñayā labdhadhanadhānyādisampadaḥ/ pṛthakkṛtālayasyāsyai vṛttir varṇāptir iṣyate// AP: xxxviii, 135-137.

knowledge, and right conduct); he also receives the holy pañca-namaskāra litany. He then takes the mūlaguṇas (see Chapter VI), becoming thereby a bona fide Jaina layman with the status of a dvija.⁴² It must be noted, however, that this particular practice persists only among the Digambaras of South India, who came most directly under Jinasena's influence. Neither Śvetāmbaras nor those Digambaras who remained in the north have developed any initiation ceremony per se; while members of these communities do receive the pañca-namaskāra-mantra from a mendicant teacher, no fire is lit and no sacred threads are given.

Although there is virtually no textual evidence concerning Jaina marital practices prior to Jinasena's time, it is very likely that there was always a certain amount of intermarriage with non-Jainas. This can be inferred not only from the lack of canonical material prohibiting such a practice, but also from the fact that even today certain Śvetāmbara Jainas, particularly those of the merchant class, do not object to marriage with Vaiṣṇavas of comparable social status.⁴³ But Jinasena seems to assume that spouses will be chosen only from within the Jaina fold, since he stipulates that the wedding ceremony (*vaivāhikī-kriyā*) must begin with performance of a pūjā before the siddha-image. A priest should then light the three fires, which the couple circumambulates three times. Jinasena's account concludes abruptly with the words: "Finally, let

42. *kriyopanītir nāmāsyā varṣe garbhāṣṭame matā/ yatrāpanītakeśasya mauñjī savratibandhanā// kṛtārhatpūjanasyāsyā mauñjībandho jinālaye/ guru-sāṅkṣīvidhātavyo vratārpaṇapurassaram// śikhī sitāṃśukaḥ sāntarvāsā nirveṣa-vikriyāḥ/ vratacihnam dadhat sūtram tadokto brahmacāry asau// Ibid.: xxxviii, 104-106.*

43. Certain stories found in the *Bṛhatkathākośa* of Hariṣeṇa (circa 940) indicate that marriage between Jainas and non-Jainas, though not prohibited, was also not looked upon with any great favor. In the *Rudradattapriyābodhakathānaka* (no. 54), e.g., a young Śaivite man seeks in vain to win the hand of a Jaina maiden and has to become a Jaina himself before being allowed to marry her. After the wedding ceremony he reverts to his old religion, and great strife ensues between the husband and wife.

In another story (no. 68), the son of a Buddhist merchant is warned by his father not to seek a girl from a Jaina family, "since it is impossible that they will

the k
filled
today
bride
proce
tempo
he ad
to sev
visit
After
and s
No
sena's
No H
be co
(sapta
Vedic

give the
... sa
resorts
her har
commo
present
the oth
of this
below,
grandfa
For
Jainas o
150-162
groups
member
44.
ucitām
kṛtāgnit
45.
ceremon
1959: 16
Traivarn
of Jaina
maintain
also that
unknow
commun

the *kriyā* be performed."⁴⁴ One detail can probably be filled in here by considering a typical Jaina wedding of today. The girl's father performs *kanyādāna*, giving the bride away, by placing her hand in that of the groom. This procedure was probably so well-known to Jinasena's contemporaries that he felt no need to mention it. In any case, he adds that the newlyweds should remain celibate for up to seven days, during which time they would do well to visit some holy place (a temple or shrine, for example). Afterwards they return home, consummate the marriage, and set up housekeeping.

Now, from the point of view of our investigation, Jinasena's silences are in a sense just as significant as his words. No Hindu wedding, at least among the upper castes, can be considered legal unless the couple takes seven steps (*saptapadī*) around the fire to the accompaniment of a Vedic chant.⁴⁵ Jinasena consciously omits this practice, of

give their daughter to meat-eaters" (upāsakā-vayaṃ putra piṣitāhāriṇas tarām/ . . . sa dadāti katham putrīm asmākam . . . // lxviii, 18-19). The young man resorts to deceit, becoming a Jaina layman endowed with *vratas* in order to win her hand. Soon he too returns to his former faith. Nonvegetarianism (fairly common among both the Śaivites and the Buddhists) would thus appear to have presented the most important obstacle to mixed marriage. The Vaiṣṇavas, on the other hand, have always been vegetarians; marriage of a Jaina to a member of this group would therefore not be unacceptable. Raychaṇḍbhai Mehta (see below, n. 64), the great Jaina saint, is a well-known product of such a family; his grandfather was a devout Vaiṣṇava, his mother a Sthānakavāsī Jaina.

For information on the various kinds of endogamous groups between which Jains of the present day are willing to contract a marriage, see Sangave 1959: 150-162. Also, Upadhye (1936) has compiled a list of eighty-four exogamous groups (*gotra*) within the above mentioned endogamous ones; marriage between members of the same *gotra* is not allowed.

44. tato 'sya gurvanujñānād iṣṭā vaivāhikī kriyā/ vaivāhike kule kanyām ucitām parīṇṣyataḥ// siddhārcanavidhiṃ samyak nirvartya dvijasattamāḥ/ kṛtāgnitrayasampūjāḥ kuryus tatsākṣitām kriyām// AP: xxxviii, 127-128.

45. On the *saptapadī*, see Pandey 1969: 219. It should be noted here that this ceremony (albeit with a formula acceptable to Jains, as mentioned in Sangave 1959: 167) eventually found a place in such later texts as the *Ācāradinakara* and *Traivarnikācāra*; thus we can assume that a certain amount of "brahmanization" of Jaina marriage customs had occurred by the fourteenth century. Sangave has maintained that Jaina marriage was contractual rather than sacramental, and also that divorce and widow-marriage, although not favored, were certainly not unknown; indeed, both these practices are prevalent today among certain Jaina communities such as the Saitavāla and Bogāra (Sangave 1959: 173-175).

which he must certainly have been aware, thus effecting once again the kind of sham Hinduization that we have seen so often before. Through his codification of lay conduct, whether in regard to specific *kriyās* or to the ritual elements employed therein, he consistently managed to clothe the members of his community in a protective Hindu cloak, beneath which the beliefs and practices of Jainism could continue unabated.

As mentioned earlier, Jinasena incorporated or adapted nearly all of the Hindu *saṃskāras* within his own system. In fact there is only one which he omitted completely: *antyeṣṭi*, the ritual to be performed at death.⁴⁶ While the *Ādipurāṇa* does refer to the cremation of Rṣabha,⁴⁷ few details are given and no specific *antyeṣṭi-kriyā* is anywhere set forth. We should not assume, however, that this omission indicates Jaina compliance with prevailing Hindu customs pertaining to death. To the contrary, scathing attacks upon these customs appear in numerous Jaina texts, particularly the *Syādvādamāñjarī* of Malliṣeṇa.⁴⁸ The object of such attacks is mainly to discredit the practice known as *śrāddha*, or *sapiṇḍīkaraṇa*, offering food to the spirits of the dead.

Śrāddha constitutes the final component of the *antyeṣṭi-saṃskāra*, and it is certainly one of the most important rituals observed in brahmanical society. The idea underlying this ceremony is that a departed soul ostensibly spends a certain amount of time in the *pitṛ-loka* (world of the fathers), a sort of heavenly way station, prior to attaining rebirth in human form. But the journey to this *loka* requires a special body, which the soul is not capable of producing. Therefore, it is believed, the son of the dead person must offer food in a special ceremony; this food, when eaten by brahmans, will somehow be "converted"

46. On the Hindu funeral ceremonies, see Pandey 1969: 234–274.

47. *AP*: xlvii, 343–350. See n. 38 above.

48. *SM*: k 11.

into
ing i
upw
over
only
does
It
in g
are
nec
Jina
tice
very
but
any
whi
ject
upo
frui
thus
othe
is u
reco
the
śrāc
scrui
is ea
only
fere

40
adop
it is
the h
soul
inher
requi
custo
1959:
50
51

into the "subtle body" required by the spirit, thereby freeing it from its disembodied limbo and allowing it to move upwards to its new abode. The son's right to inherit, moreover, depends upon his having performed the śrāddha; only after thus fulfilling his final obligation to his parents does he become a worthy heir.⁴⁹

It will be apparent, if Jaina doctrines pertaining to karma in general and to the mechanism of rebirth in particular are recalled, that the incorporation of śrāddha would necessarily have involved a blatant heresy; thus even Jinasena stayed clear of any attempt to bring such a practice into the Jaina community. First of all, Jaina texts are very definite about the fact that a soul normally requires but a single moment to move from one body to the next;⁵⁰ any notion of a protracted period between births, during which śrāddha would be relevant, is therefore to be rejected out of hand. Even more important is the Jaina stress upon the total individuality of the karmic process. The fruits one reaps must be those which he alone has sown; thus the idea of one person affecting the destiny of another, whether by food offerings or in any other manner, is unthinkable. Finally, Jainas have traditionally taken recourse to common sense as the best guide in evaluating the feasibility of various religious beliefs; the practice of śrāddha, clearly, does not bear up well under this sort of scrutiny. As Malliṣeṇa has said: "Who can agree that what is eaten by brahmans accrues to them [the ancestors]? For only in the brahmans do we see fattened bellies, and transference of these to the departed souls cannot be espied."⁵¹

49. For Hindus, only a man can perform śrāddha; if there is no son, an adopted son or the nearest male family member must carry out this duty. Thus it is that widows or daughters of Hindu families without sons cannot inherit the husband/father's property; it will go only to the one who assists the departed soul on its way to the pitṛ-loka. Jaina women, by contrast, are not barred from inheritance in this way, since among Jainas no such ritual activity is a prerequisite to receiving goods of the deceased. For a discussion of these divergent customs and their relation to classical Indian laws, see J. L. Jaini 1916a; Sangave 1959: 190-192.

50. *vigrahagatau karmayogaḥ/ ekasamayā 'vigrahā/ TS: ii, 25, 29.*

51. *atha vipropabhuktaṃ tebhya upatiṣṭhata iti cet, ka ivāitat pratyetu,*

For all these reasons, then, śrāddha has never been acceptable to Jainas; in those communities where, due to extreme brahmanical influence, it did appear, it was denounced as a mithyātva.⁵² Given the importance of this ritual in Hindu life, and its near total absence among the Jainas, it seems unreasonable to claim that Jainas and Hindus are functionally indistinguishable. Even if our interpretation of Jinasena's work as a cleverly effected pseudo-Hinduization should prove to be unwarranted, there would still remain, as Jainas themselves have emphasized, the fundamental distinction between the two societies based upon their conflicting attitudes towards śrāddha.

Jaina Integration of Hindu Divinities

The great devotional movement (bhakti) which swept India around the fifth or sixth century has already been mentioned, in connection with the collapse of Buddhism. While numerous mythological figures became the objects of such cult worship, two stood far above all others in terms of their power to capture the popular imagination and to generate large followings. They were of course Rāma and Kṛṣṇa, the great heroes whose exploits were described in the widely told stories of the *Rāmāyaṇa* and the *Mahābhārata*, respectively, and who were raised to the status of Viṣṇu-avatāra by the epics and by the Purāṇas of the early medieval period. Had Jaina teachers ignored the tremendous fascination which these figures held for the average layperson, regardless of his religious affiliation, they would have done so at the peril of their own society's disintegration.

Thus we see in Jaina literature of the period the development of a parallel set of myths, placing Rāma and Kṛṣṇa in a Jaina context and treating their respective deeds from

viprāṇām eva medurodaratādarśanāt. tadvapuṣi ca teṣāṃ saṅkramah śraddhā-tum api na śakyate . . . iti mudhaiva śraddhādividhānam. SM: k 11.

52. JY: intro. xxiv.

the st
ploye
peare
law a
evil p
repres
and c
made
to pre
point.
mīkī's
killing
must

respon
the m
Lakṣn
but R
is sho
end o

As
exploit
that m
manag
elder
of the

53.
one in A
list, see
fact tha
the Bude

54. I
vaṃśap
canonica
evam k
māreṇa
taccāe V
daśāḥ: §
hell for
an eye to
completi
half-cycl

the standpoint of Jaina ethics. These tales generally employed a fixed literary structure in which three types appeared: a hero (*balabhadra*), standing totally within Jaina law and leading an ideal life; a villain (*prati-nārāyaṇa*), evil personified; the hero's companion or ally (*nārāyaṇa*), representing as it were the force of righteous indignation and carrying out destruction of the villain. This device made it possible to alter the Hindu myth in such a way as to preserve the hero's pure character from the Jaina standpoint. The Jaina "*Rāmāyaṇas*," for example, follow Vālmīki's original narrative in nearly all particulars except the killing of Rāvaṇa; whereas in the Hindu version Rāma must perform this deed (being, as an avatar, personally responsible for the destruction of evil), the Jaina texts have the murder committed by his brother Lakṣmaṇa.⁵³ Thus Lakṣmaṇa must go to hell for his great violation of *ahiṃsā*, but Rāma remains a true follower of the Jina-dharma and is shown renouncing the world and achieving *mokṣa* at the end of his career.

As for Kṛṣṇa, the hero of the *Mahābhārata*, his various exploits (both sexual and violent) were so well-known that making him into a Jaina hero was a bit too difficult to manage. Thus he was given the *nārāyaṇa* role, and his elder brother Balarāma was depicted as the great upholder of the Jina's teachings.⁵⁴

53. At least eighteen Jaina "*Rāmāyaṇas*" (ten in Sanskrit, five in Prakrit, one in Apabhraṃśa, and two in Kannada) are known to exist. For a complete list, see Kulkarni 1959-1960. Compare the extent of this collection with the fact that only one such story, the *Daśarathajātaka* (*Jātaka*: no. 461), exists in the Buddhist tradition. See Bulche 1971: 56ff.

54. For the Jaina version of the life of Kṛṣṇa, see Punṇāṭa Jinasena's *Hari-vamśapurāṇa* (A.D. 783) and Hemacandra's *TSPC*: VII. These are based on canonical accounts wherein it is prophesied that Kṛṣṇa will be reborn in hell: *evaṃ khalu Kaṇhā, Bāravīe nayaṛīe . . . Divāyaṇkovanidaḍḍhāe . . . Jarākumāreṇaṃ tikkheṇaṃ . . . isuṇā vāme pāde viddhe samāṇe kālamāse kālaṃ kiccā taccāe Vāluṃyappabhāe puḍhavīe ujjalīe narae nerayittāe uvavajjihisi. Antakṛd-daśāḥ*: §v, 9. It should be noted that Jaina authors, while condemning Kṛṣṇa to hell for his homicidal actions, were anxious to "rehabilitate" him. Perhaps with an eye to his great popularity, they suggested (following the canon) that after completing his karmic term in the nether regions (sometime during the next half-cycle), he would be reborn in Bharata-kṣetra and become a Tīrthaṅkara.

In "accepting" Hindu figures as part of their own mythology, Jaina writers denied any notion that these beings were, as was often claimed, manifestations of the divine. Nevertheless, they were able to portray the heroes in a popular manner that satisfied the desire of the laity for such tales, probably helping thereby to reduce the number of Jainas who actually left the faith and allied themselves with one or another of the bhakti cults.

The Spiritual Decay of the Jaina Community

Despite the wealth accumulated during their periods of great influence, and the various efforts chronicled above to achieve "peaceful coexistence" with the Hindu majority, Jaina communities of both the north and south fell upon rather hard times in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. Hindu opposition to the "atheistic" and anti-Vedic doctrines that were being propounded could not be kept down indefinitely; thus, as the political power of the Jainas fell to a low ebb and the wave of bhakti carried virtually everything before it, great erosions took place in Jaina society. Many people converted out of preference; others simply went along with the religious convictions of their rulers. Numerous temples were lost, subject either to takeover by militant Hindu sects (particularly in the Deccan) or to conversion into mosques by invading Muslims.⁵⁵ Serious as these developments may have been, however, the greatest threat to the continued existence of Jainism came not from some external source but from a spiritual decay within Jaina society itself.

Jainas have traditionally prided themselves on the austere life-styles of their mendicants. But with the acquisition of great riches by the community, the monks fell increas-

See Barnett 1907: 81-82. On the legends relating Kṛṣṇa to Nemi, the twenty-second Tīrthāṅkara, see above, Ch. I n. 75; and Kashalikar 1969.

55. For an allusion to Hindu persecution of the Jainas, see *Periyapurāṇam* (tenth century): 533; and *Tiruvāḷiyātar Purāṇam* (sixteenth century): 441-479. Certain frescoes at the Mīnākṣī temple in Madura also depict such persecution, in graphic detail. See Saletore 1938: 272-281.

ingly into
luxuriou
external
by Mah
"admini
and its
areas of
rituals t
gained g
threat o
perform
wishes) a
Digamba
kṣullaka
ones);⁵⁶
who car
(literally
living in
sects the
governin

It cou
a certain
the solid
stemmed
from the
away fro
ideal (th
monk for
of such n
layperson
the super
Hindu so

56. For
Johrapurka
modern bha
which they
57. On y

ingly into a temple-centered existence, living under rather luxurious conditions and devoting themselves more to the external trappings of religion than to the practices stressed by Mahāvīra. There even developed a special group of "administrator-clerics," who not only managed the temple and its associated holdings (schools, libraries, extensive areas of land) but also assumed control of the temple rituals that formed the core of lay practice. Thus they gained great power over their lay disciples, wielding the threat of excommunication against those who failed to perform the rituals (or performed them contrary to their wishes) and honoring those who did perform them. Among Digambaras, such individuals came from the ranks of the kṣullakas and were known as *bhaṭṭārakas* (venerable ones);⁵⁶ their Śvetāmbara counterparts were actual monks who carried the title of *caityavāsi* (temple-dweller) or *yati* (literally, ascetic—a rather inappropriate term for those living in such affluence as the yatis enjoyed).⁵⁷ In both sects the administrator-clerics functioned as the effective governing bodies of their communities.

It could be argued that such a situation brought with it a certain increased stability; but we must keep in mind that the solidarity of Jaina social organization had always stemmed not from the political power of the monks but from the great *moral* authority they possessed. In falling away from his proper role as a living example of the Jaina ideal (the dedicated ascetic earnestly seeking mokṣa), a monk forfeited this authority. Confronted by the spectacle of such moral stagnation among his "holy men," the Jaina layperson could have found little or no reason to assert the superiority of the Jina's path over those set forth by the Hindu schools. Thus it is probably not unreasonable to

56. For a comprehensive history of the tradition of the *bhaṭṭārakas*, see Jhrapurkar 1958. Sangave (1959: 330–335) gives a detailed description of modern *bhaṭṭārakas* in South India, with particular attention to the power which they wield over their parishes.

57. On yatis, known also as *gorjis*, see Glasenapp 1925: 341.

suggest that, had these conditions continued unabated for an indefinite period, the Jaina community might well have been completely assimilated by its Hindu neighbors.

Fortunately, various individuals became aware of the gravity of the situation and strove to bring about needed reforms. As early as the ninth century the philosopher-mystic Haribhadra, disgusted by the already emerging trend towards affluence and impropriety, wrote:

These pseudo-monks live in temples, start worshiping there like laymen, enjoy the wealth dedicated to the worship of the Jinas, take active part in erecting temples and residence halls, wear perfumed clothes of variegated colors, eat two or three times a day, and partake of food brought by nuns. They engage themselves in astrology and predict the future for the lay disciples. They take baths, adorn their bodies with all sorts of powders and oils, and waste time in sleep, in buying and selling, and in gossip. To increase their support they buy young children and make them into their own disciples, and do business in buying and selling Jaina images. They are clever in medicine, in *yantra* [mystical diagrams], in tantric practices, and in other such techniques forbidden to monks. They prevent the lay disciples from going to those monks who lead a pure life, frightening them with curses, and they fight constantly to keep their disciples from being taken by others.⁵⁸

Jaina Reform Movements

In the year 1017, there was a movement among certain Śvetāmbara monks in the capital of Saurashtra to break the hold of the caityavāsis over local Jaina society. Although the opposition group, called *vanavāsi* (forest-dwellers), did not completely succeed in their aims, they

58. *Sambodhaprakaraṇa* of Haribhadra: k 65-76 (quoted in Premi 1956: 477-479). *Ratnamālā*, a Digambara text, goes so far as to suggest that even naked Digambara ascetics should abandon secluded places and, contrary to mendicant law, live in the temple precincts at all times: *kalau kāle vane vāso varjyate munisattamāḥ/ sthīyate ca jināgāre grāmādiṣu viśeṣataḥ*// (k 22, quoted in Premi 1956: 481). It is likely that this practice began during a period of Muslim rule, when strict bans were enforced against public nudity of any kind.

did man
adherin
first tru
of the c
the Śve
devout
scribe b
(at that
and was
with the

It is s
the temp
and pov
rituals p
forth in
that eve
of ahiṃ
quarryi
forms. C
publicly
for any
by the a
tices of
latter po
and exc
gan to g
Jaina m
scribe's
could o
entire co
to exami

Like t
Śāha ha
acceptan
tical leve
temple m
doned; n

did manage to establish a separate community of those adhering more closely to the traditional values. But the first truly effective rebellion against the entrenched power of the caityavāsis, as well as against the degeneration of the Śvetāmbara monkhood in general, was initiated by a devout Gujarati layman called Lonkā Śāha in 1451. A scribe by profession, he gained access to the sacred texts (at that time available in their original form only to monks) and was shocked to compare the discipline they demanded with the lax monkish behavior which he saw around him.

It is said that Lonkā Śāha considered the institution of the temple (caitya), with its great concentration of wealth and power, to be the main source of corruption and the rituals performed there as totally irrelevant to the path set forth in scripture. He became convinced, furthermore, that even worship of the Jina-image was against the rule of ahimsā, since erecting such an image involved digging, quarrying, and other activities harmful to minute life forms. On the basis of such ideas Lonkā Śāha declared publicly that temple worship was a mithyātva, a misdeed for any Jaina, and that such worship was not supported by the ancient texts. He also challenged the various practices of the caityavāsis; perhaps mainly because of this latter position (for many were dissatisfied with the laxity and excessive power of the administrator-monks), he began to gain followers. One of these was a very influential Jaina minister named Lakhamsi; his support helped the scribe's ideas to gain a currency much wider than they could otherwise have achieved. The result was that the entire community was shaken from its apathy and made to examine itself in the light of the scriptures.

Like the leaders of many protestant movements, Lonkā Śāha had taken a position so extreme that its complete acceptance was doomed from the start. On a purely practical level, monks whose whole career had revolved around temple rituals were not about to see those rituals abandoned; nor were laypersons who had invested great sums

of money into the institution of the temple likely to stand still for the complete downgrading of actions and expenditures previously considered highly meritorious. The scriptures themselves, moreover, allowed for a certain amount of lay *himsā* in service of the great amount of *prabhāvanā* generated by image erection or temple building.

Certain scholars have suggested that *Lonkā Śāha* was influenced by the iconoclastic ideas of the Muslims, who ruled portions of Gujarat at that time. Given that Muslim law forbids the making of images of God (even the face of the prophet Mohammed is covered in the manuscripts depicting him), whereas Jaina doctrine is not technically opposed to such a practice, this seems a reasonable conclusion. In any case, the movement founded by the scribe gained enough followers to form a viable subsect, existing separate from the *Śvetāmbara* mainstream, but its influence was never sufficient to radically alter the flow of that stream. The new group, known as *Sthānakavāsi* (dwellers in halls [as opposed to temples]), was mainly distinguished by certain practices (for example, retaining lay names and wearing face-masks [*muh-patti*] at all times) referred to earlier (Chapter VIII).⁵⁹ Its emphasis upon strict interpretation of scripture and adherence to a puritanical way of life, while not generally adopted by *Śvetāmbaras*, nevertheless exerted a beneficial effect upon the larger community by raising lay expectations as to the standards of monkish conduct and thus helping to curb the excesses into which *Śvetāmbara* clerics had fallen.

Digambaras too experienced an important rejuvenation as the result of a reform movement. This movement took place in Agra during the late sixteenth century and was

59. On the history of the *Sthānakavāsi* sect, see Glasenapp 1925: 69-72; Schubring 1962: 65-67. On the philosophy of *Lonkā Śāha*, see Malvania 1964. Some *Digambaras* of central India also seem to have come under the influence of the *Sthānakavāsi* movement. Known as *Tāraṇapantha*, i.e., the followers of one *Tāraṇasvāmi* (sixteenth century), this sect banned idol worship and is said to have admitted many low-caste people into its ranks. See Glasenapp 1925: 357; and Sangave 1959: 56-58.

initiated
devout
kunda,
havior
amount
cessive.
flowers
the om
religiou
should
(medita
doctrin
tional,
Kundal

The
notably
society
associa
extent
ened to
were al
vitality
the diff

The Ja
Any in
comple
consider
have n
strong
of the
influen
Equal v

60. C
61. A
widely re
main wor

initiated by a well-known lay poet called Banārasīdās.⁶⁰ A devout student and translator of the works of Kundakunda, Banārasīdās was deeply offended by the lax behavior of the bhaṭṭārakas and also convinced that the amount of ritual associated with temple worship was excessive. Citing the high degree of himsā involved in offering flowers, fruits, and sweets in temple services, he called for the omission of such offerings from the layman's daily religious practice. According to Banārasīdās, emphasis should rather be placed upon *internal* forms of worship (meditation); this contention he supported with convincing doctrinal arguments made from the nīścaya (nonconventional, that is, absolute) point of view so important in Kundakunda's philosophy.

The influence of Banārasīdās and his later followers, notably one Paṇḍita Ṭoḍarmal of Jaipur,⁶¹ on Digambara society was profound; the crippling excesses of ritualism associated with the bhaṭṭāraka tradition were to a large extent eliminated, and the entire community was reawakened to the deep meaning of its faith. Thus Digambaras were able to enter the modern period with greatly increased vitality and with the capacity to successfully accommodate the difficult changes which that period would bring.

The Jaina Commitment to Nonviolence

Any investigation that seeks to unearth "the causes" of a complex phenomenon must eventually draw the line. In considering Jainism's survival against formidable odds, we have noted the roles played by royal patronage, by the strong involvement of the lay community, by the ability of the ācāryas to constructively compromise with Hindu influence, and by internal movements towards reform. Equal weight could have been given to the general lack of

60. On the life and works of Banārasīdās, see R. K. Jain 1966.

61. Author of the *Mokṣamārgaparakāśaka* (circa 1800), a Hindi work widely read among Digambaras in modern times. For a discussion of Ṭoḍarmal's main works, see Phoolchandra 1967: intro.

schisms within the Jaina tradition (Buddhism, by contrast, could count eighteen schools, opposed to one another on doctrinal grounds, as early as the third century B.C.), or perhaps to geographical factors. Then, of course, there are the intangibles: commitment, timing, luck, and so forth. To synthesize all of these elements in terms of some overarching dynamic or principle is perhaps tempting, but likely to generate inaccuracies that far outweigh the "benefits" of imposed coherence. Ultimately, perhaps it can only be said that the forces and events discussed, plus others mentioned but not explored, and yet others of which we are not even aware, came together in a unique and auspicious interaction to produce the phenomenon which we have labeled "the survival of Jainism in India."

For the Jainas themselves, of course, such a statement will never suffice. Every social group large and cohesive enough to constitute an identifiable community seems to cherish the idea that its behavior in the world is conditioned by certain principles to which the group firmly adheres, principles which thus "explain" whatever the facts of that group's history may be. With some such idea in mind, many Americans will, for example, construe the events of their nation's past as the natural outcome of "individualism"; Japanese may assign an equivalent role to "hierarchy" or "obligation" in their case. Jainas are also subject to this tendency, often being quick to point out that the history of their fortunes can be clearly understood as following directly from Jaina commitment to the Jina's greatest teaching, that of *ahiṃsā*. Although this view cannot be wholly accepted, it is true (as pointed out in Chapter VIII) that the *ahiṃsā* ideal is of paramount importance to every Jaina, and also that the Jainas as a group have traditionally been identified by Indians of all faiths with the doctrine of nonviolence. Thus it is appropriate to close this discussion on Jainism in Indian history, as well as this entire study of the Jaina experience, by considering briefly certain aspects of the relation between the Jainas, *ahiṃsā*, and society.

Ja
avoi
on th
have
of k
stan
orde
Jaina
for t
tion
com
paci
aggr
in d
com
in ti
Jaina
Gītā
cuss
silen
most
cal
seric
the i
vale
O
for r
in a
viat
Sthā
to e
assis
gree

62
single
syāt,
kānīn
means

Jaina mendicants have clearly exerted great efforts to avoid *personally harming* any living thing; but their record on the issue of *condoning* violent behavior is less clear. We have seen the role of ācāryas in abetting the establishment of kingdoms; this must have taken place under circumstances in which the candidate had to engage in warfare in order to secure his throne. As has also been noted, great Jaina generals were not condemned by mendicant leaders for their violent actions; on the contrary, their high position in the state was seen as a boon to the entire religious community. Jaina literature, moreover, is by no means pacifist (in the sense that Quakers are, for example): only aggressive war is proscribed, while the subject of fighting in defense of one's country is passed over almost without comment. As for a Jaina layman's personal responsibility in time of war, it has never been confronted directly.⁶² Jainas have not produced any text similar to the *Bhagavad Gītā*, in which the ethical problems of the warrior are discussed from the brahmanical standpoint. The ācāryas' silence on this issue has perhaps been due to the fact that most Jainas, not being of the kṣatriya caste, have not been called upon to engage in warfare anyway. Even so, it is a serious indictment of a tradition so closely associated with the ideal of nonviolence that it could have remained ambivalent, or at best noncommittal, on the subject of warfare.

On the positive side of the ledger, it must be said that for most Jainas the commitment to nonviolence is reflected in a real and active concern with the prevention and alleviation of suffering. Thus, the attempt by a renegade Sthānakavāsi monk called Bhīkhanji (eighteenth century) to establish a sect based on the doctrine of total non-assistance to any living being (except mendicants) was greeted by protest from nearly all members of the com-

62. Modern Jaina writers typically deal with this issue simply by quoting a single verse by Somadevasūri (tenth century): yaḥ śāstravṛttiḥ samare ripuḥ syāt, yat kaṇṭako vā nijamaṇḍalasya/ astrāṇi tatraiva nṛpāḥ kṣipanti, na dīnā-kānīna-śubhāśayeṣu// *Yāśastilaka-campū*: II, 97. While these lines are by no means explicit, they seem to imply that killing in a defensive war is a kind of

munity.⁶³ It is said the Bhīkhanji could initially gather no more than twelve disciples; the sect he founded, therefore, became known as Terāpantha, which means "the path of the thirteen."

The image of the Jaina as a man of peace and goodwill is strongly imprinted on the Indian psyche; and indeed, it can be said that the Jaina community has often been a morally uplifting factor in the life of Indian society as a whole. In this connection might be mentioned Mahatma Gandhi—perhaps the greatest champion of nonviolence in our age. Gandhi claimed to have been deeply influenced, particularly in the development of his theory of *ahiṃsā* as a political weapon, by the revered Jaina layman Raychand-

virodhī-hiṃsā (see above, Ch. VI n. 32), best avoided if possible (i.e., by entering the mendicant path), but "acceptable" for laypeople. The story literature, however, makes it clear that even killing in self-defense must lead one to rebirth in hell. In the Jaina *Rāmāyaṇa*, for example, the hero Lakṣmaṇa goes to the very same hell as does the wicked Rāvaṇa, whom he "justifiably" destroyed. (Compare: *adhunā narake turye saśambūko Daśānanaḥ/ Lakṣmaṇas cāsti, gatayaḥ karmādhīnā hi dehinām// TSPC: VII, x, 231.*) Contrast this view with that expressed by the *Mahābhārata*, in which both Yudhiṣṭhira and Duryodhana go to heaven, the former by virtue of his righteousness and the latter through having died in battle. (*svargaṃ triviṣṭapaṃ prāpya dharmarājo Yudhiṣṭhiraḥ/ Duryodhanaṃ śrīyā juṣṭaṃ dadarśāsinaṃ āsane// Mahābhārata: XVIII, i, 4.*) An even stronger statement of the Hindu dictum that a warrior's death brings heavenly rebirth appears in a famous line of the *Bhagavad Gītā*: *hatvā prāpsyasi svargaṃ, jivā vā bhokṣyase mahīm/ tasmād uttiṣṭha Kaunteya yuddhāya kṛtaniścayaḥ// (ii, 37).*

63. Bhīkhanji's theory was that saving the life of a dog, e.g., makes one responsible for the violence committed by that dog in the future and thus should be avoided. He also claimed that "helpful" behavior almost always involved some interest in the result, hence brought an increase in karmic attachments. Bhīkhanji here exploits the doctrinal split inherent in any community that preaches the ideals of total renunciation and *mokṣa*, on the one hand, and the value of compassionate and charitable behavior (leading to heaven) on the other.

Pushed to a purely logical extreme, the canonical teachings might well be thought to justify the Terāpanthi interpretation. Even so, such interpretation violates the spirit of *anekāntavāda* and has been considered a form of *ekānta* by most Jains. Since its inception, therefore, the Terāpantha sect has lived in virtual isolation from the larger Jaina community. It should be noted, however, that the Terāpantha mendicants have in recent years made important efforts to contact and influence Indian society as a whole. This tendency is most evident in the "aṇuvrata movement," a Terāpantha-based attempt to purge corruption from Indian political and economic life. For further information on this sect, see Glasenapp 1925: 354; Nathmal 1968; Tulasi 1969; Nair 1970.

bhai Mehta.⁶⁴ Among the letters exchanged by these two men there is a statement by the layman, given in answer to a pointed question by Gandhi, which deserves to be reproduced here. Raychandbhai's words seem a fitting end to this study of the Jaina religion, for they do more than simply set forth that religion's most important doctrine. In reading them we understand, as Gandhi did, that spirit of Jainism which can reach beyond the narrow confines of its community and touch the hearts of men and women everywhere.

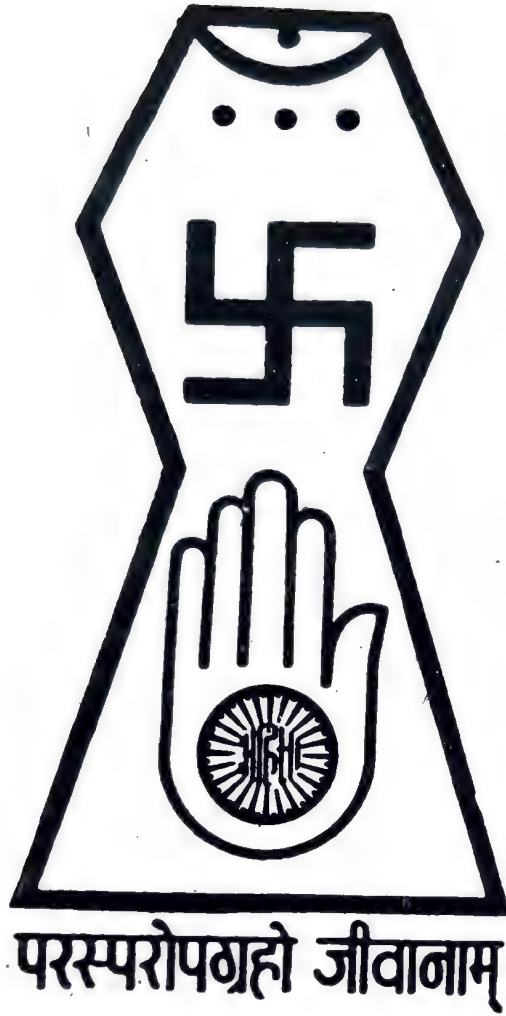
Question: If a snake is about to bite me, should I allow myself to be bitten or should I kill it, supposing that that is the only way in which I can save myself?

Answer: One hesitates to advise you that you should let the snake bite you. Nevertheless, how can it be right for you, if you have realized that the body is perishable, to kill, for protecting a body which has no real value to you, a creature which clings to its own life with great attachment? For anyone who desires his spiritual welfare, the best course is to let his body perish in such circumstances. But how should a person who does not desire spiritual welfare behave? My only reply to such a question is, how can I advise such a person that he should pass through hell and similar worlds, that is, that he should kill the snake? If the person lacks the development of a noble character, one may advise him to kill the snake, but we should wish that neither you nor I will even dream of being such a person.⁶⁵

64. "Three persons have influenced me deeply, Tolstoy, Ruskin and Raychandbhai: Tolstoy through one of his books . . . and Raychandbhai through intimate personal contact. When I began to feel doubts about Hinduism as a religion, it was Raychandbhai who helped me to resolve them." M. K. Gandhi 1958-1976: XXXII, 4.

On the life and works of Raychandbhai Mehta (1868-1901), known to his devotees as Śrīmad Rājacandra, see SM: J. C. Jain's intro. (in Hindi), 1-12. See pl. 32.

65. M. K. Gandhi 1958-1976: XXXII, 601-602. (The letter is dated October 20, 1894. Compare Govardhandas 1951: §530.)



PARASPAROPAGRAHO JĪVĀNĀM

33. Jaina pratika: symbol of the Jaina faith, officially adopted during the 2,500th anniversary of Mahāvīra's nirvāṇa (1975). The palm of the hand bears the word *ahiṃsā*; the svastika topped by three dots and the crescent represent the four destinies, the threefold path, and the abode of the liberated souls, respectively; the slogan below the figure of loka-ākāśa calls for the mutual assistance of all beings.

Bibliography

Texts and Translations

- Abhidharmakośa-bhāṣya* of Vasubandhu, Sanskrit text ed. by P. Pradhan. Patna (K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute) 1967.
- Abhisamayālaṅkāra* of Maitreya, Sanskrit text ed. by Th. Stcherbatsky and E. Obermiller. Leningrad (Bibliotheca Buddhica) 1929.
- Ācārāṅga-sūtra*, ed. as *The Āyāraṅga Sutta of the Śvetāmbara Jains* by H. Jacobi. London (Pali Text Society) 1882.
- tr. by H. Jacobi in *Jaina Sūtras*, pt. 1, 1-213. Sacred Books of the East, XVI, 1895.
- ed. by Puppha Bhikkhu in *Suttāgame*, I, 1-99. Gurgaon-Delhi (Sūtrāgama-prakāśaka-samiti) 1953.
- Ādipurāṇa of Jinasena*, pts. 1-2, Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. Pannalal Jain. Varanasi (BJP) 1963-1965.
- Anguttaranikāya*, 5 vols., Pali text ed. by R. Morris and E. Hardy. London (Pali Text Society) 1885-1900.
- Antakṛddasāḥ* (*Suttāgame*, I, 1161-1190).
- tr. as *The Antagaḍadasāo and Aṇuttarovavāiyadasāo* by L. D. Barnett. London (The Royal Asiatic Society: Oriental Translation Fund, n.s., XVII) 1907.
- Anuyogadvāra-sūtra* (*Suttāgame*, II, 1087-1163).
- tr. as *Aṇuogaddārāiṃ* by T. Hanaki. Vaishali (Research Institute of Prakrit, Jainology and Ahimsā) 1970.
- Anyayogavyavacchedikā* of Hemacandra, see *Syādvādamāñjarī*.
- Aṣṭaśatī* of Akalaṅka (with Vasunandī's *Ṭikā*). Varanasi, 1914.
- Aupapātika-sūtra* (*Suttāgame*, II, 1-40).
- Āvassaya-sutta* (*Suttāgame*, II, 1165-1172).
- Bhagavad Gītā*, 2 vols., Sanskrit text and tr. by F. Edgerton. Cambridge (Harvard University Press) 1946.
- Bhagavatī-ārāḍhanā* of Śivārya, Bombay (Anantakīrti Granthamālā) 1932.

318/Bibliography: Texts and Translations

Bhagavatī-sūtra, also known as *Vyākhyāprajñapti-sūtra* (*Suttāgame*, I, 384–940).

——— *Pañcadaśaṃ Gośālakākhyam Śatakam* (with Abhayadevasūri's *Vivaraṇa*), ed. by N. V. Vaidya. Poona (Godiji Jain Temple and Charities) 1954.

Bharateśavaibhavasamgraha (selections from the Kannada *Bharateśavaibhava* of Ratnākara Varṇī), ed. by T. S. Shamrao. Mysore (University of Mysore) 1966.

Bodhisattvabhūmi, Sanskrit text ed. by N. Dutt. Patna (K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute) 1966.

Brhatkathakośa of Hariṣeṇa, ed. by A. N. Upadhye. Bombay (Singhi Jain Series, no. 17) 1943.

Daśavaikālika-sūtra (*Suttāgame* II, 947–976).

——— tr. by Kastur Chand Lalwani. Delhi (Motilal Banarsidass) 1973.

Dhavalā-tikā, see *Ṣaṭkhaṇḍāgama*.

Dīghanikāya, 3 vols., Pali text ed. by T. W. Rhys Davids and J. E. Carpenter. London (Pali Text Society) 1890–1911.

Dravyasamgraha of Nemicaṇḍra, Sanskrit text with tr. by S. C. Ghosal. Arrah (Sacred Books of the Jains) 1917.

Dvātriṃśikā of Siddhasena, see Upadhye, A. N., 1971.

Gaṇadharavāda, Prakrit text ed. and tr. by Esther A. Solomom. Ahmedabad (Gujarat Vidyā Sabhā) 1966.

Gommaṣasāra-Jīvakāṇḍa of Nemicaṇḍra, ed. by Khubchandra Jain. Agas (Rājacandra Jaina Śāstramālā) 1959.

Gommaṣasāra-Karmakāṇḍa of Nemicaṇḍra, Marathi tr. by Nemchand V. Gandhi. Sholapur, 1939.

Harivaṃśapurāṇa of Punnāṭha Jinasena, Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. by Pannalal Jain. Varanasi (BJP) 1962.

Isibhāsiyāṃ, ed. by Walther Schubring. Ahmedabad (Lalbhai Dalpatbhai Series) 1974.

Jaina-tarkabhāṣā of Yaśovijaya, Sanskrit text with tr. by Dayanand Bhargava. Delhi (Motilal Banarsidass) 1973.

Jambūdvīpaprajñapti-sūtra (*Suttāgame*, II, 535–672).

Jātaka, 7 vols., Pali text ed. by V. Fausboll, repr., London (Pali Text Society) 1962.

Jayadhavalā, see *Kaṣāyaprabhṛta*.

Jīvājīvābhigama-sūtra (*Suttāgame*, II, 105–264).

Jñānapī
dhān
Jñātrdhu

Kalpa-s

Yati
the l

Karmag
naga

Kārtike
Śāst

Kaṣāya
of V

Sidd
Indi

Kaṭhop
kad

Laghu
nab

Mahāb
Pra

nas
Mahāb

dar
Mahāp

Vai
193

Majjih
mer

Māṇḍ
kac

Manus
(Ni

Mokṣa
mā

Mūlāc
tr.

Nama
dav

Jñānapīṭha-pūjāñjali, ed. by A.N. Upadhye with Phoolchandra Siddhāntaśāstrī. Varanasi (BJP) 1956.

Jñātr̥dharmakathā-sūtra (*Suttāgame*, I, 941-1125).

Kalpa-sūtra (*Suttāgame*, II, app. I, 1-42).

—tr. as *Lives of the Jinas, List of the Sthaviras, and Rules for Yatis* by H. Jacobi in *Jaina Sūtras*, pt. 2, 217-311. Sacred Books of the East, XLV, 1895.

Karmagrantha of Devendrasūri, vols. I-II (with *Svopajña-ṭikā*). Bhavnagar (Jaina Dharmaprasāraka-sabhā) 1910-1911.

Kārtikeyānupreksā, ed. by A.N. Upadhye. Agas (Rājacandra Jaina Śāstramālā) 1966.

Kaśāyaprabhṛta (*Kaśāyapāhuḍa* of Guṇabhadra; with *Jayadhavalā-ṭikā* of Vīrasena), 15 vols., Prakrit text with Hindi tr. by Phoolchandra Siddhāntaśāstrī and Kailashchandra Siddhāntaśāstrī. Mathura (All-India Digambara Jaina Sangha) 1942-1975.

Kāthopaniṣat, in *Aṣṭāvīmśatyupaniṣadaḥ*, Sanskrit text ed. by Dvarikadas Śāstrī, Varanasi (Prācyā Bhāratī Prakāśana) 1965.

Laghutattoasphoṭa of Amṛtacandra, Sanskrit text with tr. by Padmanabh S. Jaini. Ahmedabad (Lalbhai Dalpatbhai Series) 1978.

Mahābandha (*Mahādhavalasiddhāntaśāstra* of Bhūtabali), 7 vols., Prakrit text with Hindi tr. by Phoolchandra Siddhāntaśāstrī. Varanasi (BJP) 1947-1958.

Mahābhārata, critically ed. by V. S. Sukthankar *et al.* Poona (Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute) 1933-1972.

Mahāpurāṇa of Puṣpadanta, 3 pts., Apabhraṃśa text ed. by P. L. Vaidya. Bombay (Manikchandra Digambara Jaina Granthamālā) 1937-1947.

Majjhimanikāya, 3 vols., Pali text ed. by V. Trenckner and R. Chalmers. London (Pali Text Society) 1888-1902.

Māṇḍūkyopaniṣat, in *Aṣṭāvīmśatyupaniṣadaḥ*, Sanskrit text ed. Dvarikadas Śāstrī, Varanasi (Prācyā Bhāratī Prakāśana) 1965.

Manusmṛti, Sanskrit text ed. by Vasudeva Lakshmana Śāstrī. Bombay (Nirnayasagara Press) 1909.

Mokṣamārgaparakāśaka of Ṭoḍarmā. Bombay (Anantakīrti Granthamālā) 1937.

Mūlācāra of Vaṭṭakera (with *Vasunandi-ṭikā*), Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. by Manoharalal. Bombay (Anantakīrti Granthamālā) 1919.

Namaskāra-svādhyāya, Sanskrit texts with Gujarati tr. by Tattvānandavijaya Muni. Bombay (Jaina Sāhitya Vikāśa Maṇḍala) 1962.

320/Bibliography: Texts and Translations

- Nandisūtram*, Prakrit text with Haribhadra's *Vṛtti*, ed. by Puṇyavijaya Muni, Varanasi (Prakrit Text Series) 1966.
- Nandisuttam Aṇuogaddārāim ca*, ed. by Puṇyavijaya Muni, with D. D. Malvania and A. M. Bhojak. Bombay (Mahāvīra Jaina Vidyālaya) 1968.
- Nītivākyāmṛta* of Somadevasūri, ed. with Hindi tr. by Ramchandra Malaviya. Varanasi (Chowkhamba Vidyābhavan) 1972.
- Nityanaimittika-pāṭhāvalī*, Karanja (Kamkubai Pāṭhya-pustakamālā) 1956.
- Niyamasāra* of Kundakunda (with *Tātparya-vṛtti* of Padmaprabhama-ladhārīdeva), Sanskrit and Prakrit text with Hindi tr. by Maganlal Jain. Sonagadh (Digambara Jaina Svādhyāya Mandira) 1965.
- Nyāyakumudacandra* of Prabhācandra, ed. by Mahendra Kumar Jain. Bombay (Manikachandra Digambara Jaina Granthamālā) 1941.
- Nyāyāvatāra* of Siddhasena, Sanskrit text ed. by A. N. Upadhye. Bombay (Jaina Sāhitya Vikāsa Maṇḍala) 1971.
- Pañcādhyāyī* of Rājamalla, 2 vols. Sanskrit text with Hindi exposition by Devakinandana Siddhāntaśāstrī. Varanasi (Varṇī Jaina Granthamālā) 1949.
- Parīkṣāmukha* of Māṇikyanandi (with Anantavīrya's *Prameyratnamālā-tīkā*), Sanskrit text and tr. by S. C. Ghosal. Lucknow (Ajitāśrama) 1940.
- Parīṣiṣṭaparva* of Hemacandra, Sanskrit text ed. by H. Jacobi. Calcutta (Bibliotheca Indica, no. 96) 1932 (2d ed.).
- Pāsanāhacariu* of Padmakīrti, Apabhraṃśa text with Hindi tr. by P. K. Modi. Varanasi (Prakrit Text Society) 1965.
- Paumacariya* of Vimalasūri, ed. by H. Jacobi and Puṇyavijaya Muni, with Hindi tr. by S. M. Vora. Varanasi (Prakrit Text Society) 1962.
- Periyapurāṇam* of Cekkilān (in Tamil), ed. by T. M. K. Pillai. Srivai-kuntam, 1964.
- Prajñāpanā-sūtra* (*Paṇṇavanā-sutta*), pts. 1-2, ed. by Puṇyavijaya Muni, with D. D. Malvaniya and A. M. Bhojak). Bombay (Mahāvīra Jaina Vidyālaya) 1969
- (*Suttāgame*, II, 235-533).
- Pramāṇamīmāṃsā* of Hemacandra, Sanskrit text with Hindi nn. by Sukhalalji Sanghavi. Calcutta (Singhi Jaina Series) 1939.
- text and tr. (bks. 1-2) by Satkari Mookerjee, with Nathmal Tatia. Varanasi (Tara Publications) 1970.
- Prameyakamalamārtanḍa* of Prabhācandra, ed. by Mahendra Kumar Jain. Bombay (Nirnayasagar Press) 1941.
- Pravacanasāra* of Kundakunda (with Amṛtacandra's *Tattvadīpikā*, Jayasena's *Tātparya-vṛtti* and Pāṇḍe Hemarāja's *Bālāvabodha-bhā-*

śā
(I
Puru
n
Rāja
Ratn
T
(M
Saba
by
Sadd
ec
Sadd
Sa
Sāgā
ha
Sama
w
Sama
Sama
Pr
BH
Sama
PH
Samb
Gr
Sāmk
Vr
Sanm
(w
Sarpā
Sar
nas
196
Sātkh
val
Hir
Shrī M
C. V

- śāṭikā*), ed. with tr. of *Pravacanasāra* by A. N. Upadhye. Agas (Rājacandra Jaina Śāstramālā) 1934.
- Puruṣārthasiddhyupāya*, Sanskrit text and tr. by Ajit Prasada. Lucknow, 1933.
- Rājaprasnīya-sūtra* (*Suttāgame*, II, 41–103).
- Ratnakaraṇḍaśrāvākācāra* of Samantabhadra (with Prabhācandra's *Ṭikā*), ed. with Hindi intro. by Jugal Kishor Mukhtar. Bombay (Manikachandra Digambara Jaina Granthamālā) 1925.
- Śabdānuśāsana* of Hemacandra, Sanskrit text with *Svopajña-ṭikā*, ed. by Himāṃṣu Vijaya Muni. Ahmedabad, 1934.
- Śaddarśanasamuccaya* of Haribhadrāsūri (with Guṇaratnasūri's *Vṛtti*), ed. by Mahendra Kumar Jain. Varanasi (BJP) 1969.
- Saddharmapūṇḍarīka-sūtra*, ed. by P. L. Vaidya. Darbhanga (Buddhist Sanskrit Texts) 1960.
- Sāgaradharmāmṛta* of Āśādhara, Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. by Mohanlal Jain. Jabalpur (Sarala Jaina Grantha Bhaṇḍāra) 1957.
- Samādhiśataka* of Pūjyapāda (with Prabhācandra's *Ṭikā*), Sanskrit text with Marathi tr. by Raoji N. Shah. Sholapur, 1938.
- Samavāya-sūtra* (*Suttāgame*, I, 316–383).
- Samayasāra* of Kundakunda (with Amṛtacandra's *Ātmakhyāti-ṭikā*), Prakrit and Sanskrit texts with Marathi tr. by Dhanyakumar G. Bhore. Karanja (Mahāvīra Jñānopāsanā Samiti) 1968.
- Prakrit text and tr. by A. Cakravarti. Varanasi (BJP) 1925.
- Samayasārakalaśa* of Amṛtacandra, Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. by Phoolchandra Siddhāntaśāstrī. Songadh, 1964.
- Sambodhaprakaraṇa* of Haribhadra, Prakrit text. Ahmedabad (Jaina Grantha Prakāśaka Sabhā) 1915.
- Sāmkhyakārikā* of Īśvarakṛṣṇa, Sanskrit text with Hindi Intro. by Vrajamohan Caturvedi. Delhi (National Publishing House) 1969.
- Sanmatitarka* of Siddhasena, Prakrit text and tr. by Sukhalalji Sanghavi (with Bechardasji Doshi). Bombay, 1939.
- Sarvārthasiddhi* of Pūjyapāda (with *Tattvārtha-sūtra* of Umāsvāti), Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. by Phoolchandra Siddhāntaśāstrī. Varanasi (BJP) 1971.
- tr. as *Reality* by S. A. Jain. Calcutta (Vīra Śāsana Sangha) 1960.
- Śaṭkhaṇḍāgama* of Puṣpadanta and Bhūtabali (with Vīrasena's *Dhavalā-ṭikā*), 16 vols. Prakrit and Sanskrit texts with Hindi tr. by Hiralal Jain. Amaravati (Jaina Sāhityoddhāraka Fund) 1939–1959.
- Shrī Mahāvīra Jaina Vidyālaya Golden Jubilee Volume*, 2 pts ed. by C. V. Shah. Bombay (Mahāvīra Jaina Vidyālaya) 1968.

322 / Bibliography: Texts and Translations

- Siddhiviniścaya-ṭikā* of Anantavīrya, 2 vols. Sanskrit text ed. by Mahendra Kumar Jain. Varanasi (BJP) 1959.
- Śrīmad Bhāgavata*, 2 pts., Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. Gorakhpur (Gītā Press) 1964.
- Śrīmad Rājacandra*, see Modern Works: Govardhandas, Brahmachari, 1951.
- Sthānāṅga-sūtra* (*Suttāgame*, I, 183-315).
- Strīnirvāṇa-Kevalibhuktiprakaraṇe* of Śākaṭāyana (with *Svopajña-vṛtti*), Sanskrit text ed. by Jambuvijaya Muni. Bhavanagar (Jaina Ātmānanda Sabhā) 1974.
- Sūtrakṛtāṅga-sūtra* (*Suttāgame*, I, 101-182).
 —tr. by H. Jacobi in *Jaina Sūtras*, pt. 2, 235-435. Sacred Books of the East, XLV, 1895.
- Suttāgame*, 2 vols., Prakrit texts ed. by Puppha Bhikkhu. Gurgaon-Delhi (Sūtrāgama-prakāśaka-samiti) 1953. All references to Śvetāmbara canonical texts in this work are to the *Suttāgame* edition.
- Svayambhū-stotra* of Samantabhadra, see *Nityanaimittika-pāṭhāvalī*, 29-44.
- Syādvādamañjarī* of Malliṣeṇa (with Hemacandra's *Anyayogavyavachhedikā*), Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. by Jagdish Chandra Jain. Agas (Rājacandra Jaina Śāstramālā) 1970 (3d ed.).
 —tr. as *The Flower-Spray of the Quodammodo Doctrine* by F. W. Thomas. Berlin (Akademie-Verlag) 1960.
- Tattuārthasāra* of Amṛtacandra, Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. by Pannalal Sāhityācārya. Varanasi (Varṇī Granthamālā, no. 21) 1970.
- Tattuārtha-sūtra* of Umāsvāti, Sanskrit text with tr. by J. L. Jaini. Arah, 1920.
 —text with Hindi exposition following the Digambara tradition by Phoolchandra Siddhāntaśāstrī. Varanasi (Varṇī Granthamālā) 1949.
 —text with Hindi exposition following the Śvetāmbara tradition by Sukhalalji Sanghvi. Varanasi (Jaina Saṃskṛti Saṃśodhana Maṇḍala) 1952 (2d ed.).
 —*Svopajña-bhāṣya*: See Jacobi 1906 in Modern Works.
- Tiloyopannatti* of Yativṛṣabha, Prakrit text and Hindi tr. by Pandit Balacandra. Sholapur (JJG) p. 1-1943 and pt. 2-1951.
- Tiruvīlayātar Purāṇam* of Parañcōti Munivar (in Tamil), ed. by N. M. V. Naṭṭār. Madras, 1965.
- Traivarnikācāra* of Somasena, ed. by Pannalal Soni. Bombay, 1925.
- Triṣaṣṭīśālākāpuruṣacaritra* of Hemacandra, ed. by Caranavijaya Muni. Bhavnagar (Jaina Ātmānanda Sabhā) 1933.
 —tr. by Helen M. Johnson as *The Lives of Sixty-three Illustrious Persons*, 6 vols. Baroda (Oriental Institute) 1962.

Upāsakad
 —tr

Profess
 1888-1

Upāsakād
campū
 Varana

Uttarādhy
 —tr
 the East

Uttarapur
 nalal Ja

Vaddārād
 Mysore

Varāṅgac
 (Manik

Viśeṣāvaśy
 vol. I,
 rit, Jain

Yaśastilak
 tary), p

(Kāvya
Yogabindu

medaba
Yogaśāstra

chandra
Yoga-sūtra

nam, ec
 śana) 19

Modern

Alsdorf, Lu
 1928 D

1973 "

S
 S

Barnett, L. M

Basham, A.
 1951 H

1958 "J

Bibliography: Modern Works/ 323

Upāsakadaśāḥ (Suttāgame, I, 1127-1160).

——tr. by A. F. R. Hoernle as *The Uvāsagadasāo or the Religious Profession of an Uvāsaga*, 2 vols. Calcutta (Bibliotheca Indica) 1888-1890.

Upāsakādhyayana of Somadevasūri (chaps 5-7 of the *Yāśastilaka-campū*), Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. by Kailashchandra Śāstrī. Varanasi (BJP) 1964.

Uttarādhyayana-sūtra (Suttāgame, II. 977-1060).

——tr. by H. Jacobi in *Jaina Sūtras*, pt. 2, 1-232. Sacred Books of the East, XLV, 1895.

Uttarapurāṇa of Guṇabhadra, Sanskrit text ed. with Hindi tr. by Pan-nalal Jain. Varanasi (BJP) 1954.

Vaḍḍārādhane of Śivakoṭi (in Kannada), ed. by D. L. Narasimhachar. Mysore (Śāradā Mandira) 1970 (4th ed.).

Varāṅgacaritra of Jaṭasimhanandi, ed. by A. N. Upadhye. Bombay (Manikachandra Digambara Jaina Granthamālā) 1938.

Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya of Jinabhadragāṇi (with Koṭyācārya's *Vṛtti*), vol. I, ed. by Nathmal Tatia. Vaishali (Research Institute of Prak-rit, Jainology and Ahimsā) 1972.

Yāśastilaka-campū of Somadevasūri (with Śrutadevasūri's commen-tary), pts. 1-2, ed. by Shivadatta Mahāmahopādhyāya. Bombay (Kāvyamālā, no. 70) 1901-1903.

Yogabindu of Haribhadra, Sanskrit text and tr. by K. K. Dixit. Ah-medabad (Lalbhai Dalpatbhai Series) 1968.

Yogaśāstra of Hemacandra, Sanskrit text with Hindi tr. by Shobha-chandra Bharilla. Delhi, 1963.

Yoga-sūtras of Patañjali with *Vyāsa-bhāṣya*: See *Pātañjala-Yogadarśa-nam*, ed. by R. S. Bhattacharya. Varanasi (Bhāratīya Vidyā Prakā-śana) 1963.

Modern Works

Alsdorf, Ludwig

1928 *Der Kumārapālpratibodha* of Somaprabha. Hamburg (Frie-derichsen, De Gruyter).

1973 "What were the Contents of the *Dṛṣṭivāda*?" in *German Scholars on India*, vol. I, 1-5. Varanasi (Chowkhambha Sanskrit Series Office).

Barnett, L. D. See *Antakṛddasāḥ* in Texts and Translations.

Basham, A. L.

1951 *History and Doctrine of the Ājīvikas*. London (Luzac).

1958 "Jainism and Buddhism," in William Theodore de Bary, ed.,

324 / Bibliography: Modern Works

Sources in Indian Tradition, vol. I, 38-92. New York (Columbia University Press).

Bender, Ernest.

- 1976 "An Early Nineteenth Century Study of the Jainas," in *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, XCVI, no. 1, 114-119.

Bhargava, Dayanand

- 1968 *Jaina Ethics*. Delhi (Motilal Banarsidass).

Bhatt, Bansidhar.

- 1972 "Vyavahāranaya and Nīścayanaya in Kundakunda's Works," in *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, I, no. 5, 279-291.

Bhattacharya, B. C.

- 1939 *Jain Iconography*. Lahore (Motilal Banarsidass).

Bhattacharya, Harisatya

- 1953 *Anekāntavāda*. Bhavanagar (Jaina Ātmānandā Sabhā).
1964 *The Jaina Prayer*. Calcutta (University of Calcutta).

Bloomfield, Maurice

- 1919 *The Life and Stories of the Jaina Savior Pārśvanātha*. Baltimore (University of Maryland Press).

Bookchand

- 1948 *Lord Mahāvīra*. Varanasi (Jain Cultural Research Society).

Brown, William N.

- 1933 *The Story of Kālaka*. Washington (Smithsonian Institution, Freer Gallery of Art, Oriental Studies, no. 1).
1934 *A Descriptive and Illustrative Catalogue of Miniature Painting of the Jaina Kalpa-sūtra*. Washington, Baltimore (The Lord Baltimore Press).
1941 *Manuscript Illustrations of the Uttarādhyayana Sūtra*. New Haven (American Oriental Society—American Oriental Series, vol. XXI).

Bruhn, Klaus

- 1969 *The Jina Images of Deogarh*. Leiden (E. J. Brill, Studies in South Asian Culture, vol. I).

Buhler, J. G.

- 1899 *Life of Hemacandra* (tr. by M. Patel of the original German *Über des Leben des Jaina-Monches Hemacandra*: Vienna, 1936). Shantiniketan.
1903 *On the Indian Sect of the Jainas*. London (Luzac).

Bulche, Camille

- 1971 *Rāmākathā* (in Hindi). Prayag (Prayag Viśvavidyālaya). 1st ed. 1950.

Burgess, Ja
1869 7
F

Burgess, Ja
1903 "
4

Caillat, Col
1965 L
(I
fa

1968 "
R

1975 A
m

Chakravarti
1974 Ja

Chopade, T
1946 Ja

Deleu, Jozef
1963 (w
(G

1969 Ni
on.

1970 Vi
Ge

Deo, Shantar
1956 His
tati

Desai, P. B.
1957 Jain
(JJC

Devendra, M
1968 Kal
sthā

Dhaky, M. A.
1968 "So
290-

Dixit, Krshna
1976 "A
cipli
(Lall

Bibliography: Modern Works / 325

Burgess, James

- 1869 *The Temples of Śatruñjaya*. Bombay (Sykes and Dwyer).
Reprinted in *Jain Journal*, XI (April 1977), no. 4 (Calcutta).

Burgess, Jas

- 1903 "Digambara Jaina Iconography," in *Indian Antiquary*, XXXII,
459-468.

Caillat, Colette

- 1965 *Les Expiations dans le rituel ancien des religieux jaina*. Paris
(Publications de l'Institut de Civilisation Indienne, ser. in 8
fasc. 25).
1968 "The Religious' Prāyaścittas according to the Old Jaina
Ritual," in *SMJVGJV*, 1968, 88-117.
1975 *Atonements in the Ancient Ritual of the Jaina Monks*. Ah-
medabad (Lalbhai Dalpatbhai Series).

Chakravarti, A.

- 1974 *Jaina Literature in Tamil*. Delhi (BJP).

Chopade, Tatyā Keshav

- 1946 *Jaina āṇi Hindu* (in Marathi). Kolhapur (Vīra Granthamālā).

Deleu, Jozef

- 1963 (with Walther Schubring) *Studien zum Mahānisīha*. Hamburg
(Gram, De Gruyter).
1969 *Nirayāvaliyāsuyakkhandha-Uvanga 8-12 van de jaina Can-
on*. Leiden.
1970 *Viyāhapannatti (Bhagavaī)*. Tempelhof (Rijksuniversity of
Gent).

Dēo, Shantaram B.

- 1956 *History of Jaina Monachism*. Poona (Deccan College Disser-
tation Series, 17).

Desai, P. B.

- 1957 *Jainism in South India and Some Jaina Epigraphs*. Sholapur
(JJG).

Devendra, Muni

- 1968 *Kalpa-sūtra* (Hindi tr.). Shivana (Amara Jaina Āgamaśodha-
sthāna).

Dhaky, M. A.

- 1968 "Some Early Jaina Temples in Western India," in *SMJVGJV*,
290-347. Bombay.

Dixit, Kṛṣṇa K.

- 1976 "A new contribution to the discussion of Jaina monastic dis-
cipline," in *Sambodhi*, V, nos. 2-3, 13-48. Ahmedabad
(Lalbhai Dalpatbhai Institute of Indology).

326/Bibliography: Modern Works

Evans-Wentz, W. Y.

- 1960 *The Tibetan Book of the Dead*. New York (Oxford University Press).

Fergusson, James

- 1891 *History of Indian and Eastern Architecture*. London (John Murray).

Fischer, Eberhard (with Jyotindra Jain)

- 1975 *Kunst und Religion in Indien: 2500 Jahre Jainismus*. Zurich (Rietberg Museum).

Folkert, Kendall W.

- 1976 "Jaina Studies: Japan, Europe, India," in *Sambodhi*, V, nos. 2-3, 138-147. Ahmedabad.

Gandhi, Mohandas K.

- 1958- *Collected Works of Mahatma Gandhi*, 62 vols. Delhi (Government of India: Publication Division).

Gandhi, Virchand R.

- 1893 *Selected Speeches of Shri Virchand Raghavji Gandhi*. Reprinted in 1964. Bombay (Vallabhasūri Smāraṇidhi).

Ghatge, A. M.

- 1934 "Narrative Literature in Jain Maharashtra," in *Annals of the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute*, XVI, 26-43.

Ghosh, A., ed.

- 1974- *Jaina Art and Architecture*, 3 vols. Delhi (BJP).

Glaserapp, Helmuth von

- 1925 *Der Jainismus: Eine indische Erlosungs Religion*. Berlin (Alf Hager Verlag).
- 1942 *The Doctrine of Karma in Jain Philosophy*, tr. from the German by G. Barry Gifford. Bombay (Bai Vijibhai Jivanlal Pannalal Charity Fund).

Gopalan, S.

- 1973 *Outlines of Jainism*. New York (Halstead Press).

Govardhandas, Brahmachari, ed.

- 1951 *Śrīmad Rājacandra* (in Gujarati). Agas (Śrīmad Rājacandra Āśrama).

Guérinot, A.

- 1926 *La Religion djaina*. Paris (Paul Guenther).

Guseva, N. R. (Mrs.)

- 1971 *Jainism*, tr. from the Russian by Y. S. Redkar. Bombay (Sindhu Publications).

Hamm, Frank-Richard (with Walther Schubring)

- 1951 *Studien zum Mahānīsīha*. Hamburg (Cram, De Gruyter).

Hanaki,
1970

Handiqu
1949

Hoernle,

Jacobi, H.
1880

1884

1895

1906

1932

Jain, Bala
1974

Jain, Bana
1925

Jain, Cha
1922

1926

1930

Jain, Hira
1962

1974

Jain, Jagd
1947

Jain, Jyoti
1964

Jain, Kaila
1963

Bibliography: Modern Works/327

Hanaki, Taiken

- 1970 *Anuogaddārāim: A Critical Study*. Vaishali (Research Institute of Prakrit, Jainology and Ahimsā).

Handiqui, K. K.

- 1949 *Yāśastilaka-campū and Indian Culture*. Sholapur (JJG).

Hoernle, A. F. Rudolf

- "Ājīvika," in *Encyclopaedia of Religion and Ethics*, ed. by James Hastings (1917-1955), I, 259-269.

Jacobi, Hermann

- 1880 "On Mahāvīra and His Predecessors," in *Indian Antiquary*, IX, 158-163.
1884 *Jaina Sūtras*, pt. 1. Oxford (Sacred Books of the East, XXII). Reprinted in Dover Publications, New York, 1968.
1895 *Jaina Sūtras*, pt. 2. Oxford (Sacred Books of the East, XLV). Reprinted in Dover Publications, New York, 1968.
1906 *Eine Jaina-Dogmatik: Umāsvāti's Tattvārthādhigama-Sūtra*. Leipzig (*Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, no. 60).
1932 *Parīśiṣṭaparva of Hemacandra*. Calcutta (Bibliotheca Indica; no. 96, 2d ed.).

Jain, Balabhadra

- 1974 *Bhārat ke Digambara Jaina Tīrtha* (in Hindi). Bombay (Bhāratavarṣīya Digambara Jaina Tīrthakṣetra Committee).

Jain, Banarasi Das

- 1925 *Jaina Jātakas*. Lahore (Motilal Banarsidass).

Jain, Champat Rai

- 1922 *Confluence of Opposites*. London (Jaina Library).
1926 *Jaina Law*. Madras (Jaina Mission Society).
1930 *Jainism, Christianity and Science*. Allahabad (Indian Press).

Jain, Hiralal

- 1962 *Bhāratīya Saṃskṛti me Jaina-dharma kā yogadān* (in Hindi). Bhopal.
1974 With A. N. Upadhye, *Mahāvīra: His Times and His Philosophy of Life*. Varanasi (BJP).

Jain, Jagdish Chandra

- 1947 *Life in Ancient India as Depicted in the Jain Canons*. Bombay (New Book Company).

Jain, Jyoti Prasad

- 1964 *The Jaina Sources of the History of Ancient India*. Delhi (Munshi Ram Manohar Lal).

Jain, Kailash Chand

- 1963 *Jainism in Rajasthan*. Sholapur (JJG).

328 / Bibliography: Modern Works

Jain, Kamta Prasad

- 1928 *Bhagawān Mahāvīra aur Mahātmā Buddha* (in Hindi). Surat.
- 1930 "A further note on the Śvetāmbara and Digambara sects," in *Indian Antiquary*, LIX, 151-154.

Jain, Prithvi Raj

- 1956 "Jamāli," in *Ācārya Vijayavallabhasūri Commemoration Volume*, 61-73. Bombay (Mahāvīra Jaina Vidyālaya).

Jain, Ravindra Kumar

- 1966 *Kavivara Banārasīdās* (in Hindi). Delhi (BJP).

Jain, S. A. See *Sarvārthasiddhi* in Texts and Translations.

Jaini, Jagminder Lal

- 1916a *Jaina Law "Bhadrabāhu Samhitā"* (text with tr.). Arrah (Central Jaina Publishing House).
- 1916b *Outlines of Jainism*. Cambridge.

Jaini, Padmanabh S.

- 1970 "Śramaṇas: Their Conflict with Brahmanical Society," in J. W. Elder, ed., *Chapters in Indian civilization*, I, 39-81. Dubuque, Iowa (Kendall Hunt).
- 1974 "On the Sarvajñatva (Omniscience) of Mahāvīra and the Buddha," in L. Cousins, ed., *Buddhist Studies in Honor of I. B. Horner*, 71-90. Dordrecht (Reidel).
- 1976a "The Jainas and the Western Scholar," in *Sambodhi*, V: Dr. A. N. Upadhye Commemoration Volume, 121-131. Ahmedabad.
- 1976b "The Jina as a Tathāgata: Amṛtacandra's critique of Buddhist doctrine," in O. H. De A. Wijesekera, ed., *Malalasekera Commemoration Volume*, 148-156. Colombo.
- 1977a "Jina Rṣabha as an avatāra of Viṣṇu," in *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, XL, pt. 2, 321-337. University of London.
- 1977b "Saṃskāra-duḥkhatā and the Jaina concept of suffering," in H. Coward and K. Sivaraman, eds., *Revelation in Indian Philosophy* (in honor of T. R. V. Murti), 153-157. Emeryville, Calif. (Dharma Publishing).
- 1977c "Bhavyatva and Abhavyatva: A Jain Doctrine of 'Predestination,'" in *Mahāvīra and His Teachings (2,500 Nirvāṇa Anniversary Volume)*, 95-111. Bombay.

Forth-coming (a) "Disappearance of Buddhism and the Survival of Jainism: A Study in Contrast," in *Proceedings of the Seminar on the World History of Buddhism*, ed. A. K. Narayan. Madison, Wisconsin.

Forth-coming herty, ed., *Rebirth in Classical Indian Texts* (papers presented

(b)

Jindal,
1958

Jinendr
1970-
1973

Johnson

Johrapu
1958

Kailash
1966
1971

Kalghat
1971

Kapadia
1934-
1935
1941

Kashalik
1969

Kosambi
1941

Kulkarni
1959-
1960

Lannoy,
1974

Law, B. C.
1949

Leumann,
1934

Lohuizen-
1949

- (b) at panel on Process of Rebirth: meetings of the Association for Asian Studies, New York, 1977.)
- Jindal, K. B.
1958 *The Prefaces*. Calcutta (Sarasvati Press).
- Jinendra, Varṇī
1970- *Jainendra Siddhānta Kośa* (in Hindi), 4 vols. Delhi (BJP).
1973
- Johnson, Helen M. See *Triṣaṣṭiśālākāpuruṣacaritra* in Texts and Translations.
- Johrapurkar, V. P.
1958 *Bhaṭṭāraka Sampradāya* (in Hindi). Sholapur (JJG).
- Kailashchandra, Śāstrī
1966 *Jaina Nyāya* (in Hindi). Varanasi (BJP).
1971 *Satprarūpaṇā-sūtra* (in Hindi). Varanasi (Varṇī Granthamālā).
- Kalghatgi, T. G.
1971 *Karma and Rebirth*. Ahmedabad (Lalbhai Dalpatbhai Series).
- Kapadia, H. R.
1934- "The Jaina Commentaries," in *Annals of the Bhandarkar*
1935 *Oriental Research Institute*, XVII, 292-312.
1941 *A History of the Canonical Literature of the Jainas*. Surat.
- Kashalikar, M. J.
1969 "Hemacandra's Version of the Mahābhārata," in *JOI*, XIX, nos. 1-2, 234-246.
- Kosambi, Dharmananda
1941 *Bhagavan Buddha* (in Marathi). Nagpur (Suvicāra Prakaśana Maṇḍala).
- Kulkarni, V. M.
1959- "The Origin and Development of the Rāma Story in Jaina
1960 Literature," *JOI*, IX, pt. 1, no. 2, 190-204; pt. 2, no. 3, 284-304.
- Lannoy, Richard
1974 *The Speaking Tree: A Study of Indian Culture and Society*. London (Oxford University Press Paperback).
- Law, B. C.
1949 *Some Jaina Canonical Sūtras*. Bombay (Bombay Branch, Royal Asiatic Society; monograph no. 2).
- Leumann, E.
1934 *Übersicht über die Āvaśyaka-Literatur*. Hamburg (Friedrichsen, DeGruyter).
- Lohuizen-de Leeuw, J. E. van
1949 *The "Scythian" Period*. Leiden (E. J. Brill).

330/Bibliography: Modern Works

Majmudar, M. R.

- 1969 "Two Gujarati Documents Bearing on 'Amāri,'" in *JOI*, XIX, pts. 1-2, 286-288.

Malalasekera, G. P.

- 1937- *Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names*, 2 vols. Reprinted in 1964.
1938 London (Luzac).

Malvania, Dalsukh, D.

- 1964 "Lonkāśhāh aur unkī vicāradhārā" (in Hindi), in *Gurudeva Śrī Ratnamuni Smṛtigrantha*, 365-383. Agra.
1969 "Prajñāpanā and Śaṭkhaṇḍāgama," in *JOI*, XIX, nos. 1-2, 34-45.

Matilal, Bimal K.

- 1976 "A Note on the Jaina Concept of Substance," in *Sambodhi*, V, nos. 2-3, 3-12. Ahmedabad.

Mehta, Mohanlal (with K. Rishabh Chandra)

- 1970- *Prakrit Proper Names*, 2 pts. Ahmedabad (Lalbhai Dalpat-
1972 bhai Series).

Mitra, Romesh C.

- 1954 *The Decline of Buddhism in India*, Calcutta (Viśva-Bhārati Studies, no. 20).

Mookerjee, Satkari

- 1944 *The Jaina Philosophy of Non-Absolutism*. Calcutta (Bhārati Mahāvidyālaya).

Moti Chandra (with U. P. Shah)

- 1975 *New Documents of Jaina Painting*. Bombay (Mahāvīra Jaina Vidyālaya).

Nahar, Puran Chand

- 1929 "A Note on the Śvetāmbar and Digambar Sects," in *Indian Antiquary*, LIX, 167-168.
1932 "Antiquity of the Jain Sects," in *Indian Antiquary*, LXI, 121-126.

Nair, V. G.

- 1970 *Jainism and Terapanthism*. Bangalore (Ādinātha Jaina Śvetāmbara Temple).

Narasimhachar, R.

- 1923 *Inscriptions at Śravaṇabelgola (Epigraphica Carnatica, vol. II)*. Bangalore (Mysore Archaeological Series).

Nathmal, Muni

- 1968 *Acharya Bhikṣu: The Man and His Philosophy*. Churu (Ādarśa Sāhitya Sangha).

Bibliography: Modern Works/331

Nevaskar, B.

- 1971 *Capitalists without Capitalism: The Jains of India and the Quakers of the West*. Westport, Conn.

Nigam, M. L.

- 1968 "Glimpses of Jainism through Archaeology in Uttar Pradesh," in *SMJVGJV*, 213-220.

Padmarajiah, Y. J.

- 1963 *Jaina Theories of Reality and Knowledge*. Bombay (Jaina Sāhitya Vikāsa Maṇḍala).

Pandey, Raj Bali

- 1969 *Hindu Saṃskāras*. Delhi (Motilal Banarsidass).

Phoolchandra, Siddhāntaśāstrī

- 1963 *Varna, jāti aur dharma* (in Hindi). Varanasi (BJP).
1967 *Jaipur (Khaniya) Tattvacarcā* (in Hindi), 2 vols. Jaipur (Pandit Toḍarmal Granthamālā).

Prasad, Hari K.

- 1968 "Jaina Bronzes in the Patna Museum," in *SMJVGJV*, 275-289.

Premi, Nathu Ram

- 1956 *Jaina Sāhityakā Itihāsa* (in Hindi). Bombay (Hindi Grantha Ratnākara).

Renou, Louis

- 1953 *Religions of Ancient India*. London.

Rice, B. Lewis

- 1909 *Mysore and Coorg from the Inscriptions*. London (Archibald Constable).

Rice, Edward P.

- 1921 *A History of Kanarese Literature*. London (Oxford University Press).

Ruegg, D. Seyfort

- 1969 *La Théorie du tathāgatagarbha et du gotra*. Paris.

Sahu, Nabin K.

- 1964 *History of Orissa*, vol. I. Cuttack (Utkal University).

Saletore, B. A.

- 1938 *Medieval Jainism*. Bombay (Karnatak Publishing House).

Sangave, V. A.

- 1959 *Jaina Community: A Social Survey*. Bombay (Popular Book Depot).

Sanghavi, Sukhalal

- 1963 *Samadarśī Ācārya Haribhadra* (in Hindi). Jodhpur (Rajasthan Purātana Granthamālā).

332 / Bibliography: Modern Works

Sankalia, H. D.

- 1939 "Jaina Iconography," in *New Indian Antiquary*, II, no. 8, 497-520.

Satyaprakash

- 1972 *Kumārapāla Caulukya* (in Hindi). Delhi (Mīnākṣī Prakāśana).

Schmidt, Hanns Peter

- 1968 "The Origin of Ahimsā," in *Mélanges d'indianisme: A la mémoire de Louis Renou*, 625-655. Paris (Publications de l'Institut de Civilisation Indienne).

Schubring, Walther

- 1927 *Worte Mahāvīras*. Gottingen (Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht).
 1962 *The Doctrine of the Jainas* (tr. from the rev. German ed. by Wolfgang Beurlen). Delhi (Motilal Banarsidass).
 1966 *Drei Chedasūtras des Jaina-Kanons: Ayāradasāo, Vavahāra, Nisīha*. Hamburg (Gram, De Gruyter).
 1974 *Isibhāsiyāim* (text and commentary). Ahmedabad (Lalbhai Dalpatbhai Series).

Sen, Amulya Chandra

- 1931 *Schools and Sects in Jaina Literature*. Calcutta (Viśva-Bhārati Series, no. 3).

Shah, Cimanlal J.

- 1932 *Jainism in North India*. London (Longmans).

Shah, Nagin J.

- 1967 *Akalaṅka's Criticism of Dharmakīrti's Philosophy*. Ahmedabad (Lalbhai Dalpatbhai Series).
 1968 "Nature of Time," in *SMJVGJV*, 63-87.

Shah, R. N.

- 1950 "Jain Code and Jainism," in Kamta Prasad Jain, ed., *Shrī Mahāvīra Commemoration Volume*, I, 261-271. Agra (Mahāvīra Jaina Society).

Shah, Umakant P.

- 1951- "A Unique Jaina Image of Jīvantasvāmi," in *JOI*, I, no. 1, 1952a 71-79.
 1951- "Sidelights on the Life-Time Sandalwood Image of Mahāvīra," in *JOI*, I, no. 3, 358-367.
 1955 *Studies in Jaina Art*. Varanasi (Jaina Cultural Research Society).
 1956 "A Rare Sculpture of Mallināth," in *Ācārya Vijayavallabhasūri Commemoration Volume*, 128-129. Bombay (Mahāvīra Jaina Vidyālaya).

Sharma, Jagdish P.

- 1975 "Hemacandra: The Life and Scholarship of a Jaina Monk," in *Asian Profile*, III, no. 2, 195-215. Hong Kong.

Bibliography: Modern Works/333

- 1976 "Jainas as a Minority in Indian Society and History," in *Jain Journal: A Quarterly on Jainology*, X, no. 4, 137-148. Calcutta.
- Sharma, S. R.
1940 *Jainism and Karnatak Culture*. Dharwar.
- Sikdar, Jogendra C.
1964 *Studies in the Bhagavatisūtra*. Mazaffarpur.
1974 "The Fabric of Life as Conceived in Jaina Biology," in *Sambodhi*, III, no. 1, 1-10. Ahmedabad.
- Singh, Ram J.
1974 *The Jaina Concept of Omniscience*. Ahmedabad (Lalbhai Dalpatbhai Series).
- Smith, Vincent A.
1901 *The Jain Stūpa and Other Antiquities of Mathura*. Allahabad (Government Press). Reprinted in 1969, Varanasi (Indological Book House).
1917 "The Jain Teachers of Akbar," in *Essays Presented to Sir R. G. Bhandarkar*, 265-276. Poona.
1962 *Akbar the Great Mughal*, 2d ed., rev. Delhi (S. Chand).
- Solomon, Esther A. See *Gaṇadharavāda* in Texts and Translations.
- Stevenson, Mrs. Sinclair
1915 *The Heart of Jainism*, Reprinted in 1970. New Delhi (Munshiram Manoharlal).
- Tatia, Nathmal
1951 *Studies in Jaina Philosophy*. Varanasi (Jaina Cultural Research Society).
- Thomas, F. W. See *Syādvādamāñjarī* in Texts and Translations.
- Tod, James
1839 *Travels in Western India*. Reprinted in 1971. Delhi (Oriental Publishers).
- Trautman, Thomas T.
1971 *Kauṭilya and the Arthaśāstra*. Leiden (E. J. Brill).
- Tripathi, Chandrabhal
1975 *Catalogue of the Jaina Manuscripts at Strasbourg*. Leiden (E. J. Brill).
- Tripathi, R. K.
1968 "The Concept of Avaktavya in Jainism," in *Philosophy East and West*, XVIII, no. 3, 187-193.
- Tukol, T. K.
1976 *Sallekhanā Is Not Suicide*. Ahmedabad (Lalbhai Dalpatbhai Series).

334 / Bibliography: Modern Works

Tulasi, Ācārya

- 1969 *My Religion*. Churu (Ādarśa Sāhitya Sangha).

Upadhye, Adigath N.

- 1933 "Yāpanīya Saṅgha: A Jaina Sect," in *Journal of the University of Bombay*, I, no. 4, 224-231. Bombay.
- 1934 "Darśanasāra of Devasena: Critical Text," in *Annals of the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute*, XV, nos. 3-4, 198-206.
- 1936 "Studies in Jaina Gotras," in *Jaina Antiquary*, II, no. 3, 61-69. Arrah.
- 1939 "On the Authorship of a Maṅgala-Verse in Inscriptions," in *New Indian Antiquary*, II, no. 2, 111-112.
- 1968 "Jinasena and His Works," in *Mélanges d'indianisme: A la mémoire de Louis Renou*, 727-732. Paris (Publications de l'Institut de Civilisation Indienne).
- 1971 *Siddhasena's Nyāyāvatāra and Other Works* (including the *Dvātrimśikā* and *Sammaisutta*) Bombay (Jaina Sāhitya Vikāsa Mandala).
- 1974 "More Light on the Yāpanīya Saṅgha," in *Annals of the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute*, LV, 9-22.

Weber, Max

- 1958 *The Religion of India*. New York (Free Press).

Williams, R.

- 1963 *Jaina Yoga: A Survey of the Mediaeval Śrāvakācāras*. London (Oxford University Press)

Windisch, E.

- 1874 *Hemacandra's Yogaśāstra* (first 4 chaps. of text and tr.). (*Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, no. 28). Leipzig.

Winternitz, Maurice

- 1933 *A History of Indian Literature*, vol. II (tr. from the German by S. Ketkar and M. Kohn). Calcutta (University of Calcutta Press).

Zimmer, Heinrich

- 1951 *Philosophies of India*, ed. by Joseph Campbell. Princeton: Princeton University Press, Bollingen Series.

Glossary of Sanskrit and Prakrit Words

- abhavya* (one who is incapable of attaining moksa), 140
abhigraha (resolution), 219
abhiṣeka (anointing ceremony), 35n, 200, 201
abrahma-varjana (abandonment of all incontinence), 183
acakṣurdarśana (perception by means of the senses other than visual), 122, 132
ācāra (conduct), 53, 80
ācārya (head of a mendicant group; spiritual leader; monk-scholar) 1, 162-164
ādāna-nikṣepaṇa-samiti (care in the picking up and putting down of any object), 248
adattādāna-virati (not taking anything which has not been given; identical to asteya-vrata), 57
adharma-dravya (the principle of rest), 81, 97-100
adho-loka (the lower world; the home of infernal beings), 128
adhyayana (lecture), 64, 66
advaita (non-dual; cap., the monistic school of Vedānta), 135
āgama (scripture; canonical literature), 47, 78
aghātiyā (karmas that generate embodiment and particular conditions thereof), 115, 124-127, 132, 159, 255, 268, 269, 273
agni (fire), 297, 298
agurulaghutva (the quality of constancy in space-points), 58, 59
ahaṃpratyaya (self-awareness), 103
āhavanīya-agni (one of the sacred fires in the Hindu śrauta ritual), 297
ahiṃsā (nonharming), 8, 53, 86, 167, 168, 242, 249, 284n, 289, 305, 209, 312, 314
ahiṃsāvratā (refraining from harming), 170-173, 177, 187, 241-243, 281
ailaka (the highest state of a Digambara layman, wherein he retains only one piece of clothing), 18, 184, 186, 208, 219, 220, 246

- ajīva* (insentient), 82, 151
ajñāna (ignorance), 118
ajñānavāda (agnosticism), 53
ājñāvicaya (contemplation on the teachings of the Jina), 252
ākāśa (space), 81, 97, 98, 100
akriyāvāda (doctrine of non-action), 53
akṣatā (uncooked rice), 201
Akṣaya-tṛtīyā (the "immortal third," a Jaina holiday), 203
alaṅkāra (ornamentation), 86
ālocanā (critical self-examination), 231
aloka-ākāśa (totally empty space), 98, 127, 130n
amanaska (without mind), 110
amāri (prohibition of animal sacrifice), 284
aṃśāvatāra (minor incarnation of Viṣṇu), 32
amūḍhadṛṣṭi (freedom from delusory notions), 152
anagāra-dharma (mendicant discipline), 79
anantajñāna (infinite knowledge; a synonym for kevalajñāna), 266
anantānubandhi-kaṣāya (passions that "pursue from the limitless past," preventing the attainment of samyak-darśana), 119, 131, 143, 145, 146, 149, 157, 272
ananta-sukha (infinite bliss), 268
anarthadaṇḍavrata (refraining from the five minor types of evil activity), 179, 187
anaśana (fasting), 251
anekāntavāda (the doctrine of manifold aspects), 53, 86, 90, 94, 96, 97, 314n
anekatva (multiplicity), 91
aṅga (limb; cap., a group of twelve Jaina canonical texts), 47, 49, 51, 52
Aṅgabāhya (the subsidiary canon), 50-55
aṅgapūjā (veneration of the limbs of the lord), 202
anitya (impermanent), 91
anityavāda (noneternalism), 92
anivartin (that state from which there is no returning), 269
anivṛtti-karaṇa (the process of suppressing certain mohaniya karmas), 144, 158, 272
antarā-bhava (the state of existence between death and rebirth), 227
antarātman (the state of perceiving the self within), 148
antarāya-karma (karma that restricts the energy-quality of the soul), 123, 124, 132, 159
antar-muhūrta (a period of up to forty-eight minutes), 145n
antyeṣṭi-kriyā (funeral rites), 302
aṇu (atom; an indivisible particle of matter), 103
anubhava (retribution of a karma; intensity), 113, 144

anukamp
anumatit
 from
anupreks
aṇuvrata
 190, 2
anuyoga
aparigraha
apariṇāma
apāvarta
 of ka
apāyavica
 saved
āpo-kāya
apramatti
 guṇas
apratyāk
 157, 1
apūroa-k
 ceden
arahaṃta
ārambha
 the pe
ārambha
 from
arati (dis
ārati (the
arcana (v
ardha-ph
ardha-pu
 soul t
 the ur
arghya (r
arham (i
arhat ("v
 keval
 258-2
arihaṃta
artha (m
arūpi-aj
āryikā (r
asaṃjñi
asaṃkhy
asaṃyan

- anukampā* (compassion), 150
- anumatityāga-pratimā* (the tenth stage in which a layman refrains from all household activities), 183, 186
- anuprekṣā* (reflection, twelve kinds), 248
- aṇuvratas* (minor vows pertaining only to laypeople), 170, 178, 187, 190, 234, 284, 314n
- anuyoga* (exposition; a group of postcanonical texts), 79
- aparigraha* (nonpossession), 86, 187
- apariṇāmin* (unchanging), 92
- apāvartanā* (energy that hastens the time and decreases the intensity of karmic fruition), 139
- apāyavicaya* (contemplation on the means by which beings can be saved), 252
- āpo-kāyika* (water-bodies), 109
- apramatta-virata* (restraint not vitiated by carelessness, the seventh guṇasthāna), 158, 253, 272
- apratyākhyānāvarāṇa* (obstructors of partial renunciation), 119, 131, 157, 158, 185, 272
- apūrvā-karaṇa* (the process by which the soul attains to an unprecedented degree of purity), 144, 158, 253, 272
- arahaṃta* (Prakrit for arhat), 162, 278n
- ārambhajā-himsā* (violence occurring either accidentally or through the performance of an acceptable occupation), 171, 172
- ārambhatyāga-pratimā* (the eighth stage in which a layman withdraws from all professional commitments), 183, 186
- arati* (displeasure in regard to sense activities), 120, 131
- ārati* (the lamp-waving ceremony), 201
- arcana* (worship), 201, 220
- ardha-phālaka* (loincloth worn by Śvetāmbara monks), 6n
- ardha-pudgala-parāvartana-kāla* (the amount of time required for a soul to take in and use up half of the available karmic matter in the universe), 144
- arghya* (respectful offering), 201
- arhaṃ* (identical to arhat), 162n
- arhat* ("worthy of worship"; an epithet of one who has attained kevalajñāna; a synonym for kevalin), 28, 31n, 162-164, 204n, 240 258-260, 267, 268, 273, 296
- arihaṃta* (a variant for arahaṃta), 162n
- artha* (meaning of a word), 42
- arūpi-ajīva* (the four insentient, formless dravyas), 97
- āryikā* (nuns of the Digambara sect), 208, 247n
- asaṃjñī* (unable to reason about spiritual matters), 110
- asaṃkhyāta* (innumerable), 29, 99, 101, 102
- asaṃyama* (nonrestraint), 228

- āsarīra* (free from embodiment; a siddha), 164
asātā, *asātāvedanīya* (experience of pain), 115, 132
āsātanā (disrespect), 62
asatya (lying), 173
āścarya (extraordinary event), 23n
asi ("sword"; government), 171
āsrava (karmic influx), 82, 112, 151
āśraya (substratum), 90
aṣṭāṅga (eight limbs [of samyak-darśana]), 151
asteya (not stealing), 175, 187
asti-kāya (having extension), 98n, 101
āstikya (affirmation), 151
aśubha-karma (unwholesome karma), 82
aticāra (infractions committed by accident), 173
atiśaya-kṣetra (places where miraculous events associated with great monks have occurred), 205, 206
atithi-saṃvibhāga (sharing with [ascetic] guests), 217, 220
ātman (soul; self), 92
ātmānubhava (abiding in one's own nature), 149
aupapādika (born spontaneously), 110
avadhidarśana (the indistinct type of awareness preceding avadhijñāna), 3, 132
avadhijñāna (supermundane knowledge such as clairvoyance), 3, 110, 121-123, 132
avaktavya (inexpressible), 96
avamaudarya (eating only a very small portion of food), 251
āvaraṇīya (obscuring), 105, 121
avasarpinī (regressive half-cycle), 30-34, 61, 203
āvaśyaka (essential duty), 79, 189, 190, 191, 260
avidyā (ignorance), 134
avirati (nonrestraint), 157, 158, 272
aviveka (lack of discrimination), 134
āvṛta (obscured), 105
āyāga-paṭa (votive slabs), 192, 211
āyariya (Prakrit for ācārya), 162
ayoga-kevalin (the fourteenth guṇasthāna, attained by the kevalin when, in the instant before death, all his activities cease), 159, 270, 273
āyu-karma (karma that determines the span of a given lifetime), 115, 126, 132, 268, 269

bahirātman ([perceiving] the self in externals), 147
balabhadra (a Jaina literary type; the hero and companion of nārāyaṇa), 305

bandha
 bandhan
 bhagavā
 bhakti (c
 bhaṅga
 bhāṣā (la
 bhāṣā-sa
 bhāṣya
 bhaṭṭāra
 311
 bhāva (i
 bhāvanā
 Bhavana
 bhāva-p
 bhāva-sa
 bhavya
 bhavyat
 bhaya (f
 bheda (d
 bhikṣu-p
 bhoga (e
 bhoga-ar
 bhoga-bh
 bhogopa
 fession
 bhūmi (r
 bīja (seed
 bījapūra
 for m
 bodhi (er
 bodhi-du
 bodhisatt
 boḍiya (r
 brahmacc
 218, 2
 brahmacc
 nence
 Brahman
 brāhmaṇ
 61, 67
 brahmau
 caitanya
 caitya (te

- bandha* (karmic bondage), 82, 112, 151
bandhana (energy that brings about karmic influx), 139
bhagavān (venerable), 10
bhakti (devotionalism), 135, 304, 306
bhaṅga (infractions committed intentionally), 173
bhāṣā (language), 60
bhāṣa-samiti (care in speaking), 247
bhāṣya (commentary), 82
bhaṭṭāraka (venerable ones; a class of Jaina clerics), 193n, 254n, 307, 311
bhāva (internal; states of a dravya), 38; (a synonym for paryāya), 90
bhāvanā (practice; a section of the *Ācārāṅga-sūtra*), 243n
Bhavanavāsī (those [gods] who reside in mansions), 129n
bhāva-pūjā (the internal aspect of a devotional practice), 207, 217
bhāva-samyaktva (the internal aspect of true insight), 147
bhavya (one who is capable of attaining mokṣa), 140
bhavyatva (capability of attaining mokṣa), 139-141, 259n
bhaya (fear), 120, 131
bheda (disjunction), 101
bhikṣu-pratimā (difficult austerities recommended for a mendicant), 62
bhoga (enjoyment; experience), 29, 30, 106
bhoga-antarāya (karma that restricts enjoyment), 123
bhoga-bhūmi (realm of enjoyment), 29, 221
bhogopabhoga-parimānavrata (restraint against practicing certain professions and partaking of certain foods), 179, 187
bhūmi (realm), 29, 30, 128
bīja (seed), 111
bījapūraka-katāha (a seed-filled fruit, probably Aegle Marmelos, used for medicinal purposes), 24n
bodhi (enlightenment), 165
bodhi-durlabha (the rarity of enlightenment), 249
bodhisattva (one who follows the career of a Buddha), 266n
boḍiya (naked), 5n
brahmacāri (celibate; one who has reached the seventh pratimā), 183, 218, 246
brahmacarya-pratimā (the seventh pratimā, in which absolute continence is observed), 183, 186
Brahman (the unitary Absolute postulated by the Vedānta school), 92
brāhmaṇa [brahman] (a member of the priestly caste), 8, 43, 57, 58, 61, 67, 74-76, 87, 275, 288, 291
brahmavrata (refraining from all illicit sexual activities), 176, 187
caitanya (consciousness), 104
caitya (temple), 234, 309

- caityavāsi* (temple-dweller), 307-309
cakravartin (universal monarch), 7
cakṣurdarśana (visual perception), 122, 132
caṇḍāla (untouchable; a synonym for śvapāka), 75
candana (sandalwood paste), 201
carana (practice), 81
cāritra (conduct), 75, 97
cāritra-mohanīya (conduct-deluding karmas), 118, 131, 133, 157, 159, 253
caru (sweet), 201
catuḥśaraṇa (the four refuges), 77, 164, 296
caturviṃśati-stava (praise of the twenty-four Tīrthaṅkaras), 190
cātuyāma-saṃvara (Sanskrit cāturyāma-saṃvara; a synonym for cāujjāma-dhamma), 10
cāujjāma-dhamma (Sanskrit cāturyāma-dharma, the fourfold restraint ascribed to Pārśva), 15-18
chadmastha (a person in the state of bondage), 27
cheda (reduction in seniority); -*sūtra* (a law book dealing with monastic offences), 62
cūlikā (appendix; a class of Jaina canonical texts), 76

dākṣiṇa-agni (one of the sacred fires in the Hindu śrauta ritual), 297
dāna (charity; alms-giving), 106, 181, 182, 187, 190, 217, 221, 260
dāna-antarāya (a type of karma that hinders the practice of charity), 123
darśana (intuition), 23; (a system of philosophy), 81, 91, 103; (insight), 97; (perception), 104, 122, 123
darśana-mohanīya (insight-deluding karmas), 131, 145, 146, 157
darśana-pratimā (the first step on the ladder of pratimā), 161, 162, 166, 186
darśanāvaraṇīya (perception-obscuring karmas), 115, 124, 132, 159
daśa-dharma (ten forms of righteousness), 248
deśanā-labdhi (obtaining instruction in the Jaina teachings), 143
deśāvakāśika (limiting the area of one's movement), 180, 182, 187
deśa-virata (the fifth guṇasthāna where deśa-vīrati is attained), 272
deśa-vīrati (the set of restraints prescribed for a Jaina layman), 119, 158, 160
deva (heavenly beings), 82, 129; (ultimate divinity), 162
deva-brāhmaṇa (divine brahman, i.e., a Jaina brahman), 290
deva-dūṣya ("divine" cloth; a finely woven piece of cloth), 12
devāgama (the arrival of gods at a holy gathering), 83
deva-mūḍhatā (delusion pertaining to gods), 152
deva-nikāyas (the four orders of gods), 129n

devapūjā
 217

dharma
 (right

dharmaa

dharma-

dharma-

dharma-

dharma-

dharma-

dhūpa (in

dhyāna (

Digamba

tice as

dīgha-tap

digvata

dīkṣā (ini

dīpa (lam

divyadhv

doṣa (imp

dravya (su

dravya-m

dravya-pi

dravya-sa

durbhikṣā

duṣamā (u

duṣamā-d

dveṣa (ha

dvīja (twi

dvīpa (isl

dvīpa-san

eka (one;

eka-kṣetrā

ekānta (or

ekāntavāc

ekāntavāc

eka-phāla

eka-śāṭaka

ekatva (un

ekendriya

synonym

eṣaṇā-sam

- devapūjā* (worship of the Tīrthaṅkaras), 190–192, 199, 201, 202, 207, 217
- dharma* (holy law), 64, 164, 305; (elements in Buddhist doctrine), 92; (righteousness, ten forms), 248
- dharmadhyāna* (virtuous concentration), 252, 253, 272
- dharma-dṛavya* (the principle of motion), 81, 97–100
- dharma-kathā* (religious tale), 54
- dharma-lābha* (increase in righteousness), 208n
- dharma-svākhyātatva* (the absolutely true teachings of the Jinas), 249
- dharma-tīrtha* (holy path), 12
- dhūpa* (incense), 201
- dhyāna* (meditation), 251, 255, 257, 260n, 270
- Digambara* (sky-clad; name of the Jaina sect whose mendicants practice ascetic nudity), 5, 6n
- dīgha-tapassī* (one who engages in extended penances), 21
- digvṛata* (restriction on the distances a person may travel), 178, 187
- dīkṣā* (initiation), 243, 246
- dīpa* (lamp), 201
- divyadhvani* (miraculous sound), 4, 35, 42, 260
- doṣa* (imperfection), 34n, 146
- dṛavya* (substance), 81, 90, 92, 97, 101, 150, 152, 266; (external), 38
- dṛavya-mana* (the physical basis of the mind), 266n
- dṛavya-pūjā* (form of worship employing external objects), 207, 217
- dṛavya-samyaktva* (the external aspect of true insight), 147
- durbhikṣā* (famine), 229
- duṣamā* (unhappy), 31
- duṣamā-duṣamā* (extremely unhappy), 31
- dveṣa* (hatred; aversion), 112, 119
- dvija* (twice-born), 67, 289, 290, 294, 285n, 300
- dvīpa* (island), 29, 32, 82
- dvīpa-samudra* (island-continent), 129
- eka* (one; unitary), 92
- eka-kṣetrāvagāha* (occupying the same locus), 113
- ekānta* (one-sided), 83, 91, 118, 314
- ekāntavāda* (extremism; absolutist doctrine), 53, 92
- ekāntavādin* (one who holds an absolutist doctrine), 86, 150
- eka-phālaka* (probably identical to *eka-śāṭaka*), 15
- eka-śāṭaka* (a mendicant who wears a single piece of cloth), 18
- ekatva* (unity), 91
- ekendriya* (a being with only one [namely, the tactile] sense faculty; a synonym for *sthāvara* beings), 109, 130, 241, 242
- eṣāṇā-samiti* (care in accepting alms), 248

eva (in fact; an important term in the formula of the *sapta-bhaṅgi-naya*), 94, 95

gaccha (a chapter of monks), 246n

gaṇa (a residence unit for monks), 246

gaṇadhara (supporters of the order, i.e., the first mendicant disciples of a Tīrthāṅkara), 4, 24n, 35-38, 42-45, 55, 63, 87, 268, 297

gandha (smell), 90

gandharva (celestial musician), 108

gaṇi (leader of the order), 62

gaṇi-pidaga (basket of the gaṇadharas, i.e., the canon of the Jainas), 47

garbha (conception), 7

gārhapatya-agni (one of the sacred fires of the Hindu śrauta ritual), 297

gati (birth; destiny), 60, 108, 124

ghana-ambu (humid air), 127

ghana-vāta (dense air), 127

ghātiyā (karmas that have a vitiating effect upon the qualities of the soul), 115, 117, 124, 131, 133, 159, 255, 258, 270, 273

ghorataṁsī (one who practices severe austerities), 45

gorji (a term used for yāti), 307n

gotra (exogamous groups), 301n

gotra-karma (karmas that determine environmental circumstances, 115, 125, 126, 132, 268

granthi (knot), 143

gumma (a chapter of monks), 246n

guṇa (quality), 58, 90, 104, 266

guṇasthāna (the fourteen stages of purification; see chart, 272-273), 141

guṇavratas (restraints that reinforce the practice of the anuvratas), 170, 179, 180, 187, 190

gupti (restraint), 247, 252

guru (spiritual teacher), 3, 153; (gain), 58, 162, 209

guru-mūḍhatā (false beliefs pertaining to teachers), 153

guru-upāsti (listening to and venerating teachers), 190, 207-210, 218, 221

hāsyā (laughter), 120, 131

hiṁsā (injury, harming violence), 167, 170, 175, 176, 180, 282, 295, 310, 311

huṇḍāvasarpiṇī (a period of avasarpinī in which extraordinary events may take place), 23n

indriya

īryā-sa

īśat-prā

above

iṣṭa-dev

Īśvara

Jaina (f

sam

Jainābh

Jaina-b

Jaina

Jaina-śā

jala (wa

janma (

janma-k

of a

jarā (old

jāti (birth

jāti-karm

destin

jāti-man

jayamālā

Jina (spir

Jina-āgar

Jina-bha

Jina-bim

jinakalp

ra), 2

jīva (sou

jñāna (k

jñāna-ce

jñānāvan

jugupsā

lyotiṣka

kāla (tim

30; (t

kālāṇu (

kalpātita

kalpopa

kalyāṇa

kanyādā

- indriya* (sense organ), 60
īryā-samiti (care in walking), 247
īsat-prāgbhārā-bhūmi ("slightly bent region," the name of the final abode of the liberated souls [the siddhas]), 130n, 270
iṣṭa-devatā (chosen deity), 163
Īśvara (God), 259n, 271n
- Jaina* (follower of a Jina, a synonym for Nigaṇṭha), 2n; (one who has *samyak-darśana*), 146
Jainābhāsa (false Jainas), 20
Jaina-brahman (laypeople in charge of priestly functions within certain Jaina communities), 195, 197, 199, 290, 291, 295, 297
Jaina-śāsana (teaching of the Jainas), 2n
jala (water), 201
janma (birth), 7
janma-kalyāṇa (birth; one of the five auspicious events in the career of a Tīrthaṅkara), 197
jarā (old age), 229
jāti (birth, caste), 75, 288, 295; (species within a gati), 124
jāti-karma (the variety of *nāma-karma* that determines one's specific destiny), 124
jāti-mantra (a litany used in celebrating the birth of a child), 296
jayamālā (garland of victory; a hymn in praise of the Jinas), 201
Jina (spiritual victor; a synonym for Tīrthaṅkara), 2
Jina-āgama (Jaina scripture), 220
Jina-bhavana (Jaina temple), 220
Jina-bimba (image of a Jina), 220
jinakalpin (a monk whose conduct is modeled upon that of Mahāvīra), 20
jīva (soul; sentient), 60, 90, 98, 99, 102-104, 151
jñāna (knowledge), 28, 91, 97, 104, 122
jñāna-cetanā (consciousness characterized as knowing itself), 148, 221
jñānāvaraṇīya (knowledge-obscuring), 115, 124, 131, 142, 159
jugupsā (disgust), 120, 131
Jyotiṣka (the stellar gods), 129n
- kāla* (time stages within the progressive and regressive half-cycles), 30; (time as a *dravya*), 97, 98, 100
kālāṇu (time-points), 100
kalpātīta (born in the highest heavenly abodes), 129, 130
kalpopapanna (born in the kalpa heavens), 129
kalyāṇaka (auspicious moments), 7
kanyādāna (ceremony of giving away the bride), 301

- kāpota-leśyā* (gray karmic strain), 114
karma (action) 97; (a form of matter), 102, 111–115
karma-bhūmi (realm of action), 29–31
karma-cetanā (consciousness of oneself as the doer of actions), 147
kārmaṇa-śarīra (the transmigrating body of karmic matter), 102, 125, 126
karma-phala-cetanā (consciousness of oneself as the enjoyer of the karmic fruits), 147
karma-prakṛti (the particular form into which karmic matter is differentiated, see chart, 131–133), 112
kartā (agent), 147
kaṣāya (passion), 60, 112, 113, 118, 131, 157, 159, 177, 253, 272, 273
kathā (narrative literature), 54
kavala-āhāra (food in morsels; ordinary human food), 36
kāya-kleṣa (mortifications of the body), 251
kāyotsarga (abandonment of the body, a standing or sitting posture of meditation), 190, 192, 225
keśa-loca (the practice of pulling out one's hair in five handfuls), 245
kevaladarśana (perception associated with kevalajñāna), 123, 132
kevalajñāna (knowledge isolated from karmic obstruction; infinite knowledge; omniscience; knowledge involving awareness of every existent in all its qualities and modes), 2, 4, 7, 25, 27, 28, 31n, 36, 38, 44, 46, 61, 91, 122, 123, 132, 204n, 205n, 258, 266, 273, 296
kevalin (one who has attained kevalajñāna; a synonym for arhat), 2n, 24n, 28, 31n, 44, 46, 82, 113, 120, 164, 258, 266n, 268, 269, 273, 296
krama (sequential order), 95
kriyās (actions; a Jaina term for sacred rites), 287, 293, 298, 299
krodha (anger), 119, 131
kṛṣi (farming), 172
kṛṣṇa-leśyā (black karmic stain), 114
kṣamā (forgiveness), 216
kṣamāśramaṇa (an ascetic who suffers with equanimity; title used in addressing a monk during the ritual of confession), 209
kṣaṇika (momentary), 92
kṣānti (forbearance), 260n
kṣapaṇa (destruction), 272
kṣatriya (member of a warrior caste), 6, 8, 11, 67, 75, 275, 280, 313; -*dharma* (his duties), 17n, 171
kṣaya (destruction), 145, 146, 159, 257
kṣāyika-samyak-darśana (true insight achieved by the destruction of darśana-mohanīya karmas), 146

kṣay
 su
 kṣāy
 cu
 sa
 kṣīṇa
 ar
 na
 kṣull
 ti
 21
 kula
 kum
 kuṇa
 kūṭa
 labd
 lābh
 lābh
 lagh
 leśyā
 p
 lobh
 loka
 1
 loka
 1
 mad
 mad
 mad
 mād
 Mah
 mah
 2
 mān
 mān
 man
 w
 man
 man
 man
 maṣi

- kṣāyopasaṃśama-labdhi* (attainment of purity by the destruction-cum-suppression of certain karmas), 142
- kṣāyopasaṃśamika-samyaktva* (true insight achieved by the destruction-cum-suppression of darśana-mohanīya karmas; identical to vedaka-samyaktva), 146
- kṣīṇa-moha* (permanent dissociation from all cāritra-mohanīya karmas and from the passions which they produce, the twelfth guṇasthāna), 159, 257, 272
- kṣullaka* (minor; junior monk; a Jaina layman on the eleventh pratimā; one who wears three pieces of clothing), 184-186, 197, 208, 219, 220, 246, 254n
- kula* (family), 246n
- kumāra-śramaṇa* (a life-long celibate), 58
- kuṇḍalinī-cakra* (mystical centers of psychic energy), 254
- kūṭastha-nitya* (eternal and unchangeable), 92
- labdhi* (attainment), 142
- lābha* (attainment), 106
- lābha-antarāya* (hindrance to the attainment of something), 123
- laghu* (light; loss), 58
- leśyā* (karmic stain, the color of which indicates a soul's degree of purity), 114
- lobha* (greed), 119, 131
- loka-ākāśa* (the inhabited universe; see pl. 14), 60, 98, 100-102, 127-129, 269, 270
- loka-mūḍhatā* (false beliefs pertaining to everyday religious practices), 154
- madhu* (honey), 167
- madhya-loka* (middle of terrestrial world), 129
- madya* (alcohol), 167
- māhaṇa* (Prakrit for Sanskrit brāhmaṇa), 75
- Mahāvīra-jayantī* (birth anniversary of Mahāvīra), 203
- mahāvratā* (the five great vows of a mendicant), 15, 18, 160, 184, 226, 228, 243, 245-248, 253, 272, 280
- māṃsa* (flesh; meat), 167
- mānastambha* (a characteristic Jaina pillar; see pl. 23), 35n
- manahparyaya-jñāna* (direct awareness of thought-forms of others without the aid of mind or senses), 122, 132
- mantra* (holy litany), 162
- manuṣya* (human being), 108, 129
- manuṣya-gati* (human destiny), 108
- maṣi* (ink; writing), 172

- mastakābhiṣeka* (head-anointing [ceremony]), 204, 205
matijāna (mind-based knowledge), 91, 131
māyā (deceit), 119
māyāvāda (illusionism), 96
mithyādarśana (synonymous with *mathyādr̥ṣṭi* and *mithyātva*), 144n, 157, 272
mithyādr̥ṣṭi (incorrect view of reality, the first *guṇasthāna*), 141, 272
mithyātva (lack of insight; synonymous with *mithyādarśana* and *mithyādr̥ṣṭi*), 118, 134, 145, 304
mohanīya-karma (karma that prevents the true perception of reality and the purity of the soul; karma that defiles the bliss-quality of the soul), 115-118, 121, 124, 257, 258, 273
mokṣa (salvation; emancipation from the cycle of birth and death), 2, 11, 20, 31, 32, 46, 82, 97, 140, 141, 145, 146, 150, 151, 153, 155, 167, 194, 201, 204, 245, 270, 273, 305, 307, 314n
mokṣa-mārga (the path of salvation), 82, 97
muḥ-patti (a small piece of cloth worn over the mouth by *Sthāna-kavāsi* mendicants to protect airbodies from harm), 245, 310
mūlaguṇas (the eight basic restraints of a Jaina layman), 166, 169, 179, 187, 188, 190, 218, 295, 300
mūlasūtra (a group of texts belonging to the subsidiary canon), 64
muni (mendicant; sage), 3, 22, 261
mūrcchā (delusion), 177

nāma-Jaina (nominal Jaina), 161
nāma-karma (karma that determines destinies and body types), 115, 124-126, 132, 259, 268, 270n
namaskāra-mantra (-*pañca*) (reverent salutation to the [five] holy beings), 162, 163n, 188, 199, 201, 217, 232, 245, 254n, 255
nandyāvarta (a kind of diagram), 166n
napuṃsakaveda (sexual cravings for a hermaphrodite), 120, 131
naraka (hell; the world of infernal beings), 82
nāraki (hell beings), 108, 128
nārāyaṇa (a Jaina literary type; the hero's companion and slayer of the villain), 305
nāsti (does not exist; the second member of the *sapta-bhangi-naya*), 95
naya (view; partial expression of truth), 83, 93, 94
nayavāda (doctrine of *nayas*), 97
nidāna (seeking worldly gain from the performance of good deeds and austerities), 230, 266
nidhatti (energy that renders *karmas* incapable of all activity save changes in fruition time and intensity), 139
Nigaṇṭha/ Sanskrit Nirgrantha (unattached, without possessions; ancient name for the Jaina community), 2n, 10, 18-21, 27, 217, 223, 234-236, 274n, 276, 285

nigo
 nihk
 nihn
 nihp
 nihś
 nikā
 nīla-
 nīmī
 niran
 nirja
 nirvā
 hu
 46
 nirvā
 20
 nirvi
 niryu
 niśca
 nitya
 nitya
 niyat
 niyat
 no-k

 om (s
 in

 pada
 padm
 pādū
 painā
 ele
 pañca
 19
 20
 pañca
 pañca
 30
 pañi-p
 pāpa
 para-a
 sta
 param
 param
 param

- nigoda* (the lowest form of life), 24n, 109, 143, 168
niḥkāmkṣita (freedom from anticipation), 152
nihnava (falsehood, heresy), 88
niḥpratīkāra (unavoidable), 229
niḥśaṅkita (freedom from doubt), 151
nikācanā (energy that renders karmas incapable of all activity), 139
nīla-leśyā (blue karmic stain), 114
nimitta-kāraṇa (external efficient cause), 99, 117, 138
niranvaya (discrete), 92
nirjarā (dissociation of karmas), 82, 113, 151
nirvāṇa (release from bondage; the final death of an enlightened human being [arhat] followed immediately by mokṣa), 3, 6n, 37, 46, 93, 155, 159, 196, 198, 299n
nirvāṇa-bhūmi (the place at which a Tīrthaṅkara attained nirvāṇa), 205, 206
nirvicikitsā (freedom from disgust), 152
niryukti (Prakrit verse commentary), 77
niścaya-naya (nonconventional view), 80, 311
nitya (eternal), 91
nityavāda (eternalism), 92
niyati (fate), 137
niyativāda (fatalism), 96
no-kaṣāya (subsidiary passions), 120, 131, 158, 177, 257, 272

om (sacred sound formed by combining the first syllable of each word in the namaskāra-mantra), 42, 163

padastha-dhyāna (concentration upon holy chants), 255-256
padma-leśyā (lotus-pink karmic stain), 114
pādukā (footprint), 193
paiṇḍastha-dhyāna (concentration upon certain objects made up of the elements of matter), 254-256
pañca-kalyāṇa (the five auspicious events in the life of a Tīrthaṅkara), 196; -*mahotsava* (the celebration of these events), 197, 198, 200-202, 206, 207
pañca-mahāvratā, see also *mahāvratā*, 15
pañca-namaskāra-mantra, see also *namaskāra-mantra*, 162, 296, 297, 300
pāṇi-pātra (hand-bowl), 41
pāpa (unwholesome karmas), 151
para-dravya/ -kṣetra/ -kāla/ -bhāva (the being, location, time, or state, respectively, of other objects), 95
paramāṇu (atom), 90, 101
paramātmā (the highest [the liberated] soul), 148, 256
parameṣṭhin (the supreme divinity), 163

348/Glossary

- pāramitā* (perfection), 260n
parigraha (possession), 177
parigrahyāga-pratimā (the ninth stage in which a layman abandons the cares of worldly possessions), 183, 186
parīkṣā (examination), 84
pariṇāma (modification), 90
pariṇāmin (changing), 92
pariṇāmi-nitya (eternal but constantly changing), 92
parīśaha-jaya (victory over the afflictions), 249
parivrajaka (a non-Jaina mendicant), 56
parokṣa (indirect perception, accomplished through the senses, inference, etc.), 122n
pārthivī-dhāraṇā (visualization of certain scenes by means of the earth element), 255
parvan (Jaina holy days), 180, 217
paryāya (mode; a synonym for *bhāva*), 90, 150, 152, 266
paryūṣaṇa-parva (a ten-day holy period for fasting during the rainy season), 216
Pāsāvaccijja (those who follow the discipline of Pārśva), 58
pātra (bowl), 41
phaddaga (a chapter of monks), 246n
phala (fruit), 201
piñchī (a peacock-feather whiskbroom), 184n, 245
pīta-leśyā (yellow karmic stain), 114
pitṛ-loka (world of the Manes), 302, 303n
poṣadha-pratimā (the fourth śrāvaka-pratimā), see also *poṣadhopavāsa*, 182, 186
poṣadhopavāsa (the third śikṣāvṛata and fourth pratimā; fasting on the eighth and fourteenth days of each lunar fortnight), 180, 187, 217
posaha-sālā (fasting hall), 59
prabhāvanā (illumination), 155, 202, 207, 310
pradeśa (space-point), 98, 100, 102, 270n; (amount of karma), 113
prajñā (wisdom), 260n
prakīṛṇaka (miscellaneous; a group of Jaina canonical texts), 56; (scattered stars), 129n
prakṛti (original nature of mind and matter in the Sāṃkhya doctrine), 92, 99; (types of karma), 112, 113
pralaya (demanifestation), 31
pramāda (negligence; carelessness; apathy), 120, 157, 158, 243, 253, 272
pramātṛ (the knower), 104
pramatta-virata (total restraint without overcoming *pramāda*; the sixth *guṇasthāna*), 253, 272

prāṇāyāma
praśaṅga
prātihāṣa
pratīkṣa
pratimā
 167
prati-n
pratyā
 kas
pratyā
 119
pratyā
pratyek
pravac
 van
pravara
prāyaś
prāyog
 puri
pṛthvī-
pudgala
pudgala
pudgala
 soul
pūjā (w
pumvea
punya-
punya-
purāṇas
 Tīrth
puruṣa
puruṣa-
 136,
Pūrva (49-5
puṣpa (f

rāga (de
rajas (pr
rajohara
rasa (tas
rasa-par
rati (plea

- prāṇāyāma* (yogic control of respiration), 254
praśama (ease), 149
prātihārya (miraculous phenomenon), 44n
pratikramaṇa (ritualized confession), 80, 190, 209, 216, 231
pratimā (stages of renunciation for a layman, see chart, 187), 18, 167n, 182-188, 197, 210, 237, 289, 290, 292, 299
prati-nārāyaṇa (a Jaina literary type; the villain), 305
pratyākhyāna (renunciation of certain foods; one of the six āvaśaya-kas), 190, 209, 216
pratyākhyānāvaraṇa/ -nīya (obstructors of complete renunciation), 119, 131, 157, 158, 226, 241
pratyakṣa (direct perception), 122n
pratyeka (individual; solitary), 109
pravacana-māṭṛkā (the eight exercises that prepare a monk for advanced meditational states), 247
pravrajyā (renunciation), 243
prāyaścitta (repentance of transgressions), 251
prāyogya-lābhi (reduction of karmic matter in soul; attainment of purity due to such a reduction), 143
pṛthvī-kāyika (earthbodies), 109
pudgala (matter), 81, 97-102
pudgala-skandha (aggregate of matter), 101
pudgalavādin (follower of Buddhist school which upholds a theory of soul), 267n
pūjā (worship), 182, 190, 191, 203, 295
pumveda (sexual cravings for a female), 120, 131
punya-karma (wholesome karma), 151, 152
punya-kṣetra (field of merit), 220
purāṇas (name of a class of sacred texts dealing with the lives of Tīrthaṅkaras), 5, 95, 204n
puruṣa (soul), 92
puruṣa-viśeṣa (special soul, i.e., the God [Īśvara] of the Yoga school), 136, 271n
Pūrva (a group of fourteen Jaina canonical texts, now extinct), 47, 49-51
puṣpa (flower), 201

- rāga* (desire; passion; attachment), 112, 119
rajas (principle of motion in the Sāṃkhya doctrine), 99
rajoharaṇa (a whiskbroom), 222, 245
rasa (taste), 90
rasa-parityāga (abandonment of stimulating or delicious food), 251
rati (pleasure in sense activity), 120, 131

350/Glossary

- ratnatraya* (the three jewels: right faith or insight, right knowledge, right conduct), 200, 299
- rātribhakta-pratimā* (the sixth stage, in which one limits all sexual activity to nighttime hours), 183, 186
- rātri-bhojana* (eating at night), 179
- raudradhyāna* (meditation on the perverse pleasure of causing injury to others), 252
- ṛjusūtra-naya* ("straight-thread" view), 93
- rta* (Vedic concept of cosmic law), 99
- rujā* (illness), 229
- rūpastha-dhyāna* (concentration on the form of the Jina), 255, 256
- rūpātīta-dhyāna* (concentration on that which transcends form: the nature of the siddha), 255, 256
- śabala* ("disfigured"; offence), 62
- sacittatyāga-pratimā* (the fifth stage, in which a layman ceases to take certain vegetable life as food), 182, 186
- sadā-mukta* (forever free of bondage), 136
- saddharma-vṛddhi* (increase in righteousness), 208n
- sādhāraṇa-vanaspati* (souls which exist together with many others in a common plant body), 110, 168
- sādhu* (mendicant), 163, 164
- sādhvījī* (a nun of the Śvetāmbara or Sthānakavāsi sect), 247n
- sakaladatti* (transference of property prior to renunciation), 183n
- sallekhanā* (ritual death by fasting), 155, 227-233, 237-239, 268, 280, 281
- sallekhanāvrata* (the decision to perform *sallekhanā*), 181, 187, 188
- samādhi-marāṇa* (death while in meditation), 227, 228
- samanaska* (endowed with the mental capacity), 110
- samavasaraṇa* (holy assembly of the Jina), 35, 56, 143, 192, 196, 201, 256
- samaya* (moment), 45
- sāmāyika* (attaining equanimity; fusion with the true self), 221
- sāmāyika-cāritra* (avoiding all evil actions, identical to the assumption of the five mahāvratas), 17
- sāmāyika-pratimā* (the third stage of practicing *sāmāyika*), 182, 186
- sāmāyika-samyama* (a synonym for *sāmāyika-cāritra*), 17, 221
- sāmāyikavrata* (cultivation of equanimity; the second of the śikṣāvrata), 180, 182, 185, 187, 190, 191, 221-226, 253
- saṃgha* (order of monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen), 27
- saṃgha-pati* (leader of the lay community), 198, 207
- saṃghāta* (aggregation), 101
- samiti* ([self-] regulation), 247

saṃjñā
saṃjñā
as
13
saṃk
saṃk
for
sampa
saṃsā
15
saṃśa
saṃsk
saṃst
samua
lok
saṃva
saṃva
saṃve
saṃvy
sen
samyā
samyā
the
205
samyā
dar
samyā
yak
samyā
inco
samyā
saṃgra
sapind
302
sapta-b
saptapa
coup
śaraṇa
śarīra (l
sarvajñ
sarva-v
sarva-v
śāsana-c

- saṃjñī* (able to think abstractly about spiritual matters), 110
- saṃjvalana* (smoldering; -*kaṣāya*, subtle passions which are removed as one progresses from the sixth to the twelfth *guṇasthāna*), 120, 131, 158, 257, 272, 273
- saṃkalpajā-himsā* (intentional, premeditated violence), 170, 171
- saṃkramaṇa* (energy that contributes to the differentiation or transformation of karmas), 139
- sampadā* (qualifications [of an *ācārya*]), 62
- saṃsāra* (cycle of transmigration), 92, 107, 108, 136, 141, 150, 152, 153, 159, 167, 170
- saṃśaya* (doubt), 118
- saṃskāras* (sacred rites; see list, 293n), 292–295, 298, 302
- saṃsthānavicaya* (contemplation of the structure of the universe), 253
- samudghāta* (bursting forth; expansion of the soul to the limits of the *loka-ākāśa*), 269
- saṃvara* (spiritual path; the stoppage of karmic influx), 60, 82, 151
- saṃvatsarī* (annual ceremony of public confession), 63, 210, 216, 223
- saṃvega* (agitation leading to disenchantment), 149
- sāṃvyaavahārika-pratyakṣa* (direct perception, in the conventional sense), 122n
- samyak-cāritra* (proper conduct), 148, 200
- samyak-darśana* (correct view of reality; true spiritual insight; faith in the teachings of the Jina), 62, 129, 141–152, 157, 159, 196, 200, 205, 232, 272
- samyak-dṛṣṭi* (the fourth *guṇasthāna*, in which one attains *samyak-darśana*), 145, 272
- samyak-jñāna* (correct knowledge; knowledge associated with *saṃyak-darśana*), 200
- samyak-mithyātva* (a state of transition in which both correct and incorrect views are present; the third *guṇasthāna*), 145, 272
- saṃyama* (restraint), 64, 190
- saṅgraha-naya* (synthetic view), 93
- sapīṇḍikaraṇa* (a ritual connected with offering of food to the Manes), 302
- sapta-bhaṅgi-naya* (the sevenfold predication), 95
- saptapadī* (that portion of the Hindu wedding ceremony in which the couple takes seven steps around the fire), 301
- śaraṇa* (refuge), 164
- śarīra* (body), 60, 124, 125
- sarvajña* (an omniscient being; a synonym for *kevalin*), 267
- sarva-virata* (attainment of *sarva-virati*; the sixth *guṇasthāna*), 272
- sarva-virati* (total restraint of a mendicant), 158, 160, 241
- śāsana-devatā* (guardian spirits), 194, 254n, 295n

- śāstra* (scripture), 162
sāsvādāna (state of "mixed taste"; the second guṇasthāna), 145, 272
sat (being), 89, 91
sātā, *sātāvedanīya* (experience of pleasure), 115, 125, 132
ṣaṭ-jīva-nikāya (the six kinds of living beings, namely, the five ekeन्द्रiyas and the trasa), 65
satya (truth), 173; *-vrata* (the vow to abstain from lying), 174, 187, 238
savicāra (accompanied by applied thinking), 257
sayoga-kevalin (a kevalin still possessed of the activities of body, speech, and mind; the thirteenth guṇasthāna), 159, 258, 268, 273
siddha (a liberated soul; a kevalin freed from all activities whatsoever), 37, 38, 159, 162, 165, 166, 255, 256, 265, 270, 271, 274, 278n, 296
siddha-gati (the destiny of the siddha), 165
siddha-loka (the permanent abode of the siddha; a synonym for īśat-prāgbhārā-bhūmi), 130, 204n
siddhānta (doctrine), 47
siddhi (yogic power), 256, 259n
śikṣāvratas (vows of spiritual discipline), 170, 180-182, 187, 190, 217, 235
śīla (conduct), 260n
śilpa (handcrafts), 172
skandha (aggregate), 101
snāpana (the ceremony of sprinkling or bathing the Jina-image), 200
snigdha-rukṣatva (moisture and dryness [of atoms]), 101
śoka (sorrow), 120, 131
sparsa (touch), 90
śraddhā (faith), 151
śrāddha (offering of food to the Manes), 154, 302, 303n, 304
śramaṇa (a non-Vedic mendicant, usually a Jaina or a Buddhist), 1, 10, 33, 136, 138, 274, 275, 278, 297, 298n
śramaṇabhūta (a novice about to become a mendicant), 184-186
śramaṇopāsaka (a disciple of the ascetics; a synonym for śrāvaka), 235-238
śrāvaka (a layman; a synonym for upāsaka and śramaṇopāsaka), 80
śrāvakācāra (book of the layman's discipline), 80, 160, 161, 177, 181, 188, 193, 254, 285
śrāvaka-pratimā (the eleven stages of the path of the layman; a synonym for upāsaka-pratimā), 161
śreṇi (ladder; a term applied to the eighth, ninth, and tenth guṇasthānas), 253, 256, 258, 272
śruta (the oral tradition of Jaina scripture), 49, 166
śrutajñāna (knowledge derived from instruction and reasoning), 121, 132

Śruta-pa-
stava (hy
Sthānaka
 do no
 301, 3
sthāpana
sthāpanā
sthāvara
sthavira (s
sthavirak
sthiti (dur
sthtikara
 Jaina p
stotra (a p
strīmukti
strīveda (s
stūpa (reli
śuddhi (pu
śūdra (a m
sukha (bli
sukhā-ved
śukladhyā
śukla-leśya
sūkṣmakri
śūkṣma-sā
 tenth g
suśamā (ha
suśamā-du
suśamā-su
sūtra (style
 onical s
suya-nāṇa
svabhāva (s
svabhāva-p
svabhāva-s
svadeha-pa
 those of
svādhyāya (s
sva-dravya
 and state
śvapāka (the
svastika (we
Śvetāmbara
 cants wea

- Śruta-pañcamī* (the "scripture-fifth," a Jaina holiday), 204
- stava* (hymn of praise), 165
- Sthānakavāsi* (dwellers in halls; name of a Jaina sect whose members do not worship in temples), 49n, 191, 244n, 245, 247n, 263, 264, 301, 310, 313
- sthāpana* (ritual act of asking a monk to stop for alms), 220
- sthāpanācārya* (sacred objects used as a substitute for a teacher), 209n
- sthāvara* (immobile beings, such as plants), 75, 241
- sthavira* (elder), 52, 55
- sthavirakalpin* (a monk who lives in an ecclesiastical community), 20
- sthiti* (duration), 113, 144
- sthitikaraṇa* (acting to promote the stability of another's faith in the Jaina path), 155
- stotra* (a philosophical hymn), 83
- strīmukti* (attainment of mokṣa in a female incarnation), 36n
- strīveda* (sexual cravings for a male), 120, 131
- stūpa* (reliquary mound), 193, 298n
- śuddhi* (purity), 220
- śūdra* (a member of the fourth caste), 67, 288, 289, 293–295
- sukha* (bliss), 90, 104, 125n, 149
- sukhā-vedanā* (feeling of happiness), 104n
- śukladhyāna* (pure concentration), 252–257, 269
- śukla-leśyā* (luminous white karmic stain), 114
- sūkṣmakriyā-anivartin* (the state of subtle movement), 269
- sūkṣma-sāmparāya* (the state of having only the subtle passions; the tenth guṇasthāna), 158, 272
- suṣamā* (happy), 31
- suṣamā-duṣamā* (more happy than unhappy), 31
- suṣamā-suṣamā* (extremely happy), 31
- sūtra* (style—aphoristic mode of presentation), 81, 82, 151; (the canonical scriptures), 42
- suya-nāṇa* (scriptural knowledge), 47
- svabhāva* (own nature), 95, 104, 105, 148
- svabhāva-pariṇāma* (undefiled change), 99
- svabhāva-sthita* (established in one's own nature), 104
- svadeha-parimāṇa* (the physical dimensions of the soul identical to those of its current body), 58
- svādhyāya* (the study of the scriptures), 190, 251
- sva-dravya/ -kṣetra/ -kāla/ -bhāva* (specific being, location, time, and state, respectively of oneself), 95
- śvapāka* (the lowest class in Indian society), 75
- svastika* (well-being; the stylized wheel of life), 108, 192, 200, 211
- Śvetāmbara* (white [cotton]-clad; name of a Jaina sect whose mendicants wear white garments), 5, 6

- Śvetapaṭa* (a synonym for *Śvetāmbara*), 6n
syādvāda (the doctrine of qualified assertion), 54, 83, 86, 88, 90, 94, 96, 97
syāt (in some respect), 94, 95
- taijasa-śarīra* (heat body), 125, 126
tamas (the principle of inertia in the Sāṃkhya doctrine), 99
tanu-vāta (rarefied air), 127, 130n
tapas (austerity), 64, 80, 190, 250
Tāraṇapantha (a Jaina reform movement started by Tāraṇasvāmi), 310n
tattva (the [nine] "reals," regarded as objects of faith for a Jaina), 151
tattva-rūpavatī (the meditative practice of envisioning the body as totally pure), 256
tejo-kāyika (fire bodies), 109
Terāpantha (path of the thirteen; name of a subset of the Sthāna-kavāsi), 247n, 314
ṭīkā (commentary), 85
tīrtha (ford; the path of Jaina practice; the monastic order), 35
tīrtha-kṣetra (a place where arhats have attained mokṣa), 205, 206
Tīrthaṅkara (builders of the ford; the omniscient spiritual teachers of the Jains; a synonym for Jina), 2, 14, 18, 23n, 26, 29, 30, 33n, 34, 37, 40, 42, 59, 61, 138, 150, 155, 165n, 166, 190, 191, 193-198, 200-204, 210, 230, 254, 259, 260, 266, 268, 273, 275, 297, 305n, 306n
tīrthaṅkara-prakṛti (karmas that determine the body of a Tīrthaṅkara), 259, 260
tiryāṅca (animals and plants), 108, 110, 116, 124, 129, 144
titthiya (Pali for Tīrthaṅkara), 2n
trasa (mobile being; a being having two or more senses), 75, 130, 241
trasa-nāḍī (channel of the mobile beings; that portion of the loka-ākāśa in which the trasas abide), 130
- ucchedavāda* (doctrine of annihilation after death), 93, 96
ucchedavādin (annihilationist), 93
udaya (arising), 144, 145
uddiṣṭatyāga-pratimā (the eleventh stage, in which a layman renounces any food or lodging that has been specifically prepared for him), 184, 186
udīraṇā (energy that makes possible the premature fruition of karmas), 139
udumbara (fig), 167
udvartanā (energy that delays the time and increases the intensity of karmic fruition), 139

upabhoga
upabhoga
upādāna-
upādhyāy
upagūhan
upanayan
Upāṅga (s
 4, 56
upanīti (th
upapāta (r
upāsaka (a
upāsaka-p
śrāvaka
upaśama (s
upaśamanā
 to fruiti
upaśānta-n
hanīya l
upasarga (c
upayoga (a
ūrdhva-loka
utpāda (orig
utsarga-sam
utsarpiṇī (pr
uvajjhāya (F

vajra (diam
vaikālika (l
vainayika-m
 ness), 11
vairāgya (av
vaiśya (a me
vaiśāhikī-kr
vaiyāvṛtṭya
valaya (layer
vanaspati-kā
vanavāsi (fo
vandana (rev
varṇa (caste
 quality of
varṇalābha
 by a mar
varṇa-vyava
varṣa (contir

- upabhoga* (repeated enjoyment), 106
upabhoga-antarāya (hindrance to repeated enjoyment), 123
upādāna-kāraṇa (material cause), 99, 117, 138
upādhyāya (preceptor), 162, 164, 246
upagūhana (protecting a fellow Jaina), 154
upanayana (ceremony of initiation), 294, 299
Upāṅga (subsidiary to the Aṅga; a group of twelve canonical texts), 4, 56
upanīti (the ceremony of initiation for a layman), 299
upapāta (rebirth in hell or heaven), 57
upāsaka (a Jaina layman; a synonym for śrāvaka), 59, 286
upāsaka-pratimā (the eleven stages of laymanship, a synonym for śrāvaka-pratimā), 63
upaśama (suppression), 144, 145, 158, 257, 272
upaśamanā (energy that temporarily prevents karmas from coming to fruition), 139
upaśānta-moha (the eleventh guṇasthāna, in which all cāritra-mohanīya karmas are briefly rendered inoperative), 159, 257, 272
upasarga (calamity), 23n, 229
upayoga (applied consciousness), 104
ūrdhva-loka (the celestial world), 129
utpāda (origin; acquisition), 90
utsarga-samiti (care in performing the excretory functions), 248
utsarpiṇī (progressive half-cycle), 30, 31, 34, 61
uvajjhāya (Prakrit for upādhyāya), 162

vajra (diamond; adamant), 3
vaikālika ([texts studied] beyond the prescribed hours), 64
vainayika-mithyātva (mithyātva due to indiscriminate openmindedness), 118
vairāgya (aversion leading to renunciation), 7
vaiśya (a member of the merchant caste), 67, 288, 289
vaiivāhikī-kriyā (the wedding ceremony), 300
vaiyāvṛtṭya (respectful service), 155, 251
valaya (layer of the atmosphere), 127
vanaspati-kāya (plant beings), 109
vanavāsi (forest dweller), 308
vandana (reverent salutation), 190, 209
varṇa (caste hierarchy/ class), 74, 285, 291, 293, 295n; (color; a quality of matter), 90
varṇalābha (ritual celebrating the establishment of a new household by a married son), 299
varṇa-vyavasthā (class/ caste system), 285
varṣa (continent), 29

- vāruṇī-dhāraṇā* (a process of meditational "cleansing," accompanied with the water element), 256
- vāsanā* (trace), 111
- vātsalya* (disinterested affection), 155
- vāyu-kāyika* (air-bodies), 109
- veda* (sexual feelings), 60
- vedaka-samyaktva* (a synonym for *kṣāyopasamika-samyaktva*), 146n
- vedanīya-karma* (karma responsible for mundane experience of pain and pleasure), 115, 125, 126, 132, 268, 269
- vibhāva* (defiled; impure), 104, 105
- vibhu* (all-pervasive), 58, 103
- vicāra* (shifting attention from one mode to another), 257
- vidhāna* (ritual), 254n
- vidyā* (the arts), 172
- vigraha-gati* (movement of a soul to its new destiny), 127
- vikṛti* (defiled modification), 99
- vinaya* (reverence to the elders), 251
- vipāka* (karmic retribution), 55
- vipākavicaya* (meditation on karmic fruition), 253
- viparīta-mithātva* (perverted or incorrect view), 118
- Vīra-nirvāṇa* (beginning of the Jaina era), 37; (death [anniversary] of Mahāvīra), 203
- virodhī-himsā* (injury generated by standing in opposition to an enemy), 134n, 171
- vīrya* (energy), 91, 104–106, 123, 138, 141, 260n
- vīryāntarāya* (energy-obstruction), 115, 132, 142
- viśuddhi* (purity), 142
- vītarāga* (free from passion; an epithet for an arhat), 83, 113
- vivakṣā* (aspect emphasized by a speaker), 94
- vivartavāda* (the theory of illusory causation in monistic Vedānta), 92
- vivikta-śayyāsana* (solitary place of rest), 251
- vrata* (restraint), 170–173, 188, 236, 280, 287, 292, 299
- vrata-pratimā* (the second stage where a layman assumes the *aṇuvratas*), 172, 186
- vṛtti* (subcommentary), 82
- vṛtti-parisaṃkhyāna* (limiting the extent of one's begging rounds), 251
- Vyantaravāsi* (the peripatetic gods), 129n
- vyavahāra* (convention), 80n; (appropriate proceedings), 63
- vyaya* (loss; disappearance), 90
- vyuparatakriyā-anivartin* (absolute nonmotion), 270
- vyutsarga* (renunciation of egoistic thoughts), 251
- yakṣa* (demigod), 76, 108, 195
- yantra* (mystical diagram), 254n, 308

yathāk
yathāp
 itual
yati (a s
yātrā (p
yugapa
yoga (v
 157,
yojana
 237

- yathākhyāta-cāritra* (conduct conforming to perfect purity), 258
yathāpravṛtta-karaṇa (the soul's ineradicable tendency towards spiritual growth), 141n, 144
yati (a spiritually advanced layman of the Śvetāmbara sect), 254n, 307
yātrā (pilgrimage), 206
yugapat (simultaneous), 95
yoga (vibration; activities), 105, 112, 269, 273; (meditation), 80, 81, 157, 159
yojana (a measure of distance equal to about eight or nine miles), 237

General Index

- Abhayadeva, 16, 77, 85
 Ābhidharmika, 92
 absolute point of view, 53, 92, 150.
 See also view, onesided
 Absolutist, 83, 86
 Abu, 206
 Acalabhrātā, 44, 45
 Ācārāṅga-sūtra, 10, 53, 241-242, 243n
 action. *See* karma
 activities, 112; wholesome, 152, 159, 269; evil (five types of), 179-180; ritual, 180
 affection (disinterested), 155
 affirmation of existents, 151
 afflictions, victory over, 249-250
 agent, 147
 aggregate (material), 101-102
 Agnibhūti, 35, 44
 agnosticism, 53
 air: three types of, 127; rarefied, 130n
 Airāvata, 29
 air-bodies, 109; restraint against harming of, 242, 245
 Ajanta caves, 281
 Ajātaśatru, 276, 277
 Ājīvikas, 2n; leader of, 19, 21-25, 54; non-Vedic origin of, 33; heavenly rebirth of, 57n; soul-color theory of, 114n; fatalist doctrine of, 136-139; survival of, 274n
 Akalaṅka, 83-85, 87
 Akampita, 44, 45
 Akbar, 284n
 alcohol, 53, 167
 alms: presentation of, 217-221; care in accepting, 248
 Ambikā, 194n
 Amitagati, 80
 Ammaḍa, 57
 Amoghavarṣa, 281
 Amṛtacandra, 80, 86
 Anahilanagara, 283
 Ānanda (Jaina), 55; story of, 233-240, 286
 Ānanda (Buddhist), 45
 Ananta, 191
 Andhra, 277n
 Aṅgabāhya, 51
 Aṅgas, 51-56. *See also* canon (Jaina)
 anger, 113, 119, 148, 149
 animal, 126, 129; and plant, 108-110, 124, 144; capable of receiving religious instruction, 110n, 143; harming of, 167-169, 173
 annihilationism, 53, 96
 annihilationist, 93, 118
 anticipation (freedom from), 152
 apathy, 120. *See also* carelessness
 aphorism. *See* sūtra
 applied thinking, 257
 Ardhamāgadhi, 42n, 47n
 arhat: state attained by Mahāvīra, 28; distinction from Jina, 31n, 69, 259, 260; body of, 124n; salutation to, 162; state of, 258, 268; funeral pyre of, 298n
 arts, 172
 Āśādhara, 40n, 80, 195n, 228
 ascetic: non-Vedic [śramaṇa], 1n, 125, 136, 138, 274, 275; soul color theory of, 114n; role in the ritual of confession, 209; temporary state attained by layman, 222, 223, 226; disciple of, 235; religious centers of, 278, 279; survival of, 293n; attitude toward the sacredness of fire, 297; stūpa-worship of, 298n

360/General Index

- asceticism, 160
 Aśoka (king), 277n; inscriptions of, 277n
 aśoka (tree), 12
 aspects (doctrine of manifold), 86, 90-94. *See also* reality
 assembly (holy) of the Jina, 35n, 56, 72(pl. 10), 80n, 143; image of, 192, 195n, 201, 204n; visualization of, 256.
 association (of the soul and matter), 113, 114. *See also* soul
 Asthikagrāma, 37
 atheism, 169, 306; arguments for, 89n
 atom. *See* matter
 attachment, 119, 150, 152
 attainment (leading to samyak-darśana), three types of, 142-145
 attitude (of one who has attained samyak-darśana), 147-148
 auspicious events (marking the career of a Tirthankara), the five, 7; ceremony of, 196-199
 austerity, 64; of Mahāvīra, 25-27; one of the āvaśyakas, 190; internal and external, 250-251, 260
 aversion, 119, 152
 awakening (the first), 134-135; internal and external signs of, 147. *See* insight, true [samyak-darśana]
 awareness, indistinct, 104, 123; lack of, 118; telepathic, 122
 Āyurveda, 24n
 Bādarāyaṇa, 81
 Bāhubali, frontispiece, 204-206, 281
 Balarāma, 62, 305
 Banaras, 10, 33, 74
 Banārasīdās, 311
 Basham, A.L., 25; note on pradeśa, 98n
 begging: different practices of, 40-41, 219-22; bowl, 25, 41, 184
 behavior (of one who has samyak-darśana), 148-151
 being: theory of, 89-90; eternal and noneternal, 91, 93-94; Sāṃkhya and Vedānta concepts of, 92; own and others', 95, Jaina categories of, 97-98
 beings: six types of, 65; mobile, 75, 130; totally instinctive and those able to reason, 110; compassion for, 150; lowest form of, 168; vow against harming of, 173, 241; forgiveness of, 223
 belief (false), 152. *See* faith
 Bhadrabāhu, 2n, 6, 47, 50, 62, 77-78, 87, 206, 277n, 279
 Bhadrīkā, 37
 Bharata (continent), 29, 32, 60, 61
 Bharata (universal monarch), 61, 204n, 289, 291, 293
 Bhīkhanji, 313; his views on charity, 314n
 Bhūtabali, 50, 203
 Bihar, 5, 191, 206
 birth: of Mahāvīra, 7-9; as opposed to conduct, 75, 291; four types of, 108-110; determined by karma, 124; cosmological nature of, 288; ceremony of, 291, 296
 blessing (Jaina formula of), 208n
 bliss: quality of the soul, 91, 106, 111; pure and impure, 104-105, 268; defiling of, 115, 117-118, attainment of following samyak-darśana, 149; infinite, 159; concentration on, 256; of the arhat, 258
 bodhisattva, 266n
 body: adamant, 3; determined by karma, 124; three types of, 125-126; detachment from, 142, 148; identification with, 147; abandonment of, 190, 192, 225; mortification of, 251; subtle, 303
 Bogāra, 301n
 bondage: Sāṃkhya concept of, 92; unreality of, 96-97; physical basis of, 102; eternal, 111, 140; of the soul by karma, 111-115, 121; problem of, 134-135; being forever free of, 136; Ājīvika concept of, 136-138; Jaina concept of, 138-141; duration of, 144; understanding of, 149-150
 Brahmā, 2n, 153n; a title used for Rṣabha, 288
 Brahmadeva, 194n
 brahman: member of the Vedic priestly caste, 13, 35, 36, 43; as parents of Mahāvīra, 7-8; caste of Mahāvīra's chief disciples, 43, 67; Jaina concept of, 74-76; Jaina-

1
v
3
Bra
Brā
Buc
u
"
d
2
d
a
Bud
ha
ty
26
30
Budd
1n
7;
tio
tex
jañ
nise
267
92-
doc
tenc
nor
Ājī
doc
mea
stūp
223
infl
two
roy
tem
cipl
of,
Rām
Cakre
calam
23n
of,
of,
ting
Camp
Camp
Cāmur
Caṇḍā

- 195, 197, 199, 290-291, 295; di-
vine, 290; śrāddha ritual of, 303-
304
- Brahman, the Absolute, 92
- Brāhmaṇas (Vedic texts), 2n
- Buddha Gautama: renunciation of, 9;
unknown to the Jaina canon, 10;
"middle path" of, 27; chief atten-
dant of, 45; omniscience of, 84,
267; sleeping image of, 192; his
distinction from arhat, 259; as an
avatar of Viṣṇu, 274
- Buddhism: antiquity of, 1n; Magad-
han origin of, 33; doctrinal diversi-
ty of, 88, 312; bodhisattva path of,
266n; disappearance of, 274, 285,
304; patrons of, 277
- Buddhists: texts on the word titthiya,
1n; universal monarch concept of,
7; text on the Buddha's renuncia-
tion, 9; texts on Nigaṇṭhas, 10;
texts on fasting, 21, 217; Pāyāsirā-
jaññasutta of, 57; claim of om-
niscience for the Buddha, 84, 266-
267; momentariness doctrine of,
92-93; non-substance (anātma)
doctrine of, 103; intermediate exis-
tence doctrine of, 127n, 227; ig-
norance concept of, 134; text on
Ājīvikas, 137-138; eternal bondage
doctrine of [Yogācāra school], 140;
meat eating practice of, 169, 300n;
stūpas of, 193n; critique of Jainas,
223; nun order of, 246n; tantric
influence on, 254; distinction be-
tween Buddha and arhat, 259;
royal patrons of, 277, 279; cave
temples of, 281; texts on lay dis-
cipline, 285n; mendicant emphasis
of, 286; stūpa worship of, 298n;
Rāma story of, 305n
- Cakreśvarī, 194n
- calamity: befalling a Tīrthaṅkara,
23n; promoting stability at the time
of, 155; yakṣa worship at the time
of, 195n; as one situation permit-
ting the practice of sallekhanā, 229
- Campā, 37, 56
- Campāpurī, 206
- Cāmuṇḍarāya, 281
- Caṇḍālas. *See* Śvapākas
- Candanā, 37
- Candragupta Maurya, 6n, 277n
- Candraprabha, 194n
- canon (Jaina): sources of, 42-43;
compilation and transmission of,
43-46; languages of, 47n; list of
texts, 47-49; Aṅgas, 51-56; oral
tradition of, 52-55; Digambara,
Śvetāmbara, and Sthānakavāsi dis-
putes on authenticity of, 49n, 51-
52; written form of, 50-52, 203-
204; councils of, 51-52; subsidiary,
55-56; narrative texts of, 56-62;
discipline texts of, 62-64; texts on
caste, 77; later commentaries on,
77; expositions of, 78-85; philo-
sophical hymns of, 85-87
- capability (for liberation), 139-140,
259. *See also* soul
- carelessness, 239n; as a hindrance to
the path, 120; as a cause of bond-
age, 157; restraint free of, 158;
overcoming of, 243; restraint not
free of, 253
- Cārvāka, 53, 103, 134
- caste system, 7; Rṣabha's introduc-
tion of, 32, 61; Hindu, 67, 288;
Jaina reinterpretation of, 74-76,
287-291, rebirth in, 116; Jaina
denial of cosmological basis of,
124; Jaina priests of, 195
- cause: Ājīvika doctrine of, 137; ef-
ficient, 99, 100, 105, 117, 138; ma-
terial, 99, 117, 138; of bondage,
135, 157, 159
- Celanā, 276
- celestial musicians, 108
- celibacy: rational for, 176-177; state
of, 183
- Ceṭaka, 6
- change, problem of, 59; caused by
kāla-dravya, 100. *See also* modifi-
cation
- chant: of the four refuges, 164; holy,
293, 296-297
- charity, 106; producing a rebirth in
heaven, 116; hindrance to, 123;
vow of offering alms, 181; one of
the six duties of a layman, 190;
commemoration of the first act of
charity to a Tīrthaṅkara, 203;
ritual of offering alms, 217-221;

- given in honor of a monk-initiation, 244; as an action producing Tirthankarahood, 260
- chosen deity, 163; absence of the concept in Jainism, 295
- Citta, 58
- clairvoyance, beings endowed with, 3, 110, 121. *See also* knowledge, clairvoyant
- clerics (Jaina), 193n; their supervision in rituals, 254n; their role in society, 307, 311
- conceptual thinking, 257
- cognition, twofold, 104
- color, quality of, 90, 97, 101; associated with the soul, 114-115
- commemoration (days), 203-205
- commerce, 172
- common body, 110, 168. *See also* plant, destiny
- compassion, 66, 150, 163
- comprehensive (point of view), 53. *See also* view, comprehensive
- conception, of Mahāvīra, 7-8
- conduct: text dealing with, 53; vs. birth, 75, 291; importance of, 96; as a part of the path, 97, 126, 157, 241, 243; associated with samyaktadarśana, 148; as one of the three jewels, 200, 300; deluding of, 118-121, 133; lifelong maintenance of, 228; five rules of, 247-248
- confession, ceremony of, 63, 209-210, 216-217, 223, 231; ritualized, 80; formula of, 222
- consciousness: as a quality of the soul, 104; five types of, 121-122
- consecration, of the Jina-image, 200-201
- constancy, quality of the soul, 58-59
- continent, 29-30, 32n, 60
- contradiction, law of, 95
- convention, time as, 101
- council, canonical, 50-52
- crafts, 172
- creator (God), argument against, 89n, 295
- cremation of omniscient beings, 297-298, 302
- cycle temporal, 30-32, 61
- death, holy, [sallekhanā]: of ācārva Śāntisāgara, 1, 233; layman performing of, 57; texts dealing with, 76; ideal for Jaina, 155-156; vow of, 181-182; of Bhadrabāhu, 206; description of, 229-233; of Ānanda, 237-238; performance not required for the arhat, 268; performed by Jaina kings, 280
- death, moment of, 126, 133, 146, 227
- Deccan, 279, 281, 306
- deceitfulness, passion of, 149
- defiling (karma). *See* karma
- deity, role in Hindu and Jaina rituals, 293, 295-296
- Delhi, 278
- delusion, 135, 139, 141; a defiler of bliss, 117-118; of insight, 118; of conduct, 118-121; destruction of, 133; of possession, 177. *See also* karma
- demanifestation (of the world), 31
- demigod: aiding a monk, 76; class of beings, 108; abodes of, 129n; belonging to Tirthankaras, 194n, 202. *See also* spirit, guardian
- desire, as a passion, 112, 118
- destiny: four types of, 108-110; of the siddha, 165, 270-271
- destruction (of passions), 119, 257-258; and suppression, 146
- destructive (type of karma), four types of, 115, 117-124, 133, 258
- determinism, 96
- Devānandā, 7-8
- Devanandi, 80, 83, 87
- Devardhigaṇi Kṣamāśramaṇa, 51-52, 63n
- Devavācaka, 77
- Devendrasūri, 50n
- devotionalism, 135, 163, 194; Jaina attempt to deal with Hindu, 304
- Dharaṇendra, 194
- Dharasena, 50
- Dharmakīrti, 84, 267n
- Dharmaśāstras, 2n, 299
- Dhātakī-khaṇḍa, 30
- Dhruvasena, 63n
- diet, restrictions on, 167
- Digambara: spiritual leader of, 1; schism with Śvetāmbara, 4-6; meaning of the term, 5; controversy over Mahāvīra's change of womb, 7-9; controversy over Mahāvīra's marriage, 11; controversy

over
contr
18-2
mean
silenc
cussio
Tirtha
eating
ties)
count
Ājīvil
huma
34-37
Śvetā
tice o
sy ov
Tirtha
by, 47
Śvetā
yoga
doctri
contro
tion o
hymns
sion pr
of six
brahma
of, 198
rejection
36, 39
206n;
monks
of, 22
223; n
monks
for a
medita
268; ge
280; in
287; p
of Jina
of, 307
reform
Dignāga,
discipline
160-16
disgust, 1
disjunctio
displeasu
disrespec
dissociati
also so
distance

over Mahāvīra's renunciation, 12; controversy over nudity, 13-15, 18-21; controversy on the true meaning of cāturyāma-dharma, 17; silence vow of Mahāvīra, 21; discussion on calamities befalling a Tirthankara, 23n; discussion on the eating (and other worldly activities) of a kevalin, 24n, 36, 44; account of Makkhali Gosāla, 24n; Ājīvikas identified with, 25; superhuman doctrine of a Tirthankara, 34-37; doctrinal conflicts with Śvetāmbara, 38-41; begging practice of, 40-41, 217-221; controversy over the divine sound of the Tirthankara, 42-43; language used by, 47n; canonical differences from Śvetāmbara, 49n, 50-52, 60-61; yoga texts of, 80; logic texts of, 84; doctrinal unity of Śvetāmbara, 88; controversy over time, 100; tradition of fivefold salutation, 163n; hymns of praise, 165; non-possession practiced by monks, 184; list of six lay practices, 190; Jaina-brahman class of, 195; Jina image of, 198; Jina worship of, 202-203; rejection of arhatship for a woman, 36, 39-40, 204n; holy places of, 206n; relationship of laity and monks, 208; equanimity formula of, 222; equanimity practice of, 223; monk initiation of, 244-246; monks and nuns, 246n; difficulties for a nude monk, 249; texts on meditation, 255n; arhat concept of, 268; geographical location of, 279-280; integration into Hindu society, 287; priest class of, 291; influence of Jinasena on, 300; temple-clerics of, 307; temple habitation of, 308; reforms of, 310-311

Dignāga, 85

discipline, books of, 62-64, 80-81, 160-161

disgust, 120; freedom from, 152

disjunction, 101. *See also* matter

displeasure (in sense activity), 120

disrespects, thirty-two types of, 62

dissociation (of karma), 151, 159. *See also* soul

distance (vow of limiting), 178-180

divine cloth, legends about Mahāvīra's wearing, 12-13

divine sound, 4, 196; of Mahāvīra, 35; controversy over the nature of, 39, 42-43; as a faculty of a Tirthankara, 124n, 260

divinity, devotion towards, 162; supreme, 163, 190n

doctrine: controversy between Jaina sects, 38-41; unity of Jaina, 88; affirmation of Jaina, 151; eight matrices of, 247-248

doubt, 118, 155; freedom from, 151

Dravidian, 276, 278

dreams, sixteen of Triśalā, 6-7, 197, 69(pl. 4)

dryness, as a quality of matter, 101

duration, of karma, 113, 126, 144; of insight, 145n, 268

duty (of a layman), six kinds of, 189-191, 260

Dvipalāsa, 234, 239

dynasty, Jaina, 275, 284

earth-bodies, 109, 242

ease, quality of, 149

elder, 52, 55; reverence to, 251, 260

elements, Buddhist, 92; meditation on the material, 255; non-sacredness of material, 297

embodiment, state of, 102, 107-111, 121; activities present in, 105, 159, 269; individual, 109; collective, 110; process of, 124-127; last moment of, 268-269; escape from, 269-270

emphasis (of the speaker), 94

energy: quality of the soul, 91, 104, 105-106, 111; relation with karma, 112n, 140-141; obscuring of, 117, 123; functions of, 138-139; karmic reduction by, 143, 157-158; duration of insight dependent upon, 145n; infinite, 256, 258

enjoyment, 106; realm of, 29-30, 221; hindrance to, 123

enlightenment, 165, 248; of Mahāvīra, 27-29; of the gaṇadharas, 44-46

equanimity, vow of, 180, 182, 190n, 191; meaning of (sāmāyika), 221; attainment of, 222-227; of the

364/General Index

nude monk, 249; and meditation, 253; of ascetics, 260
 eternalism, 53, 92, 93, 118
 exaggeration, 238
 excommunication, 307
 excretory functions, care in performing, 248
 existence (intermediate state of), 227
 existents, the nine, 151, 252, 257-258
 exogamous group [gotra], 301n
 experiences (mundane), determined by karma, 115, 125
 expiation, 190, 238, 239
 extension (substances having), 98n, 101
 extraordinary events (certain occurrences in the avasarpī half-cycle), 23n
 extremism, 118
 extremist, 92, 93, 151
 face mask ([muh-patti] worn by Sthānakavāsi mendicants), 245, 310
 faith, 89; of the theist, 97; blind vs. educated, 150-151; as one of the three jewels, 200, 299; purity of, 260
 falsehoods (names of heterodox views), 88
 famine, 5, 50, 229
 farming, 172
 fasting: Jaina emphasis on, 21; hall of 59, 180, 221, 232; as an expiation, 62; vow of, 180-181; duty of, 190, 216; ritual of 217-219; to death, 228-233; external austerity of, 251
 fatalism, 53, 140
 fatalist, 22, 136
 fate, 137, 138n
 fear, 120
 feelings, karmas pertaining to, 125
 festival of lights [Dīpāvalī], 38
 fig, five forbidden types of, 167n
 fire (holy), 293, 297-298
 fire-bodies, 109, 242
 food: made into morsels, 36; controversy over the kevalin partaking of, 24n, 36; forbidden types of, 167; rules for preparing and consuming of, 179, 181; renunciation of, 184, 190, 251
 footprint, worship of, 193

ford, the fourfold, 35; of doctrine, 61, 166; builders of the, 2n. *See also* Tirthaṅkara
 forest-dweller, 308
 forgiveness, ceremony of, 63, 216; of beings, 223
 form (quality). *See* color, quality of
 Gandhahastin. *See* Siddhasena Divākara
 Gandhi, M.K., 315n, 316
 Ganga, 279, 280, 281, 282
 Gangavādī, 280
 Ganges valley, 34, 279, 293n
 Gardabhila, 282-283
 Girnar, 33, 206
 God, 118; omniscience of, 266; Jaina arguments against, 89n, 136n
 gods: arrival of, 83; as a rebirth destiny, 108, 109n, 110, 124; innate powers of, 121-122; two types of, 129; four orders of, 129n; delusion pertaining to, 152-153; images of, 192, 194; stūpa built by, 193n; role in auspicious occasions ceremony, 197; role in Hindu and Jaina ritual, 293, 295
 government, 171
 grace, divine, 89, 97, 135, 136
 greed, passion of, 119, 149, 175
 greeting, ritual of, 219-220
 guest, ritual sharing with, 217-220
 Gujarat, 206, 278, 279, 283, 310
 Guṇabhadra, 50, 78
 Guṇaratnasūri, 39n
 Guṇasīla, 44
 Guruvayanakere, 214
 Haimavata, 29
 hair, ritual pulling out of, 245
 Hairaṇyaka, 29
 Hālāhalā, 22, 24
 hall-dweller. *See* Sthānakavāsi
 hand-bowl, 41
 Harappan culture, 33n
 Hari, 29
 happiness, feeling of, 125
 Haribhadra, 77, 80, 81, 85, 87, 308, 309n
 Haribhadra Gaṇi, 82
 Harikeśa, 75-76
 Harinegamesi, 7n, 70 (pl. 5)
 Hariṣeṇa, 300

harming others, 170-171
 175; rel-
 ity, 176
 179-180
 295-296
 ferings, 313
 Hastipāla, hatred, pas
 head-anoir
 205
 heaven: at
 ascetic, 110, 152,
 221, 227,
 129-130;
 ence of,
 hell: beings
 124; desc
 tices lea
 rebirth in
 Hemacandra
 255n, 283
 Hemacandra
 hermaphrod
 120, 131
 hero, a litera
 hindrance (t
 also karm
 Hindu: gods
 caste sys
 purāṇas,
 concept o
 tinguishe
 195; devo
 tion of re
 tice of, 2
 286-287,
 various
 293n; Jain
 status, 29
 Vedic trad
 Hīravijaya,
 Hoernle, A.
 holy places,
 honey, 167,
 Hoysalas, 28
 human bein
 126; desti
 portance
 tices lead

harming [hiṃsā]: of oneself and others, 167-169; three types of, 170-171; relationship with stealing, 175; relationship with sexual activity, 176; giving advice leading to, 179-180; in the Vedic sacrifice, 295-296; involvement in ritual offerings, 311; Jaina avoidance of, 313

Hastipāla, 37

hatred, passion of, 112

head-anointing, ceremony of, 204-205

heaven: attainment possible by any ascetic, 57; rebirth in, 108, 109n, 110, 152; practices leading to, 116, 221, 227, 232, 314n; description of, 129-130; acceptance of the existence of, 152

hell: beings, 108, 109n, 110, 121-122, 124; description of, 128-129; practices leading to, 116, 228; non-rebirth in, 144

Hemacandra, 78, 80, 85, 86, 87, 255n, 283n, 284n

Hemacandra Maladhāri, 77

hermaphrodite, sexual cravings for, 120, 131

hero, a literary type, 305

hindrance (type of karma), 123. *See also* karma

Hindu: gods, 55, 89n, 192, 304-306; caste system, 67, 288; epics and purāṇas, 87; superstitions of, 154; concept of chosen deity, 163; distinguished from Jainas, 169n, 189, 195; devotionism, 194, 285; notion of rebirth, 227; suicide practice of, 281; influence on Jainas, 286-287, 311; rites of, 291-304; various meanings of the term, 293n; Jaina claim to non-Hindu status, 293n; opposition to non-Vedic traditions, 306

Hiravijaya, 284n

Hoernle, A.F.R., 25

holy places, pilgrimages to, 205-206

honey, 167, 168

Hoysalas, 282

human being: life-duration of, 31, 126; destiny of, 108, 124, 127n; importance of, 111, 249, 258; practices leading to rebirth as, 116;

abodes of, 129, 130n; effort of, 137, 138; omniscience of, 266

hymns: philosophical, 83, 85-87; of praise, 164-166, 222

ignorance: defined, 118; problem of, 134-136, 139

illness, terminal, 229, 231

illumination, 155, 202, 207, 260, 310

illusion, 92, 149

illusionism, 96

image of a Jina: Digambara, 21, 33; erecting of, 155; worship of, 190, 191-196, 199-203; role in auspicious occasions ceremony, 196-199; setting up and housing of, 226

Immortal-third [Akṣaya-tṛtīyā], a Jaina holy day, 203

incapability for liberation, 140, 194n

incarnation: karmas which determine the aspects of, 124-125; of Viṣṇu, 304

Indra, 35, 197

Indrabhūti Gautama, 35, 43n, 54, 60, 238, 239, 240; attainment of omniscience, 38, 46; as a gaṇadhara, 44, 45

Indrāṇī, 197

Indus Valley, 33

influx of karma, 112, 124, 252; energy which brings about, 139; limiting of, 144, 170; stoppage of, 151, 247, 249, 268

initiation: mendicant ceremony of, 243-246; twice-born ceremony of, 294, 299

inscription, of King Khāravela, 191-192; at Mathura, 193n; at Shravanabelgola, 229n

insight, true [samyak-darśana], 97; delusion of, 118, 133; gods who have entered the path of, 129; capability for, 139-141; attainment of, 143-146; duration of, 145-146; signs of, 147; results following the attainment of, 145-146; limbs of, 152-156; necessity of practice with, 160; as one of the three jewels, 200, 300; rarity of, 249; "ocean of", 281

instinct, of beings, 110

instruction, attainment of, 142-143

island-continent, 29-30, 32, 60

366/General Index

- Jacobi, H., 17, 52
 Jain, Hiralal, 32
 Jaina: defined, 1-2; false, 20; true, 146; nominal, 161; non-Vedic attitude of, 1n, 33, 169
 Jainism: sect origin of, 4-6; pre-Vedic origins of, 33-34; survival of, 274-284; royal patrons of, 275-284; histories of, 276n; spiritual decay of, 306-308; reforms of, 308-311
 Jaipur, 312
 Jamāli, 88n
 Jambū, 46, 47n
 Jambūdīpa, 29, 30
 Jaṭasimhanandi, 221
 Jayaghoṣa, 74-75
 Jayasimha-Siddharāja, 283, 284
 jewels, the three, 200, 299
 Jina: meaning of, 2-4; body of, 3, 124n; status attained by Mahāvīra, 28; difference from an arhat, 31n; existing during all cycles, 32; mundane activities of, 36; controversy over the nature of, 39; text on the nature of, 83-84; hymns in praise of, 85-87, 164-166; instruction of, 143, 249; his presence promoting salvation, 146; pure bliss of, 149; his unique ability to teach the path, 153; devotion to, 162, 163; vision of, 196, 207; bathing the image of, 200-201; concentration on the form of, 235; visualization of the quality of, 256; ritual offering in memory of, 296. *See also* Tīrthankara
 Jinabhadra, 77
 Jinadāsagaṇi, 77
 Jinaprabhasūri, 193n
 Jinasena, 50, 78, 87, 153n, 189, 190n, 281; discussion of his *Ādipurāṇa*, 288-304
 Jīvanatasvāmī, 192n
 Jñātr, 6
 Jñātrputra, 9
 Jṛmbhikagrāma, 28
 junior monk, 184; ritual officiating of, 197, 254n; as a teacher, 208; begging rules for, 219, 220; living with monks, 246; number of, 246n; as clerics, 307
 Jvālāmālīnī, 194n
 Kailāsa, 32, 206
 Kālaka, 282-283
 Kalinga, 191, 278, 279
 Kaniṣka, 279
 karma, 97, 111, 137, 138; result of, 55, 113, 115-116, 138, 147; association with the soul, 105-106, 113-114; seeds of, 111; material nature of, 112; influx of, 112, 124, 252; duration of, 113, 126, 144; stain of, 114; moral nature of, 115-116, 154; types of, 115-126; chart of, 131-132; reduction of, 141, 143; intensity of, 144, 145; suppression and destruction of, 144-145, 146, 157, 158-159, 255, 258; dissociation of, 151, 159; thinning of, 268-270
 Karnataka, 5, 206, 279, 281, 282
 Kārtikeya, 80
 Kāśi, 38
 Kāśyapa, 9
 Keśi, dialogue with Indrabhūti Gautama, 14, 15-16n, 57-58
 Khāravela, 163n, 191-192, 278
 kings, Jaina, 275-284
 knot, 143n, 144
 knower, 104
 knowledge: clairvoyant, 3, 110, 122; as a quality of the soul, 90, 104, 105, 106, 111; mind-based, 91, 122; obscuring of, 117, 121; five types of, 122; right, 200, 300
 knowledge (infinite [kevalajñāna]), 141; attained by Jinas, 2, 4; attained by Mahāvīra, 25, 27-28; attained by gaṇadharas, 44; as a mode of the knowledge quality, 91; its possible attainment by all souls, 150; attained by Rṣabha, 204n; visualization of the quality of, 256; with and without activities, 159, 258, 268-270; nature of, 266-267
 Kośala, 38
 Kṛṣṇa, 33, 55, 62, 202, 305, 306n
 kṣatriya, caste of Mahāvīra, 6, 7; superiority of, 8, 275; and brahman, 45, 75; second member of the caste system, 67, 289; duties of, 171, 313
 Kumārapāla, 284
 Kumārila, 267n

Kuṇḍagrān
 Kundakun
 311
 Kunthalag
 Kūṇika, 56
 Kūṣmāṇḍin

 Lādha, 26
 Lakhamasi,
 Lakṣmaṇa,
 lamps, wav
 Laukāntika
 law (holy),
 layman, 59
 61; Jaina
 285n; res
 vows of
 spiritual
 186; pra
 duties of
 210, 216-
 Ānanda as
 legend. *See* F
 liberated one
 31); attain
 salutation
 on the nat
 256; nature
 Licchavis, 38,
 life, lowest fo
 of, 126, and
 lineage (type
 litany (holy
 beings), 16
 254, 300;
 ritual use o
 livelihood, a
 types of,
 types, 179
 Lohārya, 36n
 loin cloth, 6n,
 Lokapāla, 6n
 longevity (typ
 270
 Lonkā Śāha, 3
 lying, 173-175

 Mādhaba Kon
 Madras, 278
 Magadha, 33,
 Mahābala, 40n
 Mahābhārata,

- Kuṇḍagrāma, 6
Kundakunda, 32, 79, 80, 81, 160n, 311
Kunthalagiri, 1
Kūṇika, 56
Kūṣmāṇḍinī, 194n
- Lāḍha, 26
Lakḥamsi, 309
Lakṣmaṇa, 305, 314n
lamps, waving of, 201-202
Laukāntika, 11, 197
law (holy), 164; three aspects of, 64
layman, 59; attaining omniscience of, 61; Jaina texts on, 80, 160-161, 285n; restraints prescribed for, 119; vows of, 149, 158, (chart) 187; spiritual path of, 160-185, (chart) 186; practices of, 188-189; six duties of, 189-191; rituals of, 191-210, 216-233; leader of, 198, 207; Ānanda as the ideal for, 233-240
legend. *See* Purāṇa
liberated ones [siddha], 37, 265 (pl. 31); attainment of the state of, 159; salutation to, 162; concentration on the nature and body of, 255-256; nature of, 270-271
Licchavis, 38, 233
life, lowest form of, 109, 168; length of, 126, *and see* karma
lineage (type of karma), 125, 268
litany (holy), to the five (holy beings), 162-163, 199, 232, 245, 254, 300; concentration on, 255; ritual use of, 293, 296-297
livelihood, accepted and prohibited types of, 171-172; undesirable types, 179
Lohārya, 36n
loin cloth, 6n, 184, 244
Lokapāla, 6n
longevity (type of karma), 126, 268, 270
Lonkā Śāha, 309, 310
lying, 173-175
- Mādhava Konguṇivarma, 279
Madras, 278
Magadha, 33, 50, 276, 278
Mahābala, 40n
Mahābhārata, 2n, 304, 305, 314n
Maharashtra, 1, 279
Mahārāṣṭrī Prakrit, 47n
Mahāvīra, 1, 3, 4, 5, 57, 59, 228, 307; legends about, 6-10; names given to, 9-10; early life of, 10-12; renunciation of, 12-15; relation with Pārśva, 15-18; relation with Makkhali Gosāla, 21-25, 254; austerities of, 25-27; enlightenment of, 27-29; relationship with Rṣabha, 32; career as a Tīrthāṅkara, 34-37; death of, 37-38; chief disciples of, 43-47; texts preached by, 49; texts not preached by, 52, 53; syādvāda doctrine of, 54; pure conduct of, 66; brahman disciples of, 43, 67; true brahman status of, 75; his preaching to animals, 143; non-veneration of, 163; as a quasi-divine figure, 191; image of, 192n; celebration of his birth anniversary, 203; Jaina era beginning with his death, 203; nirvāṇa site of, 206; sāmāyika restraint undertaken by, 221; story of Ānanda and, 233-240; keśa-loca performed by, 245; his description of the liberated soul, 271; royal status of, 275n, 276
Mahāyāna, "Jaina", 88, 260n, 285n
Mahāyānist, 259
Makkaḍi *See* Makkhali Gosāla
Makkhali Gosāla, 19, 21-25, 54, 136, 254
Malayagiri, 77
Mallavādin, 85
Malli, 40n, 54, 72(pl. 9)
Mallikas, 38
Malliṣeṇa, 85, 302, 303
Maṇaka, 64
Maṇḍika, 44
Manes: world of, 302; offering to the, 154, 169, 302-304
Māṇikyanandi, 84
Marīci, 32
marriage, 176; renunciation of the state of, 183; ceremony of, 291, 300-302; of Jains and non-Jains, 300n
Marudevī, 204n
Masayari. *See* Makkhali Gosāla
materialism, 96

- materialists, 58, 103, 134
 Mathura, 51, 192, 193n, 278, 279
 matter, 81, 98, 99, 102; qualities of, 90, 97; distinction from soul, 91; formation of, 101-102; karmic, 102, 107. *See also* karma
 Maurya, 6n, 191
 Mauryaputra, 44
 meat: controversy over the use to cure Mahāvīra's alleged illness, 24n; tantric use of, 153; prohibition against eating of, 167-169
 meditation: of a layman, 158; vow of, 180; one of the six duties, 190; Jina image in, 192; lay practice of, 221-227; death in, 226, 227; mendicant practice of, 251-258; as internal form of worship, 311
 Mehta, Raychandbhai, 301n, 314, 315
 mendicant. *See* monk
 merchant. *See* vaiśya
 merit (fields of), seven types of, 220-221
 Meru, 9n, 29, 129n, 197, 200
 Metārya, 44
 middle path, 27
 migration (of Jinas), 5-6n
 Mīmāṃsā, 97
 Mīmāṃsakas, 83
 mind, 121, 122, 143, 266
 Mithilā, 37
 Miyaputta, 55
 mobile channel (a part of the loka-ākāśa), 130
 mode, 150; acquiring and losing of, 90; and quality, 91; and substance, 92, 93, 150; knowledge of innumerable, 266
 Modi, P.K., 17, 18
 modification, 90; defiled and undefiled, 99; of time, 100; of karma, 106
 monk: number during Mahāvīra's time, 37; begging practices of, 40-41, 217-22; behavior of, 65-66; vows of, 149, 158, 241-243; non-Jaina, 153-154; lay service to, 155; spiritual path of, 157-159; six duties of, 189-191; initiation of, 243-246; marks of, 245; number of monks in different Jaina sects, 246n; eight exercises of, 247-248; pseudo-, 308
 mortification (of the body), 251
 motion (principle of), 81, 97, 98, 99-100
 movement (of the soul), 127n, 269. *See* soul
 Mudbidre, 193n, 213
 Mulki, 215
 multiplicity (of modes), 91, 92
 Muslims, 284, 285, 293n, 306, 310
 Mysore, 5n, 277n, 278
 mystical centers (of body), 254
 mystical diagrams, 254n, 308
 Nāgārjuna, 51
 Nālandā, 37, 84, 286
 name (type of karma), 124-125, 268
 Nanda, 191, 277
 narratives, 54-55
 Nemi, 3, 33, 55, 62, 64, 196n, 206
 Nemicandra, 51n
 Nepal, 5n
 Nigaṇṭhas: meaning of the term, 2n; Buddhist sources on, 10, 18, 19, 21; fasting as the characteristic practice of, 217; Buddhist critique of, 223; survival of, 274n; royal patrons of, 276
 nihilism, 150
 nirvāṇa, 3, 7, 46, 55, 93, 155, 159; of Mahāvīra, 37-38; realm of, 205-206
 nonactionism, 53
 noneternalism, 92, 93
 nonharming [ahimsā], 86, 184n, 289; of Mahāvīra, 8; cardinal doctrine of Mahāvīra, 53; first aspect of the Jaina law, 64; universal application of, 167-169, 177, 242, 243; vow of, 170-173; and war, 281, 313; its influence on non-Jainas, 284; hell destiny for violation of, 305; Jaina commitment to, 311-315
 nonmotion, 270
 nonpossession, 86; vow of, 177-178
 nonrestraint, 158, 228, 232
 nonsentient, 151; type of being, 97, 98-102
 nonstealing, 57, 175
 nonVedic, ascetic tradition [śramaṇas], 1n, 33, 136, 169, 274, 278

nonviolence
 ing
 nudity (a)
 contro
 women
 overco
 249-2
 nudity
 nun: nun
 37; nu
 Jaina s
 Nyāya, 8
 obscuring
 117, 12
 obtaining
 offences,
 offering,
 worship
 to the M
 old age, 2
 om, 42, 1
 omniprese
 omniscien
 omniscient
 arhat], 4
 ment of
 Jina, 31
 mundane
 passion-l
 powers
 124n; w
 of, 258;
 tinction
 Jaina, 26
 reduction
 openminded
 oral tradition
 order (four
 porters o
 36, 38,
 leader of
 also ford
 Orissa, 191
 own-nature
 pacifist, 313
 Padmāvatī,
 Pāesi, 57-5
 pain, 115, 1
 palpability,
 Pāpā, 37

General Index/369

- nonviolence, 311-315. *See* nonharming
- nudity (ascetic), order of monks, 5n; controversy on, 13-15, 39; for women, 40, 49n, 246; total, 184; overcoming difficulties caused by, 249-250; bans against public nudity, 308n
- nun: number during Mahāvīra's time, 37; number of nuns in different Jaina sects, 246n
- Nyāya, 85
- obscuring (type of karma), 105, 115, 117, 124
- obtaining, 106; hindrance to, 123
- offences, twenty-one types of, 62
- offering, of the eight substances in worship, 201; ritual, 293, 295-296; to the Manes, 154, 169, 302-304
- old age, 229
- om, 42, 163-164
- omnipresence, 58, 103, 269
- omniscience. *See* knowledge (infinite)
- omniscient being [sarvajña, kevalin, arhat], 44, 164; Mahāvīra's attainment of, 28; distinguished from a Jina, 31n; non-performance of mundane activities by, 46, 192; passion-free nature of, 113, 120; powers attained in the state of, 124n; worship of, 202, 203; state of, 258; defining mark of, 267; distinction between Buddhist and Jaina, 267; fasting of, 268n, karmic reduction of (prior to nirvāṇa), 269
- openmindedness, 118
- oral tradition, 49
- order (fourfold) [Saṃgha], 36; supporters of the [gaṇadhara], 4, 35, 36, 38, 42, 43-47, 63, 87, 268n; leader of, 62; head of, 246. *See also* ford, the fourfold
- Orissa, 191, 278
- own-nature, 148
- pacifist, 313
- Padmāvatī, 194n
- Pāesi, 57-59
- pain, 115, 137
- palpability, quality of, 90, 97, 101
- Pāpā, 37
- Paraśurāma, 281n
- Pārśva, 3, 33, 49, 69(pl. 2); disciples of, 10, 57, 58; and Mahāvīra, 14-18; tradition of, 15-18, 24n; demigod of, 194; nirvāṇa site of, 206
- passion [kaṣāya], 112, 153, 167, 252; free from, 113, 151, 268; types of, 118-120; detachment from, 142, 143, 148; suppression and destruction of, 253, 257, 258; as "internal possessions," 177
- Pāṭaliputra, 5n, 25, 51
- Patañjali, 81
- path, holy, 12; of the thirteen (Terāpantha), 315
- Patna, 5, 6, 37, 43, 206
- patronage, royal, 275-284
- Pāvāpurī, 37, 206
- peacock feathers, 184n, 245
- penance, bartering of [nidāna], 230, 266
- perception, 104, 105, 106, 111; obstructing of, 115, 117, 121; two types of, 122-123; omniscient, 123; direct, 266
- perfect teacher, text on, 83-84
- perfections, six of Buddhahood, 260n
- persecution, of Jains, 306
- Persians, 283
- philosophical school, 81, 90, 91, 103
- pilgrimage, 155, 206
- plant, destiny, 108-110; and animal, 108, 124, 144; prohibition against eating of, 168
- pleasure (in sense activity), 120
- polygamy, 176
- possessions: detachment from, 142, 148, 244; identification with, 147; internal and external, 177
- powers (yogic), 49, 153, 256
- Prabhācandra, 84
- Prabhāsa, 44
- Prabhava, 46
- practice, 81; delusion pertaining to, 154; and insight, 160; ceremonial, 287, 293
- praise (of the Tīrthaṅkaras), 165-166, 190
- preceptor, 162, 164, 246
- pride, passion of, 119, 148, 149
- priest. *See* brahman
- Priyadarśanā, 11

370 / General Index

Prṣṭicampā, 37
 Pudgalavādin, 267n
 Pūjyapāda. *See* Devanandi
 Punjab, 34, 279
 Purāṇa, 2n, 5, 32, 62, 87, 305
 purification, path of, 97, 118, 167, 271; fourteen stages of, 141, 157-159, 161, (chart) 272-273
 purity, attainment of, 154, 158; layman's declaration of, 220; perfect, 258
 Pūrvas, 49-52
 Puṣkaravara, 30
 Puṣpadanta, 50, 163n, 203

 Quakers, 276n, 313
 qualifications, the eight, of an ācārya, 62
 qualified (i.e. conditional) assertion, doctrine of [syādvāda], 54, 83, 86, 88; sevenfold application of, 94-97
 quality, substance and, 90; of matter, 90, 97; of the soul, 90, 91, 104-106, 117, 121, 141; knowledge of innumerable, 266

 Rājagṛha, 37, 44, 276
 Rajasthan, 206, 279
 Rājimati, 64
 Rakṣita, 77
 Rāma, 304, 305
 Rāmāyaṇa, 2n, 304; Jaina, 305n, 313n
 Ramyaka, 29
 Rāṣṭrakūṭas, 281
 Rathavīrapura, 5n
 Ratnākara Varṇī, 62n
 Rāvaṇa, 305, 314n
 Raychandbhai. *See* Mehta, Raychandbhai
 reality: comprehensive view of, 53; doctrine of manifold aspects of, 86, 90-91, 94; nature of, 89; partial views of, 91-94; categories of, 97-106
 realm, of enjoyment and action, 29-30, 31, 221; of the siddha, 270
 reason, 89, 121, 150
 rebirth, 57, 127n, 131n, 248; cycle of, 107; possible types of, 108-110; "vehicle" of, 125; in heaven, 116, 152, 221, 227, 232, 314n; in hell, 116, 228; intermediate state of, 227; symbolic, 244

reduction, of a monk's seniority, 62; karmic, 141, 147
 reflection, twelve types of, 248
 reforms, Jaina, 308-311
 refuges (the four), 77, 164
 reliquary mound, 193n, 298n
 renunciation: of Mahāvīra, 7, 12-15; passions which prevent, 119-120, 157-158, 185, 226; partial and complete, 149, 160, 241-243; of food, 184, 190, 251; ritual of, 209-210, 216-217; layman's temporary, 223; of all egoistic thoughts, 251
 repentance, 251
 residence unit (of a monk), 246
 resolution (of a monk begging), 219
 respiration, control of, 254
 rest (the principle of), 81, 97, 98, 99-100
 restraint: fourfold, 10, 15-18; prescribed for a layman, 119, 166-168, 169-181, 190; of Mahāvīra, 221; three of a monk, 247
 retribution, of karma, 55, 113, 115-116, 147, 148, 225, 230, 269; of insight, 145
 revelation, 3
 reverence, to the elders, 251, 260
 Rgveda, 33
 righteousness, ten forms of, 248
 rites, Jaina integration of Hindu, 291-304
 ritual, Vedic, 169; of a layman, 180-182, 188-210, 216-233; five elements of Hindu and Jaina, 293, 295-298
 Rjupālikā, 28
 Rṣabha, the first Tīrthaṅkara of the present half-cycle, 14; relationship with Mahāvīra, 32; bull-insignia of, 33; legends of, 61; demigod of, 194n; commemoration of alms-offering to, 203, 246; Bāhubali as the son of, 204; nirvāṇa site of, 206; as the "creator" of civilization, 288-289, 293; cremation of, 297, 302
 Rṣabhadatta, 7

 sacrifice: Vedic, 36, 74, 97; Jaina concept of, 76; prohibition against, 169, 284, 296
 Sāhi, 283
 Saitavāla, 302n

Śaivite, 254
 Śakas, 279
 Śakra, 7, 9
 suming th
 Sala, 281, 2
 salvation [possibility of, 97, 1314n; god tain, 129, the attain bility for samyak-d of the nin the ideal the attain ladder lea of, 270-27 the guṇast by Rāma, 3
 Samaga, 28
 Samantabhad
 Sāṃkhya, 53
 Sammedasikha
 Samprati, 277
 Sanchi, 193
 Sanmati, 9
 Śāntarakṣita, 2
 Śāntideva, 286
 Śāntisāgara, 1
 Śāntyācārya, 1
 Sarasvatī, 296
 Śātruṅjaya, 20
 Saurashtra, 33
 283, 308
 Śayyambhava, scripture, 162; also canon (J
 Scythians, 279
 seed, karmic, 1
 self, 103; seen within, 148; also soul
 self-awareness, self-censure, 23
 self-containment
 See also soul
 self-knowledge, self-pity, 148
 self-reliance, 13
 senses: tīryāṇc by the num 137; awaren of the, 121

Śaivite, 254, 283, 284, 300n

Śakas; 279

Śakra, 7, 9, 12; hymn by, 165; assuming the role of, 197, 200

Sala, 281, 282

salvation [mokṣa], 2, 31; constant possibility of attainment, 32; path of, 97, 150, 152, 153, 157, 167, 314n; gods who are destined to attain, 129, 130; theistic solution for the attainment of, 137-138; capability for attainment of, 139-141; samyak-darśana and, 145-146; one of the nine tattvas, 151; love for the ideal of, 155; Jina-worship for the attainment of, 194; spiritual ladder leading to, 253; attainment of, 270-271; not included among the guṇasthānas, 273; attainment by Rāma, 305

Samaga, 28

Samantabhadra, 80, 83-84, 86, 87

Sāṃkhya, 53, 92, 93, 99, 134, 271n

Sammedaśikhara, 206

Samprati, 277n

Sanchi, 193

Sanmati, 9

Śāntarakṣita, 267n

Śāntideva, 286n

Śāntisāgara, 1, 233

Śāntyācārya, 16

Sarasvatī, 296

Śatruñjaya, 206

Saurashtra, 33, 51, 206, 278, 279, 283, 308

Śayyambhava, 46, 64

scripture, 162; devotion to, 260. *See also* canon (Jaina)

Scythians, 279, 283

seed, karmic, 111; syllable, 254n

self, 103; seen as externals, 147; seen within, 148; highest, 148, 256. *See also* soul

self-awareness, 103, 148

self-censure, 231

self-containment (of the soul), 104.

See also soul

self-knowledge, 267

self-pity, 148

self-reliance, 138

senses: tiryāṇa beings distinguished by the number of, 108-110; 130, 137; awareness beyond the range of the, 121, 266; possibility of

religious instruction for beings endowed with five, 143

sentient beings, 97, 102-106, 151

service, of Jaina ascetics, 155, 251; to sick mendicants, 260

Seyaviyā, 57, 58

sexual activity, tantric, 153; weakening the passion for, 158; vow prohibiting, 176-177, 183

sexual cravings, 120, 131

Shravanabelgola, 6n, 204n, 277n, 279, 281

Siddhārtha, 6, 8, 10

Siddhasena Divākara, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87

Sīha, 24n

Śīlaguṇasūri, 283

Śīlāṅka, 77

Siṃhanandi, 279-280

Śītala, 194n

Śiva, 2n, 153n

Śivakoṭi, 5n

Śivānandā, 234, 237n

Śivārya, 79

Skandila, 51

skepticism, 118, 150, 151

sky-clad. *See* Digambara

smell, quality of, 90, 97, 101

Somadeva, 87, 153n, 154n, 171n, 190n, 194n, 313n

Somasena, 299n

sorrow, 120

soul [jīva; ātman], 94, 249, 253; text on the existence of, 57, 58; dimensions of, 58, 102, 269; one of the six substances, 81, 97-98; qualities of, 90-91, 104-106, 139; relation to the principles of motion, 99; omnipresence of, 103, 269; proof for existence of, 103; bondage of, 107, 111-115, 117-127, 134-135; four possible births of, 108-110; immateriality of, 114; movement of, 127, 269; controlled by fate, 137; capability for liberation, 139-141, 150; attainments of, 142-144; spiritual growth of, 144; insight of, 145-147; attitudes of, 147-148; liberation of, 159, 270-271; direct perception of, 266; in the state of mokṣa, 265(pl. 31)

space, 128(pl. 14), one of the six substances, 81, 97; two types of, 98; occupied, 102, 109, 127-130; pl. 14

372/General Index

space-point, 98n, 98-99, 100, 102, 269
 speaking (care in), 247-248
 spirit, guardian, 194n, 195, 202, 254n
 spiritual victor. *See* Jina
 śramaṇa. *See* ascetic
 Śrāvastī, 22, 37, 58
 Śreṇika, 228, 276
 Śreyāṃsa, 203
 stages (of lay spiritual progress) [prati-
 timā], eleven, 18, 63, 186 (chart)
 stain (karmic), six types of, 114
 states, of spiritual purification [gu-
 ṇasthāna], karmic destruction at
 particular, 133, 272-273 (chart)
 stealing, vow prohibiting of, 175
 Sthānakavāsi, 301n; texts accepted
 by, 49n; condemnation of image
 worship by, 191; distinguished
 from Śvetāmbaras, 244n; monk
 -initiation ceremony of, 245; nun
 order of, 246; number of monks
 and nuns, 247n; history of, 310;
 Terāpantha and, 313-314
 Sthūlabhadra, 5, 50
 Śubhacandra, 255n
 substance [dravya]: six types of, 81,
 97; quality, mode and, 90-91;
 Vedāntin, Sāṃkhya, and Buddhist
 concepts of, 92-93; unitary, 92,
 100; time as a, 100-101; as under-
 lying all modes, 150, 152; knowl-
 edge of innumerable, 266
 substratum, 90
 Sudatta, 281-282
 Sudharman, 38, 44, 45, 46
 Śūdra, 67, 289, 294
 Śunga, 278
 suicide, 229, 231
 suppression (of karma), 119, 144,
 145, 147, 158; destruction-and-,
 146
 sūtra, 42; as the canon, 47-67, 74-77
 Śvapākas, 74, 75, 76
 svastika, 108n, 192, 200, 214(pl. 21)
 Śvetāmbara: meaning of the term, 4-
 6; schism with Digambara, 4-6;
 controversy over Mahāvīra's
 change of womb, 7-9; controversy
 over vows of Mahāvīra, 11; con-
 troversy over nudity of Mahāvīra,
 13-15, 18-21; position on fourfold
 restraint, 16-18; stories of Mahāvī-
 ra and Makkhali Gosāla, 21-22,

23n; position on fasting of Mahā-
 vīra, 27; doctrine of kevalin eating
 food, etc., 36-38; doctrinal conflict
 with Digamabara, 38-41; begging
 practices of, 40-41; controversy
 over the divine sound, 42-43;
 language of the canon, 47n; dif-
 ferences with Sthānakavāsi on the
 authenticity of the canon, 49n;
 female Tīrthaṅkara of, 54; com-
 mentarial literature of, 78-82; texts
 on yoga, 81; texts on logic, 85;
 doctrinal unity with Digambara,
 88; controversy over time, 100;
 hymns of praise, 165; "posses-
 sions" of a monk, 184; sectarian
 differences from Digambara, 189;
 legend of image of Mahāvīra,
 192n; ceremonial specialists of,
 195; Jina-image of, 198; Jina wor-
 ship of, 202-203; arhatship for a
 woman, 204n; holy places of,
 206n; relationship of laity and
 monks, 208; equanimity formula
 of, 222; monk initiation of, 244-
 246; number of monks and nuns,
 246n; texts on meditation, 255n;
 arhat concept of, 268; geographical
 location of, 279; rulers in Gujarat,
 282-284; monk in Akbar's court,
 284n; decay of the mendicant or-
 der, 306-308; reform movements
 of, 308-311
 Śyāma, 60

tantra, 153n, 227, 254
 Tāraṇapantha, 310n
 Tāraṇasvāmi, 310n
 taste (quality of), 90, 97, 101
 teachers, 162; delusion pertaining to,
 153
 temple, 234, 301, 310; building of,
 155, 220; worship practices per-
 formed in, 191, 195, 199, 311; seen
 as a replica of the samavasaraṇa,
 196; Jina-images in, 207; cave, 281;
 monks dwelling in, 307; -dweller,
 307, 308, 309; sect of non-dwellers
 in (Sthānakavāsi), 310
 Terāpantha, 310
 theism, 96, 136, 266, 288
 theist, 89, 135
 time, 81, 97, 100, 101

time
 Tirt
 th
 b
 14
 37
 fr
 54
 60
 av
 15
 an
 16
 19
 cio
 19
 26
 ya
 six
 as
 rec
 29
 als
 Tōda
 trace
 trance
 transg
 and
 190
 transr
 127
 138
 Trisal
 truth,
 vow
 twice-
 300

Ujjain
 Ujjeni,
 Umāsv
 Unatta
 unhapp
 univers
 univers
 desc
 14);
 pans
 est p
 Untouc
 Upadh
 Upāṅg
 Upaniṣ

- time-point, 100-101
 Tirthaṅkara, 138, 275; meaning of the term, 2; destiny of Mahāvīra to become, 7, 11; Rṣabha as the first, 14, 61, 288; Mahāvīra as, 26, 34-37; role of 30, 32-34; distinguished from kevalin, 44n; Malli as female, 54; continents where they abide, 40; special faculties of, 124n; awareness conducive to becoming, 150; hymns to, 164-166; names and symbols of the twenty-four, 165n, 210 (pl. 15); demi-gods of, 194n; ceremony of the five auspicious events in the life of, 196-199; wish to be reborn as a, 230, 266; rebirth in the abode of, 233; yantras with the names of, 254n; sixteen actions conducive to rebirth as a, 260; sallekhanā practice not required for, 268; cremation of, 297; Kṛṣṇa as a future, 305n. *See also* Jina
 Tōḍarmal, 312n
 trace (karmic), 111
 trance states, 251-258
 transgression (of vows), accidental and intentional, 173; expiation for, 190
 transmigration, cycle of, 107-111, 127; problem of release from, 136-138
 Trīśalā, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 truth, partial expression of, 93-94; vows of, 173-175, 247
 twice-born, 67, 289-290, 294, 295, 300
 Ujjain (modern name for Ujjeni), 283
 Ujjeni, 6n
 Umāsvāti, 81-82, 157, 159
 Unattached ones. *See* Nigaṇṭhas
 unhappiness (producing karma), 125
 universal monarch, 7, 61
 universe, Jaina concept of, 29-30, 60; description of, 127-130, 128 (pl. 14); nature of, 150, 249; soul expansion to the limits of, 269; highest point of, 270
 Untouchables. *See* Śvapākas
 Upadhye, A.N., 33
 Upāṅgas, 56-62
 Upaniṣads, 2n
 Vaibhāṣikas, 259
 Vaiśāli, 6, 37
 Vaiśeṣikas, 136n
 Vaiṣṇavas, 288n, 300n
 Vaiṣṇavism, 89n
 vaiśya, 67, 172; Jaina, 174-175, 178, 289
 Valabhi, council of, 6n, 51, 55, 56, 63n, 77, 189, 276n
 Vālmīki, 305
 Vanarāja, 283
 Vāṇijagrāma, 37, 233, 234, 238
 Vardhamāna: name of Mahāvīra, 9; author of the *Ācārādinakara*, 299n
 Vāsūpūjya, 206
 Vaṭṭakera, 79
 Vāyubhūti, 35, 44
 Vedānta, 81, 88; Advaita, 92, 135
 Vedāntin, 93
 Vedas, 2n, 35; the "four" of Jainism, 78; infallibility of, 83; Jaina, 288
 vegetarianism, 168-169, 218, 281, 301n
 veneration, of the teachers, 190, 207-209
 Vesiyāyana, 22
 vibration: of the soul, 105; of body, speech and mind, 112, 115; omniscience with and without, 159, 258, 268-270
 victory, garland of, 201; over the afflictions, 249-250
 Videha, 29, 32, 166
 Vidyānanda, 83, 84
 view: comprehensive, 53; non-conventional, 80, 311; synthetic and analytical, 93; onesided, 118, 314n; state of false, 118, 119, 134, 304; state of correct, 141-142, 145; state of correct and incorrect, 145
 Vijayaghoṣa, 74
 Vijayanagara, 282
 Vikramāditya, 283
 villain, a literary type, 305
 violence, three types of, 170-171. *See also* harming
 Vīra, 9
 Vīra-nirvāṇa, 37
 Vīrasena, 50
 Viṣṇu, 2n, 32, 153n, 274, 304
 visualization, 196; employed in meditation, 255-256
 volition, 102, 113
 votive slab, 192

374 / General Index

vow, the five great, 15, 160, 170, 226, 228, 243, 244, 246, 247, 253; of silence, 21; three types of lay, 169-185, 187 (chart); partial and complete observance of, 119-120, 149, 157-158, 160; loss of, 227-228, 230; of a monk, 241-243, 244, 246, 247, 253; observance of, 260

Vṛṣṇi, 62

Vyakta, 44

war, 171n, 281, 313

warrior. *See* kṣatriya

water-bodies, 109, 142

Weber, M., 286

well-being. *See* svastika

whisk-broom, 184n, 222, 244, 248

white [cotton]-clad. *See* Śvetāmbara

wine, 168

women, spiritual status of, 39-40; mendicancy of, 246n

world, types of, 29-30, 128-130; of the siddhas, 130, 204n, 270; of the Manes, 302

worship, 206, 295, 300; of false gods, 152; of a Jina-image, 182, 244; of the Tīrthaṅkaras, 190, 191-196, 199-203; of the guardian-spirits, 194; internal and external forms of, 207, 217, 311; one worthy of worship, *see* arhat

writing, 171

Yāpanīya, 15, 79, 83

Yaśobhadra, 46

Yaśodā, 11

Yaśovijaya, 85, 160n

yoga: meditation, texts on Jaina, 80-81; school, 81; Jaina meditational practices, 251-258; activities, *see* vibration

Yogācāra-Vijñānavādin, 140

Yogindu, 80

**Padmanabh S. Jaini is Professor of
Buddhist Studies at the University of
California at Berkeley.**

THE DOCTRINE OF THE JAINAS

W. Schubring

English Transl. by *Wolfgang Beurlen*

This is a revised English translation of the German book *Die Lehre der Jainas* of W. Schubring. The author has tried to put the essence of Jaina religion and philosophy in a very clear way so that a student of religion or philosophy can easily trace out Jainism in regard to cosmology, cosmography and history.

THE JAINA PHILOSOPHY OF NON-ABSOLUTISM

Satkari Mookerjee

These are the Mahavira Extension Lectures 12 (2nd Series), presenting a Critical Study of Anekāntavāda. The study suggests some kind of animistic philosophy of the people, and especially its literature, written in Prakrit, and shows a definitive trend towards folk-philosophy interested in overstraining the moral aspects without any theistic bias. The folk-philosophy reveals elements developed into logical doctrines remarkable for their originality, acuteness and subtlety. The author lays bare the fundamentals of the Jaina doctrine, *Syādvāda* or *Anekāntavāda*, with all the relevant problems and gives a thorough and powerful exposition of Jaina Thought.

JAINA ETHICS

Dayanand Bhargava

The work embodies a comprehensive and systematic study of the ethical principles of Jainism which has made significant contribution to Indian thought. The author has described all aspects of Jaina ethics and traced its origin to principles of Jaina philosophy—non-absolutism etc. He has discussed their value at national and international level. The application of the code of conduct, as described in this work, to international problems of world peace etc., the author holds, would be immensely beneficial to humanity. The serious problems of ethics are discussed in a simple and lucid style.

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS